371.190973
M66
2014
C

634

0085552

ASTU043162BEL

Not to be taken out side
the Library

Pearson New International Edition

The School and Community Relations
Edward H. Moore Don H. Bagin
Donald R. Gallagher
Tenth Edition

PEARSON

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsoned.co.uk

© Pearson Education Limited 2014

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a licence permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

Science & Technology
University Library

PEARSON

ISBN 10: 1-292-02188-8
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-02188-1

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Printed in the United States of America

Table of Contents

1. The Importance of Public Relations
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 1

2. Public Character of the School
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 9

3. Understanding the Community
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 17

4. Policies, Goals, and Strategies
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 39

5. Administering the Program
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 53

6. The Communication Process
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 73

7. Communicating with Internal Publics
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 87

8. Communicating with External Publics
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 111

9. Crisis Communication
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 147

10. Communication About School Services and Special Events
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 161

11. Working with the Press
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 183

12. Radio, Television, Exhibits, and Presentations
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 209

13. Preparing Published Materials
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher 223

14. Preparing Online Communications
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher **249**

15. Conducting Special Issue Campaigns
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher **267**

16. Communicating School Finance Issues
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher **279**

17. Assessment and Accountability
Edward H. Moore/Don Bagin/Donald R. Gallagher **301**

Index **311**

Chapter 1

The Importance of Public Relations

In recent years the importance of school–community relations and overall school public relations has grown rapidly. Consider some trends affecting school leaders daily:

Many states and local school systems today offer a broad array of choices for parents in determining where to send students to school, creating new demands for ongoing communication on program and quality issues between schools and parents, prospective parents, and communities overall. Only about 20 years ago, Minnesota started a school choice program. Today, the majority of states offer some form of charter school alternatives to traditional public school systems. More than a dozen states give parents options for choosing specific schools either within or outside of their home school systems, and home-schooling options exist in all 50 states.

Safety and security crises—such as violence issues, health concerns, environmental dangers, and staff conduct—have added new pressures for schools to communicate more effectively before, during, and after crisis situations.

As parents and taxpayers have become better informed, they tend to increase their involvement in local education issues and to openly challenge many of the decisions being made by educational leaders.

For these reasons and more, many superintendents and other administrators wish they had learned more about how to communicate effectively and about how to practice public relations when taking their administrative courses.

WHY SCHOOL PUBLIC RELATIONS?

Why? Because more and more of the administrator's time is spent dealing with people. In most communities, taxpayers are letting it be known that they care about the quality of education and about its cost. The interest in better communications skills has also been sparked by strong teacher associations and unions that provide public relations help for members. As teacher representatives demand more explanations and as the nuances of negotiation become more subtle, top administrators must learn to be comfortable communicating in diverse situations with myriad publics.

From Chapter 1 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

An administrator may provide excellent leadership for the schools' curriculum and may be a financial wizard, but if an administrator cannot effectively communicate with the school board, parents, taxpayers, staff, and the news media—on a regular basis—his or her days in the district will be few.

Front-page newspaper stories frequently declare one of the following reasons for a superintendent's dismissal: "He couldn't communicate with the board," "Her comments alienated parents," or "He just didn't have a good feel for this community." Knowing the public and being able to keep abreast of the community's thinking are major requirements for today's successful administrator. Suggestions on how to accomplish these tasks are offered in Chapter 3.

Al Holliday, former editor and publisher of the *Journal of Educational Public Relations* and former public relations director for the Pennsylvania State Education Department, suggests that educators communicate poorly for the following reasons:

1. They have a *false impression about their ability to communicate.* They fail to realize communication is not necessarily included when knowledge is disseminated. He points out that dissemination is only a third of the process. Communication involves disseminating information, getting a response, and evaluating that response.

2. Educators aren't used to competing for people's attention. They have enjoyed the luxury of waiting for their publics to come to them and are therefore reluctant to take the initiative and advance ideas in the face of competing voices. Many educators find it distasteful to enter the public arena and challenge public interest groups for the right to be heard.

3. Many educators operated in relative obscurity for many years and are unprepared for the public's accelerating interest in their activities. They consider the scrutinizing of their activities to be inappropriate.

4. Educators have such a high regard for their colleagues' professional ability that they unconsciously minimize the value of outside opinion.

5. Most professional educators, especially those in administrative positions, have little communication experience and almost no meaningful communications training.

If school officials aren't convinced that they have a responsibility to communicate because communication helps people learn or because it builds confidence in the schools, they might want to consider another reason: to keep their jobs.

More and more school systems now offer parents some opportunity to choose the school or programs their children will attend.

What does this mean? It means that images and perceptions count more than ever for schools. Fair or not, accurate or not, schools that are perceived as being "good" will attract more students than schools that people do not seem to like. Getting to the bottom line, it means that people working in schools that don't attract students will not have jobs. That sounds dramatic, but it probably will be the result because choice options continue to expand.

Why do people choose one school over another? What makes School A seem better than School B? Many people have different theories. Some feel that it is the overall image of the school projected by the school district newsletter and media coverage. Others feel that it is based on the test scores of graduates. Still others think that an aura, evolved over the years, continues, even though in reality the quality of that school has changed.

The reasons why people make school choices become important when considering the growing interest and action on school-choice options. Data compiled by the U.S. Department of Education's National Center for Education Statistics show that between 1993 and 2003, the percentage of students in grades 1–12 attending a "chosen" public school (that is, a school other than the one to which they were assigned) increased from 11 to 15 percent. In the same period, the percentage attending their "assigned" public schools decreased from 80 to 74 percent.

With the competition for public funds on the local, state, and national levels, it's imperative that educational leaders be effective spokespersons for education. With only so many dollars available, the question facing legislators is whether those dollars should go for roads, bridges, health care, welfare, or education. Impressions are made daily by administrators—impressions that influence legislators' decisions on public education. While state and national associations can provide lobbying leadership, much also

needs to be accomplished on a local level by school officials as they communicate in the community. Whether it's speaking in a classroom to explain how public education works (a neglected curriculum item in most schools) or having breakfast with a local legislator, the school administrator constantly affects the public perception of education. Because administrators lead a fishbowl existence in the community, it's important that they understand and support ways of building confidence in public education. Many of these ideas and techniques are of course applicable to those responsible for leadership in nonpublic schools.

For too many years school officials were reluctant to commit staff and funds to public relations. They felt that "public relations" carried a stigma—that it was perceived as a "spin" for covering up or obscuring problems. Whether a school chooses to call it public relations, public information, community relations, or communications is relatively unimportant. The commitment to better planned, regular two-way communications with all the audiences served by the schools is, however, important. One of the reasons more of a commitment has not been made may lie in the fact that so few school officials have been prepared to handle public relations responsibilities. In addition, education has in many cases continued its administrative organization with few changes in title or responsibilities over the years. Yet, a role-playing technique that asked thousands of taxpayers nationally what they would have done if given the chance to start the first school found that the need to communicate between the school and home was always one of the top two priorities.[1] Many of the commitments now considered almost sacrosanct were not listed as being one of the top five necessities to ensure a successful school.

The importance of communication in the overall school operation is being recognized by an increasing number of states, as more are requiring that candidates for administrative certification complete a course in the field of community relations. National organizations, such as the American Association of School Administrators (AASA), have recognized the growing importance of school–community relations by devoting resources and conference sessions to the topic. Other regional and state education associations are committing more and more sessions to the topic on a regular basis.

SUGGESTIONS FOR IMPROVING PUBLIC CONFIDENCE

The following suggestions to improve public confidence in educational leaders and in the schools have been adapted from the AASA presentation. The presentation was made by John Wherry, then executive director of the National School Public Relations Association, and Don Bagin, who was president of that organization.[2]

DO AN EFFECTIVE JOB, AND LET PEOPLE KNOW ABOUT THE SUCCESSES AND CHALLENGES

To increase the chances of doing an effective job in the public relations area, the initial step is to be sure that the schools themselves are doing an effective job. An image reflects that which is: No public relations program can make a bad school look good for very long. On the other hand, an early step in building confidence in our schools is to let everyone know what the schools are doing well, what the problems are, and what's being done to solve the problems.

The public schools have made major contributions to the country; although the schools are far from perfect, more should be done to promote their accomplishments. (Pollster George Gallup long suggested that one of the biggest challenges facing educators was the need to let people know about the fine things being done in the schools.)[3] Educational historian Ralph Tyler has estimated that 85 percent of the country's adult population was illiterate when the Declaration of Independence was signed. In 1900, 12 percent of the country's population could neither read nor write a simple sentence in English. Today, it is estimated that only a small percentage of the adult population is completely illiterate.

In addition to announcing successes, school officials must be ready to admit problems. The more educated, better-informed, and engaged populace that pays for the schools will not be fooled for very long by school officials who attempt to cover up problems. Constituents don't expect leaders to be perfect; they do expect them to recognize challenges and explain what's being done to meet them. A leader who admits that mistakes can occasionally be made encourages staff members to assume risks to try programs that will improve the schools. The key

is to establish a spirit of honesty and sincerity so the staff and community believe the information being shared.

The quest for excellence must be communicated to all staff members and the public. Only when people realize that school leaders are serious about this commitment will they have more confidence in the people running the schools. As more people consider the possibility of tax credits and vouchers, the private and parochial school choices loom as greater competition for public schools. School leaders must find ways to identify and overcome problems such as ineffective teachers and administrators.

If a commitment to excellence is not made, public schools will most likely find their image suffering even more with the emergence of school choice options. Parents who value education will avoid sending their children to a school where "fifth grade is the bad year because all three teachers should have been dismissed," especially if those parents have a child entering fifth grade.

Related to the question of quality is that of quantity. Just how much can the schools be expected to do? Should the public schools be expected to offer vocational training? Should they teach students how to brush their teeth and drive cars? One of the most serious challenges facing educational leaders is to gain a community consensus on what the expectations are for the schools. Only then can school leaders be evaluated on how well the schools are doing.

THE PUBLIC'S CONCERN ABOUT DISCIPLINE MUST BE TAKEN SERIOUSLY

Year after year, the public's concern about public school discipline is rated at or near the top of the list by the Gallup survey of public attitudes toward public schools. Whether the problem is real or perceived, it exists in the minds of the people who will help determine how much support public education receives. The 2005 Phi Delta Kappa/Gallup poll identified "lack of discipline, more control" among the issues that public schools must deal with.

Discipline means different things to different people, but some agreement on a definition exists. A series of regional meetings with parents, students, and educators sponsored by the Missouri Department of Education identified the following as the biggest discipline problems: disruptive classroom behavior, student disrespect for authority, student apathy toward learning, and absenteeism and class cutting.

The importance of the discipline factor in school selection was underlined in a study done in Gloucester County, New Jersey, a county used by the Gallup organization as representative of the country. The telephone study asked 100 parents who had always sent their children to public schools a series of questions about schools. Parents were asked whether they would continue to send their children to public schools if tax relief were provided, such as a voucher or tax credit. Only 41 percent said they would continue to send their children to public schools. When asked why, the number one reason given was "discipline."

To address the perception of discipline and its related safety and security issues, a program that involves parents, students, and staff should be developed to build a clear code. There are many examples of strong discipline policies being supported and even cheered by parents and communities. Programs that encourage more people to visit the schools during the learning day can be a giant step in reducing misperceptions about discipline.

SCHOOL LEADERS MUST PERSONALIZE THE SCHOOLS MORE TO ENHANCE THE COMFORT OF THOSE BEING SERVED

People make decisions on key purchases based on their personal experiences with the product, whether it be the choice of an automobile, a hotel, or a bank. How people feel about their schools is usually dictated in the same way. It's not so much the newspaper article or the newsletter story as it is the way a secretary responds to a question, or a teacher returns a phone call, or a guidance counselor or principal helps a student who is confused about an important decision.

Teachers who phone students' parents with positive news, principals who invite small groups of parents for lunch, and secretaries and custodians who greet all visitors as if they were board members do much to make people feel good about their schools. Because so few school employees have taken a course on how to deal with the public, an

in-service program to share ideas would help. Such a program is ideal in that it meets the challenge of appealing to all employees, inasmuch as everyone must communicate in some way with members of the community.

All employees must recognize their role in public relations. Studies show that people who acquire their information about the schools from board members and employees tend to support the schools more than people who get their information from other sources. One of the problems is that each entity (board members, administrators, and teachers) feels that the job of building public confidence in the schools belongs to another group. Teachers claim it's the board's job, the board says administrators should be doing it, and the administrators point to teachers as the people having the closest contact with parents. If all groups don't recognize the need to contribute in the public relations arena, the kind of confidence desired will never occur.

STAFF MORALE MUST BE IMPROVED

A major concern of board members and administrators often is staff morale. Earlier a major public relations concern was media relations, newsletter preparation, and community advisory committees. But board members and administrators realize that staff morale affects external relations. It has to be addressed.

One way to determine the level of morale is to ask this question: If you had an idea to improve the school where you work and it would cost nothing to implement, would you suggest it? Only between 20 and 40 percent of the 10,000 teachers and administrators surveyed in schools throughout the country said they would.[4]

Teachers and principals report that they don't suggest ideas anymore. When asked why, they note that the ideas are listened to, but that nothing new happens. With the current emphasis on computers and information dissemination, it must not be forgotten that the most precious part of a school is its staff. People need to be asked their opinions, and they need to be told when they do a good job. Chapter 7 offers specific strategies that will help accomplish these goals. Community residents who hear various versions of an incident that occurred at a school tend to believe employees' versions more than other sources. It's vital therefore that employees be kept informed about school news, including impending decisions.

ALL SCHOOL OFFICIALS MUST USE AND INSIST THAT OTHERS USE COMFORTABLE WORDS

Public confidence in school leaders cannot be built with words that people don't understand. The educator who addresses the PTA or sends a memo to thousands of parents does little to enhance the school's image with jargon and multisyllabic words that the audience won't understand. Other chapters present specific ways to avoid the problem. Suffice it to say here that the utilization of maximal learning stations won't necessarily optimize the SAT scores of the multiethnic, multitrack pubescent adolescents permeating the district.

EDUCATORS MUST STOP FIGHTING AMONG THEMSELVES AND START BUILDING COALITIONS

The former, almost guaranteed, support of parents is no longer sufficient to gain what educators think they and education deserve. Because the percentage of parents who have children in grades K–12 in the public schools is not a majority, the traditional support base has been eroded. Therefore, educators must work together to gain public and legislative confidence and support.

This working together has many implications; some will require that association leaders rethink their positions. A National School Boards Association president once asked that board members extend an olive branch to teachers. Many board members applauded; others disagreed. One teachers' association public relations director privately asked a friend of the board group: "What kind of trick is the olive branch?" It was no trick, but the question conveyed the lack of trust in the board–teacher relationship. As the public image of education comes under closer scrutiny, more and more teachers, administrators, and board members are becoming aware of the need to work together.Teachers must work with other teachers, administrators, board members, parent support groups, and the business community to build the kind of coalition that will be listened to by legislators.

WORKING WITH THE BUSINESS COMMUNITY IS ESSENTIAL TO ATTRACT NEEDED SUPPORT

As the number of parents with children in school decreases, school officials must seek other support bases. One excellent source is the business community, which is more interested in the schools' success than a Business–Education Day might indicate. For too many years educators have hesitated to work closely with the business community, perhaps fearing that businesspeople would encroach on educators' decision making. Educators have much in common with business leaders. Both have suffered a loss of public confidence, both desire good relationships with the community, both want graduates with solid skills, and both have children and grandchildren attending the public schools.

The National School Public Relations Association has adopted a set of beliefs for building trust and success in schools and schools systems. Among these beliefs are school public relations:

- Strives to build consensus and reach common ground.
- Develops two-way, meaningful trusting relationships with all audiences.
- Enables education to function at its best by bringing schools and communities together.[5]

EVERY EFFORT MUST BE MADE TO INVOLVE NONPARENTS IN THE SCHOOLS

As fewer people have children in the schools, it becomes necessary to rethink the goals and responsibilities of the schools. If the schools wish to be blessed with support from the community, their leaders will have to focus on services and offerings that appeal to other than those who are directly benefiting from the K–12 programs. Two workable ways to enlist the support of nonparents are through community education and volunteer programs. Both of these programs prompt people to visit their schools and to get involved with the schools. These approaches allow us to start thinking about public education as a K–70 program instead of a K–12 program.

Citizens who have been in their schools for whatever reason consistently have more positive attitudes about those schools. Therefore, any program that fosters school visits or school use is a plus in terms of building confidence in school leaders.

THE COMMUNICATIONS PROGRAM MUST BE A TWO-WAY PROCESS

Acquiring feedback allows school officials to know how the community or staff will react to a decision. It is appreciably easier to lead a school district when the thoughts, aspirations, and commitments of the leaders are known. Communication for many years was equated with school officials telling others about the schools. In recent years, enlightened school leaders stressed the listening end of the communication process.

When people are asked their opinion, they feel better about the person who asks for it, especially if it's made clear that the opinion will be considered. Whether it's using the key communicators, conducting surveys, or some other method recommended in Chapter 3 the need for feedback is vital.

NEED FOR A COMMUNICATION PLAN

A plan must be developed for community relations or little will happen. Board members and administrators can commiserate for a long time about the need for a public relations program, but it won't happen unless someone develops a plan and makes a commitment. The superintendent, or someone delegated by the superintendent, must be given the time and resources to develop a sound communications program. Some school districts, in an effort to emphasize the importance of the topic, have committed a year to in-service programs for all staff members to improve communication within the district. If building confidence is important, then that importance must be demonstrated with commitment. If the commitment is not made, chances are that little will happen, and different education factions will be able to look back and say, "We should have made the commitment."

For quite a while most experts and textbooks in school–community relations have suggested that the prime reason for communicating more effectively with the staff and community is to build confidence in the school. There's nothing wrong with that. This confidence is very productive.

Yet some people tend to forget a vital catalyst for the communications undertaking: to help people

learn better. This must be remembered. When schools embark on an effective communications program, support comes more easily when the people paying the bill recognize that communications is a key component of better learning.

This means that the public relations effort should entail dealing with people more than dealing with things. This will indeed build confidence and gain support of parents and others. More importantly, through involving people in the schools and in their children's learning, it will create a better learning atmosphere and encourage students to learn.

Albert E. Holliday, a long-time advocate for effective public relations for schools, is a proponent of the following:

> Building support, public relations and financial, is essential for the operation of public schools. But it is not, and probably was never meant to be, the prime or sole function of school public relations.
>
> Education must be viewed in terms of a school–community setting, which includes students and teachers, administrators, support staff, board members, parents and other citizens.
>
> Whether a school system is excellent or mediocre depends on how those people work together—how they communicate, relate, are involved, participate and share. A public/community relations program is aimed at focusing on the relationships of all those people, with an overall goal of improving student achievement.[6]

Holliday defines school and public or community relations as a "function on all levels of a school system, established as a program to improve and maintain optimal levels of student achievement, and to build and maintain public support."

The function consists of communication with, and involvement of, internal and external publics in the school system. A series of processes and activities, the program is designed to

1. Promote a positive and challenging school climate in which student achievement and staff productivity are fostered.
2. Encourage maximum involvement of parents, at home and in school, in their children's educational development.
3. Involve citizens in cooperative learning practices, partnerships, and other means to make full use of human and other learning resources in the community.
4. Build public knowledge of the purposes, successes, and needs of the school system, leading to public understanding and support.

As seen in the definition, the two main purposes of such a program are to foster student achievement (through establishment of a positive school climate and parent and citizen involvement) and to build citizen knowledge and understanding leading to financial support.

To gain support for schools, more educators also are adopting marketing communication techniques for their schools and program. A number of techniques and ideas, all aimed at building public confidence, have been developed in recent years. One of the most attention-getting has been using the marketing concept to sell the school's story to the public. William Banach and the Macomb Intermediate School District in Michigan have used marketing techniques traditionally employed by companies to sell soap, cars, and other products. In essence, such programs often identify the audiences to be reached and define how the public schools can best meet the needs of those audiences with the schools' services. The Macomb program, for example, offered bumper stickers, refrigerator magnets, pencils, and other attention-grabbers to keep the school story in front of large numbers of people. Some educators believe that this approach will reap results in the increasingly competitive environment in which schools now operate; others have been slower to accept such promotional techniques.

Whatever the feeling about marketing communication and promotion, most educators are becoming increasingly cognizant of the need to employ more community relations techniques than they are now using. This book, therefore, is organized to help the reader understand school–community relations and to employ successful communication techniques. The first part outlines the essentials of a

school–community relations program. The second part explains the communication process and ways to communicate with the public as well as how to build sound and constructive relationships during special events. The third part features the various tools used to communicate to various audiences. And the last part presents an assessment and evaluation of the results of a community relations program.

Questions

1. Explain how current national issues in education can work to erode public confidence in a local school district—and how school communication efforts might be used to preserve or boost confidence in local schools.
2. Why is it important to have a formal communication plan for a school district overall?
3. When might marketing communication techniques be appropriate for use in school communication efforts? When might marketing communications be inappropriate for use in school communication efforts?

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories & Practices That Make a Difference.* Dubuque, IA: Kendal/Hunt, 2006.

Bagin, Rich, *Making Parent Communication Effective and Easy.* Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2006.

Botan, Carl H., and Vincent Hazleton, Jr., editors. *Public Relations Theory.* Hillsdale, NJ: Erlbaum, 2006.

School Public Relations: Building Confidence in Education, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics,* 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2009.

Endnotes

1. Don Bagin, Rowan University, Glassboro, NJ.
2. The National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org) assists school officials with their communications and community relations efforts. It is located at 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855.
3. George Gallup, addressing the Rowan University Chapter of Phi Delta Kappa.
4. Surveys conducted by Don Bagin and Donald R. Gallagher, Rowan University.
5. National School Public Relations Association, "NSPRA Beliefs," *2009 Network Directory Issue* (January 2009), p. 3.
6. Albert E. Holliday, "In Search of an Answer: What Is School Public Relations?" *Journal of Educational Public Relations* 11 (2nd Quarter 1988), p. 12. Reprinted by permission.

Chapter

2

Public Character of the School

The development of sound and constructive relationships between the school and the community is a necessary and natural function of a publicly supported institution in a democratic society. This position arises from a consideration of the public character of the school and the legal framework within which it operates. It is also supported by the role of public opinion in the shaping of educational policies and practices. Even though the American way of life is characterized by constant change, these considerations nevertheless form the basis of the decision-making process in the management of public schools, and they exercise an influence on the nature and direction of change.

The position thus established is reflected in the working definition of school and community relations that is presented in this chapter. The definition reiterates the belief that sound and constructive relationships must be developed and maintained with the community by those who are responsible for public education if the school is to meet its obligations to the cause, continuance, and preservation of democracy.

PUBLIC CHARACTER OF THE SCHOOL

Despite the intervention of the federal government in local and state educational affairs, it is evident in the legal structure of the state school system and in the laws regulating its operation that the power to manage schools actually resides in the people. At the state level, the people have the right to support or oppose legislation affecting the education of children, to work for the modification and repeal of existing laws, and to decide at the polls who shall represent them in the legislature.

This right is similar at the local level, where fellow citizens are elected to membership on the board of education and are expected to carry out the popular will. To ensure the public character of the board of education, state law prescribes that parents and citizens shall have the right to be heard at a regular meeting of the board or to file in writing their ideas regarding educational objectives, policies, and programs. Regular meetings must be open to the public, and no vote can be taken on school business in private by the board. The minutes of its meetings and records of transactions are public property and may be inspected at any time on request by a citizen. The failure of a school board and its individual members to abide by these and

From Chapter 2 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

other regulations set forth in the law may result in dismissal of the board and prosecution of the members for misconduct in office.

This concept emphasizes the public character of the school and that the educational enterprise is one of shared ownership. Citizens in the community hold the status of part owners in the schools. They own stock, so to speak, in the schools by virtue of the fact that it is their taxes that support the schools. The dividends received are formal education for themselves and their children and the indirect benefits that flow to society from a literate and well-prepared population in such fields as art, science, industry, and agriculture.

Shared ownership carries with it responsibility on the part of citizens as well as those who administer the schools. People must be supplied with accurate and adequate information about the school system if they are to form intelligent opinions and to transmit their thinking to school officials. And to participate as partners in helping the school meet individual and societal needs, they must have access to pertinent facts and ideas and be able to discuss them rationally among themselves and with those who manage the schools.

What citizens feel and how they act influence the selection of school board members, the fixing of tax rates, the passage of bond issues, the nature of curricular offerings, the provision for special services, and the like. And prevailing attitudes and opinions not only establish the limits of institutional functioning but also shape and guide the operation of policies and practices within the school system.

It is essential to the management of the school that those who are charged with the responsibility for directing its affairs understand the role of public attitudes in a democracy and their effect on the education of children.

When the public becomes apathetic toward the schools, the administration needs to detect it and involve the public more. In so doing, the school management must alert the public to its role in the schools in a democracy. In turn, the administration can energize the public's attitude and interest in the schools.

If this public apathy continues, it can spill over to the school management. The quality of education deteriorates. Frustration sets in. The citizens lose faith in the schools. Cries go up for competition in the form of independently operated, public-funded schools, such as charter schools. Or even more dramatic, the state takes over the schools entirely. Local control disappears.

The school administrative team need not be expert on the subject, but certainly one or more of its members should possess practical insight and understanding of what public attitudes and opinions mean and why people think and feel as they do. Without this knowledge it is difficult to plan strategies affecting school–community relations.

THE MEANING OF PUBLIC OPINION

Public attitudes may be viewed as predispositions, thoughts, or feelings of persons toward something, such as an issue or a policy question that has not yet come into sharp focus. For example, prior to the real onset of the space race there were attitudes toward federal aid to education, instructional changes in the curriculum, foreign language teaching, and science offerings in elementary and secondary schools. These attitudes were suddenly fused into public opinion upon the specific question of strengthening the educational program when the Soviets put the first satellite into space, and swift action was taken to explore ways and means for turning out a better educational product and to enact appropriate legislation for underwriting essential changes.

Other characteristics are also ascribed to attitudes, the most common being their emotional tone. Attitudes are always accompanied by some positive or negative feeling, and the nature and intensity of this feeling influence an individual's perception of any new situation he or she encounters. For example, a beginning teacher who has had a series of unpleasant experiences with the principal will probably develop a dislike for principals in general despite the fact that another one under whom he or she is now working is sincere and thoughtful. To the teacher this new principal has an ulterior motive of personal gain in acting decently. Such an attitude may persist for a long time, depending on the intensity of the negative feeling and the frequency of constructive acts on the part of the second principal. It is known that attitudes

are the result of forces in each individual's environment, such as his or her physical needs, social needs, emotions, perceptions, motivations, and experiences, and that these in turn influence the individual's behavior. Interestingly enough, opinions are defined in a similar way.

Social scientists have not arrived at a standard definition of *attitudes* or *opinions*. Therefore, they are often used interchangeably. But it may be worthwhile to review some of the meanings connected with the term *public opinion*. Occasionally, it is defined as any widespread belief or consensus arrived at by members of one or more groups, or as prevailing customs and traditions handed down by previous generations. The term is also frequently associated with the process of developing opinion instead of opinion itself, with fine distinctions drawn between judgments reached by logical methods of reasoning and judgments growing out of emotional states of mind. Attention may likewise be given to the quality of the opinions expressed or to the intensity of the opinions. No doubt these and other variations in the meaning of the term have a place in a detailed study and analysis of public opinion, but they are hardly suitable to guide the work of laypersons and professional school officials. As a working rule, we should think of public opinion as a collection of individual viewpoints held more or less in common by members of a group regarding some person, condition, or proposal. Generally, these points of view concern matters that are controversial or capable of causing controversy.

SCHOOL–COMMUNITY RELATIONS

In view of its background and status in U.S. society, the school has a definite responsibility to furnish taxpayers and parents with complete and accurate information regarding its needs and activities and to develop educational policies and programs that reflect popular interests and desires. How to implement this responsibility effectively is the problem of school–community relations.

The History

While the necessity for keeping the public informed is as old as the school itself, nevertheless it was not until the beginning of the 1920s that a formal approach was made. This began with studies of publicity, especially newspaper publicity, and of the value such publicity had in keeping the school before the people and in acquainting them with what it was doing. During this period at least three books were published on the subject of school publicity,[1] as well as a scattering of articles in professional journals.

Within a few years the term *publicity* was replaced with the phrase *school public relations*, for at least two reasons. First, it was felt that the word *publicity* carried both positive and negative connotations. And second, the realization developed that a more inclusive concept than publicity was necessary for telling the story more fully and for reaching a wider audience. In the mid-1920s, Moehlman came out with the first book in educational administration dealing with school public relations. He defined public school relations as an "organized factual informational service for the purpose of keeping the public informed of its educational program."[2] The book included chapters on public relations policy, the responsibilities of personnel, and the use of such media as newspapers, house organs, annual reports, school newspapers, and oral and written communications with parents. Attention was also given to the importance of social contacts, parent–teacher associations, school buildings, and appraisal of results.

These pioneering efforts were followed eleven years later with another book by Moehlman setting forth the doctrine of "social interpretation." According to this doctrine, "Social interpretation may be considered as the activity whereby the institution is made aware of community conditions and needs and the factual information service whereby the people are kept continuously informed of the purpose, value, conditions, and needs of their educational program."[3] In other words, it is a two-way system of communication through which the community is translated to the school and the school to the community.

The objectives of a program in social interpretation, as set forth by Moehlman, are as follows: "The ultimate objective is to develop continuing public consciousness of the importance of educational process in a democratic social organization, to establish confidence in the functioning institution, to furnish adequate means to maintain its efficient operation, and to

improve the partnership concept through active parental participation."[4]

School public relations at present represents an extension of the interpretative point of view. This extension takes into account a change in basic terminology, increased emphasis on communication, and greater citizen involvement and participation in the educational decision-making process. There is a movement now to eliminate the term *public relations* and to use instead the phrase *school–community relations* because the latter is more in keeping with current concepts concerning the involvement and participation of citizens in the educational decision-making process and is less subject to association with undesirable practices in promotion and persuasion for selfish ends.

It has been increasingly evident that the school in a dynamic, changing social order cannot adapt itself to change or make the necessary improvements in its program without involving citizens in its affairs. As pointed out by Sumption and Engstrom, "There must be a structured, systematic, and active participation on the part of the people of the community in the educational planning, policy making, problem solving, and evaluation of the school."[5] Through such involvement, citizens come to know the school firsthand. They are able to raise questions, obtain information, express ideas, consider proposals, and take positions on critical issues. They become part of the decision-making process that keeps up with social change and brings about educational change.

Citizen involvement ensures a better understanding of what the community wants for its children now and in the future. It likewise provides better opportunities for closer cooperation with local governmental agencies and community organizations that have an interest in education and public welfare. And, generally, it helps to bring about increased use of community resources in the educational program, thereby integrating further the school and community.

Recent Definitions

Before stating what is meant by *school–community relations,* it might be well to examine some definitions of *public relations.*

Rex Harlow, the founder of the organization that eventually became the Public Relations Society of America (PRSA), discovered over 500 definitions of *public relations* from many sources. From all these he composed an 86-word definition that Grunig and Hunt reduced to "the management of communication between an organization and its publics."[6]

Cutlip, Center, and Broom define *public relations* this way:

> Public relations is the management function that establishes and maintains mutually beneficial relationships between an organization and the publics on whom its success or failure depends.[7]

Wilcox and Cameron cite this definition of *public relations* from the 1978 World Assembly of Public Relations, which was endorsed by 34 national public relations organizations:

> Public relations practice is the art and social science of analyzing trends, predicting their consequences, counseling organization leaders, and implementing planned programs of action which serve both the organization's and the public's interest.[8]

The PRSA definition is "Public relations helps an organization and its publics to adapt mutually to each other."[9]

Often, many people consider that each of these activities—publicity, public information, promotion, and media relations—are exclusively public relations. Many practitioners, though, believe these activities are part of, but not exclusively, public relations. Being one-way communications, they lack the public relations need to include two-way communications as an essential activity.

Leaders in school–community relations and the National School Public Relations Association use parallel concepts in defining school–community relations.

The National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA) also substitutes *educational* for *school* in its definition:

> Educational public relations is a planned, systematic management function, designed to help improve the programs and services of an educational organization. It relies on a

> comprehensive, two-way communication process involving both internal and external publics with the goal of stimulating better understanding of the role, objectives, accomplishments, and needs of the organization.
>
> Educational public relations programs assist in interpreting public attitudes, identify and help shape policies and procedures in the public interest, and carry on involvement and information activities which earn public support and understanding.[10]

Holliday defines school public–community relations as "a systematic function on all levels of a school system, established as a program to improve and maintain optimal levels of student achievement, and to build public support."[11] He contends that the two main purposes of a school public–community relations program are to foster student achievement (through the establishment of a positive school climate, and parent and citizen involvement) and to build citizen knowledge and understanding leading to financial support.

In the first edition of this book, Kindred defined it as

> a process of communication between the school and the community for the purpose of increasing citizen understanding of educational needs and practices and encouraging intelligent citizen interest and cooperation in the work of improving the school.[12]

We now include two-way communication in this shorter definition: Educational public relations is management's systematic, continuous, two-way, honest communication between an educational organization and its publics.

Though other definitions might be quoted as a means of bringing out the various shades of meaning associated with the term *public relations*, the position taken in this text is that sound and constructive relationships between the school and the community are the outcomes of a dynamic process that combines the following ideas and practices:

- A way of life expressed daily by staff members in their personal relations with colleagues, pupils, parents, and people in the community
- A planned and continuing series of activities for communicating with both internal and external publics concerning the purposes, needs, programs, and accomplishments of the school
- A planned and continuing series of activities for determining what citizens think of the schools and the aspirations they hold for the education of their children
- The active involvement of citizens in the decision-making process of the school and school-initiated community outreach programs so that essential improvements may be made in the educational program and adjustments brought about to meet the climate of social change.
- Perhaps another way of expressing the same concepts is to say that sound and constructive relations between the school and community are achieved through a process of exchanging information, ideas, and viewpoints out of which common understandings are developed and decisions are made concerning essential improvements in the educational program and adjustments to the climate of social change.

New on the public relations scene, because of numerous corporate scandals in the beginning of this century, are the words *reputation management.* Seitel[13] notes that after the scandals, public relation firms were quick to develop reputation management practices that would enhance corporate credibility. He goes on to define reputation management as *the ability to link credibility to business goals to increase advocacy, support, and increase profits.*

It should be noted that previous definitions of public relations did not include "honest communications" or "organizational credibility" because the authors assumed these characteristics already existed in the organization.

TRADITIONAL PUBLIC RELATIONS MODELS

Grunig and Hunt[14] developed four models of public relations: *press agentry–publicity, public information, two-way asymmetric,* and *two-way symmetric.* Each differs in the purpose and nature of communication.

Press agentry–publicity is one-way communication with propaganda as its purpose. The purpose of *public information*, also one-way, is the dissemination of truthful information. Scientific persuasion is the purpose of the *two-way asymmetric* model, with mutual understanding being the intent of the *two-way symmetric* model. In the *two-way asymmetric* model, the communicator gets feedback from the public and then applies the latest communication and persuasion theories to persuade the public to accept the organization's point of view. On the other hand, in the *two-way symmetric* model, the communicator is a go-between for the organization and its public, trying through all methods of communication to have each side understand each other's point of view. If persuasion takes place either way, it's because of information flowing both ways between the organization and the public.

Grunig and Hunt estimate that 15 percent of the organizations practice press agentry–publicity, 50 percent public information, 20 percent two-way asymmetric, and 15 percent two-way symmetric. It would appear that many school districts use primarily the public information model, all one-way. Instead, they should be practicing the two-way symmetric model that develops mutual understanding with their communities.

Planned Relationships

Entirely too many programs for the development of sound and constructive school–community relations are sporadic in nature, improperly conceived, poorly planned, and crudely executed. They defeat their own purpose. If a school system wishes to engage in a comprehensive and continuing program of school–community relations, then it must be willing to plan how its character, needs, and services may be interpreted best to the people, how their wishes and aspirations may be interpreted best to the school, and how citizen involvement may be included in the task of educational improvement and institutional adjustment to social change.

Questions

1. Some critics of school public relations might argue that such efforts amount to no more than "spin" or "covering up" problems in schools. In defending investments in school communication efforts, what points would you make to show how school public relations is an important investment that serves students as well as their schools and communities?
2. Compare the statements on public relations by the Public Relations Society of America with those made by the National School Public Relations Association. How does public relations practice in general compare with its practice in schools?
3. Which of Grunig and Hunt's models of public relations should schools employ to be effective at supporting student and school success? Why might some of their models be more effective than others for school public relations planners and educational leaders?
4. What would you say to a person who wants to know the relationship between public opinion and public relations—and why is understanding public opinion essential for school leadership success?

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories and Practices That Make a Difference*. Dubuque, IA: Kendal/Hunt, 2006.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Groom, *Effective Public Relations*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2008.

Ewen, Stuart, *PR! A Social History of Spin*. New York: Basic Books, 1996.

Newsom, Doug, Judy Vanslyke Turk, and Dean Kruckeberg, *This Is PR: The Realities of Public Relations*, 10th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2009.

Oskamp, Stuart, *Attitudes and Opinions*, 3rd ed. New York: Erlbaum., 2004.

Sergiovanni, Thomas J., Martin Burlingame, Fred S. Coombs, and Paul W. Thurston, *Educational Governance and Administration*, 6th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2008.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics*, 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2009.

Endnotes

1. Rollo George Reynolds, *Newspaper Publicity for the Public Schools* (New York: A. G. Seiler, 1922); Clyde R. Miller and Fred Charles, *Publicity and the Public Schools* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1924); and Harlan Cameron Hines and Robinson G. Jones, *Public School Publicity* (New York: Macmillan, 1923).
2. Arthur B. Moehlman, *Public School Relations* (Chicago: Rand McNally, 1927), p. 4.
3. Arthur B. Moehlman, *Social Interpretation* (New York: Appleton-Century, 1938), p. 104.
4. Ibid., p. 106.
5. Merle R. Sumption and Yvonne Engstrom, *School Community Relations: A New Approach* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1966), p. xi.
6. James E. Grunig and Todd Hunt, *Managing Public Relations* (New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1984), p. 7, as cited in Todd Hunt and James E. Grunig, *Public Relations Techniques* (Fort Worth, TX: Harcourt Brace College, 1994), p. 6.
7. Scott M. Cutlip, Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Broom, *Effective Public Relations*, 8th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2000), p. 6.
8. Dennis L. Wilcox and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics*, 8th ed. (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2006), p. 6.
9. PRSA Official Statement on Public Relations, retrieved from http://www.prsa.org/AboutPRSA/Documents/Official%20Statement%20on% 20Public%20Relations.pdf, October 2009.
10. *Raising the Bar for School PR: New Standards for the School Public Relations Profession* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2002), p. 1, retrieved from http://www.nspra.org/files/docs/StandardsBooklet.pdf, October 2009.
11. Albert E. Holliday, "In Search of an Answer: What Is School Public Relations?" *Journal of Educational Public Relations* 11 (2nd Quarter 1988), p. 12, and personal interview, January 28, 2003.
12. Leslie W. Kindred, *School Public Relations* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1957), p. 16.
13. Fraser P. Seitel, "What Is Reputation Management?" *O'Dwyer's PR Services Report*, August 2002, p. 31.
14. James E. Grunig and Todd Hunt, *Managing Public Relations* (New York: Rinehart and Winston, 1984), pp. 21–23. Also see Todd Hunt and James E. Grunig, *Public Relations Techniques* (Fort Worth, TX: Harcourt Brace College Publishers, 1994), p. 9.

Chapter 3

Understanding the Community

Before attempting any communication, school administrators must study the intended audience for the message. When trying to communicate with a diverse community, it's imperative that school officials know the various components of the community.

Collecting information about the makeup of the community is a major first step toward a communications program. This enables administrators to plan intelligently and reduce guesswork. When gathering information about the community, the following topics should be considered:

- The nature of the power structure and the way decisions are made in the community
- The identification of the media and long-term challenges that need attention
- The expectations of citizens regarding education
- Situations to be avoided based on the history of conflict in the community
- Identification of individuals and groups who are friendly or unfriendly toward education
- Opportunities and ways to effect better cooperative relations with various publics
- The identification of gaps that need to be filled to produce more public understanding of educational policies and programs
- The channels through which public opinion is built in the community
- Changes that are occurring in patterns of community life
- The identification of leaders and those who influence leaders in the community
- A listing of the types of organizations and social agencies in the community

To comprehend all of these factors, the study of the community should be directed at its sociological characteristics, the nature and influence of its power structure, and the way in which people think and feel about education and the program provided by the district. And since the community is constantly changing, continuing studies are necessary to keep knowledge current.

Adama Science & Technology University Library

SOCIOLOGICAL INVENTORY

To plan an effective program, the district needs to know about the people who make up the community. The more that is known about them, the better the chances are of designing a program that will achieve its objectives. Therefore, it's recommended that school districts undertake a sociological inventory of their communities. But—and this

From Chapter 3 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

is a major *but*—those inventories should not be so complex, time expensive, and costly that by the time they're done people don't want to take the time to implement the findings. Too often some educators get wrapped up in the process and place that completed study on a shelf to do little more than wait for its successor. To conduct such a study and not interpret the findings and use the results would be a waste of time and money.

Choosing which items to include in such a study can help ensure the study's success. Some possible topics to include are the following: customs and traditions, historical background, material and human resources, age and gender distribution, educational achievement, organizations and groups, political structure, leadership, power alignments, religious affiliations, housing, racial and ethnic composition, economic life, transportation, communication, standards of living, health, and recreation. It would be extremely time consuming and expensive to include all of the topics. To ensure the effectiveness of the study, school officials should choose the most important categories, focus on them, gather the information in a relatively short period of time, and then implement the study.

Among the topics that should get serious consideration are customs and traditions, population characteristics, existing communication channels, community groups, leadership, economic conditions, political structure, social tensions, and previous community efforts in the area.

Customs and Traditions

Customs and traditions are the common ideas, attitudes, and habits of people. They may be referred to as folkways, mores, or lifestyles. Significant in regulating conduct and in predicting behavior, they likewise exert an influence in the shaping of social action and in the determination of services rendered by community agencies.

Lifestyle differences found among community groups arise from the impact of race, religion, nationality background, economics, politics, and social–class structure. Thus individuals who live in an urban ghetto and share similar ethnic characteristics may differ sharply in their way of life, their values, their beliefs, and their habits from individuals who reside in a semirural community. Similar differences in lifestyle can be found among groups who reside in various geographic sections that make up a metropolitan area. One may consist of a group having a predominantly Italian background, another a Polish background, and a third a microcosm of the entire population.

The problem in this part of the sociological inventory is that of identifying and defining the customs of groups in the community. This information is important to the school in guiding its relations with pupils, parents, and others. Nothing evokes a quicker reaction from parents and citizens than the adoption of policies and practices that run counter to their established attitudes, beliefs, and habits. This has been evident on many occasions when new blocks of subject matter, introduced into the curriculum, caused pupils to think or act contrary to the convictions held by parents and relatives. Equally strong reactions are likely if pupils are retained after school on days that have been set aside for religious instruction.

From another point of view, it is valuable to know how change takes place in group patterns of thought and action. What are the circumstances and forces that produce orderly change? Studies indicate that safe and rapid change occurs during periods of emergency when the need to make adjustments is immediate. Alterations in the physical features of a community, like the construction of new highways, the improvement of housing, or the rezoning of land use, open the way for modifying social habits and customs. Significant changes are also possible when members of different groups are given opportunities to discuss and share in the finding of solutions to problems that have an effect on their ways of living.

A note of caution is in order here about stereotyping people and groups.

> Stereotyping is the process of assigning fixed labels or categories to things and people you encounter or, in the reverse of this process, placing things and people you encounter into fixed categories you have already established.[1]

We tend to do this with community groups such as senior citizens and young professionals. Not all senior citizens are against spending for education or

"old-fashioned" in their thinking. Nor do all young professionals aspire to send their children to private schools. Additionally, for example, not all members of a particular ethnic group, race, or religion hold the same attitudes, opinions, or voting patterns.

Population Characteristics

Population characteristics concerning educational attainment, age, sex, gainful occupation, race, creed, and nationality are important in developing an understanding of the community. Publications and services from the U.S. Census Bureau are helpful in getting population characteristics.

In looking at the educational attainments of the population, attention is directed to the years of formal schooling completed by adults. The amount of schooling may be classified as elementary, secondary, and college, unless the exact number of years is wanted. This information is useful in the preparation of printed materials. Vocabulary, style, and layout are fitted to the educational backgrounds of the audiences for whom they are intended. This information is also useful in estimating the best manner of transmitting ideas and factual information to the community so that attention and interest are generated. Another use of educational attainment information is constructing stratified samples of the population for purposes of opinion polling.

Age data should be broken down into convenient classifications and the implications carefully studied. For example, one community may expect an increase in school enrollments over the next five years, whereas another may just hold its own or suffer a loss. Age distribution may also suggest ideas concerning the vitality of the community. A fairly young adult population would certainly be more demanding of educational quality than a population having mostly middle-aged and older people. Similarly, the younger group would undoubtedly support better financing of the school program, while the older and more conservative groups would resist an increase in educational expenditures. Thus it is possible from age distribution to form working estimates of community reaction to various kinds of proposals.

In addition to educational achievement, age distribution and sex distribution are used as control factors in constructing stratified random samples of the population for purposes of opinion polling. Analysis of data regarding sex distribution may help to create a better understanding of the labor force and to determine the dominant sex in certain groups to whom appeals should be made.

Occupational information on gainfully employed adults may be organized according to the classification scheme[2] used in the U.S. census reports. These data are useful in checking population stability, changing occupational opportunities, distribution of occupational classes, and employment outside the community. Findings influence the selection of program activities. The participation of citizens is additionally considered.

The study of population characteristics should be rounded out with data about race, religion, and nationality. These cultural factors are important to gain an understanding of the community and some of the underlying causes of social tension and conflict. However, the meaning of the data may not always be clear unless the data are correlated with other information. It is well to treat the data statistically and to prepare summaries of the findings. These summaries should be used in the planning process, and copies of them should be distributed to key personnel within the system. At the same time, as much of the information as possible should be depicted on social base maps, with separate sections being blown up for use in individual attendance areas. Statistical summaries and social base maps often provide leads to the solution of everyday problems that are associated with school and community relations.

Communication Channels

Since the development of public opinion takes place through the exchange of ideas and information, it is necessary to know what communication channels are available in the community, how extensively they are used, and which ones are most effective for reaching different segments of the public. These questions are sometimes difficult to answer, but they can be worked out by persistent inquiry. It may be found that the public at large relies on radio, television, and daily newspapers for most of its information so that the

media are influential in shaping public opinion on some social issues. But the investigation may reveal that members of special groups in the community receive information from a variety of other sources. These may include publications of clubs and organizations, religious pulpits, labor union headquarters, volunteer fire companies, neighborhood newspapers, and foreign-language newspapers. On this last source of information, it is reasonable to assume that parents who speak and read a foreign language in the home may experience some difficulty in understanding report cards, school notices, and school news in local dailies. Where these conditions prevail, it would be advantageous for the school district to employ a number of bilingual home and school visitors, print school materials in more than one language, and prepare news releases for foreign-language periodicals and newspapers.

Personal, laptop, and hand-held computers have added many new channels and notably increased the speed of communications. Web sites and e-mail, and the proliferation of cell phones and text messaging, allow immediate, two-way communication.

An unexpected benefit of this new technology is the reduced need for paper and physical files. E-mail and text messages can deliver information to many people with the press of a button. This saves time and the need to make copies to send by regular mail. Messages also can be filed for quick access on school Web sites.

Community Groups

The American community is a composite of groups of people who are organized around special interests. Some of the groups have little or no influence on community affairs, but others have a great deal. Many are highly cooperative with those who hold similar interests, but a number are in conflict. The variety is tremendous, and the numbers vary considerably from community to community. Informal groups that come into existence because of some common belief or cause may assume many different forms and often blend into a formal type of organization. No sociological inventory is complete without knowing the purposes and programs of these groups and the influence they exert on public opinion.

Although cooperation with community groups having an educative function to perform should be encouraged fully, care must be taken to prevent their possible exploitation of pupils. To some, cooperation means the right to insist that the school approve their requests and modify its program to achieve the ends they are working for. To others, cooperation is nothing more than a guise for the privilege of disseminating propaganda in the classroom, promoting product sales and services, and conducting contests for the sake of publicity.

On the other hand, there are community organizations that dominate school politics but are not concerned primarily with educational matters. Composed of small business groups, property and homeowners' associations, and civic improvement leagues for the most part, they take practically no interest in such things as dropout rates, pupil standardized test scores, or the qualifications and selection of professional school personnel. Instead they are concerned about the impact of school policies on the community and take a strong interest in school costs, especially tax increases and bond proposals.

Other community organizations are those known as special interest groups. Many of these are vehemently opposed to each other; even so, they all converge on schools and pressure them to accept their philosophical positions and to alter educational programs. Often they move to change the school curriculum and to censor textbooks and library books. In any inventory of the community, school officials should attempt to identify special interest groups, become familiar with their philosophies, and perhaps anticipate and prepare for their contacts with the schools.

The question should be raised in the course of the survey about the extent to which individuals and families participate in the activities of organized groups, particularly those having to do with civic welfare. The amount of participation is usually a rather reliable index of community spirit. Research in sociology shows that individuals and families who are active in organized group programs likewise take a strong interest in what happens to their community and that those who are inactive or take part occasionally show only slight interest in needed community improvements.

Leadership

The next aspect of the inventory concerns the status of leadership in the community. Leadership is a relational concept implying two things: the influencing agent and the persons who are influenced. In other words, when persons are influenced to express organizational behavior on a matter of group concern, then leadership has occurred. Even though this concept may seem too simple and may represent a variance from others that could be cited, it nevertheless provides a feasible base for the examination of leadership and the leadership process.

At this point, it might be well to review a few findings from leadership studies without getting involved in too many details. Leadership is not related necessarily to social status or position in the community. An individual usually holds a position of leadership because his or her characteristics approximate the norms or goals of the group. It is equally true that leaders have traits that set them apart from their followers, but these traits may vary from one situation to another. However, all leaders usually have certain characteristics in common, such as special competence in dealing with a particular matter, wide acquaintanceship, easy accessibility, and contact with information sources outside of their immediate circle. Also, they are sometimes members of several community organizations and have more exposure than nonleaders to mass media. These characteristics are acknowledged as important, but they will not necessarily produce leadership. One school of thought sees leadership more as a consequence of an individual's occupying a certain kind of position in the social system, while another view holds that leadership is a situational matter requiring a particular issue and the exercise of influence on others.

In any event, the inventory task is that of identifying individuals who are recognized leaders of community groups and organizations and who have an influence on the attitudes and opinions of the members. Information should be obtained about their personal backgrounds, family connections, group affiliations, business interests, fraternal memberships, social and political convictions, special competencies, methods of operation, attitudes toward public education, and power in the community. Knowing their backgrounds is requisite to approaching group leaders on educational community problems and to determining their value in rendering particular services.

In working with leaders, it must be remembered that they are not always free to express their own ideas or to take independent action. Their behavior is dependent on the nature of their groups and the beliefs and opinions of the members. They are especially sensitive to questions concerning patriotism, private property, economics, religion, politics, and respected conventions. They realize that any radical departure from the feelings and convictions of their followers on matters like these could quickly undermine their own security. Leadership, however, is a reciprocal arrangement in that group members depend on leaders to initiate ideas and execute plans of action. The leaders sense what members think and want, and so they can direct thought along lines that meet with acceptance. In doing this they play a powerful role in the determination of the attitudes and opinions held by their followers.

The study of leadership should extend to neighborhoods in elementary- and secondary-school attendance areas. Every neighborhood contains a number of men and women who are consulted by neighbors and friends whenever questions come up about the school and its relations with pupils and parents. Their opinions and judgments are important determinants of grassroots public opinion. It is vital to locate these individuals and to involve them in school activities. They become channels through which the school may be interpreted better on a neighborhood basis, and they can do much to win loyalty and support for institutional policies and practices.

Economic Conditions

An analysis of economic conditions will provide essential data for obtaining a better understanding of the community. Though a great deal of information about the economics of the community is available in governmental and business reports, the concern here is to get an overview picture. The picture should be limited to generalized findings on agricultural, commercial, industrial, and transportation activities

and to employment, employment stability, and wage conditions. Related information on land use, property values, and tax rates should be consulted. Such information is usually available in the school system's business office, which plays an important part in the planning of the annual school district budget. If further data are wanted, attention should be directed to such items as production output, retail stores, levels of income, amount of savings, and standard of living. These details are relevant, as economic conditions determine in some measure the financial support available for public education. Moreover, these conditions affect public feelings toward the school and the means used for trying to bring about closer relations between the school and the community.

Political Structure

For generations the public school has tried to uphold the idea of keeping politics out of education and education out of politics. It has done this on the assumption that the school as a nonpartisan, classless, and social institution should remain apart from the political life of the community. As meritorious as this may seem on the surface, the truth is that the school cannot and should not separate itself from the political scene.

More money is spent for education at state and local levels than for any other single function of government. This fact alone makes education a thoroughly political enterprise. The support received is the product of political struggles for the tax dollar. These struggles involve the interaction of special-interest groups, political leaders, members of legislative bodies, boards and departments of education, opinion leaders, professional educators, and others. Such items as formulas for the distribution of state aid to local districts, the location, size, and cost of school buildings, and the assessment of property tax rates are frequently matters of political conflict and resolution.

If educational leaders are to cope successfully with the problem of getting adequate public support, they need to acquire a sophisticated understanding of political realities. They should seek this understanding through a somewhat detailed study of the political structure and the political process within the local area. It is important that they know who makes political decisions, how these decisions are carried out, and what political instruments are available. In some matters, a similar type of study should be extended to state and even national levels.

Social Tensions

Social tensions and conflicts exist wherever people work and live together. Some are normal expressions of human behavior; others are indications of weakness in the social structure. These tensions are evident in the refusal of neighbors to speak to one another, sectional conflicts over the location of new school buildings, claims that the board of education is favoring the better residential part of the district, interracial confrontations, the formation of cliques within parent–teacher associations, and discrimination against minority groups.

The causes of social tensions may be nothing more than personality clashes, misunderstandings, spite, or petty annoyances, but they may also be associated with economic rivalry, cultural differences, social class competition, racial discrimination, religious conflict, and other major aspects of society. These tensions, no matter what the causes, are disruptive to life in the community and detrimental to the kind of consensus often needed for school success.

In the planning of a school–community relations program, the school must be fully aware of the causes of tension and the number of issues involved. If school leaders are not knowledgeable about these conditions, the program is likely to move in directions that will increase the tensions and deepen the cleavages that exist. Its real job is engagement that leads to consensus building—that is, trying to harmonize differences between individuals and groups in the community when the tensions militate against the operation of the school and the attainment of its objectives.

Previous Community Efforts

A review of previous community efforts—let us say, over the last 10 to 15 years—supplies useful leads for designing the school–community relations program. In this respect, it is important to know what

kinds of projects were undertaken, who sponsored them, the degree to which they succeeded or failed, and the probable reasons for the outcome. With this information at hand, it is possible to determine such things as groups that offer promise of working well together, types of projects that have a fairly good chance of succeeding, errors made in the past that should be avoided, the pattern values held by the community regarding self-improvement, and the steps that need to be taken in setting the stage for future school and community undertakings.

Sources of Information

If the superintendent of schools and members of the administrative team will start the survey by listing questions for which data are wanted, they will be pleasantly surprised to discover how much they know about the community. The answers they provide can then be supplemented from other sources of information. A valuable and readily accessible source is school records. The entry blanks that children fill out when they first enroll in school contain information on family backgrounds. If used in accordance with the Family Educational Right to Privacy Act (Buckley Amendment), these records can provide important demographics of a specific segment of the community. When an annual or biennial census is taken in the district, the returns may supply similar information and other items not contained in the previous records. If supplemental data are wanted, they can easily be obtained by means of questionnaires administered to pupils. These sources furnish a good picture of home and family conditions in the community.

There are also numerous sources of printed materials that are available covering practically all aspects of the needed survey. City directories and telephone books contain the names of organized groups in the community. United States census statistics give detailed information on population. If the community is too small for inclusion in the printed tracts, the information can be secured by writing the U.S. Census Bureau or logging onto its Web site: www.census.gov. Most social agencies maintain records that are useful on a number of points. Excellent data are available from the local chamber of commerce. City, county, and state historical societies and planning commissions have documentary materials that throw light on the growth of the community. A review of newspaper files tells an interesting story of happenings, traditional observances, community efforts, group tensions and conflicts, and outstanding leaders. Publications by the U.S. Department of Commerce are helpful in understanding the economic life of the community, and the publications of governmental planning boards often prove to be highly valuable sources of broad information. Encyclopedias may be used for biographical information, religious customs, traditional observances, and related items. The minutes of boards of education meetings are sometimes a rich source of data on leaders, group programs, tensions, sectional conflicts, and relations with the community.

Additional information may be gathered through personal interviews with prominent residents of the community. These individuals know a good many of the intimate details of social life that are seldom publicized. Although the reliability of their statements may be open to question, they can be cross-checked when a sufficient amount of information has been collected by this method. The success of these interviews will depend on how well they are planned and conducted.

An inventory should be made of what the instructional and noninstructional staff members know. Those who have lived for some years in the community may prove to be valuable sources of information, as these individuals may be asked to fill out questionnaires designed especially for the survey. Comparison of tabulated replies may be used to test the accuracy and completeness of their information.

POWER STRUCTURES

After completing the sociological inventory, attention should be turned to the power structure or structures and decision making in the community. The concern here is that of understanding the essential characteristics of the power structures, the areas in which they operate, and the effects of power decisions on educational policy and the school program.

In every community there are people who exercise considerable control over decisions relating to

social, economic, and political matters. They obtain this power for a variety of reasons, such as family background, financial status, political leadership, social influence, property ownership, or labor connections. Mostly, they are members of informal groups that sustain themselves through mutual interests. And because these relationships can be described as a structured way of influencing community decisions, they are identified as power structures.

A *power structure* is an interrelationship among individuals with vested interests who have the ability or authority to control other people, to obtain their conformity, or to command their services. They are accorded this power because of their involvement in the decision-making process and the influence they have on decisional outcomes.

General Characteristics

If the school is to deal intelligently with the power structure or structures in the community, it should have some knowledge of the characteristics peculiar to this form of organization. Power structures are controlled by people of influence who try to shape community decisions in ways that either protect or advance their own interests or do both. Those who constitute the power structure may have few if any scruples about getting what they want. They are usually individuals with high intelligence and real leadership ability; otherwise it is doubtful if they would be able to command the status they enjoy.

Members of power structures are drawn from a wide cross section of community life. They may be professional people, business executives, bankers, labor leaders, land speculators, newspaper publishers, or industrialists. Many of them make it a point to be associated with influential clubs and organizations, where they have numerous contacts with others of their kind and where they can use the membership to spread their propaganda and to mobilize popular support for policies and projects they favor. They do this very quietly and without thrusting themselves into the limelight. Typically, they use a secondary corps of influential individuals to handle matters for them and to report on the nature of public sentiment toward their proposals and the effectiveness of the strategies being employed.

Interestingly enough, power structure members are sincerely concerned with the well-being of the community, especially from an economic point of view. They know that if the community moves ahead and enjoys prosperity, they stand to gain as well. It is not unusual for them to assist in bringing new industries into the community, to put pressure on politicians for modifications in the local tax structure, or to secure public funds for such items as urban redevelopment, a new highway, or a recreational area. However, when the public welfare on an issue does not coincide with their interests, they may take steps to swing the decision in their own favor.

Members of power structures find it advantageous to align themselves with political parties and holders of public offices. This allegiance gives them not only an opportunity to know what issues are under consideration but also an opportunity to influence the decisions that are made. For example, knowing some months in advance of public announcement that a superhighway will be constructed around the borders of the community enables them to purchase land at reasonable prices and to locate motels, stores, gas stations, and other businesses from which large profits can be reaped.

Power structures influence decision making through a system of rewards and punishments. Rewards are given for going along with the wishes of the power group. These rewards may take the form of advancements to positions of higher social or economic status in the community, such as chairing of prestigious committees, and membership in socially prominent clubs and organizations. Often such rewards consist of monetary gains through means of stock options, franchises, land investments, information on public contracts, and so on. On the other side, punishment is meted out to those who do not comply with the wishes of the power group, and this may take the form of a loss of social position, occupational status, and economic welfare. Punitive measures include such examples as the failure to renew a business contract, refusal of membership in a country club, transfer to a position of lesser importance, reduction in purchase of goods and services, or the stirring up of labor troubles. At times the retribution may be handled so cleverly that the victim is scarcely aware of what is happening.

Due to the lack of social responsibility on the part of power structure members, the community and its citizens pay a price for such individuals' influence on decision making. Instances are legion where sound social proposals have been defeated because they ran contrary to the interests of the power structure, whereas socially undesirable proposals were adopted because they represented the wishes of this group. But since power structures are an integral part of the American scene and do influence decisions affecting public education, the school must learn to live with them and to neutralize some of their actions when necessary.

Many researchers have studied community power structures, and some have studied their relationships with schools. Smith studied community power structures, school board types, and superintendent leadership styles in North Carolina. She found that compatible relationships occur between school board types and community power structures and between school board types and superintendent styles. In contrast, she found that a compatible relationship did not exist between community power structures and superintendent styles.[3]

The Schools and Power Structures

How can a board of education and its professional leaders handle incursions of power structures into school matters? As suggested earlier, an assessment must first be made of the structures existing in the community with reference to action of participants in decision making and issue resolution.

Many opportunities are available for acquiring the necessary information to assess the current state of understanding and support a school system holds among its key audiences. Among them are continual scrutiny of stories carried in local newspapers, simplified content analysis of public documents, informal conversations with friends and colleagues, utilization of informative contacts through involvement in civic organizations and social activities, attendance at meetings where proposals are under consideration, and long-term observation of selected individuals connected with the power structure. Consistent collection and study of such information enable the board and its professional leaders to understand what they are dealing with and to note shifts taking place in the district's power picture. That National School Public Relations Association, for example, includes such analyses as part of its research and assessment efforts when conducting school-communication audits for school systems.[4]

Power structure members often take a direct interest in some phase of school operation. On occasion they will try to block proposed changes in curricular policies and programs when these represent a possible departure from the established way of doing things. They will profess a concern for school welfare and progress and will support a millage increase or a bond issue, but usually their interest centers on the financial side of the school, where decisions about the spending of money can result in a profit to them. They may try to influence the selection of school building sites or the placement of contracts for new and remodeled construction, for transportation of pupils, and for insurance. They likewise want a share in the thousands of dollars that are spent annually for supplies, equipment, and textual materials.

Perhaps the best protection the school has against power structure pressures on financial and other decisions is a well-planned and carefully implemented program in school and community relations. By taking parents and other citizens into complete confidence about the institution, its policies, its needs, its operating procedures, its problems, and its accomplishments, the school can develop sufficiently intelligent and supportive public opinion to offset the influence of the power wielders.

It has been apparent that properly organized citizen and advisory committees and groups of concerned parents have had a constructive effect on power groups. They have forced them to support needed school improvements in some instances and to withdraw power plays in others. They have demonstrated clearly that an enlightened public can become a force in society that power dealers are reluctant to encounter.

MEASURING PUBLIC OPINION

Measuring attitudes and opinions of taxpayers, parents, teachers, and pupils regarding education and the local school system is a third avenue through

which community cooperation is accomplished. Sociological inventory and power structure analysis provide an informational framework within which the community relations program will be carried on. On the other hand, measurement of attitudes and opinions tells how people think and feel about the school system. It also tells what should be done to increase public understanding, support, and participation in the schools.

Opinion Research Technique

Opinion research started in the field of marketing and soon spread to other walks of life. Its reliability has been demonstrated over and over again in predicting election results, ascertaining consumer wants, determining audience reactions, modifying products, and forecasting trends in public thought and action. Schools have been somewhat slow to employ opinion research, despite its proven worth, in the planning and evaluating of their community relations programs. There has been, however, a noticeable gain in the number of school systems either undertaking their own studies of public opinion or hiring commercial firms to do this work for them. Increasingly, they are coming to realize the value of having precise knowledge of the opinions held by a specific group of people or those held by a representative cross section of the population.

Opinion research is indispensable in the planning, conducting, and evaluating of the school–community relations program. It may be used to determine how people get their information about the schools, to learn how citizens judge the quality of their schools and the criteria they employ, to ascertain whether a proposed change will arouse controversy, to discover if a shift is taking place in public opinion, to find out how well the public understands the education program, to locate points of popular satisfaction and dissatisfaction with the school system, to identify problems that must be solved before increased cooperation and support can be expected, and to know the educational goals and aspirations of parents and citizens.

Opinion research can likewise reveal areas of improvement desired by citizens, their relative willingness to support financially the educational program, the nature of misinformation they possess, the motivations behind their defeat of a tax levy or a bond proposal, and the kind of information they want and how they want to get it.

As an extra dividend, opinion research actually stimulates the individuals who are contacted to form opinions about the subject being investigated. Individuals who have not thought seriously about the schools and school programs for some years are forced to do some thinking about them when their opinions are being sought in a research study. Moreover, they feel important for being asked their opinions.

When applied to staff members and pupils, opinion research discloses their attitudes toward the institution and the values they place on its policies and practices. The capable administrator uses this information to improve internal relationships and to make appropriate changes in the management of the school.

Types of Opinion Research

Opinion research comes under many names, scientific and unscientific, formal and informal, quantitative and qualitative, and probability and nonprobability. The name is determined by the manner in which the research is carried out. The results of unscientific, informal, or nonprobability opinion research cannot be projected to the total group from which the sample is taken with any statistical assurance. On the other hand, the results from scientific, formal, or probability opinion research can be. The reason lies in how the respondents are selected to participate in the research. Only in the scientific, formal, or probability method is everybody in a population given an equal chance of being selected, the criterion used to determine if the results of a sample represent the thinking of a larger group.

Examples of unscientific opinion research methods are forums and conferences; advisory committees; some consumer panels; key communicators; mail surveys; newspaper, radio, TV, and magazine surveys; and some quota surveys. Among the scientific methods are simple, systematic, stratified, and area or cluster surveys.

The following descriptions of selected opinion research methods—forums and conferences, advisory

committees, consumer panels, key communicators, and public opinion surveys—are designed to acquaint school personnel with some of their options.

FORUMS AND CONFERENCES

Open forums are a method of getting frank discussion by a selected group of persons on some educational topic of current interest to taxpayers, parents, teachers, or pupils. The discussants are asked to state their views on topics such as the construction of a middle school as a new unit in the structural arrangement of the school system and the reasons for their views. After a specific period of time, people in the audience are invited to direct questions to the speakers or to express their own opinions. An attempt is then made to summarize the entire discussion and to estimate how those present stand on the question. Sometimes this estimate represents the judgment of the chairperson or the collective judgment of an evaluation committee. Sometimes it is based on a show of hands in response to specific questions asked by the chairperson or on the oral and written comments received shortly after the close of the meeting.

Open forums lend themselves well to radio and television presentations. Such forums evoke wide interest if the issue under discussion is one of community concern and sufficient publicity is built up in advance. Interest is added when participants are known and carefully chosen. Open forums are used commonly in parent–teacher association meetings and in high school assemblies with students in charge. Open forums are difficult to defend on the basis of scientific appraisal of public opinion. They do, however, enable school officials to get rough but significant measures of how people think and to discover areas of their satisfaction or dissatisfaction. These forums have the added advantage at times of releasing tensions and enabling those who are interested to express themselves freely.

ADVISORY COMMITTEES

The advisory committee concept centers on the idea that a selected group of laypersons, representing a balanced cross section of interest groups, can express the needs and reflect the opinions of the community. Meeting with school officials on a systemwide or on an individual-school basis, the members of the advisory committee are asked to suggest what should be done to solve the educational problems that are presented to them. Their recommendations are in no way binding and can be accepted or rejected. This method affords educators a practical device for evaluating group attitudes. Although there is always the danger of assuming that the personal opinions of committee members are those of the group they represent, the danger lessens as experience is gained in using the method and as the personalities of participants are better understood. Moreover, this system familiarizes people with school problems and brings out their reactions before decisions are made. See Chapter 8 for more details.

PANELS

Panels, also referred to as focus panels, are another approach to the measurement of public opinion. This procedure calls for the selection of a panel or jury of laypersons who are interviewed by trained members of the school staff. Panel members are usually either selected to include representatives from organized interest groups, chosen in accordance with criteria for a stratified sample of the community, or tapped for expertise in a related field.

Two types of panels have a place in the measurement of opinion on matters involving public schools. One type is highly transitory and may be regarded as a one-shot affair. It is used for observing changes in opinions or behavior caused by a particular action or experiment entered into by the local district. As an example, let us say the system increases class size, or eliminates some extracurricular activities, or establishes experimentally a year-round school. An initial set of interviews is held before any of these changes occurs in order to record attitudes and opinions on the subject at the time. The interviews are held either individually or collectively with panel members. Then, after the change occurs, a second set of interviews is carried out to determine the effect of the change on members' opinions and behavior. Once this is done, the panel members are dismissed.

In the second type of panel, the members serve on a continuing basis. Interviews are held with them individually in order to elicit their opinions on a scheduled series of open-ended questions and to estimate the intensity of their attitudes and feelings.

Interviews are conducted informally without reference to any printed set of questions, and the length of the interview is left to the discretion of the parties. When the interview is over, conversational highlights are recorded in private by the interviewer on prepared forms.

Research on the continuing type of panel indicates that such interviews reveal emotional tones in opinions; the nature and amount of information, as well as misinformation, about topics under discussion; the qualifications attached to stated opinions; the contradictions in expressions of beliefs; and some of the reasons underlying favorable and unfavorable points of view. It has been found that repeated interviews with properly selected panel members not only give a statistically reliable measure of opinion but also bring out causes for shifts in opinion. However, repeated interviews with the same individuals over a long period of time may produce mental sets that consciously or unconsciously bias their replies. To meet this problem, continuing panel operations can provide for the rotation of panel members, with a limit placed on the length of time to be served by any one person.

KEY COMMUNICATOR PROGRAM

Another method of getting opinion feedback from a community is through the key communicator program. It calls for identifying those people in a community who sit on top of a hypothetical pyramid of communications and asking them to pass along information from the schools to the community. Conversely, they are asked to relay information about the community to the school officials. They are usually invited to a luncheon or a get-together to talk informally about the schools. The program can be very effective in identifying and squelching rumors in a community. It can also provide a quick pulse of community thinking on major educational issues. Chapter 8 details the program.

PUBLIC OPINION SURVEYS

This method of opinion research can provide the most precise results of all techniques mentioned earlier if conducted properly. For this reason, schools and organizations are developing solid databases of community opinions through public opinion polls. Valid results will often silence vocal critics or vehement pressure groups, provide the basis for school officials to make a major decision that will be accepted by the community, and identify community values and priorities for educational programs.

Before surveying a community, a school should give some thought to the issues, the method of getting the information on a survey, the sampling technique, the construction and the wording of the questions, interview techniques, the design of the questionnaire, the use of data processing, and the handling of the results.

Methods of Getting the Information The six commonly used methods are the personal interview, the telephone interview, the mailed questionnaire, the automated telephone interview, Internet surveying, and the drop-off/pick-up questionnaire. In the last method, the survey instrument is delivered to a respondent's home or place of work and a day or so later picked up. Of all these methods the best for comprehensive and usually valid results is the personal interview. The telephone interview is widely used, and the mail questionnaire provides proportionally the lowest returns. Table 3.1 shows the advantages and limitations of all six methods.

The Sampling Technique If findings of a survey are to be used to make decisions on budgets, personnel, buildings, and programs, the results should be projectable to the entire community or population from which the sample was taken. And this can be done if the sample is selected by random. But random sampling doesn't mean a haphazard selection of respondents. Standing outside a supermarket and selecting every tenth customer won't give you a random sample that would represent the thinking of the entire community.

A sample must represent a larger population if it is to be statistically valid. A sample is to a pollster what a model is to an architect. Each represents a larger entity within a certain degree of accuracy. And a sample will represent a larger population if all the people in the population have an equal chance of being selected.

A properly selected sample of 400 respondents will give you answers that can be projected to a

TABLE 3.1 Advantages and Limitations of Six Methods of Surveying

	Advantages	Limitations
Personal Interview	1. High percentage of returns 2. Information more likely to be correct than that of other methods 3. Possibility of obtaining additional information 4. Clarification of respondent misunderstanding	1. Greater costs in transportation and personnel 2. Trained personnel required 3. Great amount of time needed 4. Guarded access apartments and communities 5. Safety of interviewers
Telephone Interview	1. Inexpensive 2. Short period of time needed to complete survey 3. No cost for transportation 4. Minimal training of personnel	1. Unlisted phones 2. Some families do not have phones 3. Easy for respondent to hang up 4. Answering machines 5. Caller identification devices
Drop-Off/Pick-Up Questionnaire	1. High returns in a short period of time 2. Clarification of respondent misunderstanding 3. Minimal training of personnel	1. Transportation cost 2. Need many volunteers or workers 3. Safety of interviewers
Mailed Questionnaire	1. Mailing costs cheaper than transportation costs 2. Possibility of reaching groups protected from solicitors and investigators 3. Increased candor among respondents	1. Low number of returns 2. Possibility of an irate citizen's collecting many questionnaires from neighbors and answering all of them 3. Total population not represented by responses
Automated Telephone Questionnaire	1. Covers a wide area 2. Interviewers not needed 3. No mail or distribution costs	1. Expertise needed to format and record questionnaire 2. Representative sample difficult to obtain 3. Clarification of wording and meaning difficult to provide to respondents
Internet Surveying (Web and E-mail)	1. Can be less expensive 2. Can be faster 3. Broad area is reached 4. Automated tabulation 5. E-mail best for internal surveys or surveys among populations with defined e-mail addresses.	1. Representative sample difficult to obtain 2. Response rates can be influenced by familiarity with and trust in online initiatives. 3. Creating and maintaining Web expertise is needed 4. Internet access is usually not universal among all households in a community. 5. Population with Web and e-mail access may be less common among some demographic groups.

TABLE 3.2 **Sample Size for Two Levels of Confidence with Varying Degrees of Tolerance**

Tolerance of Error in Percentages (1 or 2)	95 times in 100	99 times in 100
0.5	38,400	66,000
0.7	19,592	33,673
1.0	9,600	16,500
1.5	4,267	7,333
2.0	2,400	4,125
2.5	1,536	2,640
3.0	1,067	1,833
3.5	784	1,347
4.0	600	1,031
4.5	474	815
5.0	384	660
6.0	267	458
7.0	196	337
8.0	150	288
9.0	119	204
10.0	96	165
15.0	45	74

larger population within a predictable 5 percent error. This is true if the population is 4,000 people, 40,000, or 100,000 or more. *The size of the population generally does not determine the size of the sample.* Instead it depends on how closely you want the sample to represent the total population and how much time and money are available to do the survey. Gallup believes he can work with a 2.5 percent error in determining what the citizens of the United States think. Therefore, he surveys only about 1,600 people to learn the attitudes of the entire nation. But his sample is valid because every adult in the United States is given an equal chance of being selected. Table 3.2 gives the percentage of error regardless of the population size at the 95-times-out-of-100 and the 99-times-out-of-100 confidence levels. If you don't have to be sure 95 or 99 percent of the time that your tolerance or margin of error is a plus or minus a given percentage, you can lower the confidence level. Table 3.3 provides sample sizes at various levels of confidence. If the population you want to survey is fewer than 400 or 500 people, it would be wise to survey everyone rather than take a sample. Attempt to get at least an 80 percent return in order to have the results represent the thinking of all 400 or 500 people.

Simple probability sampling survey is basically the lottery system. It's like putting all the names of a population into a bowl and picking them out one at a time until the sample size is reached.

In a more practical way, let's say you want to pick a sample of 400 from a roster of 7,500 employees. Using a table of random numbers[5] you would choose 400 numbers from 1 to 7,500, and they would be your respondents. Some computer programs will generate lists of random numbers. However, the program generally asks for a starting number. That has to be chosen by chance. From a deck of cards, shuffle ace through 10 (= 0) and select a card. That's the first number of a four-digit starting number. Return that card to the ace-through-10 deck. Shuffle, and pick a second card. Do this four times, because 7,500 is a four-digit number. Give that four-digit number as the starting number to the computer to generate the remaining numbers of your sample.

Random digit dialing (RDD), a simple sampling technique, is used widely in telephone surveys.

TABLE 3.3 Sample Size Required to Achieve Desired Levels of Confidence and Tolerance of Error

	LEVELS OF CONFIDENCE						
Tolerance of Error	**50%**	**75%**	**80%**	**85%**	**90%**	**95%**	**99%**
1.0%	1,140	3,307	4,096	5,184	6,766	9,600	16,500
2.0%	285	827	1,024	1,296	1,692	2,400	4,125
3.0%	127	358	456	576	752	1,067	1,833
4.0%	72	207	256	324	423	600	1,031
5.0%	46	133	164	208	271	385	664
7.5%	21	59	73	93	121	171	296
10.0%	12	34	41	52	68	96	165

Note: Here is how to use and interpret this table: If you wish to be 85% confident that your findings reflect the attitudes of your total population within plus or minus 5%, you need to survey 208 people.

Using the table of random numbers, choose a four-digit number, combine it with the local three-digit exchange number and three-digit area code, and that's the first phone call made in a survey. For example, suppose you select from the table of random numbers 1816, and the local exchange is 555 and the area code is 856. The first telephone number called would be 856-555-1816. The advantage of random digit dialing is that you can easily uncover unlisted numbers. One disadvantage is that not all the numbers you generate will be dwelling units. In addition, growing numbers of cell phone users, who often resist such unsolicited calls, can create issues for those using this technique. And the overlapping of area codes and local exchange prefixes, now common in many areas, has made it more difficult to target specific communities or geographic areas.

By this method of sampling, the thinking of those interviewed will represent, with reasonable accuracy, the thinking of a larger population. This is a scientific probability—a (random) sample that can be defended statistically. Usually much criticism of a local survey is leveled at the sampling method.

In order to get a representative sample in a *systematic probability sampling survey,* you need to work from a list of names (parents, students, employees, graduates, registered voters, or taxpayers). First, divide the number of people you wish to survey (400 gives you about a 5 percent error) into the total number of names on your list. Usually, this interval will be 10 or less unless your list is very large. Second, select a starting number by random from 1 to 10 because the interval is 10. This can be done by taking ten 3-by-5-inch cards and placing one number from 1 to 10 on each. Select one card. Using that as the starting number, select every 10th name after it as a person to be surveyed.

In *stratified probability surveying,* people are selected so that the sample in certain aspects is a small-scale model of the population it is designed to represent. For example, you may be interested in surveying registered voters. As in the systematic method, stratified sampling requires a list from which to work. In reviewing the list, you find that 75 percent of the registered voters did not vote in the last school election and 25 percent did. To stratify a sample of any size, you would choose 75 percent of it from among the nonvoters and 25 percent from the voters by using the interval method described above, thus giving every voter and nonvoter an equal chance of being selected. Assume that a sample of 400 respondents is sought. In order to stratify it as the total list of voters is divided, you would choose 300 respondents from the nonvoters (75 percent) and 100 from the voters (25 percent).

Area or *cluster probability surveying* is based on a previous subdivision of the population into areas, the selection of certain of these areas by using a random sampling technique, and the restriction of sampling units to these areas only. For

example, the school district is divided into neighborhoods, and a random selection is made among neighborhoods. After sample neighborhoods have been chosen, households would be listed in each of them, and the required number of households would be selected, again using a random probability method. Details of this method can be found in several excellent textbooks and reference manuals on opinion research.

There is, of course, an unscientific or nonprobability sampling method used in many cases. But you must be careful in what you do with the results. In this type of sampling, you cannot project the results to the entire population. For example, a school district sends a mailed questionnaire to all 11,000 households in a community, and 2,000 are returned. It would be unwise for the board or superintendent to make major decisions based on the answers on the 2,000 returned questionnaires. There is no way of knowing whether they represent the thinking of the entire 11,000 homes in the community. In order for the results to be valid, more than 8,000 questionnaires should have been returned. Such a large response to a mailed questionnaire is highly unlikely. Another unscientific sampling method is to have someone stand on a busy street corner and interview any 100 people passing by. The only thing you can do with the results is to say that this is what 100 people thought. Again, you have no way of knowing whether the sample represents the thinking of the entire community.

Some school districts may use the unscientific sampling method to start citizens thinking about the schools and to give them a way of "sounding off" about the schools. As a result, some citizens may become more interested and involved in the schools and may help solve some educational problems. For these reasons, unscientific sampling may be justified.

The Construction and Wording of Questions Open-ended and structured questions are the types used in surveying. The difference is that the structured or closed-ended questions have answers to choose from, and the open-ended questions do not. Structured questions are easier to tabulate; open-ended ones can provide information not anticipated.

A survey can be ruined not only by invalid sampling but also by the wording of the questions themselves. Here are some suggestions on how to word questions properly:

- Be as concise as possible.
- Use words and language that respondents understand. For example, a question such as "What is your attitude toward year-round schools?" is likely to be misunderstood. The phrase "year-round" may have different meanings to different people. Does it mean forty-five weeks of school and fifteen days off? Or does it mean two semesters of classes and a semester off? Or does it mean school every week of the year? Most citizens would be unable to answer this question with a valid response.
- Structure questions to provide you with the exact information, not the answers, you desire. For example, in the question "How long have you lived here?" you may get answers such as "A long time," "Not too long," or "A good while." These answers are of little value. In such a question, list alternative answers, such as "Less than 1 year; 1 to 5 years; 6 to 10 years; more than 10 years."
- Avoid leading questions. An example of a leading question is "If your taxes were reduced, would you favor light industry locating in the school district?" The phrase "If your taxes were reduced" is leading. Many people will answer yes to any question that will indicate their taxes will be reduced.
- Avoid double-barreled questions, such as "Do you work full- or part-time? Yes__No__." If the respondents work full-time, how do they answer it?
- Avoid ambiguous questions. The question "Don't you think reading should be emphasized in the high school?" is impossible to answer. What does a yes answer mean? "Yes, I don't think . . ." or "Yes, I do think . . ."
- Pretest all questions on a small group similar to the one to be surveyed. (See Table 3.4 for examples of wording used in a Gallup poll.)

Interview Techniques In cases in which you choose to conduct personal interviews either at the front door or over the phone, interviewers must be

TABLE 3.4 Examples of a Gallup Poll Wording of Questions

What do you think are the biggest problems that the public schools of your community must deal with?

	NATIONAL TOTALS			*PUBLIC SCHOOL PARENTS*		
	'09%	**'08%**	**'07%**	**'09%**	**'08%**	**'07%**
Lack of funding	32	17	22	30	19	26
Lack of discipline	10	10	10	08	03	05
Overcrowding	09	06	07	10	11	09
Drugs	05	04	04	05	04	03
Fighting	04	06	06	06	08	08
Lack of standards	03	03	04	02	02	04
Lack of good teachers	03	04	05	02	03	04

Students are often given the grades A, B, C, D, and Fail to denote the quality of their work. Suppose the public schools themselves in your community were graded in the same way. What grade would you give the public schools here—A, B, C, D or Fail?

	'09%	**'08%**	**'07%**	**'06%**	**'05%**
A & B	51	46	45	49	48
A	10	12	09	13	12
B	41	34	36	36	36
C	32	30	34	32	29
D	11	11	14	09	09
Fail	03	05	05	05	05
Don't know	03	08	02	05	09

William J. Bushaw and John A. McNee, The 41st Annual Phi Delta Kappa/Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitudes Toward the Public Schools Americans Speak Out: Are Educators and Policy Makers Listening? *Phi Delta Kappan*, Vol. 91, No. 1, September 2009, pp. 10–11. Reprinted with permission of Phi Delta Kappa International, www.pdkintl.org. All rights reserved.

recruited and trained. Where can you get volunteer interviewers who will do a good job? One district used young mothers with children not yet in school to do a telephone survey. These young women were enthusiastic about doing something that extended their contacts beyond the home. Senior citizens, parent groups, college students, or community groups can also be helpful if they have proper training.

Each survey situation differs and dictates some variations, but some general rules of interviewing should be followed whether the personal interview method or the telephone interview is used. Whatever the method, interviewers must strive for neutrality, avoiding any possibility of influencing the answers.

Major suggestions for interviewers are as follows:

- In face-to-face interviews, interviewers should dress similarly to those people being interviewed to foster better cooperation.
- Interviewers should become thoroughly familiar with the questionnaire, but not memorize the questions.
- Interviewers should follow the wording of the questions exactly.
- Responses to open-ended questions should be recorded exactly as given.
- Interviewers should be friendly and show a genuine interest in the respondent without appearing to be meddling.

At least one training session is necessary for volunteer interviewers. Besides some practice interviewing with each other, the volunteers should be briefed on the purpose of the survey, how the questionnaire was designed, why each question was included, how the interviewees were chosen, and how the data will be processed and analyzed.

The Design of the Questionnaire The design of the questionnaire helps respondents cooperate with you without feeling they are being exploited. First, they want to know how long the questionnaire is. If there are too many questions, respondents become frustrated and will not complete the questionnaire. If the copy is crowded and difficult to read, the respondent will give up quickly. If respondents have to work to find the place to check an answer, they will lose enthusiasm. A good rule to follow is to put all possible answers on the right side of the page near the end of the question. (This will make the job of tabulating the results much easier also.)

Whether it is a telephone interview, a mailed questionnaire, or a personal interview, the structure of the questionnaire is basically the same. Each should have an introduction, main section, and conclusion. The sections should include the following:

Introduction

- A brief description of the purpose of the survey
- The sponsor of the survey
- Instructions on how the questions are to be completed and returned if a written questionnaire is used
- Nonthreatening questions

Main Section

- Opinion questions that deal with the basic problems the school is attempting to learn about
- Questions in a sequence to provide the respondent with a logical thought process

Conclusion

- Open-ended questions to get unanticipated information, such as "Are there any other thoughts you have on the East Bank School District?"
- Demographic questions (age, sex, parent or nonparent, length of residency, and so forth)
- A note of thanks

Use of Data Processing Tabulating results by hand takes an inordinate amount of time and is prone to numerous mistakes. With the availability of office computers, it is strongly recommended that data processing be used in determining the results of a survey. It will provide a quick and accurate process of transferring information from numerous questionnaires to a report with total results. Also, data processing will quickly break out information by various demographics, such as the thinking of parents or nonparents, voting or nonvoting taxpayers, male or female, or any other demographic in the survey. If you decide to make use of data processing, be sure to involve the data-processing specialist before the questions and the format of the questionnaire are finalized.

Handling the Results If a decision is made to survey a community, a public announcement should be made through radio, TV, newspapers, and the school newsletter. The local citizens and staff need to be informed of the purpose of the survey, the approximate time when it will be conducted, the size of the sample, and that the results will be made public. In these ways, citizens are alerted to the possibility that an interviewer may call on them.

When the results are tabulated, they should be published. Otherwise, people will feel that you are hiding something. One of the surest ways of reducing credibility with the public is to hide the results of the survey. A definite procedure should be followed in revealing the results of the survey. The sponsors (usually the board of education) of the survey should know the results first, followed by those who worked on the survey, employees, and students. Once the internal public is informed, release the results to the media in the form of a news release or news conference. Finally, the detailed answers to each question in the survey should be highlighted in a school newsletter or other external publications.

Provided that school officials construct and conduct surveys carefully, results will provide valuable information about the concerns and attitudes of

citizens, and, in the long term, help schools continue to bridge the school–community gap.

Planning for Opinion Studies

Before detailed plans for making opinion studies are developed, the administrator should answer certain questions to his or her own satisfaction and to that of the board of education. The questions that need to be answered are the following:

EXACTLY WHAT IS THE PROBLEM TO BE STUDIED?

Too often individuals are carried away by their enthusiasm for something they believe is important without taking the time to consider just what the problem is and what kinds of facts are needed to solve it. This is evident in some of the questionnaires that school systems have devised for appraising the attitudes and opinions of parents and taxpayers.

The school administrator will strengthen his or her case and gain board support more readily if he or she has defined the problem and has outlined the exact points to be studied. This is illustrated in the work done by one superintendent who was faced with a steady barrage of criticism about the schools. An investigation of the problem brought out the fact that several individuals were openly declaring that the public had lost confidence in the educational program. With the permission of the board, the superintendent undertook a series of interviews with all persons known to be skeptical and antagonistic toward the schools. From these interviews he was able to determine the exact points around which most of the criticism revolved. He then formulated a statement of the problem and the points needing investigation. The board approved his statement in short order and then voted the money for conducting an opinion survey. The administrator and board members wished to find out whether confidence in the schools had been destroyed and, specifically, what practices were under strongest protest. The results of the survey showed conclusively that the large majority of people believed in the worth of the instructional program and had faith in the competency of the administration. The results showed further that most of the opposition stemmed from a small but articulate minority who misunderstood many of the practices they were complaining about.

Too much emphasis cannot be placed on the advisability of formulating the problem for study in writing and attaching to this statement the reason why this information is required to solve the problem. This becomes not only a matter of record, when approved by the board of education, but also a guide to those who are charged with responsibility for making the study.

WHAT METHOD IS BEST TO OBTAIN THE DESIRED INFORMATION?

The choice of method depends on the problem and the information needed. Leaving financial consideration aside for the moment, the point is that one method or combination of methods may be more effective than another for obtaining certain types of data. For example, it would be wasteful to conduct an interview poll if the problem were one of trying to get a broad, general picture of how opinion was developing around a given issue. For this purpose, sufficient information could be collected economically and quickly through the open forum, the advisory committee, or the panel methods of measuring opinion. By the same token, none of these methods would suffice for obtaining an accurate measure of public understanding, let us say, concerning guidance services in the school. Actually, the methods brought into play do not have to be costly and complicated when all that is wanted is a general estimate of opinion.

HOW MUCH MONEY IS REQUIRED TO CONDUCT OPINION STUDIES?

The answer to this question varies with the nature of the studies made. Large citywide surveys can be expensive, costing thousands of dollars, and because of costs many administrators shy away from opinion studies without realizing that limited surveys can be conducted on restricted budgets. However, a preliminary or pilot study of opinion often yields satisfactory results and costs very little. Some survey organizations regularly make pilot studies before deciding whether or not it is necessary to engage in a large survey project. The argument on cost falls apart once administrators and school boards understand the need and value of knowing what the public thinks.

HOW MUCH TIME IS NEEDED TO COMPLETE A STUDY OF PUBLIC OPINION?

The amount of time will vary with the method employed. The time required is short for the open forum and advisory committee methods, somewhat longer for the panel method, and considerably longer for questionnaires and direct interviews. The last two methods, starting with a definition of the problem and ending with the publication of results, may consume several weeks. This length of time can be reduced with experience in polling procedure. One national polling organization is now able to conduct a nationwide survey and report the findings in less than a day. The significant thing is not how much time is required, but rather learning how to make opinion studies and putting the findings to work in building stronger relations with the community.

WHO SHOULD DO THE RESEARCH IN PUBLIC OPINION MEASUREMENT?

Typical school administrators do not have the background or training and experience for this research. They can familiarize themselves with the procedures involved and can learn to apply the more simple ones in their own communities, but they may not be competent to undertake direction of scientific polls. If they wish to undertake scientific polls, they should either employ outside experts or else subsidize the training of staff personnel. Although the more convenient alternative is to hire outside experts, this is difficult to sell to boards of education because of the cost involved. The better choice in the long run is to subsidize the training of staff personnel who are then available to conduct studies whenever they are needed. Staff personnel who take over this responsibility should be assisted at the beginning by an expert consultant who can show them shortcuts in procedures, eliminate confusion, and prevent serious errors.

HOW SHOULD THE FINDINGS BE USED?

The answers to this question will be governed by the nature of the findings. The findings may show that the superintendent should act at once to solve a pressing problem or that action by the board of education is necessary before anything can be done to clear up an unfavorable situation. They may confirm the soundness of present public relations procedures and the effectiveness of the program or point up the need for studying further a practice that is causing trouble. They may reflect a shift in public opinion calling for follow-up studies to chart direction. They may reveal problems for which immediate provision should be made in the public relations program. They may reveal many other things that are important in guiding relations with the community.

In general, the findings should be published in booklet form for distribution to staff personnel and citizens in the community. Such a publication serves to increase interest in and understanding of the educational program.

ELECTRONIC SURVEYING

The Internet and advanced computer and telephone technology have created a new method of surveying, other than the traditional personal, telephone, and mail surveys. Known as electronic surveying, it includes telephony and Internet-based surveys through Web sites and e-mail.

> ***Telephony***—Two methods are used in this type of electronic polling: in-call account and out-call account. In the first method, community members are contacted and asked to call a special number to respond to a recorded questionnaire. In the out-call account, a system initiates the poll by calling a predetermined set of phone numbers. The automatic system then asks each survey question, and the respondents press a number or speak to register their answers. Specialized companies can provide school districts with technical assistance and software to conduct these polls.
>
> ***Web site and e-mail surveys***—Online and e-mail surveys have become increasingly accepted options for school communication research. *The School PR Research Primer,* published by the National School Public Relations Association, notes:
>
> > E-mail and online surveys continue to grow in both popularity and acceptance among researchers. Although they have been used for some time, they were at

> first considered suspect by some researchers—who perhaps lumped e-mail and online surveys in with the many informal polls and other unscientific "question-of-the-day" data collection efforts common on web sites. But properly designed and implemented, e-mail and online surveys can offer reliability and validity comparable to other survey methods.[6]

Most Web development programs now contain an option for creating, conducting, and tabulating these types of polls. A school district can compose a survey and post it on the Web or send e-mails and ask (by phone, e-mail, mail, etc.) a select universe to visit a certain Web address or reply to an e-mail to complete the questionnaire. Or the district can post the survey on a public page—their home page, for example—and just ask all visitors to fill it out. This latter type, though unscientific, is typical of the polls often promoted by TV news shows ("Visit our Web site to give us your opinion on the question of the day . . ."). When respondents select themselves, the results are always unscientific.

Sampling in electronic polling can be both scientific and unscientific. Results are sometimes representative of the population from which the sample was taken. In the out-call, Web site, and e-mail methods, a representative sample is difficult but possible to get. This can be done by a panel of respondents preselected by chance. E-mail addresses of a large population such as an entire school district virtually do not exist. As a result, e-mail surveys often are best used to query distinct populations easily reached by e-mail—such as staff members, parent groups, community organizations, business associations, and so on.

Questions

1. As a school administrator or a school public relations director, you need to know the power structure of the community. What three types would you try to identify? How would you do that?
2. Suppose you need a quick study of public opinion in your community on an emerging school issue. What would be the pros and cons of conducting an online Web survey (where people are encouraged to visit your Web site to participate), an e-mail survey (where you e-mail your survey to local residents), or a traditional mail survey (where you mail your survey to selected households in the community)?
3. At a school board meeting, some citizens present the results of a public opinion poll and say that this is what the public thinks about a school issue. What questions would you ask to determine if the results of their survey are valid and represent the thinking of the community?

Readings

Bushaw, William J., and John A. McNee, "The 41st Annual Phi Delta Kappa/Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitudes toward the Public Schools Americans Speak Out: Are Educators and Policy Makers Listening?" *Phi Delta Kappan* (September 2009).

Couper, M. P., M. Traugott, and M. Lamias, "Web Survey Design and Administration," *Public Opinion Quarterly*, vol. 65, no. 2, 2001.

Hughes, Larry W., and Don W. Hooper, *Public Relations for School Leaders*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

Moore, Edward H., *The School PR Research Primer*. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008.

Schleyer, T. K. L., and J. L. Forrest, "Methods for the Design and Administration of Web-Based Surveys," *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association*, vol. 7, 2000.

Schonlau, Matthias, Ronald D. Fricker, Jr., and Marc N. Elliott, *Conducting Research Surveys via E-Mail and the Web*. Santa Monica, CA: Rand, 2001.

Weisberg, Herbert F., Jon A. Krosnick, and Bruce D. Bowen, *An Introduction to Survey Research, Polling and Data Analysis*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 1996.

Win at the Polls. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008.

Witte, J. C., L. M. Amoroso, and P. E. N. Howard, "Research Methodology—Method and Representation in Internet-Based Survey Tools," *Social Science Computer Review*, vol. 18, 2000.

Endnotes

1. Richard L. Weaver II, *Understanding Interpersonal Communication*, 7th ed. (New York: Longman, 1996), p. 61.
2. On the Internet, log onto http://www.bls.gov/SOC for more information and available publications.
3. Beverly Jean Smith, "Community Power Structures, School Board Types and Superintendent Leadership Styles in North Carolina," doctoral dissertation, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, 1998.
4. On the Internet, log onto http://www.nspra.org for more information on communication audits for schools.
5. Examples of tables of random numbers can be found in the back of many social research or statistical textbooks. An example would be Earl R. Babbie, The Practice of Social Research, 8th ed. (Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 1998), Appendix E.
6. Edward H. Moore, *The School PR Research Primer* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008), p. 73. Reprinted with permission.

Chapter 4

Policies, Goals, and Strategies

Developing an appropriate communication policy and determining attainable goals are early steps in creating and improving a school–community relations program. An appropriate policy describes the rationale for undertaking the program, expresses the system's commitment to open communication, and authorizes and charges the administration with responsibility for determining the means by which the policy will be implemented.

A communication plan then outlines realistic and valid goals, objectives, and strategies to effectively implement the communication policy. A communication plan also functions to provide the school–community relations program with direction and to establish a process for assessing communications accountability. The communication plan should offer a framework to properly evaluate the total program after given periods of time, such as a year or five years.

NATURE OF A POLICY

To understand the nature of a policy it would be well to start with actual examples. The following policy was adopted by the board of trustees in the Dallas, Texas, Independent School District:

> Society has created public institutions to serve the best interests of its citizens. Those interests can only be met by an institution that incorporates the practice of public relations in its truest sense by operating in an open and sensitive manner.
>
> The Board is committed to an ongoing public relations effort designed to help improve the programs and services of its schools. This effort will rely on a comprehensive two-way communications process involving both internal and external publics, with a goal of stimulating a better understanding of the role, objectives, accomplishments, and needs of the District.
>
> Authority is hereby delegated to the General Superintendent to develop and implement public relations activities which assist in interpreting public attitudes, identify and shape policies and procedures in the public interest, and carry on involvement and information activities which earn public understanding and support.

From Chapter 4 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

Another example of a policy is a sample one that appears in the New Jersey School Boards Association's *Critical Policy Reference Manual:*

> The board of education believes that school district community relations [are] not solely an information program, but encompass all aspects of the schools' relationship with the total community.
>
> The board of education believes its school–community relations program should:
>
> A. Promote public interest and participation in the operation of the school system;
> B. Gather information about public attitudes toward the school system and its programs and report them to the chief school administrator and the board;
> C. Provide an honest, continuous, comprehensive flow of information about the policies, procedures, programs, problems, and progress of the school system to the community and the staff;
> D. Develop the most effective means of communication with the school system's public and use available media as appropriate;
> E. Develop programs in the schools that will integrate home, school, and community in meeting the needs of district pupils;
> F. Develop and maintain the confidence of the community in the school board and the school staff;
> G. Develop a climate that attracts good teachers and encourages staff to strive for excellence in the educational program;
> H. Anticipate and forestall problems that are brought about by lack of understanding;
> I. Evaluate past procedures in order to make improvements in future communications.
>
> The chief school administrator shall be responsible for developing programs, techniques, and channels for implementing this policy.[1]

The Capistrano, California, Unified School District Policy on Community Relations is a third example of a good policy:

> The Governing Board appreciates the importance of community involvement and therefore shall strive to keep the community informed of developments within the school system in timely and understandable ways.
>
> In order to gain the public support necessary to make our educational programs a success, the district shall establish a system of clear and directed communication. The district can maintain a positive public image by enhancing internal and external understanding and appreciation of school programs, and answering the challenge of those who would seek to undermine the American system of a full, high quality public education for all citizens.
>
> The Superintendent or designee shall use all available means of communication to keep the public aware of the goals, programs, achievements and needs of the schools. Members of the community shall have opportunities to become involved in the schools and to express their interests and concerns.
>
> The district encourages the dissemination of information to members of the media, and media representatives are encouraged to attend meetings of the Board of Trustees.

An examination of these policies on school and public or community relations indicates that they include the following: the reasons for adopting the policy, the decision to do something or take some form of action for the reasons stated, the general means to be employed in carrying out the decision, and the delegation of authority for carrying out the policy. These elements make the policies sound.

Advantage of Written Policies

Every board of education should have a carefully formulated statement of policy covering school and community relations. The policy should be in agreement with state school laws, the philosophy of the

institution, and the traditions and opinions of people in the community. It should consist of a plan of action in which the purposes and general means for their attainment are described in written form or else in a statement in which the decision to act and the rationale for it are spelled out clearly.

Purpose is the crucial element in a policy statement because it tells why the policy has been developed and sets the goal to be accomplished. In this respect, the school–community relations policy should emphasize the development and continuance of a strong partnership between the school and the community. By bringing individuals and groups into a dynamic team, ideas can be exchanged, problems examined, practices reviewed, and decisions reached that will enrich the quality and increase popular support of public education.

Practical experience has shown that a number of advantages may be gained when a school system formulates and adopts a policy having the characteristics just described. Simply stated, these advantages are as follows:

Policy facilitates the orientation of new board members regarding relations between the school and the community.

Policy facilitates a similar orientation for new employees, both professional and nonprofessional, in the school system.

Policy acquaints the public with the position of the school and encourages citizen involvement in educational affairs.

Policy provides a reasonable guarantee that there will be consistency and continuity in the decisions that are made under it.

Policy informs superintendents what they may expect from the board and what the board may expect from them.

Policy creates the need for developing a detailed program in order to implement it.

Policy provides a legal reason for the allocation of funds and facilities in order to make the policy work.

Policy establishes an essential division between policymaking and policy administration.

The policy should be printed, with copies available for all members of the staff and for any resident of the community.

Policy Styles

For the most part, four styles are followed in the makeup of a policy statement: (1) Provisions of the policy statement may be set down in broad, flexible language and the details of its administration left to the discretion of the superintendent and his or her staff; (2) the policy statement may include the rationale or purposes for the decision and the aspects, parameters, or limits within which the program is to be designed; (3) rules and regulations or procedures may be attached to the policy statement and thereby become an integral part of it; or (4) the policy may take the form of a resolution on which the board will take legal action.

Policy Development

The development of a school–community relations policy starts with a determination of the end to be served by the policy. This means simply asking why the policy is necessary. The answer to this question may be nothing more than a vague feeling of concern about the nature of the interaction between the school and the community, or it may arise quite naturally from the pressures of outside groups who are seeking change in the school program. The need for a policy might also be indicated by the complaints of parents, the defeat of a bond issue or millage proposal, or the treatment of the schools in the press. No matter how it arises, there must be first an understanding and determination of the reason or reasons why a policy should be developed.

Once the need for a policy has been reviewed with the board of education and the board has authorized the superintendent to work out the details and present them in writing, the door is open for establishing this task as a cooperative undertaking. Under the leadership of the superintendent or a member of his or her immediate staff, invitations can be extended to a cross section of individuals who have an interest in the proposed policy or who will be affected by it at a later time. They can be asked to serve on a committee for developing the

policy, knowing that their recommendations will be subject to board of education acceptance, rejection, or modification.

The members of such a committee might consist of representatives of the board of education, administrators, teachers, parents, and other community residents. The committee should be large enough to produce a rich reservoir of pertinent ideas and information and small enough to permit a suitable arrangement for getting the job done. Not only should the committee have well-balanced representation, but it should also be made up of individuals who are seriously and constructively concerned with the promotion of public education.

The work of the committee calls for the gathering of information, ideas, and opinions about the needs and conditions to be met under the policy. It also calls for the determination of an appropriate rationale or statement of purposes, as well as a decision to act that is in keeping with the rationale or purposes. The committee may decide to outline the general means for implementing the policy decision or to define the essential elements constituting the framework for a detailed program in school–community relations. However the committee handles the content and style of the policy statement, the results should be expressed in writing and transmitted by the superintendent to the board of education for review and decision.

Distribution

After a policy statement has been adopted by the board of education, it should be made available on the school district's Web site. It also might be printed in an attractive leaflet or flyer for distribution to key internal and external audiences. Copies should go to all employees of the school system, to parents of all pupils in the system, and to a selected cross section of people in the community. In this way, the nature of the policy has a good chance of becoming common knowledge among the special publics in the community relations program.

Appraisal

In addition to the legislating of a policy in school and community relations, the board of education has a responsibility for appraising its effectiveness. It should require periodic reports from the superintendent in order to determine, first, whether the policy is being carried out as intended and, if so, whether the results are satisfactory. In accordance with the findings on these points, the board can decide to continue, amend, or repeal the policy.

GOALS AND STRATEGIES

With a sound school–community relations policy approved by the board of education, a wise school district moves on to determining goals sought and to selecting strategies to be employed in trying to reach them. Some districts are mandated by law to develop a strategic plan for a given period of time, perhaps five years. Part of this plan should cover internal and external communications and community relations. Moreover, community members should be on committees involved in developing a school district's strategic plan. This approach is considered the conventional approach to planning.

The Conventional Approach

The use of the conventional approach in program planning involves a number of important considerations and a logical sequence of procedures.

PROGRAM GOALS

Goals are expected results, such as what an organization wants its public to know, feel, or do about itself. Not only do they reflect the viewpoint of the policy statement but they also reaffirm the position taken in the stated philosophy and expected results of the school system.

Bagin and Gallagher give an example of program goals found in various school systems:

1. To develop intelligent public understanding of the school in all aspects of its operation
2. To determine how the public feels about the school and what it wishes the school to accomplish
3. To secure adequate financial support for a sound educational program
4. To help citizens feel a more direct responsibility for the quality of education the school provides

5. To earn the goodwill, respect, and confidence of the public in professional personnel and services of the institution
6. To bring about public realization of the need for change and what must be done to facilitate essential progress
7. To involve citizens in the work of the school and the solving of educational problems
8. To promote a genuine spirit of cooperation between the school and community in sharing leadership for the improvement of community life[2]

USING COMMUNITY DATA

At this point in the conventional planning process, attention should be directed at the findings of the sociological inventory, the analysis of the power structure, and the measurements of prevailing opinions and beliefs of various special publics regarding the schools and the educational program. These findings and their interpretation make it possible to block out areas in need of new and of continued treatment. For example, the data might show what additional information people would like to have about certain aspects of administration, special services, or instructional practices. They might indicate the channels through which communication can be carried on more successfully with given publics. Certainly, they can help to delineate areas of most concern to taxpayers and to parents. Long-term and short-term goals can be readily identified and the need for priorities established. It is likewise possible that the data may disclose what values people in the community hold, who makes certain kinds of decisions, and what the educational expectations of citizens are. Data that serve to identify these and other matters of concern are invaluable in working out an efficient and effective school–community relations program.

It is advisable to put in precise written style all of the needs, problems, gaps, and so forth that the data reveal. The more precisely the objectives are stated, the better will be the decisions made subsequently about strategies and the means to be used for dealing with them.

MODIFYING THE GOALS

The findings may also indicate that some of the stated goals are unrealistic and for practical reasons should be modified. For example, if apathy and ignorance are dominant characteristics of the population in regard to the school system and its educational policies, this condition will have to be changed before a working partnership can be established with the community. Or the findings may show that it would be more desirable to focus attention on the need for guidance, remedial reading, or corrective physical education than try to interpret the work of the board and the administrators to the public. By relating the findings to the goals, it is possible to determine what modifications, if any, should be made before strategies and means are considered.

At the same time, a distinction should be made between long- and short-term goals. Long-term goals are those that require continued effort over a period of time, perhaps several years, before they can be achieved. Such a goal might be gaining acceptance and understanding of an innovative program some months before a transition from the old to the new takes place. Short-term goals, on the other hand, are those calling for immediate action, such as apprising parents of the necessity for changing the bus schedule at the beginning of the next month, or conducting a three-month campaign for an increase in the tax rate. Short-term goals can be reached and disposed of in a relatively brief period.

STRATEGIES AND MEANS

After the goals have been defined and accepted, thought should be given to the strategies to be followed for achieving them. Those who are doing the planning need to not only identify what has to be done but also select the best possible way of doing it. For example, perhaps the broad line of action should be that of improving face-to-face relationships between school personnel and lay citizens in order to step up the dissemination of school information and correct some of the current misunderstandings about educational policies and practices. The implementation of this strategy would then call

for a fairly long-range and continuous effort employing such techniques as internal publications, simulated parent—teacher conferences, interpretation of pupil records, and the establishment of parent advisory committees.

If the goal is one of securing additional financial support in order to bring the educational program in line with the times, there may be alternative strategies to be considered, such as working through community leaders, working through a special citizen advisory committee, making the problem exclusively that of the parent– teacher association, or singling out special publics for a continuing exposure to the importance of additional support in terms of pupil and community welfare. The alternative selected or the combination of strategies to be used would dictate the techniques or means that offer most promise of reaching the goal.

The strategies and means available are influenced by the nature of the audience, the availability of funds and facilities, and the competence of personnel. For instance, an annual report in tabloid newspaper form might be good strategy in one community where the appeal of this kind of format is high, and poor strategy in another area where the appeal is low. If there is not enough money to make a broadside attack on a problem of hostile attitudes toward administrative personnel and distrust of the board of education, it may be necessary to tailor the activities to available resources or abandon the project entirely. Furthermore, school systems do not always have individuals with the knowledge and experience required to use sophisticated devices and equipment for communicating ideas and information to selected audiences. All of these considerations play a vital part in the determination of the strategies and means that are to be employed.

VARIATIONS OF THE CONVENTIONAL APPROACH

Public relations planners have further refined the conventional approach by giving added detail to the process. Anthony Fulginiti, an authority in public relations planning, divides it into two main sections, conceptualization and operationalization. He further breaks these sections into specific areas. For example, under conceptualization he includes goals, objectives, strategies, and tactics. Operationalization includes tasks, activities, agents, cost, and time.

Fulginiti's first step in planning is situation analysis, which he breaks into three parts: Learning, Thinking, and Planning. Tucked into all three of these activities is the need to conceptualize a challenge and to operationalize activities to meet that challenge.

In the LEARN stage, the school public relations counselor learns as much as possible about the issues through three specific activities:

- Recording the issues history. (Use this history as a benchmark to improve the situation, to avoid pitfalls, and to make certain everyone's collective impression of the issues is the same.)
- Collecting additional issues data. Time and activity change the facts of issues. Counselors use files, records, databases, e-mails, reports, and similar sources. At times, it might be necessary to conduct additional research to update the issues.
- Describing the issues as they actually exist. This is the all-important "real state" analysis, in which the counselor specifically describes and draws the starting line for the project.

In the real state analysis, the planner would interview the school district's top administrative team to gain their insights about their own district and like districts. Following this, the planner would interview experts and authorities about the issues. Then she or he would interview potential target audience members of the proposed plan.

In the THINK phase, the counselor pictures the issues as they should be. The planner describes the general ambition of the district from the viewpoints of the school board, superintendent, staff, community advisory committee, and other stakeholders, presumably in a symmetric process in which many with a vested interest in the district have a seat at the planning table. Five activities comprise the work in this phase:

- Identifying all important audiences or publics
- Fashioning messages appropriate for each audience
- Picking channels appropriate to the messages to carry them to the audience

- Calculating competition to the plan or constraints in audiences who might not support the district's activities
- Estimating resources necessary to do the job.

After completing these two phases, the school planner moves to complete the conceptual part of the plan—the PLAN phase. In this phase, the planner specifies goals, objectives, strategies, tactics, and measurement of achievement.

Conceptualization Goal—an expected result that may or may not be attained. The purpose of the plan, it is a target toward which the organization or school district is moving. It's often referred to as the desired outcome of a plan of action.
Example: Persuade the public to accept the board's decision on grade reconfiguration.

Objective—a specific, measurable subdivision of a goal; a benchmark that measures progress toward a goal. Objectives must be attained collectively for a goal to be reached. An objective tells what is to be accomplished.

Fulginiti and the Public Relations Society of America contend,

> Objectives must: (a) address the desired communication or **behavioral outcome;** (b) designate the **public or publics** among whom the behavioral outcome is to be recognized; (c) specify the expected **level of attainment** or accomplishment; and (d) identify the **time frame** in which those attainments or accomplishments are to occur.[3]

Example: To have 75 percent (level) of the parents (public) testify (behavior) by the end of the year (time frame) to the educational soundness of the board's decision to reconfigure the grade program.

Strategy—"The thoughtful, planned general approach to the tactics ultimately undertaken. Strategies do not indicate specific action to be taken to achieve objectives."[4]
Example: Provide opportunity for parents to personally investigate the merits of a grade reconfiguration.

Tactic—a specific way used to implement a strategy. It is the "how" of planning. The available money, other resources, and the scope of the job govern the number of tactics.
Example: Arrange tours of the school districts using the new grade reconfiguration.

In creating a school plan, it's important for communication planners to convert the elements of the public relations practices they are familiar with each day into the elements of a new plan. Here is an easy conversion table:

Public Relations Practice Elements	**Public Relations Plan Elements**
Issues	Goals
Audiences	Objectives
Messages	Strategies
Channels	Tactics

By following this conversion table, the school public relations counselor will make an efficient plan, which conveniently becomes a recognizable bridge to the other members of the school family.

Operationalization—To be truly operational, Fulginiti emphasizes that the plan should be divided into tasks and activities, with time, agent, and cost applied to each.
Example:
Task—Identify all the parents who will tour the districts.

Activities—Draft a letter inviting the parents on the tour. Have the letter typed, duplicated, and mailed.

Agent—Person responsible for carrying out an activity.

Cost—Where possible, list the cost of an activity.

Time—Give the dates on which the activity is to be carried out.

When all these are determined, Fulginiti develops a chart for all parts of the plan, but primarily the operational section. Across the top of the chart (Figure 4.1), he lists Activity, Agent, Cost, and Time. Underneath each word, he enters the appropriate information. Across the top of another page,

Activity	Agent	Cost	Time
1.1.1.1 Draft a letter inviting parents on the tour	Tom	- - - -	Jan. 3
1.1.1.2 Have letter typed & duplicated.	Harry	- - - -	Jan. 4–5
1.1.1.3 Address & stuff envelopes	Dick	- - - -	Jan. 4–5
1.1.1.4 Mail letters	Mailroom	$320	Jan. 6

Activity	Month January 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31
1.1.1.1	X
1.1.1.2	X X
1.1.1.3	X X
1.1.1.4	X

FIGURE 4.1 Examples of Format in Public Relations Planning.

he lists the numbers 1 through 31 for each day of a month. Down the left side, he places the number of the activity. Adjacent to it, he puts an × or a horizontal bar under the days when the activity is to take place.

Fulginiti's approach to planning emphasizes the need for research at every step of the process to ensure that the strategies, tactics, tasks, and activities taken are going to be productive. When his approach is followed, the final plan is very detailed, well thought out, and ready to be followed over a number of days or months. Fulginiti's process is excellent for short-term planning or for doing projects within a total school public relations program. Nevertheless, his techniques can be effective even if used in developing a total comprehensive community or public relations plan for a school district.[5]

COMMUNITY RELATIONS PLANNING

Every strategic plan should include an internal and external communication plan. If it doesn't, the person in charge of public relations needs to do one for her or his office, as well as for the district. Some strategic plans may imply the need for communications, but they do not outline specific communication activities between the administrator and the staff, students, and the community. All employees have a role in communicating internally and externally. Moreover, how well they communicate should be a required part of their periodic evaluation.

In the 1960s and 1970s, management by objectives (MBO) was popular with companies and organizations. Some educators adapted it to schools. Others tailored it and came up with a method that was better suited to their situations.

The basic concept of MBO is still valid: (1) determining objectives; (2) planning methods and processes to reach the objectives; and (3) implementing the plan. Some planning consultants claim strategic planning has now moved two or three steps beyond MBO.

Whatever the case may be, a wise school district should develop a districtwide community relations

program. It should be an explicit part of a strategic plan, if the district has one. If no such plan exists, the district still should develop an internal and external communication plan.

In such a plan, usually the superintendent develops his or her own internal and external communication objectives. They, in turn, become a part of each administrator's communication plan on which she or he is evaluated.

The district should have a computer procedure or a form for all professional employees to use to list their goals and objectives and e-mail or send them to their immediate supervisor prior to a conference, if one is needed to agree on the goals and objectives. This facilitates the task of defining what the individual will try to accomplish within the scope of her or his responsibilities and authority. And so, instead of a district community–public relations plan being developed exclusively by the communications coordinator with objectives and activities, all administrators have the responsibility in school communications and community relations.

Figure 4.2 provides some of the typical information than can be used or adapted to help school or program administrators evaluate their communication activities. It covers activities in

How frequently are school (or program) publications distributed to parents?

___ Weekly
___ Monthly
___ Quarterly
___ Other: _____

How often is the school (or program) Web site updated with new information?

___ Immediately: As soon as information is available
___ At least once a week
___ At least once a month
___ Irregularly/Infrequently
___ Not sure

How quickly do you or your staff respond to questions or concerns from parents and others?

___ Within 24 hours
___ Within 48 hours
___ Within one week
___ Not sure (no policy or not tracked)

Parent and community members have opportunities to share ideas and concerns about the school (or program) through (check all that apply):

___ Regular community meetings/forums
___ School (program) open house events
___ Parent–teacher organization
___ Advisory committees
___ School-based management
___ Online or telephone feedback programs
___ Other: _____

Volunteer programs for the school(program) include:

___ Senior citizen projects or activities
___ Business and/or community partnerships
___ Parent projects or activities
___ Other: _____

Training or in-service activities on communication roles and responsibilities are conducted for staff:

___ At least once a year
___ About every two years
___ Never
___ Not sure

When was the last time you surveyed parents or other key constituencies to assess their opinion about communication by your school (program)?

___ Within the past year
___ Within the past two years
___ More than two years ago
___ Never surveyed
___ Not sure

FIGURE 4.2 This instrument shows some of the typical information than can be used or adapted to help school or program administrators evaluate their communication activities.

Goal	Objectives	Activities	Evaluation
To develop a program of cooperation with community groups within the school district.	1. To identify *all* community groups.	1. Obtain group names from Chamber of Commerce. 2. Contact local libraries for list of groups. 3. Review telephone book for group names	Tabulation
	2. To gather information about *each* group.	1. Contact each group. 2. Get title, address, phone number, and names of officers. 3. Request information on structure and purpose of each group. 4. Categorize groups according to the nature of each. 5. Put information from #2, #3, and #4 in computer file.	Tabulation of completed group files
	3. To meet with 50% of the groups this school year.	1. Invite six community group residents or leaders to lunch each week. 2. Prepare school district handouts for luncheon meetings. 3. Prepare agenda for each meeting. 4. Get feedback on how the school district can better cooperate with the groups.	Tabulation of number of acceptances

FIGURE 4.3 An example of a partial school–community relations program.

some of the primary ways in which information is disseminated to and collected from key audiences. Figure 4.3 presents an acceptable format for stating goals and objectives. It is also followed by many planners in business and industry. In this example the objectives are essentially quantified. To facilitate measurement and evaluation, objectives are usually stated in terms like percentages, amounts, weights, ratios, numbers, time, and volume. If quantification has been tried without success, a descriptive statement is used that points out the circumstances that will result when the objective has been reached.

Usually, specific objectives fall into four broad types. The first type is known as *routine objectives* or those that recur annually. A second type is called the *problem-solving objective.* This type deals with a particular problem that it tries to eliminate or at least to explain. Generally, these objectives are different each year. A third type is referred to as the *creative objective.* Here the focus is on a new and different approach to something that may produce a new or expanded result. The last type is the *personal objective.* This represents effort that leads to the improvement of professional or managerial skills—a career growth.

Each of these objectives is followed then by the steps to be taken in accomplishing the objective.

PLANNING CHECKLIST

Good planning is nothing more than a way of determining where to go and how to get there in the most efficient and effective manner possible. However,

sometimes a yardstick is needed to measure the plan before it is finalized and put into action. In this way discrepancies may be discovered, omissions noted, and other weaknesses brought to the surface. Such a yardstick is the checklist suggested here. Although this checklist is quite comprehensive, it does not include the principles of communication; they are given in Chapter 6. But aside from these principles, the checklist summarizes the points made in the discussion thus far of the planning process.

- Program planning represents a process for implementing a legally adopted policy in school–community relations.
- The larger goals and specific objectives of the program are consistent with the philosophy of the school system and the laws of the state.
- The larger goals and specific objectives are stated in measurable terms to the extent possible.
- The strategies selected for attaining the objectives call for the involvement of members of various special publics when such involvement is feasible.
- A distinction is made in the plan between short- and long-term objectives.
- The objectives of the school–community relations program reflect an assessment of need or the gap discovered between what is and what should be.
- The program is planned and tailored to the nature of the school and the community with which it is identified.
- The communication channels selected for disseminating various kinds of information are appropriate for the audiences involved.
- The program calls for a continuing audit of the results it produces.
- Each individual having responsibility in the program knows exactly what he or she is trying to accomplish.
- The plan includes guides for resolving issues of emotional and intellectual concern to members of the community.
- Provision is made in the plan for long-range in-service education of the staff to the extent needed.
- Program strategies and activities are adapted to available human resources, funds, and facilities.

School PR Planning Is an Essential Ingredient for Strategic and Personal Success

School communication leader Susan Hardy Brooks sees school communication planning as critical to both program and personal success. Hardy Brooks has counseled executives on a range of leadership, strategic planning, marketing, and communications issues for nearly 30 years. Since starting her Oklahoma-based company in 1998, she has provided strategic counsel to more than 50 clients in the private, public, and nonprofit sectors. Hardy Brooks Public Relations provides strategic counsel to organizations on communications, public relations, marketing, and management issues. HBPR has worked with a range of private companies, nonprofit organizations, schools, and education-related agencies and associations, and specializes in strategic planning, branding, process improvement, and market research.

How important is school communications planning to the success of schools and those who lead them?

Public Relations planning is every school communicator's professional responsibility. One cannot function adequately on the job unless you take the time to plan.

Early in my career—probably the first two or three years in—I didn't have a communication plan. I found myself going in all directions and unable to say "no" to anything. Certainly my superintendent wasn't sure about what I should have been doing.

A lot of times, when you go into a school district, members of the leadership team need a public relations person but they really don't know why. So, it's really up to you to prove the value of communication and the value of your function. To do that, planning is absolutely essential. We are in an age where accountability is essential. If you don't have a plan it is impossible for you to be accountable.

So you see PR planning essential to strategic direction and communication accountability?

Having a plan gives permission to say "no" to things. It keeps you focused. If something is not on target with the district's strategic goals or priorities, then it shouldn't be pursued. Without a plan you don't have a framework in which to make these kinds of choices.

The first time I did a plan I was actually in a school district that did not have a strategic plan for the district. The work that I did on the school public relations plan actually earned me a seat at the table of influence. It was my ticket onto the leadership team.

If you do work in a school district that has a solid strategic plan, a communication plan allows you to demonstrate how what you do contributes to the overall goals of the organization.

A plan also gives you leverage for getting additional resources for communication needs. If you have a good solid plan you have the ability to make your case.

Getting a seat on the leadership team is easier said than done. You say that having a plan will help. But what else should aspiring educators do to become a part of that leadership team?

When you are new to a school system or new to education you often don't have the ability to say that if you're not a part of the leadership team you're not accepting a job. Later in your career you might have that ability. But in the beginning you need to earn a place on the leadership team.

The most obvious starting place is to begin to build trust in your judgment and abilities. There are several ways to do this. The first way is to begin to build a good working relationship with your superintendent or—in a larger school system—your direct supervisor. Think about how you can offer counsel. Ask about the issues that might be keeping that person up at night. Ask about their core areas of focus. Make sure you understand their personal and professional goals. Align yourself with their goals and the goals of the organization so that you are doing work that really matters.

I've often found that many times there is no one in the district—or few people in the district—who is taking a "big picture" view of things. I've also found it very helpful to bring leading-edge research and trends and issues that may affect the district to leaders in the school system. This can help to build perspective on important issues they face. This also can help you stay a couple of steps ahead of other school leaders, which is essential to being an effective public relations adviser and counselor.

The public relations role often is seen as linking the school district with external audience—but are you suggesting that it also should be a link to major issues and trends as well?

Exactly. There may not be another person on the staff who can bring this kind of outside insight or viewpoint to the school system's leaders.

It's also not enough just to have a trusting relationship with your superintendent. You have to build strong trusting relations with all members of the leadership team and with other key staff members.

One of the things I like to do when I start a new job is spend some time one-on-one with each of the key people in the organization. I ask them what they see as needs concerning school communication. I really take some time to listen and respond to the things they say.

Another important piece is simply following through on what you say you are going to do. One of the easiest ways to get into hot water and lose credibility with a leadership team is to not follow through on a commitment or a deadline or something you have said that you are going to do.[6]

Questions

1. A school board member says to you, a school administrator, "There's no need for a written policy on school–community relations. We have good relations with the citizens of the community." What points would you make to show the importance of a written policy on school communication?
2. Why is a formal communication plan important to a school–community relations program and its effectiveness?
3. As a new director of community relations of a school district, what initial steps would you take to begin to develop a communication plan for your school district? What points would you offer to stress the importance of a communication plan to your superintendent and other key administrators?

Readings

Austin, Erica, and Bruce Pinkleton, *Strategic Communication Management: Planning and Managing Effective Communication Programs,* 2nd ed. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum, 2006.

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories and Practices That Make a Difference.* Dubuque, IA: Kendal/Hunt, 2006.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Groom, *Effective Public Relations,* 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2008.

Hughes, Larry W., and Don W. Hooper, *Public Relations for School Leaders.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

Sergiovanni, Thomas J., Martin Burlingame, Fred S. Coombs, and Paul W. Thurston, *Educational Governance and Administration,* 6th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2008.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics,* 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2008.

Endnotes

1. New Jersey School Boards Association, NJSBA Model Policy "Concepts and Roles In Community Relations," *Critical Policy Reference Manual* (Trenton, NJ: The Association, February 2001), File Code: 1000/1010. Reprinted with permission.
2. Don Bagin and Donald R. Gallagher, *The School and Community Relations,* 8th ed. (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2005), p. 43.
3. Taken from correspondence in July 2006 with Anthony J. Fulginiti, Fellow/APR PRSA, Professor, Public Relations/Advertising Department, College of Communication, Rowan University, Glassboro, NJ. Also, from an unpublished paper "Conventions for Program Terminology Use," *Public Relation Society of America Accreditation Program* (New York: The Society, 1992), p. 7.
4. Ibid.
5. Ibid.
6. Taken from correspondence in November 2009 with Susan Hardy Brooks, Principal, Susan Hardy Brooks Public Relations, Oklahoma City, OK.

Chapter

5

Administering the Program

Setting up a school–community relations program means paying attention to organization and determining who is responsible for what. What is the role of the board of education? What do the superintendent and the administrative team need to do? How about the person appointed to be in charge of the operation? What kind of organizational plan will be developed? Which administrators and supervisors are responsible for which parts of the program? How much money will be allocated to the school–community relations effort? And an important component must be clearly outlined—the role of teachers and support staff.

THE BOARD OF EDUCATION

Board members must constantly remember that the schools are owned by the people—taxpayers. The community expects the children sent to the schools to learn effectively, and the community members pay the bills to keep the schools running. In most districts, people elect representatives to govern the schools they own. They should, therefore, be kept informed on a regular basis about how money is being spent and how effective the education being provided is.

How people feel, what they believe, and how they act toward the school, its officers, proposals, and programs can be summed up in the term *public opinion.* Public opinion is that intangible but powerful force in American life that influences all that is done in public affairs. A school board must know something about the nature of public opinion in order to run a good school system. If it fails to do what the public wants, sharp criticism follows. If it moves too far ahead of public opinion, it invites opposition. If board members confuse their own interests with those of the public, they often stir up resentment and conflict.

Every school board constantly faces the task of trying to satisfy all the people and groups in the community. This can never be done. But the board can be better prepared for reactions of various constituencies if it constantly measures public opinion and anticipates those reactions. Board members must recognize that the board is always subject to criticism by diverse elements of the population.

Many people see the schools personified in the board members themselves. Because the board is the governing body, the public often judges the school system on

From Chapter 5 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

the manner in which the board conducts itself. Therefore, in its relations with the public, a board has a number of important responsibilities.

Policy

The first thing that must be done before a program can be built is for a board to adopt a community relations policy. It is essential that this be put into writing and made available to the public and the profession; it puts a board on record as wanting to make education a collaboration between the school and the community. A policy is the basis for the superintendent and his or her staff to work out the details of the program for the board's approval. The policy statement can be short and somewhat simple. It should say what should be done and reasons for doing it. A clear-cut statement of this kind reduces the chances of misunderstanding, puts up a restraint against impulsive action, and serves as a guide in decision making. (Chapter 4 provides details on community relations policy development.)

Modeling Communication Externally

The board of education sets a better tone for the system when it consults with interested citizens and representatives of community groups on problems facing the schools. Interested citizens have much to contribute to the solution of problems facing a board. Although it can gain much from hearing the views of citizens, it is in no way bound by them. Moreover, those whose opinions are sought usually become strong and loyal supporters of the system. Good ideas and suggestions can also be obtained from groups that have interests in recreation, safety, health, library services, correction of physical handicaps in children, citizenship training, and the like. Consulting these people makes them partners in the job of education and helps to build many bridges of goodwill and understanding.

In daily contacts with people, the individual board members are both listeners and ambassadors of the school system. They have wonderful opportunities at family gatherings, through church activities, in fraternal orders, and in everyday business to talk constructively about the needs of the schools, the work of the teachers, and the hopes for the future. Through what they say and the way they say it, they can build a desire in people for better education for children (see Figure 5.1).

The following criteria (developed by the National School Public Relations Association) should be evident in any organization that is working to develop and achieve a strategic and comprehensive public relations program.

Governing Board: The governing board of the organization understands and models its policy-setting responsibilities on actions that are in the best interests of students and their learning.

- The board has adopted and ensures periodic review of a mission, goals, and objectives that have been developed with stakeholder involvement.
- The board has a code of conduct that includes modeling respect, civility, and integrity.
- Board members work with the superintendent and staff in relationships that are built on mutual trust and respect.
- The board understands and practices its role of setting clear policy direction and helps build a culture that supports the staff in its role in implementing and administering those policies.
- The board seeks input from organization stakeholders before developing policy and clearly communicates its actions and the reasons for them.

Reprinted with permission from *Raising the Bar for School PR: New Standards for the School Publication Profession*, a publication of the National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org), 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855.

FIGURE 5.1 School–Community Relations and the School Board

Modeling Communication Internally

The attitudes and actions of the school board affect the attitudes and actions of employees in the school system. The board should take an interest in the welfare of staff members and meet their needs before they become demands. It should recognize the

outstanding work of employees; they want recognition for jobs well done. Recognition makes them feel more important, more willing to work harder, and more loyal to the school system. Recognition can be given through letters of commendation, newspaper publicity, periodic banquets, release from teaching for special assignments, and so forth.

The board of education sets a better tone for the system when it consults with employees on problems facing the schools. Employees like to be consulted. They appreciate knowing that interest is taken in their ideas and that they are important to the school system. Personnel studies in industry have shown that production increases when workers are taken into the confidence of management and feel that they have some part in decisions that are made. The laws passed on collective bargaining in many states have forced a number of school boards to consult with employees on many matters. Those districts that have a history of consulting with employees on workload, sick leave, retirement, supply and equipment needs, discipline, curriculum revision, hiring of personnel, and so forth have found staff morale high, an improved educational program, and fewer and less severe confrontations with employees. With this relationship of staff to administration, everybody is better able to get down to the business of educating the children of a community.

The board should also invite teachers to give presentations on their work at public board meetings. In other words, it should show a real interest in the work being done by employees.

Relationship to Parents

Board members often receive complaints about the school from parents. The manner in which they handle these complaints has a great deal to do with the effectiveness of the school administration. Some board members attempt to answer a complaint themselves without directing it to the appropriate administrator, or they may bypass the superintendent and go directly to the teacher or principal involved. Both of these approaches should be avoided. When a complaint is received from a parent, a board member should always ask if the parent has contacted the principal of the school or the superintendent.

It is wise for each board to develop and adopt a policy on how complaints are to be handled in a school system. Once adopted, this policy should be distributed to all parents and publicized in the newspapers and at parent–teacher meetings. In this way parents will know to whom to complain, and board members will understand their role in handling complaints.

Communication Influences Board Effectiveness

School communication is an essential factor in school board effectiveness, according to the National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA).

According to NSPRA Vice President at Large—School Boards Focus Tom Gentzel (Executive Director, Pennsylvania School Boards Association) and NSPRA Associate Director Karen H. Kleinz, successful school boards:

- Take responsibility for communicating with and engaging their communities.
- Recognize communication as an important management function and hold their administration accountable.
- Develop a strategic communication plan tied to their district's mission, goals, and objectives.
- Speak with one clear voice on behalf of the students and schools.
- Establish a culture of effective, two-way communication and engagement with all stakeholders.
- Demonstrate accountability through effective school governance standards supported by effective communication.

Source: Adapted from *The Communication Factor in Board Effectiveness: Responsible Communication Builds Strong Relationships.* Retrieved from http://www.nspra.org/files/docs/sixtipsforsmartschoolboards.pdf. Copyright 2008 by the National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org), 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855. Reprinted with permission.

Relationship with the Administration

The separation of responsibility between the school board and the administration is not always recognized by the board. Some members have the mistaken belief that it is their duty to actually administer the schools. Some boards spend time dealing with administrative details which should be the responsibility of the superintendent. When boards attempt to manage the schools, they fail to give the necessary attention to their major responsibility, that of seeing that the schools are run properly.

Some boards consider themselves a group of administrators, with the professional staff as its servants. This is a very poor attitude, and it results in a lack of cooperation with the administrative staff when the closest cooperative consideration of issues and problems by the board and the superintendent and his or her staff is necessary. The board and the administration must work in separate areas cooperatively if a school system is to function properly.

THE SUPERINTENDENT'S ROLE

Current conditions in community life have added new meaning to the superintendent's role as the leader in building constructive bridges between the school as a social institution and the people who own and support it. Traditionally, the superintendent's role has centered on such activities as working with the parent–teacher association, establishing rapport with civic groups, becoming involved in community improvement projects, encouraging lay participation on school study committees, supervising the preparation and publication of news stories and literature concerning various phases of the educational program, handling the more serious complaints and criticisms of school policies and practices, and trying generally to bring the school and community into a closer and more harmonious relationship. Although these are desirable activities that have a place in any school–community relations program, they are not broad enough in concept to prepare for problems arising from the growth and expansion of the educational enterprise and the changes occurring in social, political, and economic life.

In both large and small school systems, the superintendent is faced today with strong demands from organized groups often advocating for special interests. Among other things, such groups want a larger and more decisive voice in policy determination, including such things as more functional curricular offerings, improved food services for undernourished children, better racial representation among administrative and instructional personnel, expansion of special services in child and family welfare, lower costs for education, accountability for the educational outcomes produced in students, and increased community use of school facilities. And lined up opposite each demand are powerful and influential groups maintaining a diametrically different position.

Under these circumstances superintendents become mediating agents in matters relating to public education. They must try to reconcile individual and social values, negotiate conflicts between lay and professional interests, and divert the influence of powerful groups into constructive channels. This role calls for a high level of social insight and considerable skill in dealing with people. In reality, superintendents are cast by circumstances into the role of educational diplomats and must spend much of their time dealing with individuals and groups whose influence and power help to shape the quality of educational opportunity in the community.

While carrying out their role as educational diplomats, superintendents must likewise attend to the responsibilities of the office on the more formalized aspects of the school–community relations program. In this regard they are central to developing and putting into practice the several strategies and activities called for in the program. Even though they delegate a substantial part of their responsibility to members of their administrative team, nevertheless they set the tone of the program, stimulate the effort that goes into it, and make the critical decisions it requires. *Unless they show dynamic leadership in pointing the way and setting the pace, it is doubtful the program will be successful.*

As program leaders, they have certain functions to discharge. Their all-pervasive function as heads of their school systems is that of maintaining, facilitating, and improving the educational opportunity for all children and youth in their districts. And correlative to that end are their functions in community relations, decision making, communicating, influencing, coordinating, and evaluating.

Translated into specific types of action, these functions break down into such performance patterns as the following:

- Developing a basic policy for encouraging and expanding constructive relationships between the school and the community
- Assuming initiative in the planning of processes and procedures for keeping the board, staff, and public well informed on school matters
- Helping all personnel connected with the school system become sensitive to the meaning and importance of their contacts in the community
- Ensuring the establishment and maintenance of open communication channels within the school system and between the system and the public
- Developing the structure and working relationships essential to the discharge of community relations responsibilities by administrative staff members and others
- Working with key groups and influential individuals in the community on significant educational policies and problems
- Seeing that key groups and influential individuals are supplied with facts and information that will challenge them to act on behalf of education
- Taking leadership in providing the opportunities required for districtwide involvement of citizens in programs for educational improvement
- Putting board and staff members in contact with groups and individuals whom they are most likely to influence on behalf of better education and with whom a two-way system of communication may be developed
- Seeing that the evaluative aspects of the school and community relations program are carried out and that findings and their interpretations are submitted for review by the board of education
- Bringing together members of the administrative system and utilizing their experience, knowledge, perceptions, and skills in decision making with regard to various facets of the school–community relations program.

These performance patterns vary among superintendents depending largely on district size and outside pressures. In smaller districts that lack specialized personnel, a superintendent may assume almost total responsibility for technical aspects of the program. He or she may prepare news releases, pamphlets, parent newsletters, radio scripts, details of open-house events, and direction of bond and millage campaigns, among others. Though the acceptance of such responsibilities is commendable, usually the more important aspects of community relations are either overlooked or disregarded. These include the development of basic policy, goal definition, and balanced program execution. In larger districts outside pressures sometimes build to a point where the superintendent delegates his or her principal administrative tasks to a deputy and devotes his or her time almost exclusively to the demands of the situation.

THE ADMINISTRATIVE TEAM

The superintendency has become complicated enough so that those who hold the position depend on the services of specialists in meeting their leadership responsibilities. In fact, the superintendency may be viewed today as more of a team arrangement than a single position. However, there are no standard patterns concerning the composition of the team. It varies with the interest and special abilities of the superintendent, competencies of his or her staff, and community pressures on the school system.

In large school systems the team may consist of the superintendent, deputy superintendent, associate superintendents, and district superintendents with heads of divisions and principals being invited to meetings from time to time. Or the larger administrative staff, including principals, may be broken into a number of smaller groups for discussion of problems and exchange of ideas on a scheduled basis. In other districts, the team may be made up of the superintendent; directors of instruction, pupil personnel services, business management, staff personnel, research, planning, and school–community relations; and a representative sampling of school principals.

The team performs two important functions. First, it provides a superintendent with information

and ideas that enable him or her to keep the school and community program in proper perspective and to generalize about the larger aspects of it. And, second, it brings the expertise of members to bear on the development of program details and operational procedures.

Besides their role as perceptive generalists, superintendents may serve on the team as specialists in one or more task areas of administration. It is common to find them wearing the cloak of building specialists, business specialists, community relations specialists, or instructional specialists. In some instances they retain the same specialties they had prior to becoming heads of their school systems. Occasionally, they are forced to assume a specialist's role because of the system's size or the lack of qualified personnel. But as team members they usually pursue a specialty that is appropriate to their training and experience.

DIRECTOR OF SCHOOL–COMMUNITY RELATIONS

Directors of school–community relations are members of the administrative team in many school systems. They are members because of the strategic position they hold and the nature of their assignment. This will be evident in the discussion that follows regarding their status at present and the qualifications required for fulfilling their role successfully.

Title of Position

Directors of school–community relations have a variety of position titles. The titles used most frequently are director, specialist, coordinator, or manager of communications; director, specialist, officer, or coordinator of public information; director of community relations; and public relations director. In addition to these titles, there is a smattering of titles such as publication specialist or coordinator, director of public affairs, director of community services, and marketing specialist.

These titles represent a shift in concept that has taken place over the years from such words as *public relations* to *community relations or services, communications,* and *information.*

Administrative Level

The position of director of school–community relations varies somewhat in terms of the administrative level at which it is placed. Only the largest school systems designate this officer as an assistant or associate superintendent with line authority. Usually the person holds a staff position and his or her title carries the word *director, coordinator, officer,* or *specialist* in many instances.[1] As a staff member, the officer reports directly to the superintendent, though in some school districts he or she reports to some other administrator, such as an assistant superintendent, an associate superintendent, or a deputy superintendent.

With the public becoming more sensitive to educational costs and to what goes on in schools, it's imperative that the public relations person be a member of the superintendent's cabinet. He or she can help the district administrators understand how a decision will be perceived by the public. Likewise, if the public relations person is to explain, defend, or interpret school district policies properly to the public, he or she must be involved in their development from conception to birth. And finally, this person, with an understanding of citizen attitudes, needs to be a part of the cabinet if the group is to understand thoroughly the feelings of the community.

Size of System

The question frequently arises as to how large a system should be in terms of student enrollment to justify the employment of a full-time director of school–community relations. A generally accepted rule of thumb is that a full-time director should be employed when student enrollment is in excess of 5,000. Some school districts with 3,000 students, however, have a full-time director of school–community relations. Size, however, is just one criterion. The nature of the community is another. A stable 7,000-student community may not need a full-time director, whereas a problem-ridden 3,000-student community may.

A number of school districts have expanded the office and have given the full-time director all the responsibilities that are directly or indirectly related to communications. Aside from the usual public and

community relations duties, these responsibilities would include employee communications, community education, adult education, district printing and graphics, editing all publications from district schools, and supervision of telephone operators, among other responsibilities. To meet such responsibilities some offices of communications employ 20 to 30 people.

In districts that do not group all communications responsibilities in one office, the decision to hire a qualified person to head the school–community relations program is contingent on factors other than student enrollment. Some of these factors probably are the financial condition of the district, the nature of existing community relations problems, and the board members' and superintendent's conceptualization of program requirements.

Functions and Responsibilities

Directors of school and community relations have six basic functions to perform in trying to reach the objectives of the program. One or two more could be added but their addition would depend on how the position is viewed by the board of education and the superintendent of schools. The term *function* describes something that is done to facilitate the realization of the objectives for which the program is designed. The functions of the director are *research, advisement, planning, coordination, communication,* and *evaluation.* They make up the structure or system within which the details of the program are selected and carried out. From this point of view these functions are the constants of the program—they do not change. What makes one program different from another is not the functions but rather the activities or variables that come under them. For example, advising the school board and superintendent should be a permanent task of directors, but the nature and subjects of their advisement may differ markedly from one system to another. The same is true regarding evaluation of program results. Here the function remains constant, but the way it is implemented may range considerably in what is done and how carefully it is done.

There are several reasons why directors' activities vary among school systems. In some districts the perception of their role by superiors is broad and balanced, and in others it is narrow and restrictive. Often district size influences the nature and scope of their activities. In small districts, for example, little or nothing may be done with the research function. Sometimes in larger school systems some of their activities will be handled by line personnel or even the superintendent. The amount of money available for community relations is a strong determinant of how directors spend their time and what they do. The nature of their work is likewise influenced by the kinds of problems facing the district and the image of the school system held by residents of the community.

Against the background of functions, several school systems throughout the country have worked out statements describing the responsibilities of full-time directors of school and community relations. These statements represent not only the conceptualization of their role in a particular school system, but also the nature and scope of the program they are expected to develop and put into practice. In one school district, for example, the director of communications' major activities are as follows:

1. Interpret policy of the board of education and the program of the school district to the public.
2. Edit the district's staff newsletter.
3. Plan and develop online content as well as internal and external publications.
4. Supervise and assist the Supervisor of Communications with news media relations and with public affairs programming on the district's cable television channels.
5. Facilitate staff recognition programs.
6. Assist school personnel and board personnel in planning public participation events.
7. Provide school–community relations consulting service to board of education members, central office administrators, and school principals.
8. Help assess public attitude and keep appropriate school personnel informed.
9. Serve as a source of information to individuals from the community regarding school matters.
10. Serve as a consultant in the preparation of informational materials prepared by school personnel.

11. Serve as assistant clerk of the board of education and assist with agenda preparation, as needed.
12. Provide effective leadership in implementing the school district's commitment to full compliance with civil rights legislation, rules, and regulations.

A somewhat different type of statement was prepared for the supervisor of information for another school district. It describes the office's major responsibilities as follows:

1. Counsels superintendent of schools, board of education, and others as needed, in matters relating to public relations.
2. Produces district newsletters, brochures, and Web materials (editor, writer, photographer).
   a. Staff monthly newsletter on board of education actions
   b. Staff quarterly newsletter
   c. Monthly newsletter to all parents
   d. Annual report to all residents and businesses in the community
   e. Periodic brochures as needed, usually two or three a year
3. Prepares all district news releases and writes magazine articles.
4. Counsels school personnel on writing manuscripts and approves material written by school personnel if it mentions the district personnel, programs, methods, materials, or other related information associated with the school district.
5. Approves requests to use students and facilities for "production" purposes not covered under civic center requests, and acts as liaison between the school district and photographers, film and television companies, and other media.
6. Represents the school district as spokesperson to the media.
7. Attends all regular board of education meetings to assist media.
8. Answers general inquiries about the school district and is the contact person in other phases of community relations.

In systems that employ a part-time director of school and community relations, the position is given a range of titles. In many instances, this individual is a central office administrator who reports directly to the superintendent of schools.

The responsibilities assigned to the part-time director are associated mostly with the use of online and mass communication. They include handling the development of online content and information; collecting news and preparing news releases; writing community newsletters and staff newsletters, as well as leaflets and brochures; developing video and audio material for community relations projects; producing speeches and reports; and performing editorial services for members of the central office staff. In addition, the part-time director may be responsible for handling citizen inquiries and complaints, a speakers' bureau, and millage and bond campaigns. And some part-time directors prepare the superintendent's annual report, establish contacts with civic groups, disseminate information on federal and state projects, and direct special-event undertakings, such as American Education Week activities or school open-house events.

Professional Qualifications

More and more school systems have established formal requirements for the position of director of school and community relations. One school district has as its requirements graduation from a four-year college with a specialization in English and participation in specialized workshops, seminars, and conferences pertaining to community education programs and school public relations. Course work in journalism and graphic arts is desirable but not required. Besides education, the director must have administrative ability, a broad knowledge of the school district and community, leadership skills to administer the community education program, an ability to establish effective relations with sources of information and public news media, an ability to compose interesting news and feature stories about school topics, an understanding of the role of public relations in the school setting, an ability to organize effective procedures for dealing with requests for facility use, and editorial skills. The position also includes responsibilities of board secretary and director of community education, with related required qualifications.

Another school district's requirements called for the director to have a bachelor's degree, with study in the area of communications, including such courses as public relations, journalism, speech, marketing, advertising, graphic arts, radio, television, and writing. Furthermore, the director must have had study in at least two of the following areas: behavioral sciences, education, or related disciplines. His or her previous experience must include full-time employment in a public relations responsibility either with an educational organization or one outside the area of education or full-time employment in mass communications with news, editorial, or program responsibilities. As special requirements for the position, he or she must have an

> understanding of the role of education in a free society, the local program, and the responsibility of social institutions to communicate with their publics; understanding of the communication process, which requires a two-way flow of information between the school system and its internal and external publics; ability to collect and interpret information from and for the various publics involved, to write clearly, and to get along well with others; high ethical standards involving integrity, respect for confidences, and loyalty; access to complete information about district problems and plans, including immediate access to research information of the district, and the right to initiate or suggest needed research studies.

Perhaps the most complete statement of standards for educational public relations professionals is the following one adopted and published by the National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org):

STANDARDS FOR EDUCATIONAL PUBLIC RELATIONS PROFESSIONALS

A skilled school public relations professional performs essential communication functions to help improve the programs and services of an educational organization. While qualifications can vary depending on the sophistication of the work required, all practitioners should meet certain minimum standards.

General Standards

An understanding of and commitment to the role and social responsibility of public relations and communications for all educational institutions, organizations, and agencies in a democratic society.

A commitment to improving educational opportunities for all.

A commitment to professional performance and ethical behavior as described in the National School Public Relations Association's Ethics for Educational Public Relations.

Professional Preparation

A bachelor's degree from an accredited university or—for department leaders—experience in the field is a minimum requirement.

Abilities and Aptitudes

A comprehensive working knowledge of internal and external public relations and communications programs for an educational organization.

A mastery of communications skills.

An understanding of the importance of two-way communication between an organization's staff and its many publics and audiences, and the ability to carry it out.

A thorough knowledge and understanding of communications theory and research.

An ability to provide expertise and advice to top management.

Professional Growth and Development

Standards for professional growth and development require that educational public relations and communications professionals continue to refine their skills and expand their knowledge by:

Maintaining membership and participation in the National School Public Relations Association and other professional public relations associations and societies.

Pursuing professional accreditation.

Participation in public relations seminars, conferences, workshops, and institutes.

Pursuing additional study beyond a bachelor's degree.

Reading, researching, writing, speaking, and consulting in education, public relations, and communications.[2]

Communication Specialists

Except in small school systems where it would be difficult to justify the expense, directors of community relations need the services of one or more trained communication specialists. Without such help it is virtually impossible for them to undertake a comprehensive program or to achieve established objectives. They must instead eliminate all but the most critical parts of the program and then concentrate their efforts on those activities they handle best. A glance at the nature of programs in school systems having only a director indicates that attention centers principally on such things as preparation and release of news stories, development of newsletters and pamphlets, and the maintenance of relationships with some community groups.

Where directors have the right to employ professional staff, practice shows that they usually select individuals with a background of preparation and experience in editing, writing, and use of online and mass media. Many come from journalism, public relations, or broadcasting. Some, however, have specialties in commercial art or graphic and digital design. If the system is large enough, the office of director may be divided into sections such as an information section, Web and publications section, community relations section, and community education section, with a supervisor placed in charge of each one. A substantial portion of the director's time then goes into the administration of these sections.

PLANS OF ORGANIZATION

In general, three plans of organization are used to place responsibility for community relations activities and to facilitate the operation of the program. They may be described as centralized, decentralized, and coordinated plans.

Centralized Plan

A centralized plan is one in which responsibility for the program is centered almost entirely in the chief administrative officer and his or her immediate line and staff associates. Those who support this plan of organization point out that the superintendent is the person best known to the people of the community and is looked to for leadership in matters affecting the welfare of children. Superintendents are expected to supply information on the conditions, needs, and practices of the schools. They enjoy many contacts with important citizens that enable them to keep their fingers on the pulse of public opinion. As a result they know when it is opportune to propose new policies and suggest changes in older ones. Specific assignments can be made and responsibility fixed more easily in the plan. Moreover, the staff is readily available for consultation. The example set by superintendents and their associates can have a wholesome influence on all employees in the system, who may show more interest in their own relations with the public.

Thus in a small school system, the superintendent engages in a variety of activities for interpreting the work of the school and earning the goodwill of the public. For example, he or she may give talks before many groups, join different organizations, participate in community affairs, supply news copy, prepare printed materials, and handle complaints received in the system. He or she may also consult with teachers on community problems and urge them to improve their relations with pupils, parents, and other citizens.

In larger systems, superintendents delegate much of this responsibility to other persons. Usually they will delegate it either to an assistant superintendent in line of authority or to a director of school and community relations with staff status. The program operates at the top of the system, with comparatively slight attention being given to individual building principals and their staffs. Instead of focusing on the personal side of community relations as an essential part of the total program, emphasis is

placed heavily on community group relations, relationships with the community power structure, contacts with commercial media, and the preparation of materials for media distribution.

Although this type of centralized arrangement is found in many large school systems, it has serious weaknesses. The most serious is the fact that good community relations can never be achieved solely through the office of the superintendent and his or her immediate associates. They may do excellent work through their personal contacts in the community and through the preparation and distribution of printed materials, but these activities are scarcely effective enough to offset the negative influence of unsatisfactory relationships between individual building personnel and pupils, parents, graduates, and others.

Decentralized Plan

In a decentralized plan, responsibility for the program is centered almost entirely in the building principal and the individual school is regarded as the natural unit for community relations. This is a common plan in many school systems today. There is justification for it. As an educational leader, the building principal is in a strong position to foster friendly relations with the school's publics on a neighborhood and area basis. Principals are close to the people and have a more intimate understanding of their needs and interests than do the administrative-supervisory officials at the top of the system. Principals can work with the instructional and noninstructional staff in establishing need for the program and conduct in-service training through the everyday situations which arise in the school. Excellent media are available for keeping parents informed and educating people in the service area about instructional aims and practices. Through the principal's efforts, the building can become a community center and activities carried on for the improvement of community living.

Though the decentralized plan is excellent in many respects, it is open to criticism in others. It usually means a neglect of community relations by central administrative officials and a failure on their part to reinforce the efforts of school principals and their staffs. Without central administrative leadership and direction, some principals are incapable of developing sound programs or else they are unwilling to take the initiative. Nor does this plan function successfully in systems replete with dissension among staff and with strong conflict between staff and administration.

Coordinated Plan

A coordinated plan is one in which community relations responsibilities of central administrative officers and building principals are fitted together into an articulated unit. The work of those at the top is planned to complement and reinforce that of the principals and their staffs. Each knows what is expected of the other. Central administrators, especially the director of school and community relations, serve as resource persons in assisting the principal and members of his or her staff. The administrator's advice and special knowledge may be requested in such matters as preparing leaflets and brochures for parents, resolving complaints and criticisms, gathering and writing news stories, and appraising the effectiveness of certain program activities. In many phases of the individual building program, central administrators are expected not only to perform advisory functions but also to share responsibility with the principal and his or her staff. They may share responsibility, for example, in arranging contacts with the news media, selecting a representative panel of citizens for advisory purposes, and assessing the nature of public opinion on particular issues in the attendance area served by the individual school.

In the coordinated plan, the building principals have broad discretionary powers. But they must use them within the structure of the district's philosophy and objectives of education and its policy on community relations. In their leadership role, they involve teachers and other staff members in program planning and operation, beginning with the identification of needs through the evaluation and dissemination of results. And in making special assignments, they try to gear them to the interests and competencies of staff members. In their role as communicators, the principals explain all facets of the program to building

personnel and interpret the educational enterprise and its problems to students, parents, people in the school system, and residents in the immediate attendance area.

In some large secondary schools today the principal is assisted in his or her work by either a full- or part-time community relations specialist. This person may act as a liaison with community groups, handle news media contacts, prepare news stories and spot news announcements, edit internal and external publications, involve parents and others as resource persons for classes and committees, prepare and direct tours and observations for visitors, organize special advisory groups, and serve as a clearing agent for inquiries.

If the coordinated plan is organized carefully and the division of responsibilities is understood clearly, it offers an excellent opportunity for developing a comprehensive and well-balanced program that should produce satisfactory results.

RESPONSIBILITIES OF OTHER TEAM MEMBERS

Other central administrative team members, besides the superintendent and the director of community relations, have definite responsibilities in the community relations program. These members include assistant superintendents, district superintendents, and directors of special divisions and departments. Their community relations responsibilities cover the reception and treatment of office visitors, the effect of team activities on the community and district employees, the proper handling of telephone calls, the skillful management of correspondence, and the maintenance of satisfactory contacts with professional and noncertificated personnel within the system. They also serve in a resource capacity to building principals, as was pointed out in the discussion of the coordinated plan of organization. Through contacts with business leaders and others in the community, they have many chances to interpret the school and to create channels for a two-way flow and exchange of ideas and information.

These administrative members are expected in some systems to prepare their own interpretive materials, using the services of the community relations director's staff and special offices of the school system such as that of the audiovisual director. They are also expected to furnish information requested by the community relations director and to apprise him or her of any significant happenings that come to their attention. And in a number of districts, they are assigned responsibility for specific program activities like television programs, sociological studies, special events, and the preparation and application of evaluative instruments.

BUDGETARY PROVISIONS

How much money should a school system spend for public relations personnel, services, and media? Administrators and school board members frequently ask this question. They want to know approximately what their school system will have to pay for a good public relations program. No method has been discovered for calculating this figure, nor is there likely to be one in the future. The cost will naturally vary with the amount of work to be done and the willingness of the system to do it. Therefore, the only practical answer to the question is to first build the program and then determine how much money must be appropriated to operate it.

Determining how much money a program will cost is not easy because many of the activities are interwoven with regular services. However, many methods have been advocated for arriving at a cost figure. One is to take a fixed percentage of the total school budget, say one-half of one percent, and allocate this amount of money for program operation. Another is the project-appropriation method, whereby the budget is based on the estimated cost of the projects planned for the year. A third method is followed in systems having a public relations office with a director in charge. The budget is restricted to this office alone and worked out in the same way as the budgets for research, pupil personnel, accounting, adult education, and similar departments performing special services. Still another method is to make a careful analysis of the program for the year and estimate how much money the board of education must provide. The amount needed can be presented in a separate budget statement or it can be included in the budg-

cts of the several departments and units of the system having responsibilities in the program. A problem in public relations budgeting is determining just what should be included. So many activities in a school district can be considered public or community relations activities, such as any external correspondence, report cards, the appearance and printing of stationery, telephone costs of all offices, board meetings, appearance of buildings and transportation equipment, special events, community education, adult education, and so forth. Obviously, in many districts budgeting for these activities can't be included totally under the school–community relations section of a school budget. In some larger districts it may well be.

More specifically, the budgets of many school–community relations offices would include such considerations as salaries, telephone costs, postage, stationery, office supplies, printing and publications, graphic supplies, memberships in organizations, travel, conferences, and subscriptions to professional publications and local papers; equipment such as cameras, audiovisual items, computers, and printers; and outside services such as graphic artwork, photographs, mailing services, online services, and clipping services. If any special event is the total responsibility of the school–community relations office, it should also be included in the department's budget.

STAFF MEMBERS

Unfortunately, in many school systems there is no organized community relations program. In these situations, some employees sense a responsibility to relate to the public and in many cases do a good job. This group unfortunately is in the minority. Even in districts in which there is a community relations program, there are often staff members who do not know what to do because they haven't been informed by their supervising administrator. If staff members knew exactly what was expected of them, they would undoubtedly carry out their part of a community relations program. Too often a plan is implemented at the administrative level and much lip service is given to it as well as a low priority, and it never becomes a functional reality. Staff members who are enthusiastic about relating the school story to the public are not involved in the plan or given an outline of their responsibilities and duties. Other staff members may be inadvertently creating a poor image for the school because they lack an understanding of good community relations techniques. A community relations workshop or other in-service training will help all employees understand their community relations role in the school and provide them with information and methods of relating to the public. An aggressive administrator not only sees to it that employees understand their community relations role and responsibility but also gives them assistance and direction in carrying out the role.

GENERAL COMMUNITY RELATIONS RESPONSIBILITIES

Regardless of the position held in a school system, all employees have at least three general community relations obligations or responsibilities: Do a good job in carrying out daily work, know the school system and know the community. Prior to being hired, prospective employees should be apprised of these obligations.

Do a Good Job

It is not uncommon for school employees to feel that what they are doing often goes unnoticed. But it is important to consider the number of students who observe what school employees do each day and relate their observations to their parents or friends. Students are quick to notice how school employees are carrying out their daily work, particularly in the case of teachers.

Someone once said that a good school–community relations program begins in the classroom. It might be added that an effective community relations program is also maintained there. If teachers are doing a poor job of teaching, the image of that school in the community will likewise be poor. Teachers have an obligation to do the best job of teaching possible. Essentially this is what schools are all about, and the public understands this very clearly.

Noninstructional personnel, as members of the educational team, should be aware of the effect their daily performance has on the image of the school in the community. Students who visit the school office can quickly see if office workers are performing their duties well and efficiently. The bus driver who drives carelessly, the custodian who does not clean the building well, and the cafeteria worker who delays the food line are all known in many homes in the community, and they cause many local citizens not to think well of the school.

Know the School System

Responsible administrators should keep employees informed about the school system by providing them with information or sources of helpful information. Each employee, in turn, should make an effort to learn more about his or her place of employment. Unfortunately, this is not always the case. Either out of apathy or by design, employees make very little effort to learn more about their school district; they do not realize that to many people in the community, they are the only contact with the school. Citizens look to the employees for many answers to questions about the school. When an employee is unable or unwilling to provide information to a citizen about the school district, the image of the school suffers.

Know the Community

The third general obligation all school employees have is to know the community in which they are working. This responsibility falls primarily on teachers. Usually, the noninstructional employees are residents of the community with a reasonable although not necessarily thorough understanding of the local area.

Teachers sometimes obtain positions in a district and make little effort to understand or become knowledgeable about the community. Often they live in another area and feel they have no need to be familiar with the community that supports the school. The days are gone or are numbered when teachers are required to live in the district in which they teach, but this does not excuse them from the responsibility of knowing something about the community and becoming active in it.

SPECIFIC COMMUNITY RELATIONS RESPONSIBILITIES

No community relations program or plan of organization will function successfully until employees know exactly what they are expected to do and understand the limits of their authority. While the general community relations responsibilities usually apply to all employees in all school districts, specific responsibilities may differ between one system and another. Those described here may be tailored to the needs of a particular school system.

Teacher

The teacher is a frontline interpreter of the school system through daily contacts with members of the different publics, particularly the students. In this capacity teachers have a number of specific community relations responsibilities:

Do as good a job of teaching as possible. The backbone of any community relations program is the teaching job done in the classroom.

Work constantly for good relations with pupils, parents, and people in the community. Much of this book is related to working with these three groups. It offers some ideas on working with pupils, outlines the partnership between the parents and the schools, and suggests ways of working for good relations with the community.

Work cooperatively with colleagues. Few school systems can attain or hold the confidence of the community if there is internal discord. Successful schools and teachers have learned that they must live in some degree of harmony if they are to gain the support of the community and maintain educational effectiveness.

Participate in community affairs. It is important that the teacher voluntarily take an active person-to-person role in the community if the school–community relations program is to be effective. By virtue of background, education, and experiences, he or she should be able to make a contribution to the community.

Work closely with the director of community relations. If a school system employs a

director of community relations, he or she, working through principals, can be a great help to the teachers. Usually, the director brings to the position a background that enables him or her to see the community relations value of classroom activities, which may be overlooked by the teacher. But the director of community relations needs to be informed of the activities the teachers are planning over an extended period of time to make a judgment on their community relations value.

Cooperate in the development of an individual community relations program for a school. Even though a school system may develop a total community relations program, it falls upon each school to develop that part that is unique to the individual building. This possibly calls for a committee of administrators, teachers, parents, and even students to suggest activities that will help the school and the community understand each other better. However, some school principals may choose a method other than a committee to develop a community relations program.

Specialists

Specialists are those professionals in the school whose services in no way reduce class size. Usually included among specialists are subject specialists, counselors, school psychologists, home visitors or social workers, librarians, nurses, doctors and dentists, and tax collectors. Many of their community relations responsibilities parallel those of the teachers. Others are unique.

Subject specialists. This group includes the coordinators and staff members who have specialized in a subject area such as music, art, languages, and so forth. Their community relations responsibilities include those of a teacher plus the responsibility of keeping their colleagues and students informed of the activities and developments in their subject field.

Counselors. Like teachers, the guidance counselors work closely with the pupils, the parents, other staff members, and the community. They have a major responsibility in making sure the relationship with these various publics continues to result in better education for the students and continued support of the schools.

School psychologists. Psychologists' relations with the various publics are similar to those of a guidance counselor; likewise, many of the responsibilities are the same. Much of what has been suggested in the way of activities to promote confidence and understanding of the school apply to the school psychologists.

Home visitors or social workers. Many school systems are fortunate to have a home visitor. Often this person is the only contact between the home and the school, a fact that emphasizes the importance of his or her community relations role and personal qualifications.

Librarians. An important responsibility for the success of a school–community relations program falls upon the librarians. They have contacts with students, parents, and the community and work closely with colleagues in making sure that students are provided a good education. What they do in establishing and maintaining good relations with these groups is instrumental in building the image of the school that is conveyed to the community.

Nurses. Many students in the course of the year come in contact with the school nurse. This, of course, means that there are many occasions for direct or indirect contact with homes and colleagues. The importance of the nurses in the school–community relations is apparent in the skill with which they perform their duties and the manner in which they work with students, parents, colleagues, and the community.

Doctors and dentists. Often these two professionals, because they are usually part-time employees, don't consider themselves part of the school team. Yet their level of competency in treating students and their contacts with parents and the community are bound to have an effect on the school–community relations program.

In the community, these medical professionals have contacts with colleagues and patients that give them an opportunity to interpret and explain the schools. This means that school administrators have an obligation to provide the school doctors and dentists with helpful information about the schools. Conversely, they should keep the schools informed of information, community attitudes, and opinions toward local education.

Tax collectors. Schools need to work closely with these folks to keep them informed about the schools. They come face-to-face with many taxpayers who are critical of the schools. Tax collectors who understand the school district and its needs, goals, programs, and procedures can answer many critics. In fact, they can provide citizens with a significant amount of positive information about the schools. But this requires school officials to maintain a structured program to keep tax collectors informed through workshops, meetings, and literature.

Support Personnel

This group of employees typically includes the clerical and maintenance personnel, the bus drivers, and the cafeteria workers. They all have a measurable influence on the school–community relations program, yet they are sometimes overlooked by school officials.

Clerical personnel. In a real sense these employees are on the front line of the school–community relations program. They are often the first contact the parents and the community have with the school. What they say, the tone they convey, and the courtesy they extend all contribute to the attitude and opinions formed by the public about the schools. The sheer number of contacts with the public each week puts clerical workers in an instrumental position of developing good or ill will for the schools. It cannot be stressed enough how important these employees are to the effectiveness of the school–community relations program internally as well as externally.

Maintenance personnel. Opinion about a school is often formed from two impressions—the appearance of a building and the personnel associated with the school. Often overlooked in a community relations program are the maintenance workers: custodians, groundskeepers, and mechanics. Their influence is felt primarily in the housekeeping and the general appearance of the building and grounds.

If they take pride in what they do and in keeping the building clean and maintained properly, this will reflect favorably on the school. Well-kept buildings and grounds say something to the public about the school system—that tax money is being spent wisely, that management is effective, and that public property is maintained properly.

Transportation workers. In many districts bus drivers, after teachers, constitute the second largest group of school employees. Their contacts are primarily with students, some parents, and with the community. It is with these groups that their primary community relations responsibilities lie.

Food-service workers. These employees also hold a strategic position in carrying out a school–community relations program. Many students carry home impressions of the cafeteria that influence parents' attitudes toward the school. An adequate selection of food, a diverse and popular menu, and reasonable prices impress children. Cafeteria workers have the responsibility of being courteous and clean, treating students with respect, and serving them efficiently.

IN-SERVICE TRAINING

Provision for in-service training is a part of a good community relations program. Staff members must possess the knowledge and skills required to meet their responsibilities. Training may be given either through direct instruction or indirectly through a series of devices. The nature of the training will be determined by the experiences of the staff and the demands of the local program.

Direct Training

The more usual and successful types of direct training are as follows:

Orientation programs. These are designed to acquaint the new staff members with the school system and to help them make a satisfactory adjustment. During this training, their attention is directed to the community relations objectives and activities of the school system and the responsibilities they must meet. A staff member who has gone through a good orientation program is better equipped to interpret the schools and to build wholesome relations with the public.

In-service courses. These are formal courses taught by competent instructors both from within and from outside the school system. They are used to train personnel for work done in all branches of the system. Courses in radio, television, editing, motion pictures, videos, interviewing, news reporting, opinion polling, and correspondence make it possible for interested staff members to receive technical training and to qualify themselves to work with special communication media. Other courses of a more generalized nature may also be organized and offered in connection with the community relations program.

Workshops. The workshop method of training is regarded as an excellent means for increasing staff efficiency. It is built around problems that grow out of daily experiences, or it may be used for planning purposes. Held during the school year, the summer months, or both, the workshops meet in small groups with consultants to exchange ideas and to pool thinking. Groups may be set up to deal with such matters as home visits, open-house programs, oral and written expression, relations with parents, lay advisory committees, news reporting, and the like.

Clinics. This word is sometimes applied to short, intensive training programs for experienced personnel in specialized fields of service. For example, a clinic might be held for teachers who are responsible for gathering and reporting news stories. The purpose of the clinic might be to review their work and to find out how it could be improved, or it might be to propose a new system of reporting and acquaint teachers with the procedures.

Special meetings. From time to time the staff may be called together for special meetings devoted to community relations. Matters of current interest can be taken up with the entire group and points emphasized that are in need of immediate attention. They are more effective for disseminating and imparting important information than are written communications. The response to these meetings is favorable when good instructional techniques are employed in the presentation of materials.

Preschool conferences. As the title suggests, they are held before the official opening of school in the fall. Anywhere from three days to two weeks are set aside for the conferences. During this time, the staff can work without interruption on the program for the year. They may be assisted by consultants and resource persons. The results more than justify the time expended.

Faculty meetings. Time can be set aside in regular faculty meetings for in-service training in community relations. The agenda should be planned cooperatively by the staff and administration and restricted to topics in which there is a mutual interest. More will be achieved when subject matter is presented with the aid of films, videos, PowerPoint presentations, charts, graphs, printed materials, demonstrations, objects, and panel discussions.

Executive luncheon meetings. Executives need training just as much as other staff members in the school system. This training can be carried on through a series of monthly luncheon meetings. The conference method of discussion, using carefully prepared material, is effective in dealing with problems that need attention and in presenting new ideas for consideration. Not enough has been done to stimulate the growth of executive personnel in school systems generally.

Indirect Training

Indirect training is accomplished through the use of instructive devices. Some of the devices are the following:

Handbooks. Two types of handbooks contribute to the training of personnel in service. One supplies information that should be known by staff members in order to discuss the school intelligently with the public. The other outlines the responsibilities of each person in the program and how they should be handled. Both may be revised annually and distributed for ready reference and reading.

Internal publications and online resources. These may take the form of a magazine, bulletin, newsletter, or material and resources available on the school system's intranet or other online communication system. They are prepared for employees of the school system. Published and updated regularly, they keep users and readers informed of what is happening in the system and offer many practical suggestions for better community relations. Sometimes they contain a citation column for bestowing recognition on those who have performed outstanding services.

External publications. All staff members should have access to copies of every external publication, including the annual report of the superintendent to the board of education. They should know how the schools are being interpreted to people in the community and the nature of the publications distributed. The information contained in these publications is essential to their own work of telling the school story.

Checklists and rating scales. These devices cause staff members to look at themselves and evaluate their own practices. Used sparingly, they can be valuable aids in the training program.[3]

Subscriptions to publications. A number of worthwhile national publications on school–community relations are available at a reasonable price to distribute to employees. The National School Public Relations Association in Rockville, Maryland, publishes many of them.

Questions

1. You have been asked to give a national workshop to new school board members on their role in school–community relations. What points would you cover in your presentation?
2. At a conference for superintendents, you were asked to give a presentation on the importance of the superintendent in a successful school–community relations program. What would you say to them, especially the skeptical ones?
3. Why is it important that directors of school public relations have direct access to the superintendents and be members of their cabinets?
4. Why is it important that good communication is practiced by all school system employees? List three categories of frontline school employees and the specific communication challenges they face.

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories and Practices That Make a Difference.* Dubuque, IA: Kendal/Hunt, 2006.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Groom, *Effective Public Relations,* 9th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2006.

Hendrix, Jerry A., *Public Relations Cases,* 8th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2009.

Hughes, Larry W., and Don W. Hooper, *Public Relations for School Leaders.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

National School Public Relations Association, *School Public Relations: Building Confidence in Education,* 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: NSPRA, 2007. National School Public Relations Association, "Communications Needs of School Superintendents; Related Perceptions of

School-Communications Staff," *Network*. Rockville, MD: NSPRA, January 2007.

National School Public Relations Association, "How Strong Communications Help Superintendents Get and Keep Their Jobs," *Network*. Rockville, MD: NSPRA, February 2007.

National School Public Relations Association, "Characteristics of Effective Superintendents?" *Network*. Rockville, MD: NSPRA, September 2007.

National School Public Relations Association, "What Leading Superintendents Say about Communication," *Network*. Rockville, MD: November 2007.

Sergiovanni, Thomas J., Paul Kelleher, Martha McCarthy, and Fred Wirt, *Educational Governance and Administration*, 6th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2008.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics*, 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2009.

Endnotes

1. *2009 Network Directory Issue* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, January 2009).
2. *Raising the Bar for School PR: New Standards for the School Public Relations Profession* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2002), pp. 3–4. Reproduced with permission. Also see www.nspra.org.
3. The National School Public Relations Association, 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855, has examples of these checklists and rating scales.

Chapter

6

The Communication Process

In building a school and community relations program, close attention should be given to the communication process. Although some kind of communication takes place in all walks of life, effective communication doesn't just happen. It is the result of carefully planning the kind of information that needs to be disseminated, the particular audience that is to be reached, and the choice of tools that are best fitted for the job. The job itself is that of bringing about understanding, gaining acceptance, and stimulating supportive action for ideas or proposals.

Communication is not just telling or hearing something. In the true sense of the word, it means communion or a mutual sharing of ideas and feelings. It comes from the Latin *communicare*, meaning "to share" or "to make common." In this setting then, communication is the giving and receiving or sharing of anything. This is accomplished through the use of language, which may be spoken or written, or the use of symbolism, or variations of sound or light, or some other such mode. Usually, the word *communication* brings to mind the sending or receiving of a letter, a telephone call linking one speaker with one listener, a conversation between friends, the publication of a newspaper, a radio or television broadcast, or an e-mail message.

In any event, communication is a cooperative enterprise requiring the mutual interchange of ideas and information, and out of which understanding develops and action is taken. Communication can also be regarded as a tool for drawing people and their viewpoints closer together, and thus facilitating the quality of the relationship they enjoy. As the sociologist Charles Horton Cooley pointed out some years ago, communication is actually "the mechanism through which human relations exist and develop."

From this point of view, the nature and importance of the communication process in a school–community relations program will be discussed with reference to the elements of communication, communication and persuasion, mass media techniques, and words.

ELEMENTS OF COMMUNICATION

In communication theory, five elements are identified in the transmission of a message. Figure 6.1 identifies them as the source or sender of information, the message form used by the source (encoder), a channel that carries the message, the decoder who perceives and interprets the common language, and a receiver who reacts to the message after conceptualizing it. This simple pattern of message transmission has

From Chapter 6 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

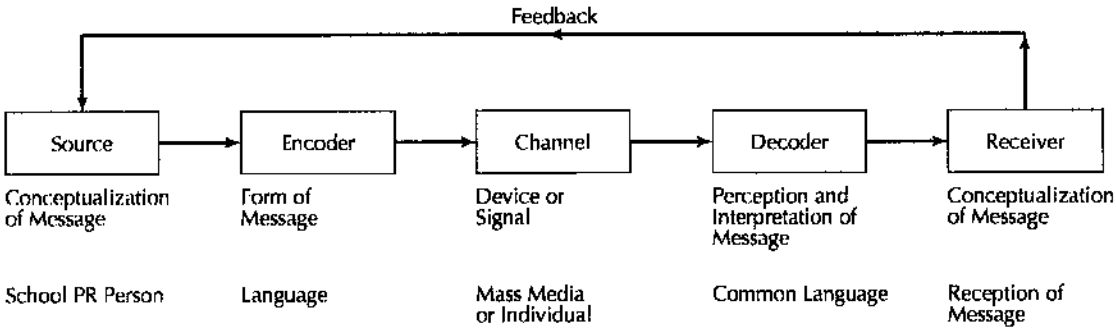


FIGURE 6.1 A Common Communication Model with Examples of Components.

just as much application to a complex city newspaper that puts messages into print and sends them to thousands of readers as it does to the encoding, sending, and decoding of a letter from one friend to another.

Source of Information

The source of information may be a person or a group of persons who possess certain ideas, feelings, and needs, as well as a reason for wanting to engage in communication. In selecting the source as the starting place for a message, it should be remembered that the source has been influenced by messages received earlier and by perceptions made in the past. In reality, the source is the human brain—a highly developed internal communication mechanism that is able to combine concepts stored there, and so to create ideas, establish purposes for communication, and decide how a message will be transmitted.

The Message Encoder

The information furnished by the source must be put in message form before being sent to a particular person or audience. Here a number of factors come into play. They are important determinants of message effectiveness and may be summed up briefly as follows:

- Although language is the principal tool in coding a message, there are times when a body movement, a facial gesture, an unusual noise, or some other sign will convey just as much meaning to the receiver of the message.
- Senders must understand their messages themselves before they can make them understood by their receivers.
- To impart information or feelings, the sender and receiver should know not only what the words, phrases, or other signs mean, but both should be able to interpret these elements in the same way.
- Unless a message can be decoded easily and accurately, there is a danger that the receiver's attention will shift to something else that appears to offer an equal or greater reward for less effort.
- A message is received more readily when it contains one or more cues or suggestions that appeal to the receiver's needs and interests. Such cues or suggestions become an inducement for decoding and accepting the message.
- Once the source determines what ideas the message should convey, he or she can decide how to express them in a form that will appeal to the receiver.
- The use of symbols in a message makes it possible to compress and simplify complex information. When such symbols as the Red Cross, a school building, or the American flag are used, they stand for concepts that people readily understand and grasp.
- Most encoded messages contain a number of parallel messages. When a message is delivered orally, the words, those that are emphasized, the rate of delivery, the pauses, and the facial expressions are all interpreted along with the content of the message.

From this list it is evident that effective encoding calls for a message form that is appropriate for the particular situation, place, and audience.

The Channel

When a message has been coded, the sender must select a channel that will carry it to the person or audience for whom it is intended. The channel may be a word-of-mouth conversation; an oral presentation on radio or television; a written document in the form of a letter or a memorandum; printed matter like a newspaper, book, magazine, or brochure; or a combination of words and pictures through the medium of motion pictures, videos, an e-mail message, and the like. These are merely some of the more commonly used channels in message transmission.

At the same time, it is essential that the sender know which of these channels are available in the community, how extensively they are used, and how effective each is in reaching various audiences. One channel, for example, might be better than another for message delivery to a foreign-language-speaking segment of the population, while a still different one could be used with good results for keeping professional persons in the community informed about critical school problems.

Channels that are selected for message transmission should be free from distracting elements that discourage audience attention, such as printed pages of a leaflet or brochure in which the type is smudgy and hard to read, or poorly reproduced photographs and line drawings in a photojournalism piece, or static noises that punctuate a radio broadcast. Such distractions terminate communication possibilities almost at once.

The Message Decoder

Assuming that the transmission channel is working satisfactorily, the question then arises of whether the decoder is able to decode the message accurately. This means interpreting the sign or the way in which the message is coded. If the message is coded in written English, will the decoder understand the vocabulary? Does his or her background of knowledge and experience enable him or her to comprehend quickly and correctly a reference, for example, to a system of open education, a nongraded curricular arrangement, or a minicourse? Unless the reference kindles the same meaning in the mind of the reader as in the mind of the writer, the attempt at communication may be only partly successful; and it may even be totally unsuccessful.

The matter of interpreting the words of a message is further complicated by the fact that the same words have different meanings for different people. Words have generally two kinds of meaning: (1) a denotative or dictionary meaning that has more-or-less universal acceptance and (2) a connotative meaning—a meaning that is read into the words because of the reader's background and experience. For example, the word *school* denotes a place where children go for an education under the direction of qualified teachers. To some individuals this may connote a place where many happy hours were spent, whereas to others it may connote just the opposite, depending on the individual's experiences while attending school.

Sometimes the people who are the decoders will not take the time to review the message carefully unless they feel that it relates to things of interest to them or that their efforts will be rewarded in some way. In view of the many messages that confront one daily, the problem of getting an individual to select and decode those about the local school system is difficult. Suppose, for example, that the letter carrier just delivered a brochure about school taxes for the coming year and also a popular magazine that the resident thoroughly enjoys reading. If the size, title, color, format, and so on of the brochure lack appeal, it will probably be set aside in favor of the magazine. However, if the brochure creates curiosity regarding the tax situation, reinforces the individual's concern over mounting educational costs, or suggests that he or she stands to gain something, the individual may be motivated sufficiently to examine this particular message.

Furthermore, the decoder is more apt to decode a message that calls for the least amount of effort. A six-page brochure on school guidance services that is made up largely of clear photos with clever captions will attract and hold the receiver's attention more than one on the same subject that consists of six pages of small print. This example illustrates what is referred to in communication theory as Schramm's "fraction of selection" theory. The expectation of reward is divided by the effort required. Thus, a person will select a particular communication, in all probability, if it promises more reward or

if it seems to require less effort to decode than competing messages.

The Receiver

When the message reaches the receiver, who is usually the decoder, it is expressed in some kind of shorthand—letters, drawings, photographs, tables, sounds, and so on. If this shorthand is something that the receiver has learned in the past, she or he will respond accordingly. His or her responses will indicate the meaning that the shorthand has for him or her. Although these responses are the products of experience, nevertheless they are modified at times by the receiver's physical and mental state. For example, a picture of an attractive tray of desserts will be more appealing to the hungry receiver than to one who has just finished dinner.

Besides translating the shorthand into meaning, receivers' responses will determine what they will do about the message. The action they take may be based on things they have learned in the past. The word *war* in a message, for example, may call forth strong feelings of antagonism against the idea of destroying human life. This type of response may cause people to start encoding a message in reply—one that expresses their reactions. Thus, each person in the communication process may be both an encoder and a decoder. On the other hand, the decoder may regard the message as being unimportant or may decide not to reply to it, with the result that the process stops there. However, most individuals are constantly decoding signs, reading meaning into them, and then sending back their reactions. Graphically, the flow is shown in Figure 6.1.

The return message from the decoder or receiver is known as feedback. It tells the sender or source how his or her message is being interpreted. This occurs almost at once in a face-to-face conversation, where verbal response along with body gestures such as nod of the head, facial expression, or eye focusing shows the receiver's responses. In the light of these responses, the encoder or sender may modify future messages.

The feedback situation is somewhat different when messages are carried through mass communication media such as newspapers, television programs, books, or recordings. It is true that the recipients of these messages are individuals, but these individuals supply little or no direct feedback, although occasionally they will express reactions through telephone calls or letters to the sender. The type of feedback to the sender is usually in the form of a refusal to do something—subscribers discontinue taking the newspaper, listeners and viewers turn to another station, and consumers stop buying the product. This is an impelling reason why so much consumer research is conducted by business organizations. It is the only way available for finding out what programs are watched on television, or what homemakers like about a particular product, or how readers are reacting to given advertisements.

COMMUNICATION AND PERSUASION

A primary purpose behind the communication process is trying to change attitudes and opinions through the use of persuasive messages. In school–community relations this purpose is frequently referred to as that of trying to bring about *informed public consent.* The procedures for achieving this involve the preparation and presentation by the school of messages containing information, ideas, or proposals that the public who receives them considers and then decides what action, if any, it is going to take. In a two-way communication flow, the process is reversed, with school personnel analyzing and evaluating suggestions and ideas received from people in the community and subsequently deciding what course of action to follow.

The problem of trying to get individuals to learn new ideas and adopt new behaviors through the use of persuasive messages has been the subject of much research. This research has centered on the stages people go through, the characteristics of the sender, the message, and the receiver, as well as the results. Some of the findings appear to have practical application in a school–community relations program.

How People Accept or Reject a New Idea, Product, or Innovation

Many studies have been conducted on the adoption or rejection of a new idea, product, or innovation. Known as the *diffusion process,* this communication theory generated much interest in the 1930–1960

TABLE 6.1 Rank Order of Information Sources by Stages in the Adoption Process

Awareness **Learns about a new idea or practice**	***Interest*** **Gets more information about it**	***Evaluation*** **Tries it out mentally**	***Trial*** **Uses or tries a little**	***Adoption*** **Accepts it for full-scale and continued use**
1. Mass media: radio, TV, newspapers, magazines	1. Mass media	1. Friends and neighbors	1. Friends and neighbors	**Personal experience is the most important factor in continued use of an idea.**
2. Friends and neighbors: mostly other farmers	2. Friends and neighbors	2. Agricultural agencies	2. Agricultural agencies	1. Friends and neighbors
3. Agricultural agencies, extension, vo-ag, etc.	3. Agricultural agencies	3. Dealers and salespeople	3. Dealers and salespeople	2. Agricultural agencies
4. Dealers and salespeople	4. Dealers and salespeople	4. Mass media	4. Mass media	3. Mass media
				4. Dealers and salespeople

Source: Herbert F. Lionberger, *Adoption of New Ideas and Practices* (Ames: Iowa State University Press, 1960), p. 33. Reproduced with permission.

period. Many of the studies are relevant today. The diffusion generalizations in the 1950s have since generated some 4,000 empirical studies.

In the 1950s a group of rural sociologists developed a standard diffusion model with five stages: awareness, interest, evaluation, trial, and adoption.

> ***Awareness***—This stage introduces a person to a new idea, practice, or product. Little or nothing is known about it other than general information.
>
> ***Interest***—This is sometimes known as the information stage and is one in which an individual becomes interested in learning more about the idea, practice, or product. He or she will actively seek additional information.
>
> ***Evaluation***—An individual weighs the merits of the idea, product, or practice and attempts to determine if it is good for him or her.
>
> ***Trial***—The person tries the product, idea, or practice a little.
>
> ***Adoption***—Here the individual decides that the idea, product, or practice is good enough for full-scale use.

According to Lionberger and Rogers,[1] these stages or phases of the diffusion process do not follow a linear sequence. They are not discrete nor are they experienced by all people.

Important in this example of the diffusion process are the influential factors at each stage. Table 6.1 lists five factors ranked in order of influence for each stage in a U.S. Department of Agriculture hybrid corn experience. Mass media play the leading role in the *awareness* and *interest* stages, while friends and neighbors are most influential at the *evaluation, trial,* and *adoption* stages. In the first two stages, information flows one way, but in the last three stages two-way communication is dominant where attitude change starts taking place.

Everett Rogers renamed the stages: (1) knowledge—the individual learns of the innovation and gains information about it; (2) persuasion—the individual forms a positive or negative attitude toward the innovation; (3) decision—the person makes a choice to adopt or reject the innovation; (4) implementation—the person puts the innovation into use; (5) confirmation—the person seeks reinforcement for the decision already made.[2]

In a similar marketing model, Topor[3] emphasizes that people are influenced more in decision making by face-to-face contact than by mass media.

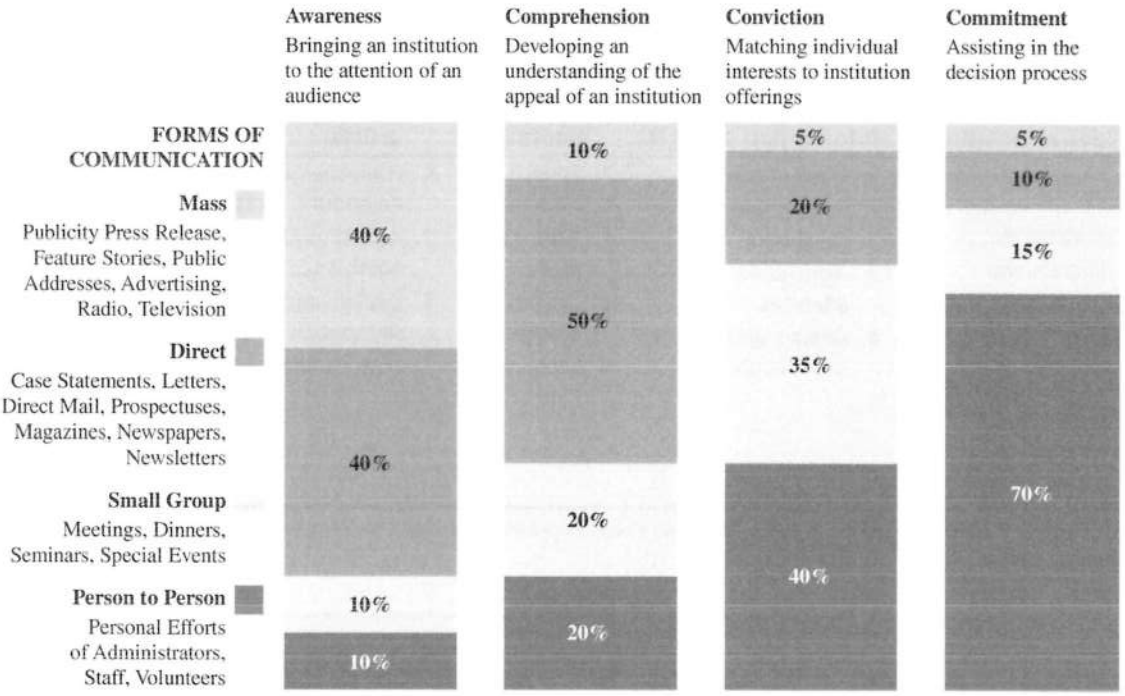


FIGURE 6.2 A Marketing Model of Audience Member States of Mind.
Source: Robert S. Topor, *Institutional Image: How to Define, Improve, Market It* (Washington, DC: Council for Advancement and Support of Education, 1986), p. 55. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 6.2 shows Topor's four stages of an audience member's states of mind when an institution is being marketed.

> ***Awareness***—Bringing an institution to the attention of an audience
>
> ***Comprehension***—Developing an understanding of the appeal of an institution
>
> ***Conviction***—Matching individual interests to institution offerings
>
> ***Commitment***—Assisting in the decision process

Like Lionberger's diffusion process, Topor's marketing model shows that information flows primarily one way in the first two stages, but in the last two stages two-way communication is dominant whereby a commitment is made. It would appear, then, from both of these models that to hope for the greatest persuasion to take place, a two-way person-to-person communication process must exist.

In other words, the mass media (in this case, radio, TV, brochures, and printed material) serve to inform the public and to make people aware of a situation or an idea. When it comes to accepting or rejecting a new idea, people are apt to confer with a neighbor or friend whose judgment they respect. A number of studies have shown that people are influenced more in decision making by face-to-face contacts than by the impact of the media.

The classic 1950s diffusion model also included the idea that individual differences cause people to adopt innovations at different times utilizing varying amounts and sources of information. Five categories of adopters were conceptualized: innovators (first 2.5 percent), early adopters (next 13.5 percent), early majority (34 percent), late majority (34 percent), and late adopters or laggards (last 16 percent).[4] (Chapter 15 gives additional material on the diffusion of information.)

Too often school districts flood the mass media with news releases and public service announcements,

thinking such announcements will be enough to persuade citizens to accept a new idea or change in the schools. However, school district personnel should be aware that, if attitude change is to take place, they must develop some additional communication approaches to reach citizens on a person-to-person basis. They need to communicate with those people to whom citizens turn to get opinions during the last three stages of the diffusion process. One answer is a key communicator program, which is explained in Chapter 8.

Confidence in the Source

The persuasiveness of a communication is greater when certain things are known about the communicator. This is usually the case if the sender has gained a reputation for being honest and direct, is a highly respected person among associates, is thought to be well informed on the subject of the message, or shares a common background or set of experiences with his or her listeners.

A message is also likely to receive favorable attention when it is sent by persons in positions of leadership. Such a person could be the president of a school board, a superintendent of schools, or a civic-minded industrialist.

Some additional research findings are interesting with regard to source credibility. For example, a physically attractive source is generally more persuasive than an unattractive source, regardless of the sex of the receiver. Furthermore, if receivers see the sender to be similar to themselves in experiences, opinions, and background, they are more apt to accept the message. Some researchers define source credibility as expertness and claim that it is related more to attitude change than the source's attractiveness or similarity to the intended audience. However, in order for the expertise to be persuasive, Oskamp[5] claims that special conditions are needed: (1) The area of expertise must be related to the issue or topic being presented and (2) before the message is to be delivered the expertise must be made known to the audience. In general, researchers suggest that people will often accept or reject message conclusions based on source credibility without paying much attention to the supporting arguments.

In certain unusual situations, researchers have discovered an interesting relation between the source credibility and the passage of time. They found that receivers remember the context of a message from a noncredible communicator, think about it, and sometimes later accept the message after they have forgotten where it came from. This phenomenon is known as the *sleeper effect.* In brief, then, the tie between the source of a message and the content of a message is not the same in perception as in memory.

Support of Personal Views

Much research has been done on attitude change when the receiver of a communication is exposed to a message that agrees or disagrees with his or her point of view. Among the more important findings are these:

- People tend to read, watch, and listen to communications that are in agreement with their beliefs and interests.
- When they receive a message containing a point of view or information that casts doubt on their position, they either disregard or distort the message in order to confirm their existing attitudes and opinions. Actually, they only hear or read what they expect to hear or read, not what the message says.
- In some instances, exposure to such material leads to restructuring of the message by receivers so that the content agrees with their predisposition or at least so that it is made tolerable. They end up, in other words, perceiving the message as though it reflected their own point of view.
- People remember the content of a message that supports what they believe much better than they remember material that is antagonistic to their convictions.
- Information and ideas about a subject receive most attention from those who are most interested in it or the ones whose minds are most firmly made up beforehand. Those who have no interest in the subject pay little or no attention to communications regarding it.
- When a discussion of an issue reaches the stage of controversy, those taking part in it are apt to ignore additional information unless it happens to

agree with their attitudes and convictions. At this point it is usually too late for further information to influence them; in fact, too much information may produce a negative reaction.

• In an area where few opinions have been formed, the chances are rather good that a well-devised communication will accomplish its goal. In an area, however, where opinions are fixed and strongly defended, the chance of achieving attitude change is only slight. Where this is the case, it is better to take existing attitudes and try to redirect them slightly.

Benefit to Receiver

Messages can be persuasive when they deal with the receiver's needs or appeal to his or her self-interest. It is only natural to look more sharply at the content of a communication from which one can gain something. A communication could, for example, request that one serve as chairperson of a committee that is highly regarded by the members of one's group, or it could contain an offer to finance a research project in which one has a strong interest. In much the same way, citizens respond favorably to school communications that explain the services children receive from the tax dollar. Although indirect, this type of benefit makes citizens feel that a worthwhile return is being received from their investment.

Sometimes a message is persuasive because it is received when the individual has a predisposition to change. Suppose, for example, that the receiver has been active in an independent citizen movement to upgrade instruction in the schools and feels that this activity is no longer satisfying. As a result he or she may have become predisposed to change. Then a message is received describing the value of citizen involvement in the formulation of educational policies under the auspices of the board of education. The receiver's new predisposition to change may cause a positive reaction to similar communications rejected on prior occasions.

Group Influences

Research studies have turned up a series of findings about group influence on the receiver's acceptance or rejection of a message. To begin with, a message is more likely to stimulate a favorable response if the content of it relates clearly to group values and beliefs. Group values and beliefs are those established by the family, friends, coworkers, and organizations to which the receiver belongs or would like to belong. On the other hand, if the content is in disagreement with group norms, it will probably be rejected unless it undergoes substantial change. It is difficult to persuade the receiver to believe in something or to do anything that runs counter to the value system of his or her groups.

This raises the question of what individuals receive in return for conforming to the standards and beliefs of a group. Research on this question shows that they get two returns for conformity. First, they identify closer with the group and enhance their acceptance as members, and second, they receive some ready-made interpretations of experience and consequently find it easier to meet the daily pressures of life and its accompanying problems.

It has also been found that receivers cannot be persuaded easily if their acceptance of a message will cause them to lose face among their peers. In speculating on this possibility, the sender should scrutinize all available alternatives before transmitting the message and should word it accordingly.

There are other ways in which the individual is influenced by the judgment of other people. For example, an individual who will go along with the position of a speaker when the position appears acceptable to the majority of the audience may be less likely to agree with it when he or she senses a discrepancy between the speaker's position and that of the audience. It has also been observed that an individual responds to appeals in a crowd that he or she would scarcely consider, let alone accept, apart from the group. Thus, it is sometimes possible to convince an individual to accept a point of view in private, even though later he or she will deny it when reacting with a crowd.

Research has also found that opinions individuals have made known to others are more difficult to change than those they hold privately. Also, group discussion and decision making (audience participation) help to overcome resistance to persuasion.

Presentation of Issues

In presenting issues to an audience, the question has come up of which method is more effective to use, a

one-sided or a two-sided message. In other words, to present only your position, or to present both yours and the opposite one. Research results indicate the answer varies with the conditions and circumstances under which the presentation takes place. Some of the important findings are listed below and should be regarded as guidelines in school and community relations.

- Presenting only one side of an argument often causes the audience to feel that it is being talked down to by the speaker. Those who are well informed on the subject and those who think they are resent this type of treatment.
- If it appears that an audience is unfriendly and skeptical about the integrity of the speaker, as well as rather well informed on some aspects of the subject, the presentation should be carefully balanced and highly objective.
- When a group is initially exposed to a two-sided communication, such as the pros and cons of constructing a new school building, it is more likely to resist propaganda to which it is subsequently exposed.
- Persons of low intellect and limited schooling can be influenced by a one-sided message if the content is limited to arguments favoring the communicator's position.
- Persons with high intellectual ability and a good educational background tend to be more influenced by a two-sided message.
- When audience members are well informed on an issue, more persuasion is accomplished by reviewing both sides of the matter, but when they are poorly informed, then a one-sided presentation is more effective.
- A one-sided message is more apt to influence persons who were initially inclined to support the position being advocated, but a two-sided communication is more influential for those who were opposed at the beginning.
- More attitude change occurs when the desirable features of a proposed change are presented first and the undesirable second.
- When different communicators present two sides of an issue successively, the side presented first has no real advantage. But when a single communicator presents both sides, the material presented first seems to have more impact on the audience than that presented subsequently.
- In controversial situations, messages that offer some reasonable conclusion to an issue are more likely to be persuasive than if the audience is left to make up its own mind.
- When conflicting information is important to the audience, failure to divulge such information may be regarded as an indication that the communicator has not looked at the other side carefully enough.
- Research has yielded conflicting findings on the matter of whether the opening or closing of a message should contain the more important content. When the weaker points are presented first, an interested audience looks forward to what is coming later. But an apathetic audience is more likely to be aroused when the important points are presented at the beginning.
- Research findings lack agreement on the effectiveness of emotional versus rational appeals. Sometimes messages containing one type of appeal are more persuasive than the other type. Appeal effectiveness of either emotional or rational messages seems to depend on the issue under consideration as well as on the composition of the audience.

Fear-Arousal Messages

Are people persuaded to change their attitudes and behaviors because a message arouses fear and insecurity? Much of the research in fear-arousal messages confirms that as these messages increase from low to moderate levels, attitude and behavior changes increase. However, as the messages progress from a moderate to a stronger level, persuasion is less apt to take place. Apparently, strong fear evokes ego defenses that block attitude change.

In some studies it has been found that when an audience is exposed to conflicting messages on the same issue, the use of a strong threat appeal tends to be less persuasive than the use of a minimal one in bringing about attitude change. However, if the communicator wants the audience to remember the threat and nothing else, then a strong appeal may prove to be persuasive.

Therefore, it should be recognized in school and community relations that fear-arousal messages, either direct or indirect, will not evoke acceptance or help to gain the support required in providing a sound educational program. Messages that help people in the community see reasonable and feasible solutions to educational problems are more effective in gaining support for needed school programs.

Repeating the Message

Advertisers have known for many years that repeating a message through a variety of media helps to achieve persuasion. The principle of repetition applies equally to school-devised messages. For example, in a rapidly growing community in which kindergartens are just starting, it might be necessary to let parents know of their availability and their advantages in early childhood education. By carefully selecting the timing of releases on the subject, a direct mailing of brochures could be made over a three-week period. At the same time, both straight news and feature stories could be prepared for newspapers and spot announcements for radio and television news programs. Both the news stories and the spot announcements could be scheduled three or four days apart over the same three-week period.

Scheduling the announcements about kindergartens in close succession and through different media not only strengthens the impact of the initial exposure to the message but also converges a variety of announcements on the audience from more than one direction. Repetition with variation promotes better message understanding and acceptance.

However, a qualifying note should be emphasized here. Repetition of a message can have an attitude enhancement effect only if the content (stimulus) is positive or neutral. If it is negative, the opposite effect will take place.

Personality Variables

The personality of the receiver has a dramatic effect on how the message is processed. Research indicates that people with low self-esteem are predisposed to attitude change when exposed to persuasive messages. This is particularly true if the messages are simple and poorly substantiated. Conversely, high-self-esteem individuals are more often persuaded with complex, but well-substantiated, messages. Experts in attitude change also indicate that individuals with chronic high levels of anxiety and aggressiveness usually resist persuasion.

Further Findings about Persuasion

Further findings about persuasion in messages that try to effect attitude change and stimulate behavioral action are presented below in summary form.

- There is usually better assurance that an audience will comprehend more clearly the nature of a message when it contains a stated conclusion. However, this concept does not always work successfully. A suspicious audience may view the stated conclusion as a deception, while a sophisticated one may regard it as an insult to their intelligence.
- When a message suggests a pattern of action for the satisfaction of particular needs and interests, the suggested pattern should generally be in agreement with the norms and beliefs of the group to which the receiver belongs.
- In trying to validate the information received in a message, broadly educated people are likely to turn to outstanding authorities, while less-well-educated people are likely to turn to their friends and neighbors.
- With reference to matters of taste, individuals who read good books usually listen to good radio programs, whereas those who read light books or none at all listen to light radio programs. This principle of selective exposure applies to a variety of life situations.
- The communicator can influence attitudes or behavior only when the message is accompanied by the possibility of equally valuable changes in the surrounding situation. For example, a parent may pay slight attention to a school leaflet on homework when a child is doing satisfactory work, but the parent may read it carefully when the child's marks drop sharply.
- Attention may be drawn to communications containing important information through the use of *indicators*. These are devices that suggest that the message may be valuable to the receiver. Common

indicators are boxed stories in newspapers; large headlines over a news story; tones of voice that indicate urgency, sincerity or fright; colors; and various symbols.

• Face-to-face conversation with a trusted friend who knows a new program from personal experience—let's say, in reading instruction—has almost the same influential quality as an actual visit to a school and an observation of the program in operation.

• Effective communication calls for the use of several different communication channels. It has been found that some channels may call the receiver's attention to an issue, others to the alternatives that are open, and still others may convince him or her that a choice is a sound one. And some channels may be useful in helping him or her to carry out a decision.

MEDIA'S ROLE IN COMMUNICATION

Much of the communication that takes place between school personnel and people in the community is through the media—radio, television, newspapers, newsletters, Internet, and magazines. These media are commonly thought of as vehicles or means for transmitting identical messages to many individuals at the same time. For instance, several thousand people may read a feature story in the newspaper describing a special school program in child care for high school students. An equal number may see on a television program the floor plans and site arrangements for a proposed school facility. And many may receive a leaflet about mathematics or listen to a speaker give an illustrated lecture on competitive sports and character development.

Unlike a small group of parents discussing a proposed change in the school lunch schedule or members of the parent–teacher association listening to a talk on teenage health problems, those who constitute a mass communication audience have practically no contact with each other. One person may be looking at a television program on a travelogue through Ontario without knowing whether anyone else in the house next door or on the same street is looking at that program.

However, each person who is independently viewing such a program, reading a news magazine, hearing a radio broadcast, and so on is connected with various groups in the community, such as family, close friends, fellow workers, members of a lodge, or a religious congregation. This fact is important in mass communication because the real impact of messages transmitted by means of the media is produced through the dissemination of ideas and information by individual receivers in small-group situations.

A leaflet on the teaching of spelling in the schools, a news story about the president of the school board, or a television interview with an outstanding teacher may be the subject of conversation over the dinner table, among business associates, or at a social gathering in the neighborhood. What is reported by the individual receiver is then reinterpreted by the group, and the outcome is translated into group opinion and possibly group action. Thus it would seem that an important outcome of mass communication is the influence of the individual receiver in message distribution and opinion development among members of his or her group.

In addition to this, there are other outcomes associated with the use of the media. First is that mass communication makes it possible to deliver a message to large numbers of people in a relatively short period. For example, a newspaper story on a proposed annual school budget may be read by a fairly high percentage of citizens in the community the same day it is printed. Moreover, each reader receives the story in identical form, thereby minimizing the element of distortion that often characterizes message distribution on a person-to-person basis. Second, the media are most effective in creating awareness on the part of message receivers. The media serve as agencies through which information about an innovation, such as a change in the traditional conduct of a school board meeting, is brought to popular attention. Third, research findings consistently indicate that the media serve generally as means of reinforcement rather than of change. People select messages that they want to see and hear—messages that confirm preexisting beliefs and attitudes. Fourth, most people who learn about an innovation or an event through one medium—for example, the local newspaper—are likely to learn

about it through other channels as well. And fifth, there is evidence that frequent repetition of a message helps it to gain acceptance, providing, however, that it is repeated in various ways. The identical repetition of a communication tends to annoy people and can reduce the chances of its being regarded favorably.

Certain limitations are connected with message transmission through the media because of the diverse nature of the audience. In face-to-face communication, the encoder is able to observe the way a communication is being received and to modify it if the receiver's reaction suggests this need. On the other hand, in mass communication, the sender is dealing with large groups and many classes of people. Thus, if a school pamphlet is published for general distribution in the community, careful attention must be given to its readability; otherwise, it may be pitched above the level of reading appeal and understanding of many of the people who receive it. In view of this limitation and the corresponding lack of feedback, it is advisable to appeal more often to important publics rather than to the general public. This means that a subject can be treated differently for different audiences that make up the several special publics of the school. For example, a leaflet on the financial needs of the school district could be written and designed one way for businesspeople in the community, another way for parents of elementary-school children, and still another way for senior citizens.

It should also be noted that readers, listeners, and viewers have been exposed to thousands of media communications and are therefore able to distinguish between those that are attractive in appearance and skillful in design and those that lack these qualities. This exposure to good techniques causes people to demand excellence in all publications and programs without being conscious of their reasons for doing so. Parents may not expect a school newsletter to look like a report distributed by a large corporation to its stockholders, but they expect it to have an attractive flag, good page layout, readable type, interesting illustrations, and timely news. Skill in handling the media is no guarantee of establishing communication with all receivers, but it does make it much more likely.

WORDS

Successful communication is tied closely to the way in which words are employed in messages. Although there is a large body of research studies on this subject, only the more pertinent findings will be reviewed here. If used correctly, these findings should improve the meaning and acceptance of school messages intended for various community audiences.

Words are tools for fashioning messages. When used properly they enable the message receiver to interpret accurately the purpose and meaning that the sender had in mind. The achievement of this outcome calls for a thorough knowledge of word usage and its application in communications for specific audiences.

Research indicates that there are several measures of word usage that must be taken into account by message encoders. To begin with, senders cannot tell other people something they themselves do not understand. They must know precisely what they want to say and then make the message easy for the receivers to comprehend. However, in making the message easy to comprehend, senders must be sensitive to the fact that word meaning varies with individuals and environmental conditions. The word *football,* for example, has a different connotation in England than it does in the United States. The word *dog* to a canine enthusiast may refer to a friendly, loyal animal, whereas to a person bitten by one the word may represent an unfriendly, vicious animal. In this respect, words can play on an individual's feelings and tap his or her memory as well.

It is likewise necessary to know the meanings of words that are brought into play by self-interest groups. Each group has words and phrases peculiar to the goals the group stands for in American life. Bankers talk about prime interest rates, physicians about preventive medicine, educators about curriculum and instruction, and workers about fringe benefits and union contracts. Knowing the meaning of words that are used by self-interest groups enables the message writer or speaker to select those that will be received favorably and understood.

The meaning of a word is influenced by the context in which it appears. For example, the word *rare* has a different connotation when it refers to a

sense of humor than it has when used to describe a piece of meat. Or take the words *progressive* and *education.* When used separately in a sentence, they are regarded as positive words with acceptable meanings. However, if combined into the phrase *progressive education* they acquire another sense and to some people become negative words that have emotional overtones. In short, the meaning and reaction to a word can be changed by placing it in another context.

The number of syllables used also appears to have some effect on the readability of printed material. It has been found that words with as many as four or five syllables add to reading difficulty. And it is for this reason that reading specialists advocate the substitution of words with fewer syllables whenever possible. The longer the physical length of a word, the less chance there is of its being understood.

Somewhat similar is the pronunciation problem created by the use of words unfamiliar to the reader. Instead of focusing on what a word means in the message, attention is diverted to the question of how to pronounce it. The reader is often required to spend some time analyzing a word before he or she is able to say it correctly. If there are too many unfamiliar words in the message, the pronunciation block may become large enough to destroy the message. However, when there is uncertainty about the status of a word in the mind of the reader, the word can be clarified casually without suggesting that the reader is ignorant. For example, it could be said in a school publication that "we want to *correlate* or *pull closer together* our English and social studies in the middle-school program of studies."

The semantic effect of word combinations is something that enters into the study of word usage. Research shows that each word in a combination, such as *gregarious person, handsome man,* or *brave boy,* has a modifying effect on the other. If the words in a combination are out of harmony, they tend to cancel each other out, but if they are compatible, a new connotation emerges. Usually, the measured meaning of words in combinations leans toward the adjective instead of the noun.

CRISIS COMMUNICATIONS

Unfortunately, many school districts communicate only when they are in a crisis. They find themselves in a reactive situation that keeps them in a defensive position. Communication during a crisis is extremely difficult without some planning.

Sadly, many school districts believe that when a crisis arrives, they can eliminate it with some strong public relations. It's too late. The communications and public relations should have taken place before the crisis. Kennedy addresses this point by stating,

> Particularly in today's climate, public relations must be more than crisis communications. It must be more than press releases or egg-on-face statements from officials. Real communication must be constant and personal, blunting the need for any criticisms before they can arise.[6]

In this way, the severity of a crisis can be reduced. Once into a crisis, a district has to ride it out by communicating the best way it can. What it needs in a crisis is trust and credibility, which can be best established with prior communications and public relations and with much planning.

The National School Public Relations Association has compiled a comprehensive school crisis manual that provides procedures and policies, tips on dealing with the media, and ways to communicate with the staff[7] (See Chapter 9 on crisis planning and handling violence.)

Questions

1. How do Lionberger's diffusion process and Topor's marketing model apply to school public relations?
2. How can the values of the sender (source) and the receiver affect the fidelity of the communication process?
3. Some school board members say that you need to work only with the mass media to get the school messages across to the community. What would you say to them to show they are mistaken?

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories & Practices That Make a Difference.* Dubuque, Iowa: Kendal/ Hunt Publishing Co., 2006.

Cialdini, Robert B., *Influence: Science and Practice,* 5th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2008.

DeVito, Joseph A., *The Interpersonal Communication Book,* 12th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2008.

Dilenschneider, Robert L., *The Corporate Communication Bible.* Boston: New Millennium, 2004.

Newsom, Doug, Judy Van Slyke Turk, and Dean Kruckeberg, *This Is PR,* 10th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing Company, 2009.

School Public Relations, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Wilcox, Dennis L., Glen T. Cameron, Philip H. Ault, and Warren K. Agee, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics,* 9th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2009.

Endnotes

1. Herbert F. Lionberger, *Adoption of New Ideas and Practices* (Ames: Iowa State University Press, 1960), p. 3, and Everett M. Rogers, *Diffusion of Innovations,* 4th ed. (New York: Free Press, 1995), p. 160.
2. Everett M. Rogers, *Diffusion of Innovations,* 4th ed. (New York: Free Press, 1995), p. 202.
3. Robert S. Topor, *Institutional Image: How to Define, Improve, Market It* (Washington, DC: Council for Advancement and Support of Education, 1986), p. 55.
4. Eric A. Abbott and J. Paul Yarbrough, "Re-Thinking the Role of Information in Diffusion Theory: An Historical Analysis with an Empirical Test," Paper submitted to Communication Theory and Methodology Division, Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communication, for its annual convention, New Orleans, LA, 1999, p. 6.
5. Stuart Oskamp, *Attitudes and Opinions* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991), p. 217.
6. Jack L. Kennedy, "Building Positives Must Start with Educators," *Journal of Educational Rela-tions,* 16, no. 4 (November 1995), p. 24.
7. *The Complete Crisis Communication Management Manual* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2009).

Chapter

7

Communicating with Internal Publics

Internal communication has become increasingly important to school boards and administrators as a vital part of comprehensive school–community relations programs. In the past it was not uncommon for school systems, in developing a community relations program, to concern themselves exclusively with ways and means of communicating with their external publics. Rarely did they think of structuring a program of effective two-way communication with their internal publics—the employees and students. This has changed as the age of involvement has spread throughout society, including education.

Internal publics, particularly employees, began to see themselves in a different role, one that called for a more active part in the total planning of the educational program along with their professional and personal welfare; and school systems began to realize that good relations with and among internal publics were a necessary part of good public relations.

WHY INTERNAL COMMUNICATIONS?

School administrators and boards are coming to understand the importance of good internal communications. This awareness has been brought about by the need to gain continued public support of education. School boards and administrators can no longer get that support alone; they must enlist the help of employees, and doing so requires a structured internal communications program.

School districts, then, see three reasons why a good internal communication program is important: (1) A good external communication program cannot survive without it; (2) constructive ideas will be suggested by employees because someone is listening and informing them; and (3) human needs, such as recognition and a sense of belonging, will be met, thus making employees more productive.

SCHOOL BOARD ACTIONS

In analyzing the causes of good and poor relations within a system, it is advisable to start with the board of education or board of trustees. This body sets the climate of the school system through the exercise of its authority, the conduct of its business, and the relationships it maintains with administrators and staff members.

From Chapter 7 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

Board Authority

A local school board is given broad discretionary powers, both the right and the authority under state law to manage the school system; what matters is the manner in which the board of education exercises this authority. If it refuses to listen to the advice of the chief executive officer, shows indifference to the welfare of the employees, usurps the functions of the administrator, rules on matters about which it is ignorant, issues unreasonable orders, makes political appointments, tries to summarily dismiss teachers, listens to parental complaints without consulting principals and teachers, and engages in other undesirable practices, it soon creates unfavorable working conditions and lowers the morale of employees. The result is that the school employees no longer feel a loyalty to the system and do not hesitate to say what they think about the board of education and the policies with which they are forced to comply.

The Conduct of Board Business

The board of education is legally required to conduct its business in regular meetings and in special meetings called from time to time. All meetings are open with the exception of executive sessions. In some states the decisions reached in executive sessions are not binding until voted on in an open meeting.

Whether a board adheres to the proper conduct of its business exerts a direct influence on public and employee attitudes. A well-organized meeting in which sincere efforts are made to serve the school community will inspire employees with confidence, respect, and trust; a poorly managed, perfunctory, and discordant meeting will leave a residue of discontent.

Relations with the Superintendent

School board relations with the superintendent deserve special consideration in any discussion of internal affairs. In many systems, the board of education is organized into a series of standing committees. Each committee is made responsible for some area of the school program. There may be committees on personnel, buildings and grounds, transportation, finance, public relations, instruction, and welfare. This system is used to expedite board business and to divide the amount of work carried by members. However, it has definite weaknesses that should be recognized.

- The executive officer is required to report to committees instead of taking up problems with the whole board of education.
- These committees become policymaking bodies because their recommendations are, as a rule, accepted by the board without much question.
- Members of the board have but slight understanding of the system aside from the specific areas in which they work on committee assignments.
- The tendency is strong for committees to encroach on the administrative function of the superintendent.

This form of board organization can easily produce unfavorable relations with superintendents and reduce the effectiveness of their leadership in school systems.

Complaints received by board members from teachers, parents, and people in the community are another cause of poor relationships if they are handled incorrectly. Sound administration requires that all complaints be referred to the superintendent of schools and cleared through him or her with members of the staff. If satisfaction is not received by the complaining party, the board can then request the superintendent to report the facts and tell what he or she has done, before any official action is taken. Instead of following this procedure, or one comparable to it, some board members assume responsibility for settling complaints themselves. They not only take over the authority of the superintendent but also undermine his or her prestige in the school and community. The incorrect handling of complaints is a fertile breeding place for discord in the relationship of the board and the superintendent.

The kind of interest that board members show in education problems is another potential area of disagreement between board members and the superintendent. As the professional adviser of the board and the educational leader of the school system, it is up to the superintendent to keep the board informed of current problems and to recommend courses of action for meeting existing needs. Although superintendents do not expect the board to

approve all of their recommendations, they do expect that the members will consider suggestions with a fair degree of impartiality. If board members are casual or indifferent about a superintendent's recommendations, or if their decisions are made for personal, business, or political reasons, he or she is left with the alternative of either protesting vigorously or else going along with the board for his or her own security. In the long run, superintendents who play the game for their own security may enjoy smoother relations with the board, but their leadership role in the school system and the community may be forfeited.

Adverse relations may also develop from the kind of methods employed by the superintendents in dealing with boards. For instance, they may withhold vital information to protect themselves or they may initiate important policies without consulting the board beforehand. Some superintendents destroy goodwill by assuming an attitude of intellectual superiority and by insisting on the right to decide all educational policies. A few may try to bring community pressure to get what they want and, failing this, engage in a whispering campaign to defeat members who are up for reelection.

Board relations with staff personnel are carried on mostly through the superintendent. He or she is expected to advise the board on staff problems and to recommend policies.

ADMINISTRATION–EMPLOYEE RELATIONS

Relationships between the board of education and the superintendent of schools have a positive or a negative effect on relationships between the superintendent and the employees. A superintendent who enjoys good relations with the board is more likely to look on his or her job as an opportunity to build a better school system. Employees catch the spirit of the superintendent and welcome the leadership provided. A different reaction takes place when the superintendent is forced to contend with an unpleasant board that is more interested in saving money than in building a good school system.

The use of the word *superintendent* in this chapter pertains to school districts other than large city or county districts, where the superintendent often is far removed from districtwide employees. In such large districts, the suggestions in this chapter might apply to regional, cluster, or deputy superintendents.

Primary relations between administration and employees start with the superintendent and flow down a line of authority to the assistant superintendent, directors of special departments, supervisors, and building principals, according to the size of the system. The superintendent is the one who sets the overall pattern of relationships, because of his or her position as chief executive officer. Under proper administrative conditions, success or failure is bound up closely with the willingness of the employees to support the superintendent's policies. In systems where desirable administration–employee relations are found, the superintendent is usually a capable executive who possesses a dynamic and pleasing personality, a deep respect for human values, and an ability to work democratically with people. His or her policies follow a clearly defined philosophy of education and management and include recognition of staff achievements, opportunities for growth in service, staff participation in policy and program development, fair treatment, satisfactory working conditions, and a sincere concern for staff welfare. What a school system has in the way of organization, administrative procedures, instruction, plant, and esprit de corps is due largely to the policies, leadership, courage, and vision of the superintendent.

Except in small school systems, the superintendent must rely on subordinate administrative and supervisory officers to promote desirable staff relations. Poor subordinates, however, may do much to impede his or her leadership and efforts to build a unified school system. They can misinterpret policies and badly manage excellent programs. Their individual struggles for prestige and power may divide staff loyalties and set up competing factions. Unless superintendents have capable and reliable subordinates, they may find themselves heading a mediocre and strife-torn system.

Aside from the superintendent, perhaps the most important administrative officers are the building principals. They are in more intimate contact with the staff than their immediate superiors. Their attitudes and actions determine the way in which many teachers and other school personnel think and feel about the school system.

Human Relations In Improving Employee Relations

The day has long since passed when school administration can be considered as purely a technical skill of developing a budget, constructing and maintaining school plants, assigning teachers, accounting for students, operating school cafeterias, and providing transportation. All these are necessary and vital to the operation of a school or a school system; but another skill, the human skill, must be considered in any discussion of good school administration, particularly where internal relations are concerned.

Sergiovanni contends, "*Human skill* refers to the school administrator's ability to work effectively and efficiently with others on a one-to-one basis and in group settings. The skill requires considerable self-understanding and acceptance as well as appreciation, empathy, and consideration for others."[1]

Running through studies in all areas of administration is a consensus that, although technical skills cannot be disregarded, human skills are vital. The relationship that should exist between human and technical skills has been outlined by Sergiovanni:

> Human skills seem equally important to administrative and supervisory roles throughout the school hierarchy. Regardless of position, all administrators work through others; that is, they use human skills to achieve goals.[2]

School administrators, therefore, must focus attention on acquiring skills to deal with human problems. A necessary requirement for an administrator to develop skills in human relations is a positive attitude toward the supreme worth of all individuals. Not only must this attitude be present in the administrators, but it must be evident and manifested in their behavior. It is not enough for them to state that they believe in democratic administration and total involvement of their staffs and employees; they must verify this philosophy in their day-to-day relations with their employees by showing their regard for others and by generating goodwill among school employees. Good human relations is a matter of using good common sense in administration, which in turn will generate mutual respect and goodwill.

In a successful school system the spirit of goodwill is a pervasive feeling that emanates from the board of education, the chief school administrator, and members of the administrative and supervisory staff. Educators too often think they are practicing good human relations if they provide their employees with good salaries, comfortable lounges, release time, social functions, free coffee, and reserved parking spaces. Important as these features are in the total picture of good employee relations, if such benefits are provided out of a spirit of paternalism to make the employees more compliant, they will not bring about the desired result of good human relations. Employees must perceive that administrators and supervisors are being sincere and honest with them if goodwill and mutual respect are to develop in a school system.

Administrators must train themselves to be sensitive to the importance of communicating through their own behavior and action. If this behavior belies what they say, they will invariably have difficulty in maintaining good human relations. In taking action or making a decision, administrators must anticipate how their employees will perceive the matter. Take, for example, the superintendent who informed the staff that the budget was to be cut and no additional hiring was to take place. In the meantime, the superintendent, preoccupied with an additional assignment from the board of education, hired an additional secretary. The new workload may have warranted the hiring of an additional person, but the school personnel perceived it differently as they had slashed their own budget and denied themselves services. To them the superintendent's behavior destroyed the sincerity of what had been said and served to reduce the superintendent's chances of improving relations with them.

Ultimately, good human relations will lead to better employee relations because of job satisfaction. A problem in education is that a number of administrators make the assumption that the factors that contribute to job satisfaction also contribute to job dissatisfaction. According to Herzberg[3] these are two separate sets of factors. He includes under satisfiers (motivational needs) such factors as achievement, recognition, work itself, responsibility, advancement, and growth. Under dissatisfiers (hygienic

needs) he lists policy and administration; salary; work conditions; interpersonal relations with supervisors, peers, and subordinates; status; security; supervision; and personal life. If these hygienic needs are met, employee dissatisfaction is prevented rather than having an impact on employee satisfaction with work. The hygienic needs relate to the condition of the work while the motivational needs relate to the work itself. Herzberg reasoned that because the factors causing satisfaction are different from those causing dissatisfaction, the two feelings cannot simply be treated as opposites of one another. The opposite of satisfaction is not dissatisfaction, but *no* satisfaction. Similarly, the opposite of dissatisfaction is *no* dissatisfaction.

In order for the employee to move from the hygienic needs to the motivational needs, where morale and productivity improve, the hygienic needs must be reasonably met.

In relating Herzberg's theory to education, Sergiovanni and Carver note:

> It must be remembered, however, that in general providing of hygienic needs prevents decreases in performance but will not increase performance. The motivation to work beyond what is necessary to meet minimum requirements comes from the satisfier set—achievement and recognition, for example. According to the theory, these are the motivators. This concept is of fundamental importance, for the theory suggests that it is a mistaken notion to assume that school executives can buy teacher motivation through concessions across the collective-bargaining table or in similar ways. The bargaining process as we presently know it is largely limited to hygienic concerns.[4]

Relations Among Teachers

Relations among teachers should be evaluated for the effect they have on public opinion. Poor relations have resulted in serious damage to school systems and to the status of professional employees in the community. Teachers have undermined support and respect for the school system by criticizing the work of colleagues to pupils, parents, and the public. Some teachers have openly opposed school policies—as well as newer educational practices and legislative proposals aimed at improving their own welfare—in newspapers. Teachers who engage in these practices are both their own worst enemies and the enemies of the school system. The problems they create must be worked out by administrators who wish to improve and strengthen relations with the community.

The reasons for poor relations among teachers can be traced to a variety of causes. The more typical are instructional practices, unethical conduct, division of responsibility, formation of cliques, and lack of administrative leadership.

Lack of Administrative Leadership

Unity among staff personnel is difficult to produce without strong administrative leadership. Lack of such leadership diverts attention from problems of teaching and learning and brings into prominence petty differences and personal irritations common to any group of people. This in turn leads to rivalry, clique formation, destructive criticism, disagreement, and quarreling. These human weaknesses are less significant and destructive in a school system in which the administrative leader brings teachers together to share ideas, to identify instructional problems, to pool resources, to define acceptable goals, and to coordinate their services.

Instructional Practices

Instructional practices in any good school should be guided by a definite statement of the philosophy and objectives of teaching. When there is no definite agreement on such philosophy and objectives, friction may develop between teachers and may leave parents confused as to what kind of education their children are receiving. One teacher may believe that children grow best in a democratic institution with as much freedom as they can manage successfully, whereas another teacher may believe that children should be kept under strict control and be told exactly what to do. One teacher may give home assignments as an aid to subject-matter mastery, and another may think that home assignments are unnecessary. One may employ a methodology of recitation, drill, and testing; another may build instruction around

problems and projects involving many different types of learning activities. Differences in instructional practices can be a serious cause of poor relations among teachers.

Unethical Conduct

Unethical conduct creates friction among teachers, and examples are numerous. For instance, a teacher may attribute the weaknesses of a class to poor instruction by the previous teacher and make this opinion known to pupils and parents. Or sometimes parents are told that their children do not read well thanks to the methods used by the second-grade teacher, or that their children will pay an educational penalty later on because certain members of the staff are not upholding desirable achievement standards. Teachers who show initiative and imagination, who experiment with newer methods, and who try different curricular arrangements are often ridiculed by colleagues for their efforts. Any teacher who is the target of unfair criticism and abuse by colleagues is bound to feel resentful.

Malicious gossip and rumor are other forms of unethical conduct that induce strained relations among faculty members. These unfair practices can disrupt harmony among staff members and cause much unnecessary suffering. Teachers cannot work together efficiently and present a solid front to the public when they are beset by malicious gossip and rumor.

Division of Responsibility

Disturbances often arise over the division of responsibility among teachers. A heavy classroom schedule will be accepted without too much complaint, provided some teachers do not receive fewer classes, smaller sections, and fewer preparations than others. Sponsorship of extracurricular activities may bring vigorous protest from those who are assigned such difficult, time-consuming activities as newspapers, yearbooks, and dramatics, for which no allowance is made in workload. Resentment over unfair division of responsibility becomes acute when there is a reasonable suspicion that favoritism has been shown to some members of the staff. The resentment is directed as much at these members as at the administrative officers who are responsible for staff assignments.

Formation of Cliques

Cliques are small, exclusive groups of individuals who band together for their own interest and protection. They keep to themselves as much as possible. In an individual school, members of the various departments or other groups may remain apart from their colleagues, feeling that they have little in common with the rest of the faculty.

Cliques thrive mostly in schools where nothing is done to involve the staff in the study of common problems and where administrators remain in the background. The influence of such cliques can be modified when the causes are known and suitable measures worked out for diverting attention to instructional improvements.

RELATIONS WITH NONINSTRUCTIONAL PERSONNEL

School administrators and boards of education sometimes forget that noninstructional personnel are also frontline interpreters of the school. Custodians, mechanics, secretaries, clerks, bus drivers, cafeteria workers, and maintenance personnel have many contacts in the community with friends and neighbors and through membership in religious, fraternal, and social groups. Their attitudes toward the institution and its personnel are just as important as those of teachers in influencing the public mind. When noninstructional personnel are dissatisfied with their jobs and do not get along well with staff members, the reasons are usually associated with politics, job definition, recognition, and economic welfare.

Politics

In some school systems, custodians, mechanics, maintenance workers, clerks, cafeteria workers, and bus drivers are political appointees. They may be employed not because of their ability but to reward political favors. Lacking the qualifications required for understanding and performing their duties effectively, they invite criticism and attack from professional personnel, who have worked for years to establish high standards of selection.

Unfortunately, citizens are not always aware of this condition, and much educational work must be

done before they will be ready to clean up boards of education that are dominated by political organizations. Teachers' associations and community organizations can assist in educating the public to the facts and in demanding that school boards establish definite qualifications for the employment of noninstructional personnel.

Job Definition

Much of the trouble between instructional and noninstructional personnel could be avoided through the technique of job definition so that each individual understands what is expected of him or her. When responsibilities are not well specified, the result is often disagreement over who does what. The janitor claims that the teacher should have children pick up pieces of paper on the floor before they are dismissed. The teacher blames the janitor for leaving the window shades uneven or not arranging seats in proper order. Clerks refuse to duplicate work needed for classroom instruction and object to teachers' using office phones during certain hours.

Recognition

Noninstructional staff personnel want acknowledgment and praise for outstanding service just as much as teachers, and they seldom receive any. Instead, they are treated by some teachers as social inferiors and are criticized in front of pupils. Conflicts involving noninstructional personnel would be reduced and almost eliminated if friendly attitudes were shown toward them and they were accorded deserved recognition. Better relations have been promoted in schools where these workers are invited to faculty meetings and serve on staff committees dealing with matters in which they have an interest.

IMPROVEMENT OF STAFF RELATIONS

The improvement of staff relations starts with the board of education. Through its actions in conducting meetings, showing an intelligent concern for instructional problems, extending fair treatment to administrative staff personnel, and maintaining a strict division of labor between policy decision and policy execution, the board of education can inspire confidence and build a real feeling of security that will permeate the entire school system.

Given this condition, the superintendent and those who assist him or her have an excellent opportunity to foster good staff relations and to make progress toward the achievement of educational goals. The extent to which they succeed will depend on their friendliness, understanding, integrity, and skill in working with people.

In a small school system, the superintendent is the person responsible for establishing cooperative relations with and among members of the staff, largely through leadership in everyday affairs that involve close personal relations. As a school system increases in size, opportunities for personal relations between the superintendent and the staff become fewer. It then becomes the function of the superintendent to establish the climate for good relations through personal contact with representatives from various groups in the school system. Along with this, the superintendent must instruct his or her intermediary assistants and supervisory personnel that they are responsible for close personal relationships with each employee under their supervision. Of this group, none is quite so important as the individual principal. Unless he or she seeks to achieve good employee relations, efforts on the part of the superintendent at the district level might be diffused and therefore ineffective.

But more is needed to effect wholesome internal relations between members of the staff and the administration than a spirit of personal leadership by those in charge of a school system. There must be practices and structures that contribute to the development of good relations.

Studies of internal communications and staff morale frequently reveal that managers and administrators mistakenly assume they know what each employee wants from his or her job. Managers generally rate good pay, job security, and promotion and growth among the top items they believe employees desire. Employees, however, frequently express as key desires: doing interesting work, receiving appreciation for jobs well done, and having a sense of involvement in the workplace.

Heathfield notes: "I've read many surveys and studies dating back to the early 1980s that demonstrate

people want more from work than money. An early study of thousands of workers and managers by the American Psychological Association clearly demonstrated this. While managers predicted the most important motivational aspect of work for people would be money, personal time and attention from the supervisor was cited by the workers as most rewarding for them at work."[5] Sirota claims there are three basic goals of people at work: They want to be treated fairly, have a sense of accomplishment from work, and have camaraderie.[6]

In another study cited in the late Pat Jackson's *pr reporter*,[7] "Ability to have a 'balanced' lifestyle blending with time off for friends and family" was the number one priority of public relations firms' employees. Conversely, the managers of the public relations firms ranked it number eight on their understanding of employees' priorities. This ranked above "financial compensation," which managers thought would be employees' number one want.

It would seem, then, that managers and school administrators tend to communicate from a value perspective that is different from school employees'. In reality, what the school administrator thinks is important to the employee is not. If morale is to be improved and internal communications accomplished, the school administrator must attempt to understand the work environment needs and wants of employees and communicate from that perspective.

Perhaps one way of approaching the problem is through a structured internal communications program that encompasses participatory management approaches fostering good employee feedback and involvement. Some components of a functional internal communications program are discussed in the following sections.

One-on-One Conferences

The purpose of these conferences is to enable the administrator to learn the values and priorities of each employee regarding the job assigned. In addition, the employee learns what the administrator and the school district think is important for the organization.

One technique used is to give the employee a sheet of paper in the conference while the administrator also takes a sheet of paper. The employee is asked to list what is important to him or her to get the job done. Simultaneously, the administrator lists on a sheet of paper what he or she feels the employee considers important to complete assigned duties. They then compare the lists, discuss the differences, and see how the employee's values do or do not mesh with the school's values. The second phase of this process reverses the first phase. The administrator lists what he or she feels is important to get the job done. At the same time, the employee lists on a separate sheet of paper what he or she thinks the administrator considers important to carry out his or her duties. Perceptions are then discussed, with a better understanding of each other's values resulting.

A wise administrator will have a conference with each employee to learn her or his workplace values. Usually, those things that the employee feels are important to getting his or her job done are things that can be influenced or changed by the administrator—for example, getting sufficient supplies in a timely fashion, being able to post student work on walls, having a parking space, or getting proper furniture in a room. When administrators can effect changes, they should do so; when they can't because of legal, budgetary, or policy reasons, they should communicate that to the employee.

Once the administrator understands these workplace values of employees, he or she can communicate messages that address what employees feel is important. Otherwise, employees will tend not to listen to what is communicated.

One-Three-Six Workshops

Another technique to gather feedback from employees emphasizes candidness by employees, yet provides anonymity. All employees of a school district or a school meet in a group. Each employee is asked to list anonymously all his or her likes and concerns about the district or school. Each employee then joins two other employees, and the three combine their lists. Those three, in turn, join another group of three employees, and they too combine their lists. No names appear on any of the lists. The coordinator of the session lists on a flipchart, or board, all the likes and concerns. Employees then vote to identify the top 10 likes or concerns. The employees can be formed into committees to develop strategies for

eliminating the concerns and maintaining the strengths of the school district or school. This one–three–six workshop is a communication approach that gives employees an opportunity to be heard and to feel a part of making their school or school district better.

Internal Advisory Committees

Regardless of the size of the school system, employees want some contact with the chief school administrator other than through the usual administrative channels or over a bargaining table. They want to be able to express their concerns, to have some direct impact on policy development, and to suggest ideas that will improve the overall effectiveness of the school system. Many employees feel that in order to be heard they must communicate with all levels of administration, particularly the top level. The traditional procedure of communicating through one's immediate superior is viewed by many employees as a deliberate move to keep them silent and under control. And it is often true that a step-by-step procedure of communicating upward through the levels of administration tends to stifle employee initiative and creativity.

Some foresighted school administrators, recognizing the need to communicate with employees and to involve them in the overall planning of the school system, have created a superintendent's advisory committee. The committee is designed not only to hear what members of the internal community have to say but also to help inform employees of the many activities of the school district. A number of models have proved functional. One is in the form of **a general advisory committee** with membership from all constituencies of the school system. Another model is that of **special advisory committees** according to positions—one for the faculty (teachers, counselors, and librarians) and another for classified employees (office workers, transportation personnel, cafeteria workers, and the maintenance force). Normally, if a general advisory committee is organized, there is little need for special advisory committees, and vice versa.

The effectiveness of advisory committees depends a great deal on the attitude of superintendents and their ability to orchestrate the whole communication process that develops. If, in creating an advisory committee, their attitude is to talk "at" the representatives and not "with" them, the committee, as a one-way communication vehicle, will eventually become ineffective. However, the committee can be helpful to the entire educational program if superintendents perceive issues from the viewpoint of an administrator and an employee, if they are sensitive to the importance employees might place on an issue, if they can effect change where change is possible and offer a rationale where change is not possible, and if they keep the committee informed.

Many times a concern of a committee may seem to be insignificant to the superintendent although it is of major concern to the committee. Often it is an item that can be changed or corrected by a simple memo or phone call from the superintendent. For example, to teachers, getting their supplies on a Monday rather than on a Friday may be vital, yet the superintendent may not be aware of such a problem. Furthermore, his or her administrative staff may not be aware of the problem either. An advisory committee, then, may be one of the few ways such an overall problem of the staff can be revealed.

There are times that the superintendent will have to reject the advice of the committee and say no to a requested change in procedure. And it should be understood by the committee members that this will happen. In these cases the superintendent should give the rationale for saying no. Committee members may not agree with this decision, but with an explanation they will understand better how the decision was reached.

Particularly important is the committee's ability to help the superintendent communicate with the other employees. If a new program is being launched, details can be relayed to the committee for further dissemination. The details of the annual budget can be passed along to the employees through the committee as one of a number of ways of keeping the employees informed of the activities of the school system.

Over a period of time the superintendent should be able to begin anticipating sensitive areas among employees from the issues discussed at the advisory committee meetings. In turn, he or she may be able to effect change or develop a communication

strategy that can eliminate a possible crisis or confrontation with employees.

Encouraging Suggestions

One of the quickest ways to find out how good morale is in the schools is to ask employees this question: "If you had an idea to improve the schools and it would cost nothing to implement it, would you suggest it?" In some school districts that we worked with, 80 percent of the employees said that they would. In others, only 10 percent said they would suggest the idea. This is a quick way to find out how people feel about where they work.

Here are a couple of easy ways to let the staff know that you're noticing they're doing a good job. One hospital started a CIA (caught in the act) card. Employees were given these cards to distribute to other employees who they saw doing something special for other employees or for patients. Each card would be worth a free lunch in the cafeteria.

A publishing company gave each employee 10 coupons, again to distribute to employees they saw doing something especially well; 1 coupon was worth a free lunch, 2 were worth a dinner, and 10 were worth a night at a local casino. Perhaps a company in your area would pay for this undertaking.

Implementing Effecktancy

You won't find "effecktancy" in the dictionary. It's a combination of *effectiveness* and *efficiency*. The idea is designed to generate suggestions to make your school district better.

Here's how you might set it up: Announce the idea and follow it up with articles in your internal newsletter, explaining what the purpose is: to make the schools better. People may suggest things that will save money or will enable a job to be done better. Everyone who submits an idea has his or her name placed in a hat. Each month a name is drawn from the hat. The winner gets $250 or some other prize. At the end of the year, the grand prize winner gets a trip to Hawaii.

During the months that the program is in effect, banners are hung, buttons may be distributed, and articles in newsletters can share the best ideas. Each suggestion is responded to by the superintendent or someone designated to do so. Each person submitting an idea that is implemented will receive 10 percent of the savings or additional profits that come from the idea.

One company that implemented the idea went from 23 suggestions in a year to over 1,400. Again, you might receive funding from a local supporter.

Recognition of Accomplishments

Another policy of far-reaching importance in building good relations is that of recognizing the outstanding accomplishments of individuals and groups. All individuals, no matter what kind of work they do, are psychologically so constructed that they must know whether their labors are being appreciated by those above them in line of authority. They may not be willing to do their best or to expend extra effort if what they do is taken for granted. Studies of morale among workers in industry have borne out this point, but for some unexplainable reason little has been done about it by some administrators. And yet it can be accomplished rather easily, with a letter praising an employee, a note of thanks, a pleasant telephone call, or a congratulatory note.

Involvement in Planning

Administrators interested in fostering good internal communications would be wise to involve all employees in the planning processes for the entire school district. It would seem that each employee has enough expertise to benefit the school district by serving on a planning committee or task force on curriculum, long-range goals, finances, buildings, athletics, or community relations, for example. Employees asked to serve on such planning committees or task forces will feel a sense of belonging and be honored that they are invited to help improve the school district. Their interest in working for the schools should increase once they have a chance to be heard and possibly effect needed changes. Additionally, this upward communication from the employees as a result of serving on planning committees or task forces has another benefit: Many new ideas are generated that ultimately will help the instructional program either directly or indirectly.

Aside from involving employees in general district planning, some school officials have found it helpful to involve employees in designing activities for their own positions. This type of planning requires the employees to develop goals, objectives, and activities for their own positions. Once these are developed, the employee meets with his or her administrator and negotiates a final plan, usually for a year. This type of planning requires communications between the employee and administrator in order to agree on a plan and to monitor the progress periodically and gives the employee a chance to have a voice in his or her professional activities.

Improvement Circles

The quality circles concept was developed in Japan in the 1960s. American corporations became enamored with it and copied it in their quality improvement efforts. With new names such as "quality teams" or "improvement teams," quality circles have been tailored to focus also on the improvement of the whole system rather than exclusively on one specific area. While these new-fashioned quality circles continue to emphasize the *achievement* of quality, they now include *maintaining* quality once it's reached. Educators, then, would be wise to examine the original concept as a way to improve not only internal communications but also the instructional and operational processes in the school system.

In the original concept, a quality or improvement circle is composed of 7 to 10 people who do similar work. They meet voluntarily on a regular basis to identify and analyze sources of problems, to recommend solutions to the administration, and, where possible, to implement solutions. Each group has a leader or facilitator to keep the discussion from digressing from the prescribed agenda. The leaders might be educators from outside the district until facilitators can be trained from among administrators and employees within the school district.

Improvement circle meetings have a definite structure to them with an agenda, a conducive meeting place, and limited guidelines for functioning. In many cases the agenda is determined by the circle ahead of time and does include such items as pay, insurance, benefits, personalities, or grievances. Likewise, meetings do not interfere with the negotiation process. Meetings are scheduled for conference rooms with the necessary supplies and equipment to enhance productive discussions and analyses of problems.

The improvement circle process consists of six major steps: problem identification, problem selection, problem analysis, recommended solutions, management review, and recommendations for implementation.

Important in the improvement circle process is the selection of the problems to be addressed. Members develop lists of problems related directly to their jobs that they consider of major importance to carry out their work in an efficient manner. Noncircle members such as other employees and administrators are contacted for problems the circle can discuss. Circle members then compile a list of the problems, put them in some order of priority, and begin to address them.

The circle members are the ones who select the problems to be worked on. No pressure or guidance from outside the circle should be permitted. Once a problem is analyzed and a solution is determined, a formal presentation is made to the appropriate administrator. Acceptance of the recommendation by the administration is a strong motivation for the circle members to address the next problem on their list.

The improvement circle process cultivates better internal communications by (1) meeting a basic need of employees, the need for a feeling of belonging; (2) providing for employee feedback of creative ideas and suggestions; (3) encouraging all employees to focus on the primary purpose of helping students learn better; and (4) establishing an environment of communication between the administration and employees.

Staff Development

The administration of a school district communicates with employees more, perhaps, by action than by words. What is done often has more of an impact than what is said. Programs established to benefit employees are important in this respect. One that says to employees "You're important" is a staff

development program that helps employees improve professionally.

A staff development program provides employees with professional direction, permits them to attend conferences and workshops in their field, reimburses them for courses taken, and provides salary increments for professional development. Such a program not only makes them better employees but also communicates that the district does care about its employees. Ultimately, this should have a positive effect on the students.

A staff development program, along with other employee communications methods, often can solve problems resulting from employee *coastout* (a term coined by Don Bagin to describe an employee who merely does an adequate job but in a sense rests on his or her oars until retirement, sometimes many years away). Many times the school administration has not provided an atmosphere that recognizes or uses the employee's expertise properly. A staff development program with numerous one-on-one conferences between administrators and employees will unearth the coastout syndrome and tailor programs that motivate employees to strive for more efficiency. Employees, particularly teachers, who feel a minimum loyalty from the school district will direct their professional skills outside the schools, where recognition and satisfaction are more easily attained; when this happens, motivation is low, and teachers use the minimum energy to provide an adequate result in the classroom.

Many districts overlook the support employees in a staff development program. Maintenance personnel, custodians, office workers, bus drivers, cafeteria workers, and other noninstructional employees are motivated to do a better job when provided a formal program to improve themselves. A staff development program, obviously, will not motivate every employee to improve, but if functioning properly, it will communicate a positive message to all employees that the district wants to help them professionally. Many, if not most, will respond.

Orientation of New Employees

A well-structured orientation program for new employees can be extremely effective in developing good staff relations. Employees new to a school system can become bitter and resentful if they are not properly familiarized with the school or are not told what is expected of them. Successful programs have included a meeting with the district's central office personnel to learn about the characteristics of the system and to be informed of the procedures for pay, medical benefits, purchasing, and housing availability in the area. Afterward, new employees meet with the administrators and other employees of their assigned department or building. Often they are assigned a "mentor" from the current staff to be with them during orientation. Generally, the mentor is from the same department in which the new staff member will be working and therefore can be readily available to help and to answer questions that come up. New employees who are made to feel welcome and are helped in adjusting to their new duties will probably be better employees.

Substitute Teachers

Often overlooked in employee relations programs are substitute teachers. Generally, they are members of the local community who can carry their impressions of the school to their friends and neighbors in the community. Prior to the opening of school, it is wise to meet with all substitute teachers who have registered with the school system. At that time they can be given information on the policies and regulations of a school, a schedule of classes, some facts about enrollments, a map of the room locations, and the procedures to follow if they are reporting for a teaching assignment. If they are called to substitute for a regular teacher, their job is made easier if they are provided with a set of lesson plans, a seating chart, a roll book, and a copy of the books and materials needed for the teaching assignment. Additionally, they should be warmly welcomed into the teachers' dining room for coffee and meals. Department chairpersons or subject coordinators in high schools and principals or head teachers in elementary schools can be very helpful in welcoming a substitute teacher to the school and to a teaching assignment. Some systems provide substitute teachers with a publication that outlines what is expected of them and contains

helpful hints and suggestions for carrying out their teaching assignments.

Internal Publications, Web Sites, and E-Mail

A school district can lose face with its employees when they constantly learn about happenings in the district from an outside source, usually through the media. Occasionally, this is unavoidable. Nevertheless, the superintendent and his or her administrative staff must be continually sensitive to the need of the employees to be kept informed as soon as possible of activities in the district. Many districts can inform their employees via e-mail and on the district's Web and internal intranet sites.

One of the most popular publications is that which summarizes the actions of the board of education. Many districts attempt to have a brief write-up of board meetings in the hands of the employees prior to public discussion in the local news media. However, in some systems this is impossible since the meeting may be televised or aired on the radio. Still, though, there are many details that can be supplied to the employees, such as the appointment of personnel or the letting of bids. The publication may be simple in design with a colorful masthead. The summary can be inexpensively duplicated or printed.

An employee newsletter (either print or online) is another popular medium of communicating with employees. The format of internal publications can range from a printed newsletter with photos to a duplicated sheet highlighting general activities of the school system. Online versions may be simply reproductions of the print version or they may be redesigned as Web pages with working links to additional information, Whether in print or online, these publications are most effective when written in clear, simple language that avoids educational jargon—as many of a school system's employees are noneducators.

Many school systems that distribute publications externally overlook the importance of distributing the same publication internally, for example, a community newsletter, a pamphlet welcoming new parents, or a calendar of school activities. School employees feel more a part of the educational team if they have access to copies of external publications that the school sends to the community.

Other popular internal publications are curriculum newsletters, a formal publication that notifies employees of vacant positions in the district, a substitute teacher handbook, general information brochures, an internal professional publication that contains articles written by employees, and written summaries of important internal meetings.

COMMUNICATING DURING NEGOTIATIONS AND STRIKES

Unfortunately, the image the public has of a school district when a strike occurs is not a pleasant one. Much of the image has to do with the messages coming from both sides. Many citizens can't understand how "educated" people can adhere to an emotional rhetoric that points an accusing finger at the other side. Nor can they understand why, in the negotiating process, time is wasted by both sides starting from extreme positions, knowing that ultimately both sides will have to compromise with a moderate position. "Why," they ask, "couldn't they start with reasonable demands and positions, cut the rhetoric, reduce the emotionalism, and get the children back to school?"

This public image of schools is unfortunate because this is the very public whose confidence in the schools is needed for continued support. That confidence has not been as high as it should have been in recent years, caused in part by strikes; the long, drawn-out negotiations process; poor communications with the public; and poor internal communications.

Mistakenly, many school systems believe that negotiation procedures are confined to a period of haggling over demands laid on the table by both sides. But there is more involved. It is the overall picture of what takes place throughout the year that has a decisive impact on the negotiating sessions.

It must be emphasized that good employee relations are achieved and less severe bargaining sessions experienced when teachers and noninstructional employees are consulted by the board of education and the administration on questions relating to their welfare and their working conditions. Their recommendations may not always be accepted, but this is less important than the right to make their wants

known. School employees are willing to go along with a policy or a program when they understand the facts behind it, even though the policy runs contrary to their opinions.

Many of the demands placed on the bargaining table by employees are concerns that employees may have expressed to the administration, and they were ignored as being insignificant. Take, for example, a request by teachers that a desk and a chair be available in each classroom. This furniture had been missing for some time despite the fact that it was requested for three years in a row. The administration felt it was insignificant, didn't have the money for new furniture, and therefore ignored it. Ultimately, the request for the furniture became a demand at the next collective bargaining session. It didn't have to be, and additionally it made the negotiations on other items more testy because of the lack of trust by the teachers. Through special or general advisory committees the school administration should be identifying such concerns and meeting them where legitimate. This can reduce the time needed for negotiations.

Experts contend good communication is the key to keeping the school district together during negotiations and strikes. Bad communication can cause confusion and diminish the school system in the eyes of the public, the media, and the employees. It is vital that all three of these publics be kept informed. Public statements should be objective and be made jointly or by either side. They should outline the issues being covered but not the biased position of each side. The statements should be totally factual, free of emotion, and not slanted to make one side or the other look good or bad.

Important, too, is the need for one spokesperson for each side. For the school district that could be the communication specialist, the chief negotiator, or the president of the board of education. Otherwise, if various members of either side make public statements, confusion and inaccuracies result. Experts believe the superintendent should not be the spokesperson because after negotiations or a strike, he or she has to unite the employees and the district to get back to educating children.

Anytime financial figures are presented, particularly in salary increments and percentages of pay increases, they should be given with background information explaining how they were determined. Otherwise both sides may accuse the other side of lying because inaccurate figures are revealed. In reality, often both sides may be accurate, but they are not explaining how they arrived at the final data. For example, the employees may say they are being offered a 6 percent increase, and the school district says the employees are getting a 10 percent increase. They are both correct if they explain how they determined the percentage. The employees are not including a scheduled increment as part of the overall increase and the school district is.

Communication between the school district and its employees is vital during negotiations or a strike. Many districts make weak attempts to communicate internally at such times, feeling the employees' organization or union will provide that service to the employees. School districts must not abdicate this responsibility. Otherwise, the employees may not understand fully the position of the school district on issues.

Not to be overlooked is communication with students, particularly at the secondary level. Some educators feel that it is important to communicate with students once a strike occurs. Perhaps it would be wise to communicate prior to the strike. Any communications should be factual, stating issues and the school district's position. Care should be taken not to portray teachers or any other employees as being at fault in a strike. Otherwise, when the strike is over, student respect for the teachers may be difficult to restore.

COMMUNICATING WITH PUPILS

A universal question asked in many homes each evening across the nation is "What did you learn in school today?" The answer to such a question is important, of course, but perhaps just as important is the emphasis such a question places on the student as a communications link between the school and the home. An impressive number of parents in every community form their judgments of a school system from the comments that are made about it by pupils. They hear the pupils discuss their teachers, talk about homework assignments, express opinions on the value of what they do in classes, evaluate the fairness

of rules and regulations, and describe experiences they had with school staff members.

No school can expect to enjoy the confidence and support of parents unless the comments of most pupils are favorable to the system. Much may be done in the name of community relations, but what a school system does may be neutralized if the day-to-day relationship with pupils is unsatisfactory.

The Pupil as an Individual

All pupils from kindergarten through grade 12, whether they are quiet, docile pupils or discipline problems, want their school to care about them. They want their teachers and principal to convey the feeling to them that they are interested in them as individuals. How well the school fosters an "I-care-for-you" feeling with its students will go a long way in helping the individual develop a healthy attitude toward learning and a positive approach when he or she discusses the school in the community.

Often the organizational nature of the school system tends to foster an impersonal relation between the school and the student. Consider the cool, impersonal characteristic of a student number, a form letter, a locker number, or a computerized report card. Necessary as they may be to the proper functioning of a large school system, these impersonal relationships cannot stand alone as the only recognition of the student. They tend to reduce all students to a common denominator, whereas the students want to be treated as individuals. Needed, then, are programs and teaching methods that raise the pupils' self-image and recognize their human dignity.

Respect for Personality

It has long been an accepted belief in a democracy that respect should be shown for the worth and dignity of the individual. Effective teachers subscribe to this belief because they know that it leaves its mark on the behavior of pupils and satisfies a human need for security. Teachers show this respect by treating serious breaches of conduct in private and by working quietly with pupils who present problems of social adjustment. Honest mistakes made by pupils are acknowledged pleasantly, and suggestions are offered for overcoming these mistakes in the future.

Allowance is provided in the learning process for individual differences, and tasks are assigned that can be handled successfully. In order to encourage continued work, a wise teacher acknowledges a sincere effort on the part of the pupil. Such teachers are not hesitant in helping pupils to understand their own weaknesses and natural limitations, but the help is given without undermining self-confidence or injuring the student's status in the group. The common amenities of social life are practiced, and departures from them are not permitted. Pupils come to feel that they are individuals in their own right and that they are each contributing to the group. Teachers who show respect for personality in these and other ways stimulate better learning and enjoy the cooperation and goodwill of the learners.

Discipline

The handling of discipline plays a major role in establishing satisfactory or unsatisfactory relations with pupils. Effective teachers regard good discipline as a condition that is essential to good learning. When pupils become restless, inattentive, and annoying, teachers examine their own practices to find out if they are responsible before they reprimand the pupils. Experience has taught them that most youngsters do not become restless and disturbing in the classroom when activities move along at a brisk pace, when they are being challenged, and when learning is made exciting.

Moreover, competent teachers understand the normal behavior of pupils at different stages of growth and development and make allowance for these in their planning. They are able to prevent situations from arising that would call for disciplinary action. Their knowledge of child growth and development equips them to make distinctions between normal behavior and symptoms of maladjustment and to refer pupils who show these symptoms to trained counselors.

Less competent teachers can make mistakes in disciplinary action, thereby placing a strain on their relations with pupils. One mistake is that of employing punishment freely for slight infractions of rules or failure to meet achievement standards.

Pupils want their teachers to be consistent in discipline. They want to know the rules and discuss them for relevancy and purpose. Pupils don't like teachers to make study a punishment by imposing extra work. Pupils also don't respect teachers who lose their temper; these teachers then lose their ability to solve discipline problems in a professional way. On the other hand, pupils respect teachers who admit they are wrong if they have treated a pupil unjustly.

INSTRUCTIONAL PRACTICES

Relations with pupils are changed for better or worse by the instructional practices of the teacher. Among the more crucial features are homework assignments, marks and marking systems, examinations, and guidance procedures.

Homework Assignments

Schools have traditionally followed a policy of giving pupils assignments of homework. A few schools do not believe in homework; nevertheless, there are those who do believe that the assignments are educationally beneficial to pupils. This policy has been generally accepted by young people and their parents.

Continuing support of the homework policy may be damaged by the introduction of such questionable practices as requiring so much homework that time is taken from children for rest and relaxation, allowing assignments to pile up unevenly, engaging children in dull and worthless copy exercises, failing to explain clearly what is expected, assigning problems that are too difficult for pupils, and committing the sin of not correcting and returning assignments turned in by pupils.

School officials should give high priority to establishing a regulation that requires consistency of assignments by all teachers. A pupil and his or her parents may have difficulty understanding how and why each teacher has a different set of homework rules. Thus, standardized regulations can serve to reduce criticism over the nature and amount of work involved in assignments. If criticism does arise, school officials should check its validity. It may be discovered that teachers are beginning to introduce practices that should be corrected before more serious trouble is encountered.

An intelligent parent who takes an interest in homework knows whether or not assignments are worthwhile and reasonable and will resent school officials who defend poor practices. One solution would be that of inviting pupils and parents to meet periodically with faculty members and review the whole question. This is an excellent means of preventing problems and of bringing pupils and parents closer to teachers.

Grades and Grading Systems

Grades and grading systems should be included in any examination of instructional practices because of the effect they have on pupil attitudes and feelings toward teachers. So much importance is attached to marks in connection with promotion, graduation, and college admission that it is natural for pupils to be concerned. Because their welfare is tied up in marks and marking systems, pupils want to know how teachers evaluate tests, written work, and special assignments and whether or not their methods are fair and impartial.

Teachers who establish fine interaction with pupils take full advantage of this interest. They devote as much time as necessary to the enumeration and discussion of factors that enter into the evaluation of tests and work submitted by pupils and the explanation of how these factors are weighed in arriving at the judgments expressed in terms of percentage or letter grades. Teachers are receptive to suggestions made by pupils for modifying and improving the marking system, recognizing that pupils will believe more fully in the fairness of the system if they have had a hand in devising it. These teachers recommend that the whole subject of marking be studied by members of the faculty under the direction of the principal. They are convinced from their conversations with pupils and the remarks pupils make that some standardization should prevail among the different teachers in the school. Consistency promotes confidence and faith in the marking system.

Teachers who are concerned about their interaction with pupils try to eliminate the tension and fear that too great a stress on marks inevitably

produces. They do not want marks to be regarded as the end products of learning or the principal cause for motivating achievement. Teachers want pupils to look on marks and marking systems as convenient and helpful tools for understanding their own strengths and weaknesses and for guiding their efforts toward self-improvement. It has been their experience that pupil growth and development take place more rapidly when the progress of the learner, rather than the satisfaction of academic standards, is made the point of attention.

Examinations

Examinations are generally accepted by pupils as a necessary part of learning. To them examinations are a challenge that affords them the opportunity to determine how well they are doing in their classwork and where they need to improve. Seldom do pupils object to taking examinations that cover material they have studied. Their attitude toward examinations changes when practices are introduced that they think are unfair. Included among these practices are administering examinations for disciplinary purposes, inconsistency among teachers in methods of scoring, test items foreign to the material studied, too much concern for test results instead of their diagnostic value, and criticism for poor outcomes without attempting to discover the causes.

Guidance Procedures

Although the teacher plays a major role in guidance and counseling, the pupil's attitude toward the school often is affected by the guidance specialist. This member of the educational team must ensure that he or she does not convey the feeling that guidance is inquisitiveness, but rather a kind of caring about the pupil. Many times when pupils feel they can no longer communicate with their teachers, they will expect the guidance counselor to be a good listener and one who can get a message to their teachers in their behalf. If a counselor can maintain a human approach from day to day and can provide a tangible link between the students and their school, he or she can then be an answer to many pupil needs.

Pupils are quick to detect the overzealousness of some counselors in getting as many students as possible into college. This is particularly true of the pupil who is not interested in college but rather in career education. Too often entire guidance departments have conveyed a "We-are-only-interested-in-college-bound-students" image. Consequently, many pupils who are not college bound can see very little help coming from such counselors. It is incumbent on guidance departments to extend themselves to the pupils, individually or as a group, rather than to take the position of waiting until pupils walk into the guidance office. Guidance counselors can project a constructive image through orientation programs with entering students and through planned programs of meeting all students in small, informal discussion groups. Counselors can also improve their image by clarifying their role with the instructional staff and by placing equal emphasis on career and college education.

RELATIONS OUTSIDE THE CLASSROOM

Pupils have numerous contacts with instructional and noninstructional personnel outside the classroom. These points of contact should be considered as means of increasing friendliness and cooperation between pupils and members of the staff.

Library

The library is one point of contact where pupils form definite opinions of schools. The nature of their opinions varies with the personality of the individual in charge and the services they receive. A librarian who greets pupils with a smile, chats cheerfully, and tries to understand their needs sets an entirely different tone from one who gives short answers, shows impatience, and demands observance of minor regulations. In some schools the library is associated with the instructional media or instructional resource center in which a number of learning devices and resources are housed. This arrangement increases student–librarian contacts and makes the librarian's role even more important.

Medical Centers

The protection of a child's health is now an established part of the school program. School board policies and state laws require that pupils be examined

periodically by physicians, nurses, dentists, and other specialists and that they receive first-aid treatment and care for sudden illness.

How medical personnel handle their contacts with pupils and parents is important in building good community relations. Nothing wins praise more quickly than the tactful and efficient administration of medical services and a high degree of personal interest in children needing corrective and remedial attention. Unless medical personnel are sensitive to their legal parameters and their community relations opportunities, they may handle child and parent contacts poorly.

School Office

It is surprising how many times in a school year pupils have occasion to visit the school office. Every time they enter the office they have contacts with staff members. If they receive courteous treatment and their business is handled efficiently, the office stands high in their estimation. However, if the pupils feel, for instance, that secretaries think they are assistant principals, that they do not welcome students, or make them wait unnecessarily to see the principal, pupils' feelings about the office weaken good internal communications.

Cafeteria

School cafeterias exist for the benefit of pupils and the convenience of staff members, not for the accumulation of profits. In this respect, they may be thought of as service agencies having the function of preparing and distributing wholesome meals. The extent to which they fulfill this function determines how they are appraised by pupils. Perhaps no other agency outside the classroom undergoes a more careful scrutiny than does the food-service and nutrition program

It would be beneficial to all concerned if the director of the cafeteria made efforts to communicate with the students, discussing the various aspects of food preparation and explaining why certain food can or cannot be served. Often in establishing communications with students the cafeteria director will uncover helpful suggestions for improving the food service.

Physical Plant

Relations between pupils and custodial personnel who are responsible for the physical conditions of the building and grounds should be examined. Although these men and women who perform cleaning and maintenance services have no jurisdiction over pupils, they sometimes assume this authority and treat pupils who disobey their orders with shouts, abusive language, and even rough handling. Resentment against abusive treatment may be expressed by marking walls, plugging lavatory facilities, and scattering paper on floors. This condition is disruptive of the unity sought in a school and should be prevented.

Conflict possibilities between pupils and custodial personnel can be reduced and usually eliminated if thought is given to the problem. The solution should start with the employment of individuals who have social intelligence. The limits of their authority should be defined clearly and procedures outlined for reporting pupils who violate regulations. Such personnel should be made to feel a responsibility for the success of the school and should realize it is their job to earn the goodwill and respect of pupils.

Transportation

In school districts that have their own transportation fleet, the bus drivers are in a unique position to influence pupils' thinking. Students do not regard bus drivers in quite the same way as they do other members of the staff, and they talk freely in the driver's presence about the school and the teachers they have in classes. In the course of a year a driver can learn a great deal about the school and how pupils appraise it. Competent bus drivers who regard themselves as members of the staff can be exceedingly helpful in correcting false statements of pupils and explaining reasons for policies and practices pupils do not like. Drivers are in a special position to listen to their complaints, discuss their problems, and bring out facts pupils might not consider. Drivers' services in interpreting the school to pupils and reporting their attitudes to the principal can be invaluable.

THE PUPIL AND INTERNAL COMMUNITY RELATIONS

The school itself consists of many internal publics, and the pupils constitute the most important internal group. As such, pupils should be given a chance to become involved in the entire internal educational community by making suggestions and participating in school planning. This is particularly true in the secondary school, where pupils want to be considered as contributing members of the school family.

Until recent years educators traditionally used a one-way method of communicating with the students, either from the principal to the student or from the teacher to the student. Announcements were made over the loudspeaker in homerooms, at assembly programs, by written memo, or in the classroom through lectures. The students were to be "seen and not heard." They were talked "to" and not "with," for in the judgment of many educators, they had very little to offer by way of suggestions about their school programs or their school life. Out of such an environment student activism emerged, and the traditional method of communicating with students was revealed as lacking effectiveness. In fact, this one-way method contributed greatly to the rise of student militancy, since students were neither kept informed nor given answers to legitimate questions, and they were also denied an opportunity to contribute ideas to the school.

One of the most effective methods of communicating with students, particularly at the junior and senior high-school level, is a two-way structure enabling them to express opinions, make suggestions, and offer constructive criticism on various aspects of school. At the same time, they learn more about school policies and procedures, staff duties, and responsibilities. Such two-way communications can be accomplished through student advisory committees, student government organizations, suggestion boxes, ombudspersons, student surveys, and student town meetings.

Student Advisory Committees

Some schools have developed excellent programs of two-way communications with students at the secondary level by restructuring the student council and perhaps even changing its name to the Student Advisory Group or the Student Advisory Committee. Successful administrators will see to it that all students are eligible for election to the group regardless of grades or discipline problems. Good administrators know that they must structure some type of student advisory group to hear the voices of all students. Here is where the democratic system must work at its best. The principal meets with the students periodically, listens to their suggestions, and grants their wishes when common sense dictates that they should be granted. He or she always explains the reasons for decisions. These committees become a two-way communications process whereby student leaders come to understand the problems of the principal, and the principal comes closer to the student body.

The student advisory committee does have many good ideas and is often helpful to the principal in a time of crisis. Its members can squelch rumors among its constituency and in turn reduce inflammatory rumors in the community. The key to success of this type of communication is the credibility of the principal, who naturally must "tell it like it is" and be truthful with the students.

Student Opinion Surveys

Student advisory committees do provide some amount of feedback from the students. However, a sound internal community relations program also calls for direct information from the students concerning their feelings about the school. One of the most common ways of getting this direct feedback is through a survey or questionnaire.

Some schools have developed a functional student opinion survey for high school students. It asks student opinions about report card grades, class procedures, extracurricular activities, changes in school plant and procedures, courses, weaknesses, rules and regulations, student government, counseling, teacher attitude, and study halls, among other topics.

When students participate in such a survey, they assume that the results will be shared with them or some action will be taken by the school to implement suggestions. If the survey is filed away and nothing is done with the information, the school's credibility with students is weakened. A

major consideration, therefore, in planning a student survey is the disposition of the findings. Prior to administering the survey, students should be informed that a summary of the results will be shared with them, and valid suggestions will be implemented.

Student Town Meetings

Student town meetings can be in the form of a student assembly in which all students have an opportunity to participate. Such assemblies are similar to the traditional assembly programs except that there is no performer or guest speaker or musical program. Instead, it is the students' town meeting, in which teachers and administrators ask for student thoughts, criticisms, and ideas. Some meetings are held after school hours for the entire student body. Or they can be held during school hours in small groups on the grade level or in each classroom.

Ombudsperson

The concept of the ombudsperson has merit in a school if an administrator is committed to developing feedback from students about the school procedures, staff, programs, or facilities. Students can confide in the ombudsperson without fear of recrimination. Often students are reluctant to talk to teachers or counselors for fear they will be reported to the principal or other school officials. The ombudsperson then becomes a communicator, facilitating the circular flow of information between school officials and students. Whoever fills this position must gain the confidence of students to make the system function.

STUDENT UNREST

When student activism erupts into unrest or violence, unfavorable publicity generally results for the school. Citizens begin pointing an accusing finger at the local educational system or begin classifying all students as an unappreciative new generation. When student unrest has reached the point of actual violence, it is usually too late to resolve the crisis immediately. Instead, school officials have to weather the situation until emotions become less charged.

Why Students Rebel

Frustration is the primary reason for most student unhappiness and unrest. Frustration is part of life and cannot be eliminated entirely. Nonetheless, when it pierces the very heart of a student's self-esteem and personal dignity, it should be avoided. Many times teachers and administrators nurture frustration by showing a lack of love or respect for the students as individuals; by applying rigid rules without considering circumstances; by not providing an opportunity for every child to experience success in the classroom; by not permitting students to be heard; by overburdening students with demands beyond their ability; by not providing good channels of communication with school officials and with other student groups; or by not seeking student input at various decision-making levels of the school system, particularly in the junior and senior high schools.

Students are looking for well-defined channels in a school through which their influences can be felt. When there are no such channels or when these are not clearly defined, frustration often sets in, and a protest is not uncommon. The students' protest is an attempt to prove their importance and to say that they want to participate. They want to be heard and to present their ideas and suggestions. If students are given an opportunity to be heard and to be involved and if the school officials and the staff can convey the idea that they do care about the students, unrest and destructive activism can be minimized.

Channels of Influence

Much of what has been presented in this chapter has been addressed to the idea of providing channels of influence for students. Many of the ideas presented, if implemented, could alleviate or prevent student unrest. However, three additional areas should be covered: diversity committees, student involvement in the community, and student publications. These are helpful in minimizing student unrest.

DIVERSITY COMMITTEES

Poor communication among students themselves, ironically, is a source of much student unrest. This can surface as racial or ethnic conflict or conflict between cliques or "in" groups or "out" groups. Much

of the conflict spills into the school from society itself, where ethnic groups have drawn battle lines for years. All students want to be recognized by school officials and by other students. They want to be recognized for what they are, their customs, their ethnic backgrounds, and their culture. As long as student groups within a school cannot relate these cultural and ethnic characteristics to one another or do not have an opportunity to learn about another ethnic group, the chances are great for misunderstanding and for rumors to develop and fester.

When potentially abrasive situations are possible among diverse groups in a school system, ample time during the day should be provided for students to come together in a meaningful way for solving their problems. A diversity subcommittee of the student government can often serve as a functional group to provide constructive dialogue between two factions and to serve as a logical vehicle to develop meaningful understanding of different customs and cultures. Often these diverse or human relations committees with representatives from each class and each diverse group can identify racial problems, suggest solutions, hold forums for all responsible opinions, advise curriculum committees on including the history of various ethnic groups, advise school officials on racial matters, and hold rap sessions between diverse groups so that each comes to understand the other better.

STUDENT INVOLVEMENT IN THE COMMUNITY

In many schools, student thirst for action goes beyond the talking and listening stages, particularly when the issues are social and political injustices in society. Students' concern for their fellow humans often takes the form of direct action to alleviate human suffering in the areas of poverty, ignorance, hunger, pollution, housing, or health. They become frustrated when action is not taken; consequently, they may become restless and strike out at the academic establishment because they cannot gain a sense of satisfaction by working for their ideals.

Student interest in solving political and social problems can be a positive force, especially in secondary school. Authorities on student activism claim that one of the best ways of meeting students' thirst for action is for the school to offer meaningful and worthwhile activities for community involvement. Such activities can include many school-coordinated community service programs, such as fund-raising campaigns for less fortunate citizens, suggested proposals to eliminate pollution and to protect the environment, tutoring programs for migrant workers' children, work in hospitals and nursing homes, public opinion surveying, recreation programs in housing projects, voluntary work with welfare agencies, and other activities that show a concern for human welfare and justice.

Not only do community activities channel student unrest toward constructive outlets, but such activities also relate the students' education more directly to social and political problems of concern to them. Furthermore, student concern and involvement in the community often help improve communications among students, between students and teachers and administrators, and between the school and the community. Not to be overlooked is the amount of goodwill generated by such community service. The aid of faculty members and community advisers is often needed to coordinate student involvement in the community.

Additionally, when the classroom is extended beyond the walls of the building, the community becomes a laboratory for learning. Students have an opportunity to brush against reality, develop further sensitivities to social needs and problems, and acquire a deeper sense of civic responsibility. The community by-products of students' study and involvement in the community are increased public confidence in the abilities of these young people, a better understanding of the educational program, and a willingness to support the school system more generously.

STUDENT PUBLICATIONS

Schools have learned that students will make their views known even when the school officials haven't asked for them. If students are not given an opportunity to express themselves in a school paper, particularly in secondary schools, they will often resort to an underground press. Such papers have been nightmares for those administrators who have not provided students with a channel for self-expression. The delicate task of school officials in this matter lies somewhere between permitting absolute freedom of

expression and a totally censored publication that does not represent student thinking. A middle road is needed, giving expression to students' ideas but in words that are acceptable to the community.

Some school systems have established a school communications committee that is helpful in setting guidelines of good journalism and in developing a relevant learning experience for students in school publications. The committee is made up of students, faculty members, parents, and citizens from the community, some of whom may be members of the local media or adults with experience in journalism. Such a committee can be helpful as an advisory group to the principal or to a school board if necessary. With the presence of students and laypersons on the committee, dissident students are more apt to accept the committee's recommendations and suggestions as not coming directly from the principal. Such a committee will eliminate the feeling on the part of students that all school publications are under the thumb of the school administration or faculty adviser.

Questions

1. The top administrator in your school district, speaking to principals, states: "Just remember that teachers and other employees care about two things—their salaries and benefits." If you were secure in your position, what would you counsel this administrator privately about this statement? What suggestions would you make to the administrator regarding sharing information about what employees want on the job?
2. You've just been named public relations director for a fairly large school district. The 2,000-student high school is fraught with a lack of staff morale, you have discovered. What would you do to try to improve staff morale?
3. The difference between one school district and another in terms of quality is frequently the number and quality of ideas being generated by employees. What three techniques would you share to encourage employees to suggest ideas that would improve the schools?
4. If you were planning internal publications for the staff, what form would they take? Would you consider a printed version, and online version, or both? Is it more important that they be frequent and contain up-to-date information or that they be expertly designed and produced?
5. Why is it important that support staff (secretaries, custodians, bus drivers, etc.) know their roles in the public relations process? How can these internal audiences influence a school system's external public relations efforts?

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Relations Theories and Practices That Make a Difference.* Dubuque, IA: Kendal/Hunt, 2006.

Belilos, Claire, *Understanding Employees Drives and Motivation—The First Step towards Motivation at Work.* Internet: CHIC Hospitality Consulting Services, www.easytraining.com/motivation.htm, 2003.

Bowery, Angela M., *Motivation at Work: A Key Issue in Remuneration.* Internet: http://www.glassnewsletter.com/gainsharing/Motivation.html, 2003.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Groom, *Effective Public Relations*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2008.

Hughes, Larry W., and Don W. Hooper, *Public Relations for School Leaders.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

School Public Relations, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Weaver, Richard L., II, and Saundra Hybels, *Communicating Effectively,* 9th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics*, 8th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2006.

Endnotes

1. Thomas J. Sergiovanni, Paul Kelleher, Martha M. McCarthy, and Frederick M. Wirt, Educational Governance and Administration, 5th ed. (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2004), p. 71.
2. Ibid.
3. NetMBA, "Herzberg's Motivation-Hygiene Theory (Two Factor Theory)," http://www.netmba.com/mgmt/ob/motivation/herzberg, June 2006.
4. Thomas J. Sergiovanni and Fred O. Carver, The New School Executive, A Theory of Administration, 2nd ed. (New York: Harper and Row, 1980), p. 104. Also see Thomas J. Sergiovanni, The Principalship, A Reflective Practice Perspective, 2nd ed. (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1991), pp. 242-243, and Moral Leadership: Getting to the Heart of School Improvement (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 1992), pp. 59-60.
5. Susan M. Heathfield, "What People Want from Work," Your Guide to Human Resources, taken from the Internet, http://humanresources.about.com/od/rewardrecognition/a/needs_work.htm, May 26, 2006.
6. David Sirota, coauthor of The Enthusiastic Employee (Philadelphia: Wharton School Publishing), taken from the Internet, http://www.informit.com/search/index.aspx, May 26, 2006.
7. *pr reporter*, vol. 39, no. 20 (May 13, 1996), p. 1.

Chapter

8

Communicating with External Publics

Schools that communicate with their external publics in some organized way enhance their chances of getting better public support, minimizing criticism, learning the values and priorities of a community, and receiving many functional ideas that will help them educate students better.

For many schools any designed program of communicating with external publics is very limited or nonexistent. The school officials have not seen the need for an ongoing program; those who have usually limit it to parents or to some school-related group. This limited approach to community communications can be self-defeating given the limited financial resources available to schools and the growing number of people without children in many communities.

The communicating process between the schools and external groups should encompass both one-way and two-way communication. Schools should use not only newsletters, news releases, radio and television programs, and brochures but also many person-to-person programs to inform the general public about what's taking place in the schools. Too often educators have relied heavily on one-way communications to get the school story to the community. Often this has served to make citizens aware of some activities in the school without fully understanding them. Person-to-person activities combined with the one-way communications process can help external publics to understand many decisions made by school officials and programs in their schools.

Any program of communication with external publics would include the study of the role of pupils in community relations; teachers' associations and the community; the importance of parent relations; school liaison groups; key communicators; general community groups; older adults and the school; public criticism and attacks; and communications during negotiations and a strike.

THE PUPIL AND EXTERNAL COMMUNITY RELATIONS

Someone once said facetiously that a school has a good community relations program if it has "a snappy band and a winning football team." There is some truth in such a statement, of course, because it underscores the importance of the pupil in relating an image of the school to the community and the necessity for involving students in the school's community relations program. When students visibly represent the school, the public tends to look on them as personifying the characteristics of the school itself.

From Chapter 8 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

This is true in a structured setting such as a public event or in a singular setting of a child walking past a house on his or her way to and from school.

In many ways, pupils do more to keep the school in the public eye and win support for it than some of the other things that are done to bring about good community relations. For example, parents will go out of their way to attend a play, read a newspaper account, see an athletic contest, or listen to a concert in which their children have a part. Even people in the community without children in school feel a certain sense of loyalty and pride when individual pupils win academic contests and scholarships or one of the athletic teams enjoys a successful season. Psychologically, some of these people identify themselves with the institution and, as a result, take more interest in the total instructional program.

Whenever parents and friends witness a demonstration, read a student publication, or watch a skilled performance by pupils, they generally express surprise that youngsters can do so well. Their impressions are conveyed by word of mouth to friends and acquaintances in the community. The cumulative effect of favorable reactions in the course of a year may influence, more than is realized, the attitudes and opinions of citizens toward the school and how they vote on financial proposals.

There is not much doubt about the value of pupil activities and accomplishments in cultivating and strengthening relations with the community. It happens, however, that some schools overlook the public relations opportunities connected with such routine events as commencement, plays, musicals, athletic contests, and service projects, while others emphasize the publicity side of these events and lose sight of their educational worth to pupils.

Public Presentations

Although public entertainment by pupils is hardly a function of the school, nevertheless there are sound educational reasons for having pupils present enjoyable and entertaining programs. The mere knowledge that they will appear before the public adds incentive and zest to the work they are doing in school.

At the same time, the institution has an excellent means at its disposal for acquainting adults with different phases of instruction and demonstrating the nature and quality of the result.

MUSICAL PROGRAMS

Aside from athletics, no activity has caught the fancy of the public more than music. In most communities, taxpayers are perfectly willing to have their boards of education start music instruction in the elementary grades and to loan instruments to pupils during these early years. School systems do a great deal to further musical understanding and appreciation through a school band, orchestra, glee club, and chorus. Although these activities are carried on usually before or after school or during a club period, many schools include them in the regular program of studies.

Opportunities to present the musical accomplishments of pupils are numerous. Musical groups can be scheduled in connection with other events like assemblies, commencement exercises, and dramatic productions. The band can play at athletic contests and take part in civic celebrations. Invitations can be accepted by all musical organizations to appear before interested clubs and societies in the community and to put on radio and television programs when there is no conflict with regular studies.

Of all musical groups, the school marching band has more public visibility than any other group by the very nature of its attractive uniforms and marching music. Its appearance has a head-turning effect on citizens nearby. Care should be taken by band directors to ensure that in public appearances the band appears to be organized and drilled and has knowledge of what it is supposed to do. The public does not expect to hear professional-quality music from a school band, but citizens are quick to recognize a band that has been poorly prepared for a public appearance. Such a negative judgment can be extended by citizens to the entire school.

DRAMATIC PRODUCTIONS

Dramatic productions in the form of plays, talent shows, pageants, and musicals rank high on the list of entertainment that bring people into the school and that are sought by groups in the community. Here again spectators are usually amazed at the versatility and skill displayed by pupils.

Dramatic productions make it possible to involve parents and interested citizens. These individuals can help make costumes, properties, and stage sets. In some instances, they can also take part in programs.

ASSEMBLY PROGRAMS

Regular and special assembly programs are another avenue for presenting the pupils and educating the public to the affairs of the school. These programs may be built around everyday happenings in class and extracurricular activities or around the observance of special days, weeks, and anniversaries. The programs for these assemblies may be developed by pupils or undertaken jointly with outside groups and organizations. There are always a number of groups and organizations in the community that welcome the chance to share in programs of this character.

Regular assembly programs have appeal for parents, particularly when their own children are participants and the programs deal with topics related to their interests. The opportunity should never be overlooked of inviting prominent citizens to take part in programs. They might administer oaths to incoming student officers, chair a discussion, or speak on a vital subject. Like parents, they will hold the school in higher esteem after experiencing well-organized assembly programs.

From Chapter 8 of The School and Community Relations, 10/e, Edward J. Moore, Donald R. Gallagher, Don Sagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

Field Trips

Field trips to places of interest in the community are an excellent device for bringing notice to the school and for explaining some aspects of the educational program. A merchant, for example, who takes pupils on a guided tour of his or her business shares an important learning experience with teachers and pupils. When boys and girls ask questions that indicate their grasp of a subject, their host recognizes the fine work the school is doing.

At the same time, the full cooperation of parents should be secured. They like to know when a trip will take place, how pupils will be transported, and the measures adopted for supervising conduct and protecting the safety of pupils. In fact, if invited, some parents often agree to go along on trips with the children and to share in their learning experience.

Athletic Events

For many citizens the only contact with a school is through its athletic teams. These citizens may know very little about the school's instructional program because the American tradition has been to highlight a school through its athletic teams. This can be seen in the newspaper column inches devoted to sports coverage versus the amount given to other school activities in the local press. Also, it can be seen in the number of people who attend an athletic function, compared with those attending another type of school function. It seems that the American public wants a rather comprehensive athletic program in its schools, particularly in its high schools. When a school attempts to suspend its sports program, public outcry and sentiment practically demand the return of athletics even if it means a rise in taxes.

Adults who view athletic contests often admire the fine precision with which a team makes a play and the resourcefulness shown by its members in the face of unfavorable odds. They observe the physical stamina of players and the products of character-building experiences, such as cooperation, fair play, and courage. They go away from these contests with many impressions of the school and the contributions it makes to pupils. Unfortunately, attention is sometimes directed away from the educational side of participation in contests by the premium attached to having winning teams. Adults seem more interested in enhancing the reputation of the school and community than in the welfare of pupils. Pressure is brought on boards of education and school officials to replace unsuccessful coaches and to overlook eligibility requirements. No expense is spared to support winners. They are accorded communitywide recognition and treated like idols. Under these circumstances, the public conception of the worth of the educational program is determined by the outcome of contests.

On the other hand, there are some adults, not necessarily win-or-else advocates, who judge the value of the educational program by the appearance of the team, how well it is organized, and whether some planning had taken place before the team appeared before the public. Since athletic teams may be the major image of the school in the community, it is wise for an administrator to ensure that a team is

properly coached and organized, that it has presentable uniforms, and that it follows acceptable rules of conduct and fair play.

Commencement

As one of the oldest activities of the school, commencement programs make it possible for pupils to highlight for themselves and their parents the meaning and value of an education. The traditional commencement program of a few remarks by class officers and by the principal, followed by a main speaker, is sometimes replaced by a different type of graduation exercise.

In this ceremony members of the class being honored take over responsibility for most of the program. They may give short talks explaining what they have studied and accomplished in school, introduce honor students, present awards to outstanding classmates, or dramatize in play and pageant form some of their school experiences. During the week of commencement, demonstrations and exhibits of classwork may be arranged for public inspection and an open house held for tours of the building. These exercises are more interesting to parents and visitors, and they also enable them to get a better insight into the school and its products.

Commencement is an appropriate time to invite leading citizens and distinguished graduates to the school. Their names can be printed in the program and they can be honored from the stage.

Work–Study Programs

Work–study and internship programs provide other opportunities for pupils to represent their school in the community. These programs call for a pupil to attend classes for only part of the day and to work in a job related to his or her courses of study for the rest of the day. These positions may be in business, industry, or law, or in public service fields.

The pupils come in direct contact with members of the community, and the impression they make or the information they pass along about their school, whether good or bad, often will be interpreted as gospel by the public.

The community relations aspect of such programs that can easily be overlooked is the need for the pupil to be properly informed and prepared to represent the school and to be observed and supervised properly by the school. Also, it is wise to take time and give work–study pupils some information and facts about their school district in case questions are asked.

Close cooperation and liaison with employers obviously are needed if the school wishes to place the pupils in the most educationally beneficial positions. Such cooperation is also needed if the employer is to understand that all pupils are not alike. Many employers are inclined to judge the school by the performance of one student. Directors of work–study programs should thoroughly inform the employer of a student's intellectual capacity, academic record, and personality characteristics.

Accomplishments

The reported achievements and successes of pupils and graduates have a receptive audience in any community. People are interested and naturally curious to learn what pupils are accomplishing and how well their preparation fits them for life. If the school wants citizens to value its program and acknowledge the competencies of its staff, it must continually show them what pupils are achieving and acquaint them with the recognition, awards, and honors that have come to its graduates.

Services performed by members of the student council or student advisory committee are a form of achievement in citizenship training that deserves public recognition. Citizens should know, for example, that these youngsters publish a handbook, arrange and conduct commencement programs, act in an advisory capacity to the principal, operate an after-school employment bureau, and do many worthwhile things for the benefit of all pupils in the school. Although these activities in themselves may seem to lack news appeal, they can make excellent stories when treated properly.

Whenever assessment tests are administered in basic subjects, the results should be published and interpreted against the background of the pupil population. Significant comparisons can be made with the norms of previous groups in the system and with state and national averages. Sometimes it is advisable to

treat the data by individual schools, grades, and curricular divisions.

Pupils can be featured who receive college scholarships and win awards for outstanding accomplishments. Citizens are more interested than ever before in high-level attainment and the recognition it brings to the school and community. Newspaper editors are aware of this interest and assign a prominent place to stories of outstanding pupil achievement. This publicity can be supplemented by honoring winners at special assemblies, presenting their awards on radio and television, introducing them at service club and civic organization meetings, and by issuing citations to parents for their contributions to the success of these children.

In addition to scholarship and award winners, there are always a number of pupils in every school who have unusual talent and ability.

Some Precautions

Activities through which pupils are presented to the public should be a logical part of the instructional program and should fit in with its educational objectives. Unless this principle is respected, there is always a danger of exploiting pupils for publicity purposes.

This is especially true in districts where an exaggerated sense of importance is attached to the winning of athletic, dramatic, musical, or journalistic contests. Backed by sentiment in the community, coaches and sponsors will adjust their aims to the training of those pupils who can bring recognition to themselves and the institution.

A somewhat similar issue is raised by the large number of essay and individual prize-winning contests that are sponsored by industries, business firms, and civic organizations. In the interest of furthering their own special purposes, these sponsors would like the school to make their contests a part of the classwork done by pupils. This is an impossibility in view of the large number of contests, let alone the time that would be taken away from other instructional matters. Perhaps the best way of dealing with this issue is to post all legitimate contests for the notice of pupils. Then, if pupils want to enter them, it would be with the understanding that preparation must be done after school hours—and that class preparation will take precedence.

COMMUNICATING TEST SCORES AND DATA

Nearly all states employ testing programs, with about two dozen states involved in programs that try to measure performance in a single sitting. The media, as well as taxpayers, have come to expect the resulting, easy-to-grasp—but often misleading—scores that prompt headlines such as "Local District Last in County," "Reading Scores Drop," and "District Defends Below Average Scores."

Letters to the editor in newspapers throughout the United States offer many examples of teachers and parents frustrated with the ways in which their schools and children are being painted by the single-brush of high-stakes tests.

- ***From Buffalo:*** "Why can't the news be more positive than negative when reporting the Language Arts test scores? As a teacher . . . I am proud of the gains Buffalo has made, no matter how small. Next time, instead of 'Lagging Behind,' why can't the headline be 'Buffalo Improves'?"
- ***From Columbus:*** "The *Dispatch* headline 'More money gets Columbus same reading test scores' is an example of biased and inflammatory reporting. . . . Significant results in reform efforts are not produced in a few months' time."
- ***From Seattle:*** "I am proud of the scores students at the school I teach at received this year. . . . Eighty percent of the students in my school live at or below the poverty line, 40 percent speak a language other than English at home, and a majority of our kids did not have the benefit of preschool. That part of the puzzle is not reported when announcing test scores. . . . By providing a broader context when reporting test

scores, the *Times* and other newspapers could help close the gap of misunderstanding that exists between schools and the public."

Of course, educators usually agree that scores alone are generally meaningless. In fact, the issue that should be getting attention when scores are released is not what the scores actually are but what, if anything, the district plans to do as a result of them. But the media and taxpayers rarely want to focus on the future when facing what they see to be "bad" scores. And deadline-driven media can't afford to spend hours—or maybe even days—undertaking exhaustive investigations of the news behind the numbers.

WHAT CAN THE SCHOOL PUBLIC RELATIONS LEADERS DO?

Schools and their PR leaders have to live with the media's definition of what makes news. And, unfortunately, comparisons—no matter how unfair—as well as bottom-line numbers, "best" and "worst" lists and trends up or down, make news.

PR practitioners can't change this nature of news. But they can build strategies and messages that accommodate it, resulting in a better understanding of what's behind the numbers for any school district.

When developing explanations and messages related to test numbers, the PR plan and resulting strategies should:

- Offer the resources, including people, needed to give all new test data a thorough look.
- Resist the temptation to dive right into the numbers and come up with the bottom line.
- Get a feel for the overall impact of the numbers. Consider how others might interpret them in line with previous comparisons or trends. Look for ways to clearly identify the good and the bad in the numbers—and package the numbers with easy-to-understand explanations of what this means for future quality initiatives.

Source: Edward H. Moore, "Test Anxiety: School PR Practitioners Being Tested As High-Stakes Testing Takes Hold," *The Counselor* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, February 2001), www.nspra.org.

Finally, the school has a moral obligation to see that pupils maintain a desirable balance between participation in public activities and preparation of scheduled studies. Instances are common of how talented pupils have been encouraged to undertake a variety of activities at the expense of their own health and educational progress in order to achieve favorable publicity for the school. This form of exploitation should be avoided.

THE TEACHER'S COMMUNICATION ROLE

Teachers play a powerful role in the success or failure of communications between schools and the homes and families they serve. *One reason:* The teacher often is the first point of contact parents and others have at the start of each school year. *Also:* Throughout the year, a teacher often is the first person families contact when they have a question or concern. Unfortunately, teacher preparation sometimes does not include specific training for this important role as a frontline communicator. New teachers in particular may need support in fulfilling their communication responsibilities.

Supporting Teacher Communication

Teachers may benefit from professional development efforts, both formal and informal, to help them develop and succeed in their communications roles. Such programs might provide basic reminders to teachers as well as help them to understand the importance of planning for regular communication with parents and others interested in their work. Training programs should encourage teachers to reach out and establish positive contacts with all of their parents at the beginning of each school year. Starting a new school year "on the right foot" with proactive communication can provide the foundation for a successful school year in the classroom as well.

Teachers should use communication to encourage parents and others to contact them whenever they have a question or want to discuss an issue. Creating an atmosphere of openness is important to building strong and trusting relationships between parents and school personnel.

Students should not be overlooked as an audience for teacher communication efforts. Teachers might be encouraged to review with students, daily or weekly, the specific topics or issues they have studied and learned. Such reviews can help students better answer questions from parents and others, such as, "What did you do in school today?"

Positive news should always be fodder for teacher communications. By keeping parents informed about positive happenings, a teacher can help parents to stay focused on the good news being generated in the classroom.

Dealing with Special Situations

Not all communication attempts will be positive. Angry or complaining parents will present special communication challenges to teachers. Teachers need support in handling communications during such conflicts as well. They need to understand, for example, the importance of responding promptly to complaints, since delays in responding generally allow anger to build. Communicating during conflicts always calls for teachers and others to work to keep communications focused on students' needs and on helping students succeed—and on preventing conversations from becoming overly personal or emotional. Part of being a good communicator involves developing the skills to be an active and patient listener and knowing the importance of letting people "tell their side of the story" before responding. Teachers should be well informed about school rules and policies and comfortable when discussing them with outsiders, and teachers should understand the importance of enlisting the support of the school principal or other administrators if needed in special communication situations.

As communicators, teachers also need to be sensitive to the many special communication needs parents may have. Special consideration should be extended to anyone who has difficulty communicating, for whatever reason—language problems, work hours, emotional issues, physical considerations, and so on. By being a patient listener and a welcoming communicator, a teacher can be an important catalyst in creating strong working relations between schools and those in the community.

IMPORTANCE OF PARENT RELATIONS

The bottom line of any school–community relations program is to help the children learn better. And they learn better if parents are involved. Therefore, a good school–community relations program should encompass the concept of a partnership between the school and the parents.

The partnership concept calls for the free and continual exchange of information between parents and teachers and the involvement of parents in school affairs. Exchange of information enables teachers to acquire a knowledge of pupils that they otherwise would be denied. Teachers gain a direct understanding of difficulties experienced by parents, particularized experiences of children, and influences that have been determinants of their behavior. They learn how parents think and act, what their attitudes are toward life, and what they want for their children. And because of this parent relationship, teachers see children differently and are able to deal more intelligently with their needs.

Parents also acquire valuable information from their contacts with teachers, information that is useful in living with their children at home. So often parents are unaware of what their children are like outside the family and how they act with other people. They know relatively little about their children's school experiences and what teachers must contend with in directing their growth. Parents are able to comprehend from analyses of test results, school records, behavior reports, and classwork how much progress their children have made and how much more they could make with help at home. They reach agreements with teachers on plans for attaining common objectives.

A successful partnership involves more than exchanging information with parents and acquainting them with the school. It includes cooperative work on problems that affect children and advance the cause of education. Nothing else produces in parents a better understanding of the school and a deeper sense of responsibility for its progress.

In spite of these outcomes, it is usual for some administrators and teachers to oppose the partnership concept when they should be promoting it. They are, in reality, afraid that parent participation may

lead to serious interference with their rights and duties. They do not believe that parents are qualified to decide what education is best for children or to discuss technical matters of curriculum building and instructional procedures. In some cases they are correct in their assumptions. They forget, however, that parents are well qualified to make contributions for the advancement of education. Parents can discuss intelligently with administrators and teachers the purpose of education and many of the specific outcomes they would like for their children. Their knowledge in specialized areas makes them valuable resource persons for committees engaged in curriculum development. They have skills and talents that can be drawn on for the enrichment of curricular and cocurricular activities. Many parents are highly competent in problem-solving procedures and the formulation of policies that reflect the wishes of the people. They can be of inestimable value in helping to chart the course of education while leaving the technical details to professionally trained educators.

Those who argue against the involvement of parents seem to forget that no other group of citizens in the community exerts a stronger influence on public opinion, and that only through a broad sense of favorable opinion can the school expect to make significant progress.

Initiating Closer Contacts

Initiating closer contacts with parents in order to break down the barrier to cooperation involves the question of what activities are most appropriate to interest parents in joining the school family. There are numerous ways of starting a school–community relations program that will appeal to parents—a program that will bring parents into the school so they will become acquainted with teachers and learn to take a direct interest in various phases of instruction. *Parent representatives* for each grade level are accepted means for accomplishing this purpose. Either the principal appoints the parents or they elect their own representatives in each grade to promote good relations with teachers. Periodic meetings are held to discuss schoolwork. The agenda may call for a consideration of pupil difficulties in mathematics, and questions of social development, personal habits, or physical health. Discussion topics are decided on by parents, in consultation with teachers; included are items of most concern to both parties. Handled adroitly, this plan can be highly effective in bringing parents and teachers together.

Another system, the *invitational visitation* technique, has produced good results in schools that have used it. It is a technique whereby a certain number of parents, usually five or six, are invited by the principal to spend a half-day visiting classes, having lunch, and observing pupil activities in the school. The principal may select parents at random, have parent–teacher associations and community-interest groups name some, and draw other names from a preferred list. A new group of parents is brought in each week for as many weeks as the principal and teachers decide. These visitors are given a copy of an evaluation sheet and asked to use it for guiding their observations. The evaluation contains such questions as what parents think of the way discipline is handled, whether or not they would change the methods of teaching, and how valuable they consider the learning activities to be. Each of these questions is discussed in conference with the principal and one or two teachers at the close of the visitation. The conference provides an excellent opportunity to clarify observations and to further interpret the work of the school.

A variation on this technique is that of *inviting committees of parents*, from time to time, to meet with the principal and discuss what they like and dislike about the school. The danger inherent in this approach is that the negative side may be overemphasized at the expense of practices deserving commendation. The technique has some merit when parents are asked what they like most about the school and how they think the school could be improved. Concern with improvement is a constructive lead that directs thinking to problems needing solution and offers opportunities for involving and sharing responsibility with parents. Often principals can get constructive leads for improvement by inviting six or eight citizens to lunch or inviting businesspeople to breakfast.

Most parents respond favorably to personal invitations from teachers and pupils asking them to attend some school event. The event may be a room exhibit where they can see their own children's work, a classroom play, an open-house program, a

special lecture, a luncheon prepared by pupils, or a discussion on school parties.

The use of *checklists* has also proved helpful in bringing about closer cooperation between parents and teachers. One type that deserves attention covers the joint responsibilities of home and school. Statements are set forth describing what both the school and the home can do to further the growth and development of children. Parents are asked to check those items that apply to their own practices as well as to the school practices and to confer with teachers on the results. This sort of instrument suggests possibilities that parents may never have realized before and lets them know that the school wants to work cooperatively. Another type of checklist represents an inventory of contributions parents can make to the educational program. They are invited to check those items they are willing to contribute, such as speaking to a class about a trip to a foreign country; explaining their occupation; demonstrating a hobby; lending books, pictures, and objects to the school; or serving as aides on field trips taken by children. The information compiled from these checklists enables teachers to enrich the learning process and to involve parents voluntarily in the actual work of the school.

Another good suggestion is for the principal to *write the parents of new pupils* in junior and senior high school, inviting them to visit the school at any time and to confer freely with teachers. A similar effort can be made in the elementary schools by brief, friendly phone calls by teachers to parents of new children in their rooms. Letters sent to parents of secondary-school pupils are sometimes accompanied by a bulletin or handbook containing information parents want on marks, attendance, homework, health requirements, college entrance requirements, cafeteria services, extracurricular activities, and expenses.

Besides these means for promoting closer cooperation with parents, many others have been used successfully. Briefly, some of these are

- Asking parents to be present at physical health examinations of their elementary-school children
- Giving teas or coffee klatches for parents of preschool children
- Having night sessions so that parents may attend classes
- Opening the gymnasium and other school facilities to the parents for recreational purposes
- Having a telephone tended in the evening for questions from parents or citizens
- Inviting parents to observe their children in activities related to classwork
- Arranging meetings in the school library for advising parents on books they may wish to purchase for their children
- Asking parents to help with birthday parties and similar events for elementary-school students.

Parent Visits and Conferences

Schools move closer to a realization of partnership when they adopt policies providing for parent visits and conferences with teachers as a regular part of the educational program. Such policies establish friendly relations, minimize misunderstanding, and promote lay–professional cooperation.

PARENT VISITS

The initial problem of motivating parent visits can be surmounted rather easily when the policy is thoroughly publicized and the school takes the initiative in arranging for parents to visit the school. Parents are often reluctant to take it upon themselves to contact the school and ask if they may visit the classrooms. Once parents learn of the open-door policy through the mass media and from parents who have visited the school, their reluctance and shyness give way to natural curiosity. They are interested in seeing how their children behave in the classroom, what the teachers are like and how they handle their pupils, whether methods of teaching are much different today, and how their own youngsters compare with others of similar age.

School visits can be very helpful to the teachers in communicating with parents of low socioeconomic status. They intensely desire a good education for their children and view it as a way for their children to obtain a better life. In successful visitation programs, it has been found that low-income parents are responsive to bus tours. Many have no available transportation and on such a tour they are more at ease because they are with neighbors and friends. Coupled with the tour could be a simple and direct

program including the use of visual aids such as slides, charts, and videos in reporting the work of their children. If possible, it is helpful to include in the program a paraprofessional employed in the school system from their neighborhood. They will be able to identify with this individual, who in turn will facilitate communications between the school and the parents.

An open visitation policy can also be extremely helpful in establishing a liaison with parents of private and parochial school students, as well as with parents who have no children in school. This latter group of parents includes those whose children have completed school or are preschoolers. Often such parents may be skeptical of modern public school education because of a lack of knowledge of its purpose, scope, and legal parameters. Such parents also may not understand the absence of a dress code or the freedom of expression in student publications in a public school. During a visit to the school, a review of court decisions that permit students more latitude in dress and in expression will quickly clarify the school's position for the visiting parents. In a similar way a presentation of the positive aspects of the school, such as the achievements of the students, the variety of courses offered, the resources available to the students, and so forth, can go far to establish good relations with these parents.

PARENT CONFERENCES

Parent conferences traditionally have been a valuable method of clearing up sources of misunderstanding and of interpreting the instructional programs. Such conferences continue as an accepted and important practice in many school systems. In some instances they have replaced the report card, and in others they have served as a supplementary or correlated report. Teachers are able to tell their story more accurately, and parents are able to get a more complete picture of their child's progress, including a review of his or her marks, test scores, interest inventories, participation in extracurricular activities, and anecdotal records. In addition, the teacher can share with the parents his or her observations of the student's work habits, behavior, attitude toward learning, and relations with others.

There are times when parents come to the school tensed and excited after being notified of difficulties involving their children. Conferences under these conditions are naturally strained. It is not uncommon for a parent to become highly emotional and shout unreasonable opinions about the school and make verbal attacks on the teacher. In such cases a wise teacher will not become equally emotional or launch a verbal counterattack. As in any conference situation, the burden of being tactful, courteous, considerate, and truthful must be carried by the teacher. Any manifestation of attitudes to the contrary will only be met with more tension and alienation, which reduce chances for harmony.

Good conference procedure depends on the ability of teachers to listen attentively and understandingly; to sift facts; to determine the nature and limits of any conflict; to correct misunderstandings without engaging in arguments; to use simple language free from ambiguity, jargon, and emotional coloration; and to present clear issues to which thought should be directed. All conferences should end on a constructive note and should culminate, if possible, in a mutual plan of action on behalf of the children. A record should be made of each conference and filed for future reference.

SENSITIVE SUBJECTS

Sex education, health issues, civil rights, abortion, political beliefs, and religion can be subjects that may set off emotional reactions in a community when they are included in the school's curriculum. The degree of sensitivity toward these topics may vary from time to time and from one community to another. Such sensitive subjects can become crises if the community relations aspects of teaching them are not handled properly.

When a school is ready to introduce a controversial topic into its curriculum, the parents and the community should have been prepared. It is wise to invite parents to view the books, videos, and other resources the student will use. Parents should know exactly what is going on. This can be handled through general parent meetings, panel discussions, parent conferences, online presentations, or a parent advisory committee that is involved in every stage of planning of the controversial program.

Written Communications

Written communications in the form of printed materials, online content letters, and samples of pupils' work constitute another means for promoting home contacts and for keeping parents informed of their children's progress. In many districts such communications are the only direct link with the home and as such they are a primary factor in shaping parent attitudes toward the school.

PRINTED MATERIALS

The most common type of printed material for communicating regularly with parents is the report card. It is issued several times a year to inform parents how their children stand in subject achievement.

Advances in educational thought and practice have created dissatisfaction with the traditional report card. Leaders in elementary education believe that a more accurate description should be given of the child's growth and development. They have devised cards that include information on student growth in subject-matter mastery, learning skills, habits, attitudes, and social behaviors. This type of card reflects the philosophy of the elementary school and is more descriptive of a child's total progress.

Like any departure from convention, newer types of report cards and reporting practices are often opposed by parents. These parents do not understand what was wrong with the traditional report card or why the changes were made. Much of their opposition could have been avoided had the proposed changes been discussed with them in advance or had they been made parties to the work of devising improved methods of reporting.

Another means of written communication used by many schools is the monthly or quarterly newsletter or bulletin mailed to parents of schoolchildren and to citizens of the community. The purpose of this publication is to keep parents and citizens informed on such features as instructional practices, outstanding professional activities, lunch menus, fiscal matters, and special problems facing the school system. Though small school systems are reluctant to publish printed newsletters because of criticism from taxpayers on the question of expense, they can nevertheless publish similar information in attractive copy-machine form.

Increasingly, school systems issue annual handbooks for parents to provide a ready reference for answering questions that are commonly asked. Opening usually with a friendly foreword by the superintendent explaining the purposes of the handbook, such publications supply information on the school system, the board of education, entrance requirements, attendance regulations, school hours, procedures for telephoning the school, appointment procedures, emergency school closings, pupil personnel services, transportation, curriculum offerings, taxes, and a directory of the schools in the system. In some districts, individual schools have their own parent handbooks. Whatever the case may be, these handbooks constitute an important means of communication with the home and the community.

In addition, some schools have established the practice of enclosing leaflets with report cards as a device for helping parents understand specific aspects of the educational program. Because youngsters frequently remove these leaflets from report card envelopes and throw them away, a number of school districts are now sending them by mail. Their value is somewhat doubtful unless they are kept very brief and are easily understood, interesting to read, and timely.

LETTERS TO PARENTS

Letters and personal notes from teachers can improve relationships between home and school. In the past, too many letters were limited—and still are in some schools—to reports of unsatisfactory work and disciplinary problems of pupils. This one-sided reporting has been balanced in recent years by written communications on things students do well and on contributions they make to the school. For example, if a pupil has done a fine job as a library assistant, a motion picture operator, a stagehand, a receptionist, a hall monitor, a club president, or a committee chairperson, a letter of commendation is sent to parents by the activity sponsor. In the same way, alert classroom teachers note outstanding achievements and significant behavior changes that deserve recognition. Their letters may describe superior classwork, improvements in study habits, acts of courtesy, special talents, and honor roll status. Parents

who receive these letters feel pleased and grateful for the information.

Teachers sometimes object to writing favorable notes and letters to parents because of the extra work involved. The idea is more acceptable if an experimental period is established to determine how many notes and letters are written on a weekly average and how these communications are received by parents. Usually, teachers find at the end of the experimental period that the load has not been heavy and that parents are genuinely appreciative of the information they are sent.

Schools often find it necessary to publish form letters for general distribution to parents on such items as opening and closing dates of school, control of contagious disease, new policies and regulations, procedures for emergency school closings, use of plant facilities, bus schedules, and parent–teacher meetings. These form letters are important media for conveying information and creating favorable impressions of the institution. Unless they can be duplicated exceptionally well, they should be printed or typed on a word processor or computer on regular stationery and blocked out attractively. Close attention should be paid to vocabulary, tone, and simplicity. They should close with a handwritten signature. Good form letters invite better relations with parents.

Online Communication

New communication technology supported by the Internet has created many new communication choices for schools and their teachers. Teachers can reach parents and others in the community instantly with e-mail and e-newsletters. At the same time, parents and others in the community can seek answers to questions directly by consulting school Web sites or online lesson plans and grade books.

In a 1999 study by the National School Public Relations Association, nearly one-third of the school districts surveyed reported they had no Web sites. By 2003, some 90 percent responding to a similar survey reported hosting both district and school Web sites. The 2003 study also found school administrators reporting that they used e-mail "routinely and effectively" to reach other administrators, teachers, and those in the community.[1]

Opportunities for Participation

The suggestions made thus far for parent involvement tend to establish closer relations between home and school and to set a foundation for parent participation in school affairs. Leadership for parent participation should come from administrators and teachers. In this section a number of successful projects that schools have used to involve parents are described.

STUDY AND DISCUSSION GROUPS

Study and discussion groups have grown rapidly ever since parents have indicated a desire to become more involved in the schools. Such groups represent an increasingly popular concern for childhood education and a desire on the part of laypersons to know more about the schools their children attend. Organized at times at the request of parents, such groups are known by a variety of titles, including parent–teacher study groups, parent–teacher discussion clubs, grade and homeroom councils, parent study councils, and parent workshops.

Study and discussion group interests fall into two broad classes. One such class is concerned with policies and practices of school systems and methods by which parents and teachers can work together. Discussion centers on such subjects as report cards, homework, school parties, discipline, health, drugs, pupil adjustment, sex education, dress codes, pupil personnel services, and the teaching of fundamental skill subjects. Occasionally, modern teaching methods are treated in detail for parents who wish to know how to help children correctly with homework.

CURRICULUM PLANNING

Work connected with the study and improvement of curriculum at all levels affords rich opportunities for parent participation. Parents can take an active and constructive role in helping the school define the purposes of education, the objectives for specific fields, and courses of study. They have served effectively on faculty committees concerned with the adequacy of the curriculum, revision offerings, and introduction of changes that could not be attempted without their support. They have served as resource persons, because of their specialties, in the preparation of units and have worked with teachers in the

selection of materials and equipment for vitalizing the units.

CONTRIBUTIONS TO CLASSWORK

Parents can make worthwhile contributions to classwork. They can speak on topics about which they possess firsthand information. They can loan rare books, objects, phonograph records, videotapes, historical collections, and motion pictures. They can aid on field trips by serving as chaperones, checking attendance, exercising accident safeguards, and taking part in follow-up activities. They can be members of textbook committees, report card committees, and others dealing with improvement of teaching.

EXTRACURRICULAR ACTIVITIES

Parents enjoy taking part in extracurricular activities with children and adolescents. Any number of them possess talent and technical knowledge that can be used advantageously. Some schools call on them to work with teacher sponsors of clubs. Parents are willing to assist pupils and teachers in designing simple costumes for dramatic productions and lending a hand in building stage scenery. They respond freely to invitations to participate in plays, musicals, assembly programs, and athletic games and to act as judges for contests and chaperones for parties and dances.

ROOM PARENTS

Parents are either elected to these posts by parents of children in a given grade or room or else they are appointed by officers of the parent–teacher association. Their function is to represent the parents of children in the grade or room, work with the teacher, and serve as a link between the home and the school. In setting up a room parents' organization, it is necessary to have the responsibility of the parents clearly understood. Moreover, the period of service should always be specified.

The responsibilities of the room parent may be to help in developing friendliness among parents of children in the room, to encourage parents to attend PTA meetings, to assist as a welcomer at an open house and other school functions, to assist in the cafeteria and on school grounds on special occasions, and to help new parents and their children be accepted in the community. The room parent is the special liaison between the particular classroom and the community for that particular year. She or he can render valuable services to the schools and interpret the work of the teacher better than any other one person at the particular time.

TEACHER AIDES

Some schools use parents as teacher aides, depending on their qualifications and availability. Qualified adults and former teachers frequently substitute for teachers while they attend professional meetings and conferences or when they are out sick. Parents frequently assist in the lunchroom at noontime and help with playground and classroom activities.

SCHOOL LIAISON GROUPS

Four principal types of organizations are found under the school liaison groups classification: (1) parent–teacher or home and school associations, (2) neighborhood associations, (3) advisory groups, and (4) groups of former students.

Parent–Teacher Association

A local parent–teacher association may be described as a voluntary organization whose membership consists of teachers in an individual school or school system and the parents of children who attend the school or school system they support through public taxation. Devoid of legal authority to make policy decisions or to administer educational programs, the primary purpose of this association is that of promoting child and youth welfare in the home, school, and community. Local associations are usually organized around individual building units and separate divisions of the educational system, that is, elementary, middle, junior, and senior high schools. Where junior and senior high schools are housed together or the elementary and secondary programs are in the same building, a single association serves the combined unit.

Typically, the membership of local associations consists of parents, teachers, and administrative and supervisory officials of the individual school and school system. Invitation to membership is also extended by local associations to interested citizens in the community whether or not they have children in school.

Citywide associations are often formed in communities where there are several building units. Each unit sends representatives to a central group whose activities are governed by a constitution and set of by-laws. The same idea has been carried out on a county and regional basis in rural and semirural areas. The larger association speaks for the entire membership on important issues that cut across the school system, and this larger grouping makes it possible to share experiences and develop better programs.

Apart from the direct benefits of parent–teacher cooperation received by children and youth in home, school, and community, several community relations by-products must be considered in looking at the importance of local associations. Good community relations start when parents and teachers come to know one another and to talk about what they want for young people. Through these conversations, parents soon learn to know the school, to understand what teachers are trying to do for children, and to appreciate instructional conditions and problems. At the same time, teachers and administrators are made aware of the needs, interests, and attitudes of people in the community and the responsibility they have for adjusting the school program to local conditions. This is a two-way process and the backbone, in many respects, of a sound program in school and community relations.

There are many types of parent–teacher organizations, each with a name that attempts to indicate its primary purpose for existing. Some educators classify the various types of parent– teacher groups as individual school associations, homeroom and grade councils, mothers' and fathers' clubs, school and parent councils, home and school associations, and parent study clubs.

Neighborhood Associations

Common in large city school systems are the neighborhood associations. Generally, they operate within definite geographic limits and are keenly interested in education. Additionally, they are interested in housing, recreation, and community improvements. They depend on membership dues for income. These groups offer the schools another excellent method of establishing and maintaining good community relations.

Neighborhood associations differ from city to city, and it is difficult to be specific about them. Nevertheless, there is an eagerness and willingness on the part of neighborhood associations to play a supportive role in the local schools. In return they want the schools to help them to achieve their goals of community improvement. Schools, however, are not always responsive to the invitation to join the associations in improving the community. This is regrettable because schools miss many opportunities for good community relations. It has been shown that school administrators can be helpful to associations by making them more concerned with and involved in the educational decision-making process, inviting members to serve on advisory committees, participating directly in association activities, developing interaction between school personnel and associations, structuring an ongoing two-way communication process between the schools and the neighborhood group, and working with universities in providing associations with leadership training.[2]

Citizen Advisory Committees

A further opportunity to bring the public into closer contact with the school and to involve laypersons in the educational program is provided by citizen advisory committees. As the name implies, these committees are composed of laypersons who study educational needs and problems and then advise school authorities on whatever action they believe should be taken.

One reason for school-sponsored advisory committees is the desire of boards of education, sparked by dynamic superintendents, to cooperate as fully as possible with members of the community. The boards realize that the responsibility of long-range planning for better schools is a public one and that the advisory committee is an excellent means for sharing this responsibility. Through this committee they can acquaint a representative body of the citizenry with the conditions and problems of public education, pool information, and work for common goals. Often advisory groups are formed by school boards and superintendents to meet a pressing problem or an emergency for which public support is needed. This is not always the most appropriate time to form an advisory committee. Often when a crisis

is on the scene public attitudes have been formed, and the public may view this as a ploy on the part of the board of education to substantiate its position.

Authorities contend that an advisory committee should be formed well in advance of a possible crisis in order to develop credibility with the citizens. But even more important, a citizen's committee formed at a noncrisis time can advise a school board on positions that are and are not acceptable to the public. In this way boards can avoid some unnecessary crises. Also, the committee can be helpful in apprising the public of facts and conditions that necessitate a particular decision by a school board.

SELECTION OF MEMBERS

Different methods are used and various factors considered in the selection of citizens for membership on school-sponsored advisory committees. Essentially, there are three primary methods of selection: by the board of education, by invitation to community interest groups, and by asking people in the schools and in the community to suggest names.

Whether one or a combination of methods is employed for selecting members, the advisory committee should be as representative of the community as possible. Representation can best be ensured when population factors are taken into account in drawing up the composition of the committee and when criteria for the individual qualifications of members are determined.

SIZE

An advisory committee should be large enough to represent the community adequately and small enough to encourage informal, efficient working relations among the members. Size may be affected by the nature of the school district and responsibilities assigned to the committee. Many advisory groups have fewer than 5 members, but the optimum size appears to fall somewhere between 15 and 25. Where a large committee is organized to increase citizen participation, an executive body of 10 to 15 members may be established to plan and coordinate the activities of the several subcommittees into which the advisory group is broken. An intelligent use of subcommittees makes it possible to widen the scope of the advisory committee program and to tap the talents and interests of many citizens. The number of subcommittees depends on the amount of work brought before the advisory group and the number of people who are involved.

TERM OF OFFICE

The term of office for advisory committee members should be stated in the policy of the board of education.

OFFICERS AND MEETINGS

During the initial meetings of a new advisory group, the president of the board of education should act as chairperson until he or she is satisfied that the members have learned to know one another well enough to elect their own officers. The officers should be a chairperson, vice-chairperson, and secretary, and each should hold office for a period of one year.

Meetings should be held monthly during the school year, and more often if necessary, and should last no longer than two hours. Longer meetings discourage attendance. Special subcommittees may meet more frequently than once a month if they have definite assignments to finish within fixed time limits.

It is not uncommon for school-sponsored advisory committees to include administrators and teachers. These school representatives usually have ex officio status with no voting power. They attend all meetings, provide leadership in planning study projects, keep the board informed of activities and developments, and assist in numerous ways. Unfortunately, school staff members have a tendency to dominate because of their superior knowledge of the school system and to assume more responsibility than they should. An advisory committee is likely to function better when administrators and teachers are not actual members but cooperate in other ways with the committee.

A brief written report should be filed with the school board immediately after the advisory committee has completed a study. A *joint meeting* with the school board should then be held after board members have had an opportunity to review the report. Subsequently, the board's reactions to the report should be sent to the committee along with an expression of appreciation for the work that was done.

Relations with Former Students

One community group that is often overlooked by educators interested in good community relations is the former students of a school. It is surprising how many former pupils accept invitations to attend school functions and events. Many of them are young people whose formal education came to a halt either before or at the time of graduation. Their willingness to return suggests that they feel a sentimental attachment to the school.

Relations with this group should be founded on a continuing interest in the welfare of former pupils as well as on a desire to provide useful services, such as the following:

- Sponsoring social affairs for the opportunity they afford to meet faculty and pupils
- Sending congratulatory letters to former pupils
- Mailing an annual inventory card for information concerning their work, marital status, family, and so forth
- Disseminating this information through publication to former pupils
- Issuing periodic newsletters concerning individual graduates
- Providing counseling services for personal problems and vocational placement
- Publishing honors won by former pupils
- Mailing them district publications
- Developing any particular services that seem appropriate in the local situation.

Practically all of the activities listed can be performed without having a formal association. Those who have worked closely with alumni and alumnae groups, however, are convinced that better relationships will be developed if these and other activities are channeled through an organization to which the credit can be given.

KEY COMMUNICATORS

Citizens often do not accept or reject an idea until they talk with residents of the community whose opinion and judgment they respect. These key people or opinion leaders in a community must be identified so that they may be informed about the schools, learn quickly what the community is thinking, and get the public involved in the schools. The concept of key communicators is probably not an innovative one for some school officials. Many educators have applied the ideas behind the key communicator approach in their schools. Few, however, have formalized it in the manner suggested here.

Benefits of Key Communicators

Being person-to-person in nature, the program enables the school officials to get the pulse of the community with quick phone calls to key communicators. Likewise, rumors can be quelled when they are sparks. Because key communicators have developed a solid rapport with school officials, they can help the community gain and maintain confidence in the school. And perhaps, above all, a positive school story can also be spread. The key communicators, then, serve as gatekeepers of information to and from the community.

Prior to making major decisions, school officials are often interested in the community's feelings toward an issue. Such decisions could include the change of attendance lines, a tax increase, the closing of a school, or the moving of administrators or teachers within a district. Many cases are documented where school officials, insensitive to community feelings, had to reverse a decision when citizens protested vehemently. One way of getting an early pulse of a community on an issue is through the key communicator program.

A major benefit of having a key communicator program is the squelching of rumors. Too often in almost every community rumors get out of hand. In many cases, such rumors, although unfounded, have resulted in severe problems for the school. Rumors about drugs, violence, racial problems, school closings, and the like get started with no foundation. Usually, these rumors could have been quickly ended in their early stages with a key communicator program.

Likewise, through a program with personal contact and phone conversations with school officials, the key communicators come to know them as people rather than distant figureheads. Mutual understanding and trust are developed that key communicators pass

along to the community. The image of the school is conveyed as it is rather than as it is perceived by the community.

Newspapers, radio, and television cannot cover many positive activities of schools. By nature, they tend to highlight the negative happenings. By having the key communicators in the schools and by sending them brief newsletters, more activities, including more positive ones, can be made known to local citizens. This is not to say that key communicators shouldn't be given negative news. They should—schools must level with them. Candor ultimately will help in establishing credibility with the group.

Type of Person Who Should Be a Key Communicator

Any person who talks to large numbers of people should be considered for key communicator designation. Persons who are believed and trusted by their audiences should definitely be asked to serve. They need not have the usual power-structure status that educators frequently seek for school help. They are citizens who sit on top of a hypothetical pyramid of communication in a community. Specifically, the key people are barbers, beauticians, bartenders, owners of restaurants, gas station operators, doctors, dentists, letter carriers, or people to whom citizens turn and ask, "What do you think about. . .?"

It's important to identify key communicators who will talk to all the different segments of the community. In some communities, it might be difficult to identify key communicators, especially in new developments that have not yet identified their opinion leaders. In that case, any person can be asked to serve as a key communicator to tell the school story and to report rumors. Usually, that person will then become an opinion leader.

Starting a Program

If a superintendent decides to begin such a program, ordinarily a list of people would be compiled by various employees independently. A demographic look at the community would be taken to make sure that various groups would have someone on the list. The names from the employees would be reviewed and the key communicators chosen. Usually the same names appear on many lists. Key people can also be identified by the local chamber of commerce, a telephone book, or the county and the city directories.

The superintendent then sends a letter to each person advising that the person has been selected and explaining the purpose of the key communicator program—to help improve schools through better communications. If the invitation, both written and by phone, comes from the superintendent's office, the affirmative responses will be greater. A personal phone call from the superintendent usually brings from 85 to 95 percent acceptance. The secretary's phone call alone usually attracts about 60 to 75 percent, and the letter alone generally brings about half the people invited.

Once the list of key communicators is compiled, the superintendent, with a personal phone call, invites six or so different key communicators at a time to lunch in a school cafeteria until all have met with the superintendent. At the lunch or any get-together, the tone is informal. No formal agenda is prepared and the time pressures of all involved are respected. This means that the meeting is held to 60 or 75 minutes at the most. The guests should feel free to raise questions or to join a discussion. Often visitors will be seeking information that the superintendent assumed they knew. This is a confidence-building session that allows people to see that the chief executive is a person who cares about children, understands that problems exist, seems to be doing the best possible job to solve them, and is receptive to ideas and encourages questions and suggestions. People are asked to call when they hear a rumor and are told that they will be apprised of information about the schools when a problem, a challenge, or a need exists.

Perhaps once a year the entire group of key communicators will be called together for a meeting (budget or bond-issue or test-score-results consideration). This enables them to see that other people in the community care enough about the school to give time to help communicate.

Size of Membership

The number of key communicators varies from district to district. Some small districts might use only 15 or 20. Others may use 20 people for each school.

The number can run as high as 250 to 300 in a district with 40,000 residents, but the number is not the key. If, for instance, a person feels slighted and wants to be a member, add him or her. Every person can help in some way. It is unusual that a person who gets involved in the schools in this way does not aid the school's program either directly or indirectly. It should be noted that the key communicator program can be initiated at the building level as well as at the district level.

GENERAL COMMUNITY GROUPS

In order for a school system to meet the educational needs of a community, it must know the community and understand its unique characteristics. A functional way of identifying the educational needs of the community and establishing two-way communications with the citizenry is through organized groups. The number and types of groups generally reflect the attitudes and concerns of the community. If a school district maintains a liaison with community groups, it can pass along the school story to them. In turn, members of the groups will relate the school story to their friends and neighbors. And, conversely, the groups can help the schools by relating the thoughts and opinions of the local citizens.

Many organized groups maintain programs of an educational character. Some are based on principles in harmony with the ideals of public education, and some are not. The problem in community relations is to cultivate the friendship and cooperation of groups who share mutual interests in education and society and to prevent others from exploiting and injuring the schools, without creating community conflicts.

Surveying Groups in Your Own Community

Before an effective community relations program can be organized, a survey of the community groups should be made to accumulate pertinent facts and eliminate guesswork. Through a survey of the organized groups in the school district, a list of community leaders may be obtained. Usually, the local chamber of commerce keeps a complete roster of civic and welfare clubs and youth organizations.

A file or database should be set up, listing the name of each organization, its officers, type and number of members, dates of meetings, the purpose of the organization, how it can work with the schools, special interest in education, and a record of each cooperative activity with the school system.

A list should be compiled of school personnel who are members of different groups and who can serve as liaisons between the school system and the organizations with which they are affiliated. The superintendent can best interpret the educational program to some groups, whereas other members of the staff may work just as effectively in interpreting the school program to members of their own groups.

The schools need to know what people in the community think of the schools and what they expect of them. Everyone has opinions about schools, and being asked to express them is a compliment. It takes only a bit of stimulation and direction for school personnel to develop into fine reporters of thoughts and feelings expressed by members of groups to which they belong.

Community Groups

Although general community groups are not educational in character, many do participate directly or indirectly in the school program. The following classification can be tailored to the local school situation.

CIVIC

Among the more prominent civic groups are the American Association of University Women and the service clubs, such as Lions, Kiwanis, Rotary, Exchange, Jaycees, and Optimists. All of these groups concern themselves with problems of education, health, social welfare, better government, delinquency, and recreation.

CULTURAL

Cultural groups are found in the fields of art, music, architecture, horticulture, literature, drama, intercultural education, and race relations. Many are small, self-contained units whose primary purpose is catering to the leisure-time interests of the members.

ECONOMIC
The principal economic groups are labor unions, farm organizations, chambers of commerce, economy leagues, manufacturers' associations, automobile clubs, real estate boards, retail merchants' associations, and others of a specialized character.

FRATERNAL
As a rule, fraternal groups are organized to support certain ideals, to increase fellowship, and to indulge in leisure-time recreational activities. A few have a definite religious interest. Among them are the Masonic Order, Knights of Columbus, Brith Sholom, Knights of Pythias, and a number of lodges bearing the titles of Elks, Moose, Eagles, and Owls.

GOVERNMENTAL
Local, county, state, and national governments maintain agencies that cut across several areas of human activity. These agencies provide services in health, recreation, law enforcement, safety, family life, child care, housing, and so forth. Many of these services complement those of the school and point up the necessity for cooperative relationships.

PATRIOTIC
Groups like the American Legion, Sons and Daughters of the American Revolution, Veterans of Foreign Wars, and others have extensive programs for the conservation of real and assumed values pertaining to the American way of life. Stress is placed in their programs on the teaching of government, civic responsibility, health, and patriotism.

POLITICAL
Political groups include the major political parties, the League of Women Voters, and small organizations having a dominant interest in government. For the most part, caution must be exercised in dealing with political groups. The school is limited in its relations with these groups mostly to granting the use of buildings for public meetings and obtaining information for instructional purposes or political activities and voting practices.

Although the League of Women Voters makes politics a subject of strong interest, it is an independent organization without political affiliation. It tries to educate citizens on the issues they must decide at the polls and on the qualifications of candidates for public office.

PROFESSIONAL
The professional groups in law, medicine, dentistry, pharmacy, architecture, and engineering have consistently supported programs for good schools. They take an interest in the educational program and will cooperate with administrators and teachers on matters related to their special fields.

RELIGIOUS
The faith groups consist of denominations that maintain places of worship in the community and secular organizations engaged in religious work. Their purpose is to promote moral and spiritual values. Because of differences in sectarian doctrine, they may be divided on issues relating to public education.

SENIOR CITIZEN GROUPS
As the population and life expectancy have increased, the number of organized groups of retired people has grown. Some schools have instituted successful programs where retired citizens are asked to help in schools; they are used in an advisory capacity, especially retired teachers and administrators, and they are given free admission to school activities and adult evening school programs.

SOCIAL SERVICE
Numerous social service agencies operate in the fields of health, recreation, child care, and family life. Because these agencies are concerned with the alleviation of human suffering and the improvement of social conditions, their activities bring them into contact with the school.

YOUTH
Among the organizations having a deep-seated interest in young people are the 4-H Clubs, Future Farmers of America, Young Men's Christian Association, Young Men's Hebrew Association, Young Women's Christian Association, Young Women's Hebrew Association, Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts of America, Junior Red Cross, and Police Athletic League.

Some operate within the school as a part of the extracurricular activities program, and several are staffed with teachers and administrators who volunteer their services. With a few exceptions, these groups are eager to work closely with the public schools.

Pressure Groups

Some pressure groups are created to prohibit the school system from taking a planned course of action. When citizens become dissatisfied with the school system and the officials in charge of it, they often form pressure groups. These groups are formed without invitation from the board of education and the superintendent of schools. Usually, they take a name that includes the word *citizens* or *taxpayers*, often combined with the word *concerned*, to inform the public that this is a group that wishes to confront the school system on some issue or issues. These groups place heavy reliance on the publicizing of factual information and the development of supporting opinion to gain acceptance of their recommendations.

Expressions of dissatisfaction that have brought about the formation of pressure groups include the desire to keep taxes down, indignation over a proposed building program, dissatisfaction with the school system's guidance program, concern for a high incidence of dropouts among secondary pupils, opposition to a proposed curriculum, resentment over a prolonged teachers' strike, displeasure with the failure of elementary youngsters to reach norms on standardized tests in reading and spelling, and a great many other issues.

Pressure groups frequently have grown out of meetings called by one or more civic groups for the purpose of discussing means for increasing public concern and interest in the schools. In a number of places the initiative for organizing pressure groups has come from parent–teacher associations. They have taken the initiative because it seemed advisable to have a wider representation of taxpayers involved in the study of a problem and because a broad-based committee would carry more weight with the board of education and the general public.

Other independent groups sprang into existence when citizens took an interest in a particular educational problem and decided to find out what could be done about it. As examples, a young people's service club became interested in the opinion of the public toward the schools; a veterans' organization became interested in a statistical report concerning juvenile delinquency in the community and felt it should help with the problem; and a neighborhood business association listened to a speaker on school finance matters and decided to investigate the local situation.

Prevalent in many school districts is the pressure group that is extremely small in number, yet is quite vocal, often giving the impression of being larger than it is. This type of group is usually the work of one person who, under the guise of a large organization, continually attempts to make the public look with disfavor on the school system. Such an individual will call for a public meeting, but a very small number, often fewer than 10 people, will attend. To continue to have the public think that he or she speaks for a large group of citizens, the mass media are flooded with position papers, news releases, charges, and criticisms against the school district. This is the type of person who gives the organization an emotional title and appears at most school board meetings, contending representation of a group while in fact representing only himself or herself. Often such persons represent what is considered an extreme point of view; they are often sincere but can be an annoyance to a school system.

In large urban school districts there have been pressure groups advocating administrative decentralization and community control of the schools. This type of control would provide for an elected local school board to function in conjunction with the central board of education. If carried to the fullest, community control means that local representatives would control all aspects of the schools, including personnel, curriculum, textbooks, discipline, testing, and finances. Educational authorities are not in agreement as to whether community control is good for the local schools. The more fundamental question is "What leads local citizens to demand community control?" Obviously, the schools are not communicating with, or are not responsive to, the communities they serve. Consequently, local citizens feel compelled to advocate community control as the

only way of forcing schools to reflect the wishes of the community and to meet the needs of the students.

Handling Group Pressure

One of the best ways of handling group pressure is to detect it before it gets too intense. Often strong feelings can be identified by key communicators and confronted before they spread through the community. Another way of handling group pressure is to have a comprehensive database of the community and its feelings at all times. Surveys of the local citizens will easily deflate groups that feel their thinking represents the feelings of the entire community. A third way is to get and keep the community involved in the schools. This can be done through citizen advisory groups in such areas as goal setting, sensitive programs, school closings, declining enrollments, and communications with the public. With citizens being involved in the schools and helping with their own expertise, a better understanding of the schools can be transmitted to the community. Group pressure can also be prevented by keeping the public and the employees informed. An informed public tends to support schools, provided the school officials make logical and sound educational decisions.

Nonparents

An increasing number of adults in our society have no school-aged children. By 1990, according to the U.S. Census Bureau, the number of people aged 55 and over had exceeded the total national K–12 population. A sizable number of adults with no children in school are senior citizens; however, many are young married couples, career people, singles, and parents of preschoolers. For them, the mass media are the primary source of information about their schools. Nonparents and parents alike are interested in what's being learned in schools, how much it costs, and how the school board functions and makes decisions.

Often the attitude of nonparents is "We don't have children in school. Why do we have to pay taxes? Schools are always asking for more money. And to top this, they are graduating kids who can't read and write." This unfavorable attitude is then manifested in the defeat of budgets and bond issues. Some communicators contend that the attitude has been caused in part by the schools' failure to communicate with nonparents or to get them involved in the school in some way.

The implication of the nonparent phenomenon is obvious for schools—they will have to expand their information network. Sending news home with the students will still be vital, but schools will have to structure communications for this special public—to identify nonparents, to develop methods of communicating with them, and to get them involved in schools in some manner. A number of ways exist to identify nonparents' groups in a community. Senior citizens' groups are easily identified because they usually are well known and have a specific building for meetings. The other nonparent groups may be more difficult to locate. Religious congregations can be helpful in that many have organizations for single, widowed, and divorced people. The local chamber of commerce can be helpful, as can some municipal governments.

The nonparents more difficult to locate are those who do not belong to a group. The U.S. Census Bureau can provide demographics, but no names, on the population in a school district. Likewise, planning commissions can be of some help, and election records, which can be purchased, provide names of those who voted in school elections. It is up to the schools to contact these voters to determine if they have children in the local schools. People with no children in school or those without children often are attracted to condominiums and garden apartments. These, of course, are easily identified in a community, as are retirement villages or leisure residences.

Schools must use both one-way and two-way methods of communicating with the nonparents. The mass media should be provided with information of interest to them. Students should be kept informed about the schools to pass the word along to their parents and many of their parents' friends who do not have children in school. School newsletters are helpful. Of course, one of the best ways of getting the word to and from the nonparents is the key communicators program.

There are indications that people who have been inside a school within the last year tend to be more favorable toward the schools. Thus, some programs should be developed to get the nonparents into

the schools and involved in some way. One of the better programs, entitled "See for Yourself," was created by the Columbus, Ohio, Public Schools. The program, no longer formalized, resulted in many citizens getting currently involved in the schools. When it was started it included making mailing lists of nonparents living near a school, placing classified ads in papers inviting nonparents to the schools, having students write personal invitations to nonparent neighbors, contacting local employers to release employees to visit schools, asking real estate offices to hold staff meetings in the schools, and inviting organizations to tour schools. Among many other activities, the "See for Yourself" program invited senior citizens to attend a school event, show their travel slides to a class, volunteer in the library, read to children, and eat lunch at school.

Many districts have answered the nonparent question of "What's in it for me?" by providing learning opportunities for nonparents through community education programs. Lifelong learning is becoming important to many adults, especially older people. They have funded education over the years and now look to the schools to meet some of their learning needs.

To help the older and younger generations communicate better and understand one another, consider intergenerational programs. Bringing together teenagers and older citizens will dispel many myths. Teenagers will not stereotype everyone over 65 as slow drivers who have hearing problems. Nor will older citizens categorize all 17-year-olds as reckless drivers who play loud music. School leaders can help effect better understanding by sponsoring programs that bring the groups together.

Larkin suggests that such programs also encourage older voters to support school needs. He also urges the following when communicating with older citizens:

1. Be aware that middle age has changed from 35 to 50; it's now 50 to 75 years of age. Older adults are living longer and healthier lives.
2. The older one becomes, the more dissimilar one becomes. A lifetime of individualized experiences separates one older adult from another. Older adults are a heterogeneous group.
3. Don't stereotype. Many market segments exist among senior citizens; consider the young-old audience, many of whom are vigorous and healthy.
4. Don't consider all senior citizens to be poor; they aren't. They have over $400 billion in discretionary income.
5. Use the *personal* approach, instead of memos and flyers, to invite older adults to school activities. Staff members along with students are effective messengers.
6. Use larger print for letters and publications.
7. Speak loudly, clearly, and slowly (as you would when addressing any age-group).
8. Remember that retirees are predominantly women; the ratio of women to men is 3:2.
9. Encourage discussion; they like to be asked their opinions.
10. Watch the boomers (76 million born between 1946 and 1964)! They begin to retire in the year 2011. Wherever they are, that's where the action is; they influence every aspect of society.[3]

OLDER ADULTS AND THE SCHOOL: AN INTERGENERATIONAL PUBLIC RELATIONS APPROACH

School public relations professionals have many reasons for becoming involved with older adults. Here are three:

1. The United States now has more people over the age of 65 than teenagers. We are no longer a youth-dominated society.
2. Seventy percent of the tax-paying households in most school districts do not have children in school. This suggests that it's important to maintain good relations with older adults, who represent the majority of such households.
3. Seventy-eight percent of older adults are registered to vote, and 68 percent turn out to vote for national elections. They also turn out to vote on school budgets and bond issues. Many have not visited a school in years.

The majority of older adults want the best educational programs for their grandchildren and local

children. However, many older people don't know the students, teachers, administrators, or curricula in their local schools. They would like to know them, but sometimes, for people who are alone, schools can be frightening places to enter. So older people often end up voting against an impersonal brick building. However, school officials can change this negative attitude by reaching out to local older adults in a personal way rather than by using an impersonal strategy, such as a memo.

The Intergenerational Movement

Intergenerational programming has emerged as a key public relations strategy. Administrators need to be aware of the intergenerational movement.

Students and older adults seldom get together on an ongoing basis to socialize, pass on traditions and values, and solve local problems. During the 1960s, foresighted individuals began to see the need for intergenerational activities. Among them were teachers, who, on their own, began to develop ways in which they could bring the generations together. The American Association of Retired Persons (AARP), founded in 1958, has more than 40 million members. It offers many services to its members, including intergenerational resource material.

An Intergenerational Program

How can school administrators help to accomplish intergenerational cooperation? One successful way to bring the generations together is with an intergenerational conference. The different age groups come together to confront the myths and stereotypes about each other, to suggest ways to improve the relationship, and to initiate an intergenerational club to ensure ongoing activities. To start an intergenerational club, the school invites the same number of students and older adults to participate in the four-hour program at the school. Participants follow an agenda, which includes an icebreaker, word associations, slides, videotapes, discussion groups, a working lunch, group reports, a survey, and the start of the club. A proclamation by the mayor's or governor's office recognizing the event, "Intergenerational Day at Blank School," adds publicity clout.

An Intergenerational Club

The establishment of an intergenerational club flows naturally from the conference. The club connects the school with the community in a special way. The purpose of the club is to cultivate a group of retired volunteers and students to work within the school and community, to integrate students and older adults with modern technology, and to provide social settings for students and older adults to exchange ideas and pass on traditions and values.

Intergenerational clubs can be formed at the elementary- and high-school levels. If local colleges have gerontology departments, their students could be involved as well. Once the club is operating, the following intergenerational activities are possible:

> ***Elementary Level***—spelling bee; variety show; craft show; photo exchange over lunch; tutoring; mentoring; attending sports events as fans and cheerleaders; honoring older adults at halftime of games; and becoming recording pals with the visually impaired.
>
> ***Secondary Level***—dinner dance; debate on music, clothes, drugs; variety show; club newsletter; tutoring; mentoring; video programs; honoring older adults at halftime of games; and creating an intergenerational float for a local parade.

Respect for Older Adults

When you work with any group of people, apply the same commonsense principle—treat everyone with respect. Here are two examples of what can happen when older people are treated with disrespect:

- A retired professional, who was invited along with many other retirees to a free dinner at the school two weeks before the vote on the school budget, remarked, "We may be old but we're not stupid." In other words, if that is the only time you are going to bother with older adults, forget it.
- Laughing and joking, members of a school staff walked into a senior citizens' meeting and practically ignored the older adults, who had invited the school staff over to explain the school budget. Thinking it would be an "easy sell," the educators

glibly addressed the assembly. However, the audience was composed of retired professionals, such as accountants, lawyers, and teachers. The knowledgeable and savvy audience, who after experiencing many years of hype and phonies, saw through the superficiality of the presentation. The older adults indicated that it was the first time that guests did not stay to socialize and enjoy the refreshments. If school officials accept an invitation to make a presentation, they should give it their best.

Older Citizens and School Budgets and Communities

Many older adults haven't been in a school in years and have little positive contact with students, teachers, and administrators. They feel disconnected from their schools; they only remember the way it was. As a result, young and old have misinformation and negative attitudes about one another. Most senior citizens, however, indicate that they want students to receive a good education.

In a New Jersey school district with many senior voters, the budget and a referendum were placed on the same ballot. The referendum was defeated but the budget passed, thanks in large measure to the support of senior members of the intergenerational club. Superintendents of various schools indicate that the senior citizen members of the clubs are positive, articulate key communicators of school programs in the community.

Another school district with a heavy concentration of senior citizens, many of whom were against the school budget, held an intergenerational conference. Before it began and while they were having morning refreshments, three separate groups were apparent: students on one side, senior citizens on the other, and the school staff in the middle. But once all the groups had the opportunity to get to know one another, the following took place:

- A senior citizen wrote out a check for $100 to help a student with a band uniform problem.
- The older adults invited the students to hold a car-washing fund-raiser in their retirement community; this included use of the swimming pool and a barbecue.
- The school district initiated an intergenerational club and hired an intergenerational coordinator with funding from a unique partnership—the school board, teachers' association, and a corporate sponsor.

All it takes is a school official who sees the value of bringing the generations together in the school and community.

Grandparents Raising Grandchildren

There are about 4.5 million grandchildren being raised by their grandparents. The 2000 census report indicates that the United States is becoming a nation of grandparents. Grandparents raising grandchildren (GPRG) is a growing phenomenon that affects all levels of society. The AARP has developed a national Grandparent Information Center: www.aarp.org/relationships/grandparenting.

Grandchildren are living with their grandparents because their parents can't raise them for various reasons: divorce, drugs, prison, death, or a lack of interest in parenthood. The grandparents and grandchildren are from different generations. They don't understand each other; it's difficult to communicate. This is another opportunity for school officials to identify these families and develop support groups to help them.[4]

OPPORTUNITIES FOR COOPERATION

It is apparent from the preceding description of types of community groups that many hold interests in common with the school. These groups are part of the school's public, and they offer numerous opportunities for interpreting the needs, programs, and problems of the institution. Their concern and cooperation should be enlisted to such an extent that they assume a responsibility to work for the support and advancement of education in the community.

Policy on Cooperation

Good community relations mean that the community is pleased with the educational services that the tax dollar has purchased. Although this statement is simple, the procedure for bringing about this result is complicated—complicated because the school must

deal with many segments of the public and satisfy a wide diversity of opinion on education.

As a matter of policy, the local board of education must recognize that the school has an obligation to promote intelligent understanding of what it is doing and win goodwill from as many groups as possible, regardless of the size of the group or the sex or age of its members. People who belong to community groups are paying the school bills, and they are entitled to know what services the schools offer and why, as well as the problems that confront them.

The local policy on cooperation with groups should provide that every person connected with the school system gets into the act, from the president of the board of education to the worker in the cafeteria. They should get into it by joining organized groups and sharing in their activities, by being invited to assist in the program of the school whenever possible, and by taking full advantage of opportunities for cooperative action related to school and community welfare.

To work successfully with groups, school personnel must know, for example, something of the fears, ambitions, and frustrations of parents in their relationship to the school. They must recognize that childless couples and career women may be heavy taxpayers who represent a sizable segment of the population and that these individuals should not be neglected in enlisting support for the school.

Furthermore, school personnel must be aware that older members of the community can interpret the modern school experience only in the light of their own experiences unless they are informed differently. It is important to help this group to understand the impact on schools made by new housing developments, child labor laws, and compulsory school attendance regulations, and to fathom the demands of a curriculum expanded to meet individual needs of children and the tremendous cost of education that accompanies these changes.

The policy must be one of interpreting the school program to all groups in the community and inviting their cooperation in the tremendous task of advancing the cause and quality of public education in our democratic society.

Community Involvement

Educators can no longer take a public-be-damned attitude toward the day-to-day operation of schools. No longer can they say, "We know best and we will tell the public how schools should be run." Young parents, older citizens, parents, and organized groups become offended if the school arbitrarily makes decisions that directly affect them. In a sense, they want to become involved and want to know the rationale before school decisions are made.

The idea of involving citizens in schools frightens many educators. This is understandable, but one fact should be kept in mind: In the majority of cases an informed public is more apt to support schools than not to support them. The public can be partly informed through the mass media and special publications, but more important, schools must get citizens involved in their programs in order for educators to understand people's attitudes toward the schools and to learn what the citizens want to know about the schools.

There was a time in education when the local boards and the chief school administrator could reasonably determine what a community expected of its schools. This is no longer true for at least two reasons: First, school systems became larger and more isolated from the community; second, parents and citizens became better educated and no longer accepted previously established goals and ideals.

Being more interested in education than previous generations, these citizens demand to know more about their schools—how their tax dollar is being spent and what the educational plans of the school system are. They want to become involved in and be part of their schools.

One way of involving the community is in the educational planning of the schools through goal setting. By working on goals, citizens can better understand the role of the school and provide the board of education with an accurate reflection of the community opinion of those goals.

Successful programs involving the community in determining goals emphasize that a total commitment by all involved is a necessity. School board members must believe in the program and back it 100 percent. Likewise, administrators must

be committed to it and become active in the goal-setting process.

Generally, a program is initiated by the passage of a formal resolution at a school board meeting. It gets off to a better start if the resolution is passed unanimously by the board. In addition to authorizing the program, the board resolution also authorizes any necessary funds and offers the support of the board in providing personnel, facilities, and supplies needed to carry out the program.

Important also is a well-formed plan of action. Initial planning for the program should include the setting of a time frame and the appointment of a project director. The plan of action generally calls for the selection of an advisory committee. The guidelines on selection of members for such a committee have been outlined earlier in this chapter.

A study of successful programs involving the community in determining and ranking goals suggests these additional considerations:

1. Since each district is unique, it should develop a program that will best suit its community.
2. The size of the school district and the amount of participation by citizens should determine whether the goal process should be performed on a districtwide or school-to-school basis.
3. Almost anyone who wants to become involved in the goals process should be accepted.
4. Board members, administrators, and committee members should attend a goals conference, or a consultant should conduct an in-service workshop for them.
5. The whole goal process should be publicized thoroughly throughout the program.
6. Information should be published in different languages if non-English-speaking people live in the community.
7. A structured program for internal and external communication is vital.
8. All points of view should be given an opportunity to be considered throughout the goal-setting process.
9. When the statement of the goals is finalized, the board of education should accept it as soon as possible. If there is a difference between the board and the advisory committee, it should be discussed and resolved.
10. The board of education should publicize and disseminate the agreed-upon goals and formally thank the advisory committee members for their dedication and service.[5]

Attempts at Exploitation

Every effort should be made to take full advantage of the opportunities for cooperation with community groups. Nevertheless, administrators and teachers must exercise critical judgment as to the values or dangers inherent in the school's relationships with such groups. Cumulative experience shows that many groups, both intentionally and unintentionally, try to further their own interests in ways that harm pupils, disrupt the operation of the school, and violate its character as an impartial, nonsectarian, classless social institution. Their attempts at exploitation take the form of demands on the time and talent of teachers and pupils, clever commercial propositions, and propaganda materials.

PROPAGANDA MATERIALS

School people have a grave responsibility to see that pupils receive an education free from bias, half-truths, and propaganda. In meeting this responsibility, they are constantly under pressure from organized groups who wish to use the school for implanting ideas and doctrines in the minds of the young.

These groups have spent millions of dollars on printed and visual materials, supplying them to teachers and pupils without cost or at a small fraction of their actual cost. The materials deal with such topics as free enterprise, local business efforts, manufacturing processes, U.S. ideals and traditions, labor unions, temperance education, international affairs, and civil disobedience. On the surface, these materials may appear to be excellent sources for the enrichment of classroom teaching, but objective examination will disclose the propaganda they contain and the motives behind their publication.

The problem of preventing their use in school is difficult for these reasons: (1) They help to satisfy a need for more instructional materials than boards of education are willing to furnish; (2) they deal with

subjects in more thorough and interesting detail than do standard textbooks; and (3) it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between propagandist and nonpropagandist materials. Perhaps one solution lies in the establishment of a national or regional clearinghouse through which all free and inexpensive materials should pass before they are accepted for instructional purposes. Standards could be drawn up that would govern the inclusion of these materials in an annual catalog.

MEETING CRITICISM AND ATTACKS

The problem of trying to develop wholesome relations with community groups is complicated further by unfair criticism of and attacks on schools. Condemnations of public education made by misinformed citizens and special-interest groups have been responsible for weakening popular confidence in the work of the instructional program and in the competency of professional personnel. Unless checked, these unfair criticisms threaten to destroy some of the fundamental principles underlying the free school system in this country. No longer can boards of education, administrators, and teachers ignore the seriousness of the problem and simply hope that these forces will expend themselves in time. Intelligent measures must be taken to counteract their destructive tendencies and to foster friendly relationships. Solutions for this many-sided problem must start with a definite understanding of what the criticisms and attacks are like and how they may be met.

Role of Criticism in Public Education

Since the nature of criticism is usually unfavorable or faultfinding, there is a tendency to overlook or suppress it. This is a mistake. For one thing, neglected criticism grows and becomes exaggerated. And, on the other hand, some criticism is inevitable and when used wisely can be valuable to a school.

First, criticism can be used to measure unrest in the community. A community with low morale will pick on its school. For example, communities suffering from disorganizing influences, such as unemployment, political upheaval, religious bickering, or other negative factors, often will involve the schools in their problems. Obviously, these periods of unrest are a poor time to sponsor bond elections or introduce innovations into the curriculum.

Criticism can also measure interest. When people want to help, they are often interested in the neglected and inadequate aspects of the school system. This type of criticism is well intentioned, though often unenlightened and vague. The critic in this type of situation is also different from other critics.

Critics sometimes tell schools things that other people hesitate to mention. Constant involvement in a situation may produce "blind spots," and educators are as subject to this difficulty as other people. Sometimes only the frankness of a critic can motivate further evaluation and action. Instead of avoiding critics, we should realize that their barbs and frankness can add perspective to the management of a school. As long as there are human beings working in the school system, there is a need for criticism and evaluation. The possibility that mistakes will be subject to public discussion should keep schools dynamic, flexible, and subject to change.

Types of Critics

The art of meeting critics hinges on the capacity to identify the different types of critics. Following are some general categories into which most of them can be classified. It must be remembered that these categories are general and they do overlap. It should also be remembered that a particular critic may be reclassified as times and situations change.

The most bothersome are the *hostile critics.* They suffer from uncontrolled feelings of hostility. Instead of becoming upset or angry with the real cause of their feelings, they take it out on the schools. Psychologists call such attacks "misplaced hostility." Earmarks of the hostile critic are fairly uniform but vary in degree. The hostile critics can be identified by the following characteristics:

> ***They are unduly emotional.*** These critics are not only angry but are full of other emotions as well. They are irate, highly incensed, and easily insulted.

They are personal in their complaints. Complaints from this type are almost always in terms of personal happenings. They or their children have usually been insulted or neglected. They demand immediate action and punishment of the alleged offender.

They classify people by status. These people appeal to personal privileges. Because they live in a certain neighborhood or know the mayor or the board member, they feel they should have preferential treatment.

They have a deep sense of right and wrong. For these people there is only one right answer. They usually have the "right" answer before contacting the schools. Their thoughts and actions are rigid and allow for few exceptions.

They are suspicious by nature. Extremists of this type demand investigations. They suspect that the nation is going to the dogs and that there are subversives around every corner. The most radical of them pester police stations and the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

Less dramatic are the *uninformed critics.* However, in terms of numbers and influence, they are important. They, too, have identifiable characteristics.

They are indifferent. These people are usually uninterested in school programs and activities. Their visits to the schools are few. Unless someone talks about schools when they are around, they are not bothered by what is going on in the classroom.

They repeat criticism rather than create it. After they hear or read about the schools, they willingly repeat what they have heard or read—it is seldom that this type of critic has firsthand information.

They tend to be negative. Because other interests are more important to them, they are willing to believe criticism. For example, if this criticism substantiates their position about taxes, they are likely to pay attention to what they hear or read.

They accept explanations and facts. Since they are not emotionally or intellectually committed to a point of view, they are responsive to facts and explanations from the schools that make sense to them.

Then there are the *professional critics.* They are self-appointed or work for particular organizations interested in low taxes or some particular brand of education. They are motivated by the desire for fame and feelings of self-righteousness for saving education from "professional" educators. Such critics have some of the following characteristics:

They are intelligent and clever. These people could be of great help to education. It is unwise to underestimate their influence. Their supporters are usually few in number, although their actual strength is difficult to determine because many of them are hidden behind some front organization.

They profess friendship for and support of education. This group mingles with school people. Sometimes they are people who left the teaching profession because of various dissatisfactions. They study education and can speak highly of it when it serves their personal purposes.

They sponsor organizations and resolutions. They seek strength and recognition through organized fronts. They have impressive letterheads and do considerable corresponding with newspapers and other groups.

Finally, there is a group who can be considered *enlightened critics.* They are friends of the school but avoid or reject any suggestion that they are rubber stamps for school officials. These critics can be identified as follows:

Friendly. These people have no axes to grind. They know many school people. They are proud of their associations in education.

Educated on school subjects. Facts and information are important to them. They criticize after studying a situation.

Specific. Criticism from this group is usually spelled out in detail. They ask questions more

than they give answers. They know what they are talking about and expect to receive specific replies.

What Can Be Accomplished

An opportunity to meet the critic should seldom be refused. Before each meeting, however, the educator needs to have some general idea of what broad goals might be achieved. Ideally, the critic would listen to his or her explanation and be converted, but this is not very likely.

Conversion to one's point of view seems to be a worthwhile goal in community relations, but practically speaking it is too often an impossible one. Conversion implies very often that the other point of view is wrong or valueless. Such an implication is not likely to win friends or influence the critics. This is particularly true for the hostile critics, whose very criticism develops out of insecurity and confusion. The more they are attacked, directly or indirectly, the more they will defend their position.

The school representative will find the creation of *understanding* his or her fundamental goal. Understanding is based on facts and explanations. This type of approach will evoke favorable responses from many, particularly the uninformed critic. It can also make the professional critics use care in what they have to say. Critics who comprehend what the school is trying to do will usually support a well-organized, purposeful program. They may say that if they were responsible for a program, it would be somewhat different, but these critics usually do not want such responsibility and, providing they understand what is happening in the classroom, would rather just accept the school's programs.

Many hostile critics lack the emotional stability or capacity to understand. In contacts with such individuals, the schools must seek to develop a sense of respect for educators and educational programs, as the best that can be gained in this situation. No matter how prejudiced or upset emotionally a person may be, he or she is capable of recognizing, understanding, considering, and studying a situation. The critic can also realize when an educator is well informed about the situation and has facts to justify his or her conclusions. All this should be accomplished without the hope or expectation of the actual conversion of this type of critic, although hostility can be minimized.

The greatest gain from facing critics is the development of understanding, not necessarily conversion. And sometimes the only practical goal is that of developing respect. If understanding and respect are achieved, there is every reason to believe that better support of the schools will follow.

Facing a Critic

All critics should have at least one interview with a designated school representative. This interview will be one of two types. Either it will involve people who seek out a school representative, or it will involve people who are asked for a conference because of their statements or articles about the school.

When someone asks to speak with a school representative, the representative's main task during the first interview is to listen and to ask questions. He or she should get a detailed description of the complaints and find out what happened, as understood by the complainant, when it happened, and who was involved.

If criticism centers on policy and practices, find out what the person knows about school policies. Seek the source of his or her information. While this questioning is taking place, try to get some insight into his or her motivation. A word of caution is in order: Don't assume the role of district attorney. Remember this person is not on trial. Questions that ask for further enlightenment and specific examples are least likely to offend. It is always helpful if the school official is not sitting behind a desk when talking with a critic. The desk signifies authority, which the critic may resent.

It is helpful to know if the critic is speaking for himself or herself, his or her family, his or her neighborhood, or an organized group, or if he or she is there to repeat random comments picked up somewhere. It also helps to know if the criticism is local or part of a national reaction. Is it chronic or the result of a particular situation? Is it hearsay or factual? Getting details about the critic and the criticism in the first interview is more important than giving answers.

Whether explanation should be given during the first interview is a matter of judgment. There is considerable satisfaction in receiving immediate answers, and time may be saved. On the other hand, some people call just to complain and are satisfied after doing so. Explanations only upset them further. An advantage of a second interview is that it allows time for feelings to settle and new perspectives to develop. The situation might correct itself in the meantime.

The temptation to defend the schools or their representatives should be avoided while one is listening to complaints. This may be difficult, particularly when the attack seems unjustified. It should be remembered that defense often implies some degree of guilt and that there is no reason to assume such a position. Furthermore, defensiveness sometimes handicaps the school representative in his or her efforts to develop understanding, respect, and support.

The stronger the disagreement, the more important it is that the communication be honest and effective. Don't assume that the other person understands what you say or write. Occasionally, ask the critic to check his or her understanding against yours. Likewise, be sure you understand what he or she is trying to communicate. Listen to everything a critic says before you begin to formulate your answer or question.

Preparation should be made for the second interview. Tentative goals should be outlined, and then the appropriate techniques should be chosen. Facts, explanations, and clarifications organized around the criticism should be assembled.

If this second meeting is a personal interview, the critic should be invited to the school office. Home visits are to be discouraged because of the potential distractions in the home. The visitor should first be given an opportunity to revise his or her story or to state a new conclusion. Time, as indicated, may have erased the complaint, or he or she may have been satisfied after telling the story. In such cases, school representatives can thank complainants for their interest in the school and tell them that their interests and services will be useful to the schools in the future.

If the critic is not satisfied, the conference should proceed. The essence of the conference should be communication, so that some form of understanding may be reached. The school representative need no longer assume a passive role.

In presenting the school story, be mindful of the time involved. Long interviews may defeat your purpose. Emphasize your points but avoid repeating them. Assume that the critics are capable of asking for clarification if they don't understand what you are presenting. Remember that in interviews it is necessary to extend to others what you are seeking from them. That is, if you want understanding, show understanding. If you disagree, either at the beginning or at the end, you should still show respect for the critic's point of view. Also remember that the more you disagree, the more important it is to maintain further contact.

Focusing the Answer

Personal attention to a critic calls for answers tailored to his or her particular needs. Clichés and generalized explanations repeated over and over may temporarily satisfy many critics, but they do very little to build genuine understanding and support for the schools. To help focus answers, the following suggestions are offered:

MEASURE THE CULTURAL AND INTELLECTUAL BACKGROUND OF YOUR CRITIC

It is better to overestimate the critic's intelligence and training than to underestimate them. However, errors in either direction should be avoided. We need to remember that a growing percentage of citizens are college graduates. Although they may not know too much about the professional aspects of education, they are well read and are motivated to learn. This is particularly true of both the uninformed and the enlightened critics.

EVALUATE THE EMOTIONAL CLIMATE WHEN THE COMPLAINT IS MADE

Hostile critics are not seeking answers—they want to release tensions. Appeals to reason are not likely to succeed, at least in the beginning. Understanding through listening and patience are usually good antidotes to emotion. You can give reasonable answers later.

MAKE USE OF PERSONAL INTERESTS AND NEEDS

People will try to understand what concerns them. Application of this truism will do much to focus your answers. Members of the chamber of commerce, for example, will be more interested in comparative costs, vocational education, and productivity. Members of other groups will be more interested in classroom activities, educational programs, and philosophies. There is no reason to believe, however, that other interests cannot be developed in people or that such interests do not already exist. Eventually, the public can learn to think in terms of school needs.

INCLUDE ILLUSTRATIONS AND EXAMPLES IN YOUR ANSWERS

People tend to think in concrete terms. A person is not likely to think philosophically when playing the role of a critic.

AVOID SIDE ISSUES AND EXCEPTIONS

Admittedly, education is complex and interrelated. However, we are faced with the challenge of giving simple answers. Side issues and exceptions only complicate matters when we are trying to create understanding.

DON'T GIVE THE HISTORY AND BACKGROUND OF PROBLEMS UNLESS REQUESTED

As interesting as the total story is to you, it can't be assumed that other people will want to listen to the details. Keep your focus on the problems or criticisms expressed by the critic.

AVOID LONG ANSWERS; THEY CAN CREATE HOSTILITY AND DESTROY INTEREST

The fact that educators have been accused of being "long-winded" should invoke cautiousness.

AVOID PROFESSIONAL JARGON

Even if such terminology is understood, its effectiveness is limited.

Follow-up Work on Critics

Your answer to critics may satisfy them and the case can be considered closed. However, a dynamic community relations program does not stop at this point. Many critics can become friends and supporters of the schools. Criticism should be the beginning of the relationship, not the end. This is particularly true for the uninformed critic and the enlightened critic.

After the final interview, there is need for follow-up work—a phone call, a letter, or a visit to ask if everything is still in order. There might also be an opportunity to tell the critics how the school has offered time and effort to resolve their complaints. Let them know their interest in the school is important.

A file of critics' names should be kept. These people can be used on committees. They can be called on to answer questionnaires. Send them invitations to dedications and other special events. And remember that they can serve as barometers of opinion in their particular segment of the community.

Public Meetings

Using public meetings (instead of a personal interview) to face and answer criticism is full of dangers. The emotional impact of mass psychology is constantly present. To be sure, the group might stampede the meeting in favor of the school, but even if this does happen, such support is temporary and not substantial.

The attraction that public meetings hold for crackpots always opens up the possibility of useless talk and wasted time. Unless meetings are carefully organized, there is no way to control these purposeless speakers. If they are controlled, you run the danger of being accused of railroading the meeting. Prestige and vanity also become involved in public meetings. Sometimes useless and undesirable commitments are made in public. Because they are made publicly, it becomes more difficult to persuade people to change their evaluations and opinions.

Such meetings can seldom be decision-making ones, and therefore they are likely to be dull and disappointing to some of the audience. This does not mean they are not useful. Public meetings can be constructive if they are called and designed for specific purposes. A meeting organized to clarify issues and impart information can be productive. The basic requirements are good speakers, effective visual aids, and prepared speeches. People can also be brought together for purposes of debate. In such instances, respected and reasonable leaders should be

invited to present the issues. Questions from the floor should be written.

Another technique is the small-group discussion method. Issues can be presented in a general meeting and then discussed in small groups with trained leaders. After discussion, summaries are prepared to be given to the whole group and to interested citizens.

In rare instances, where feelings are particularly intense and widespread, meetings can be called just to blow off steam. When this is done, there should be little attempt to develop understanding or make decisions. About all that can be hoped for is order. This type of meeting may clear the air, but there is also the risk that feelings will become more intense.

Minimizing Criticism

Although criticism cannot be avoided, it can be minimized. Because schools are handy targets for misplaced hostility, a part of a community relations program should be devoted to the development of skills and policies that prevent such attacks. Following are some suggestions for avoiding criticism.

NEVER ASK FOR ADVICE UNLESS YOU ARE ABLE TO USE IT

There are a number of reasons for this policy. First, people usually guard their own opinions. They want approval of them. To be invited to offer an opinion and have it completely rejected creates a defensiveness in a person that often is expressed negatively toward the person who requested it. Second, if it is really approval you want, instead of advice, the intelligent person can distinguish the difference. It is an insult for you to use subterfuge to gain his or her approval.

AVOID TELLING HALF-TRUTHS

Even if the complete story is not entirely favorable, it is better to give all the facts. By doing so, you show the school position is one of strength—a strong program can afford to expose its weaknesses. This policy also avoids the danger of a hostile critic revealing something to the community. Such exposés are embarrassing and sometimes even damaging. The public should never be led to feel that the school officials don't trust them. Usually it is better to let all the facts of a situation be available and risk criticism than to try to conceal unfavorable facts, only to have them become known later on. As long as the schools are public, the public will want to know the entire story.

SEEK SUPPORT IN ADVANCE

People criticize for not being told as well as for not understanding. The critic's sting can sometimes be blunted or dispelled by having the school's supporters prepared to face him or her.

BE CONSISTENT

It is usually best to have one person make all important policy announcements. Other statements and clarifications should refer to the official announcement. Written releases always serve as a record in case of misquotations or misunderstandings. A briefing of the employees will help avoid conflicting reports. Besides their public relations value, staff briefings also contribute to good morale.

ANTICIPATE CRITICISM FROM CERTAIN DECISIONS

Educators often make decisions without looking over the horizon to public reaction. Some unpopular decisions must be made, but many poor decisions are made that cause unnecessary criticism.

Teamwork Needed

Although the responsibility of meeting the critic is delegated to particular individuals, the ultimate success of any program depends on the entire personnel of a school or a school district.

Complaints will be made to everyone. Each person who receives a complaint should evaluate it and then deal with it if it is something that can be settled immediately and if it is within his or her jurisdiction. Other types of complaints should be referred to the central office. The same principles of understanding and listening are applicable whether you resolve the complaint or refer it. Criticism resolved on the spot should be summarized periodically and reported to the responsible department.

In return, the central office staff should report back to the teacher or person making the referral. If

the criticism is received by someone in the central office, it is important for morale and teamwork that any individuals involved be informed. When advisable, the critic should be referred to the individual involved. Occasionally, a summary of this aspect of community relations should be given to the entire staff.

Community relations leaders within the school should constantly advise the staff of positive ways of working with critics and alert them to effective community relations techniques. In other words, effective communication on all levels is the key to teamwork in facing criticism.

COMMUNICATION DURING NEGOTIATIONS AND A STRIKE

There was a time when school districts didn't worry about planning communications during negotiations or a strike. As a result, schools were painted into corners and outmaneuvered by employee groups with well-orchestrated programs of communications. Local citizens received basically one side of the issues and often perceived their elected school officials as being coldhearted and unreasonable. A school district must have a communications plan with administrative and communication procedures set up weeks or months in advance of negotiations to eliminate the confusion and chaos that can result when a crisis occurs.

The importance of a communications plan can be seen in the impact a strike and the subsequent settlement have on a community. Ultimately, all citizens will have to finance the settlement, and children's education will be interrupted. Parents, especially working parents, must make arrangements to have their children cared for if classes are canceled; local services, such as police, traffic, and transportation, have to be rearranged if a strike occurs; and the confidence the community has in its school officials and, ultimately, its support of the schools are at stake. Handling themselves well during negotiations and a strike will indicate that school officials have integrity, reasonableness, and the leadership qualities to continue with the stewardship of the community's children and tax dollars.

Communication Suggestions

Communications experts have suggested the following thoughts for school districts involved in negotiations and a strike:

- Communications should begin as soon as negotiations begin.
- The school district should refrain from partisan statements and stick to transmitting facts.
- The school district should have one spokesperson, probably the chief negotiator, with advice from the communication specialist.
- The objective is a settlement; it is not to make the employees look bad with a propaganda campaign.
- Overreaction by school officials to an employee group's remark can cause the community to respond emotionally by supporting "underdog" employees.
- Public charges and countercharges tend to delay settlements by diverting attention from issues to personalities.
- The communication specialist should be close to the negotiating team but not on it. In this way he or she can learn and understand issues and actions at the bargaining table. Likewise, the specialist can advise the district spokesperson on working with the media, the content of public statements, and suggested written materials.

Informing the Media

The primary source of information about negotiations and a strike will often be the news media. Employee organizations, with the help of state and national affiliations, are usually better prepared to use the media to their communication advantage. School districts must combat this with a well-organized plan that emphasizes facts rather than emotions and recriminations. Chapter 11 provides guidelines on working with the new media; newspeople can be helpful during negotiations and a strike.

Informing Parents and the Community

The media are important sources of information for parents and the community during negotiations and

a strike. But they should not be considered the only methods of communicating with the external publics. The key communicator program outlined earlier in this chapter can be most effective in getting and keeping the community informed and in learning what the feelings of citizens are toward issues in negotiations and toward the strike. A word of caution is in order: The key communicators program should be established long before a crisis, or those participating in it may think they are being manipulated.

Communication Plan

A school district should start planning for next year's negotiations as soon as this year's settlement has been completed. A valuable step in such planning is to identify employee wants that can be met prior to negotiations. Many of these are minor wants such as a need for a piece of furniture in a classroom, a parking space, or secretarial help. If ignored, they can be part of major demands at negotiation time.

Wise communication planning includes the following measures:

- The superintendent should anticipate major demands of employee groups and keep the board of education and the district administrators informed.
- The chief school administrator, with the help of the communication specialist, should meet with board members and the chief negotiator to plan communication strategies. The specialist should constantly advise school officials on the public relations implications of certain decisions made by them.
- A workshop should be conducted on the role of board members in negotiations and in a strike. Individual board members are under an enormous amount of pressure from citizens either to get the students back in school or not to give away everything to the employees. Many times they are under personal attack with threatening phone calls and letters. Also, board members can often be drawn into a communication war in the media. Board members should be cautioned to refrain from this type of action and to realize that anything they say publicly may be taken as the feeling of the entire board. By law the position of a board can be formalized only at a legal meeting. Boards should act as a unit rather than with many voices during negotiations or a strike.
- A major part of a communication plan is that section that determines the publics with whom the school district must communicate, the information that should be passed along, when the communication should take place, how the information will be passed along, and who will communicate with various publics.
- An evaluation of the plan should be conducted to determine what should be retained in future plans, what should be dropped, what could be improved, and what could be added.

COMMUNICATING WITH DIVERSE CULTURES

With the world getting smaller because of instant communications and rapid transportation, people outside the United States are learning more about our freedom and quality of life. They like it and want to be part of it. And they want to migrate here and become citizens. Such migration affects all aspects of a school district and especially communications.

Most of these people value education and quickly enroll their children in our schools. This underscores the importance of school administrators and teachers understanding the cultures of the diverse groups in a district. Before they can do that they need to understand a major barrier to cross-cultural communications—ethnocentrism. This phenomenon is defined as an unconscious tendency to view and judge people by one's own customs and standards. It is imperative that school personnel view objectively customs or beliefs that differ from their own.

Closely related to and emanating from ethnocentrism are cultural absolutes. Groups with such absolute values believe, "The way we do things is the correct way. Anybody who does things differently is wrong." These "absoluters" judge different cultures from their own set of values, not understanding that other cultures or ethnic groups may have a different value structure.

Multiethnic diversity exists in most communities. From now until 2020 the demographics of schools will change. The numbers of African

American, Asian, Hispanic, and Native American students will increase more than the number of white students. School administrators need to understand this and develop a communication plan. Here are some suggested activities for that plan:

- Develop a school policy on working with multiethnically diverse groups.
- Identify the various ethnic groups in the district.
- Learn who the key communicators are in these groups and meet with them. They can be identified by contacting churches, community groups, governmental agencies, and bilingual aides or employees.
- Ask the key communicators to relate information about the schools to their groups.
- If functional, create an advisory committee within each diverse group. If school employees are from that group, have them work with the school administrators when meeting with this committee. This helps make the committee members more comfortable and bridges the cultural gap between the school and the group.
- Hold workshops to train teachers and aides on how to work with children from different cultures and how to communicate with their parents. Have the key communicators from the groups meet with school personnel and explain thoroughly their culture. They need to explain not only the surface culture, such as their dress, food, holidays, and music, but also the deeper aspects, such as values, family structure, education, work habits, and religious beliefs.
- Print publications in the language spoken by the diverse groups if it is not English.
- Work with the ethnic media who service these diverse groups.
- Provide a school bus to transport parents of immigrant students to school for back-to-school night. If one of their own group works for the school district, have that person ride with them to serve as translator and to make them comfortable in meeting with school officials.
- Teach all students to respect all languages, cultures, and people. It is especially important that they understand that the lives of the secondary immigrant students are extremely complex. This is true because they have experienced many changes in their lives all at once.
- Understand that the most effective method of communicating with these parents is conversing in their native language in their home. Personal contact is better than the telephone, which is, however, better than a letter.[6]
- Believe that immigrant students can succeed academically if they are given the proper support.
- Use the resources of governmental agencies and independent organizations such as the Intercultural Development Research Association, 5835 Callaghan Road, Suite 350, San Antonio, Texas 78228-1190 (www.idra.org).

Questions

1. Very few teachers are prepared to deal with parents because the courses they took to become teachers didn't include help in this area. What would you do to help prepare teachers for effective parent conferences and for other ways to communicate effectively with parents to help provide the best quality education for their children?
2. Realizing that key communicators are major players in the overall communication process between the school and the community, how would you go about setting up the organization?
3. As more and more older taxpayers play key roles in the school district and in school elections, what can be done to communicate effectively with older citizens to help them support the schools? What kinds of information would you be sure to share with older citizens who may not have children enrolled in schools?
4. What are the different types of critics you might face in dealing with the community and what can you do to deal with them effectively?

Readings

Broom, Glen, and David Dozier. *Using Research in Public Relations.* Boston: Pearson Education, 1999.

Fuller, Mary Lou, and Glenn Olsen. *Home–School Relations*, 3rd ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2007.

Gestwicki, Carol. *Home, School, and Community Relations: A Guide to Working with Parents.* Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2009.

Harris, Thomas L., and Philip Kotler. *Value-Added Public Relations: The Secret Weapon of Integrated Marketing.* New York: NTC, 1999.

Samover, Larry, and Richard Porter. *Intercultural Communication: A Reader*, 12th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2008.

Stacks, Don W., *Primer of Public Relations Research.* New York: Guilford Press, 2002.

Endnotes

1. National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org), 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855.
2. Richard D. Hanusey, "A Study of the Influences of Neighborhood Associations on Public Schools of an Urban District as Perceived by Administrators," unpublished doctoral dissertation, Temple University, Philadelphia, 1973. Also see Donald M. Austin, "Neighborhood Associations: Characteristics, Structure, and Issue Orientations," unpublished doctoral dissertation, University of Oklahoma, Norman, 1986.
3. Francis P. Larkin, "Some Guidelines on Dealing with Senior Citizens," *Communication Briefings*, vol. 1, no. 1 (Alexandria, VA, 1981), p. 8, and amended in a private correspondence with Don Gallagher, 1999.
4. The intergenerational material for this chapter was provided by Francis P. Larkin, an intergenerational consultant, 25 South Drive, Marmora, NJ 08223.
5. Compiled by Richard D. Bagin, Executive Director, National School Public Relations Association, Rockville, MD.
6. Some of these suggestions are presented by Ellen T. Morgan in "Communicating with Diverse Populations," *School Public Relations, Building Confidence in Education* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 1999), p. 225.

Chapter

9

Crisis Communication

Perceptions of how school leaders act and communicate during a crisis often become the focus of national and even international scrutiny. During any crisis, personal and organizational competence, character, credibility, and goodwill are challenged. Therefore, school administrators need to be prepared to respond to crises, even when the events have no direct connection to their school systems.

Instant news coverage—supported by cable and online TV programming, online news sites, bloggers, and so on—has allowed national and international issues to more quickly become issues for those responsible for managing communication in local school systems. School systems miles away from a news-making crisis can find themselves the subject of news coverage, as local reporters, reacting to national news, develop their own stories on how local schools are prepared for potential disasters.

Increasingly, school communication administrators must stay plugged into breaking national news. Doing so helps them to develop an understanding of the national school issues that might prompt local news directors—and parents—to ask, "Could this happen in our school system?" And, "How are my local schools prepared to handle such an event?" National news events, announcements, and reports on school safety, terrorism, violence, health issues, and sexual misconduct are some of the issues likely to cause local media to seek comments from school administrators in their coverage areas.

To keep up with emerging crisis-related trends and news, school communications professionals increasingly are making regular use of local and national online news search sites, including the sites of the major networks and large daily newspapers, to study media reports as they are issued and updated. Many also consider it important to develop a network of peers—consisting of both communications professionals in the local community and school officials in neighboring districts—to quickly consult with before responding to crisis-related events or rumors.

Some crises are *emerging*. We can see them coming and prepare for them. Some are *ongoing*. Still others are *immediate*. When an immediate crisis hits, an organization must be ready to hit the ground running.

By definition, a crisis is "an unstable or crucial time or state of affairs in which a decisive change is pending." A crisis can involve anything from fiscal and personal impropriety to outright violence. According to the U.S. Department of Education's 2003 publication, *Practical Information on Crisis Planning: A Guide for Schools and Communities*, "a crisis is a situation where schools could be faced with inadequate information, not enough time or sufficient resources, but in

From Chapter 9 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

which leaders must make one or many crucial decisions." Since the shootings at Columbine High School in Colorado during April 1999 and the terrorist attacks on the World Trade Center and Pentagon in New York City and Washington, D.C., on September 11, 2001, even greater attention has been focused on crisis planning for schools.

But not all crises result from acts of violence. Many types of events can suddenly place local school systems in the eye of a media storm, including, for example:

- Health issues, from major items such as the potential for an influenza pandemic to minor events such as an outbreak of undefined skin rashes or head lice.
- Misconduct by school personnel, from sexual abuse issues and related law-enforcement investigations to acts involving alcohol or drug use.
- Safety concerns, from air-quality issues related to mold in school buildings or lead in drinking fountains to the need for seatbelts on school buses.
- Weather-related events, from major disasters such as hurricanes and tornadoes to more localized issues such as snow-related closings or delayed openings.

A CRISIS PLAN IS ESSENTIAL

Without a plan, any crisis can prompt paniclike reactions. With the community and perhaps even the world watching, people expected to be in command of a situation are relegated to wringing their hands and asking, "What do we do now?" A crisis plan is essential, therefore, to avoid this kind of response. While this chapter focuses primarily on dealing with violence, a similar framework will guide any organization through most types of crises. While the specifics might change from one incident to another, the approaches will be similar.

What's Included in a Crisis Plan?

The format of crisis plans might vary, depending on the nature of the community and the creativity of the people who develop the plan. A school system should not simply adopt another district's plan, since the development process leads to ownership and understanding. However, most plans include the following:

- ***Reasons for the plan.*** In a few words, the document should state why the plan is needed.
- ***The types of crises covered in the plan, accompanied by checklists for responding to each one.*** These crises might range from a chemical spill to an armed attack.
- ***Procedures common to all crises.*** Some things are basic in dealing with any crisis, such as making sure students and staff are safe; contacting law enforcement, fire, rescue, or other appropriate agencies; informing the superintendent and central office staff and referring them to the crisis plan; establishing the chief spokesperson; asking all office personnel to direct calls about the crisis to the office of the chief spokesperson; setting up news media operations; demonstrating concern while telling the full story; alerting the crisis counseling team; and getting and reporting the facts.
- ***Emergency telephone numbers.*** Included in the plan should be phone numbers for key people and organizations that may need to be contacted in each of several types of crises. The lists should also include alternate locations where people might be reached, such as home and alternate numbers, such as cell phones.
- ***Detailed maps of each school facility.*** These maps or line drawings of the school, school grounds, and the nearby vicinity will be essential if bomb squads, SWAT teams, firefighters, or other groups responding to an emergency arrive on the scene. In advance, the plan should also detail locations, generally outside the involved facility, where a command center might be established and where regular briefings might be held for the media.
- ***Procedural information.*** The plan should include guidelines for closing schools and lockdown or evacuation procedures. Some school systems also use codes as shorthand for various

types of situations. For example, a *Code 1* crisis can be handled at the local school level. A *Code 2* crisis will require additional help but can be handled by the school district. A *Code 3* crisis, such as a fire, natural disaster, or act of violence, requires a broader community response.

• ***Guidelines for effective communication with the media, staff, and community.*** Systems for quickly communicating with staff, parents, nearby residents, and the news media all need to be carefully outlined. Special considerations also need to be made to address the various communication problems that often accompany school disasters, such as the loss of telephone and electrical service or the added online capacity needed to handle surges in traffic to the school Web site from those seeking information and updates. Sample messages and "backpack letters" can be drafted in advance to be ready to be tailored to a specific crisis once the need arises.

Special Considerations Planning should include access to adequate cell phones and charged batteries; two-way radios; staff and student directories; fact sheets about the school or other facility; student and staff attendance records, including any substitutes who may be in the building; locations for the evacuation of students and staff; a transportation plan for evacuation; staff who will be at the evacuation site; the ability to cut off cable or Internet service to a building with an intruder inside; lodging and food for staff and volunteers; staff, departmental, and parent–community organization phone trees; a list of sources of outside support; a location for a media camp that could hold up to 750 media vehicles; clarity on who will handle special events, such as a presidential visit, remembrance ceremony, or graduation; and membership on crisis management teams.

While experts have many opinions about the basics of being prepared, many agree that each school and office should have a general emergency kit that includes dust masks, battery-powered radios, plastic sheeting, and duct tape. Buildings should be weatherized, and air-handling systems should employ good-quality particulate filters. Parents are encouraged to develop a family communications plan that will provide guidance on where people might meet or get in touch with each other, if they survive a cataclysmic disaster. One of the most effective preparation strategies is to constantly update the crisis plan and provide ongoing training for all who need it.

Who Should Develop the Crisis Plan?

Generally, a board-adopted policy supports development of a crisis plan. This means the superintendent is ultimately responsible for having a plan in place. In practical terms, leadership for development of the plan is often handled by the school system's communications executive, working with a planning team.

This type of planning is a prime example of school–community relations at work. At the school district level, members of the planning team will likely include the following:

- Superintendent
- School district communications, business, human resources, and professional development executives
- Representative teachers; secretaries; administrative assistants; counselors; school psychologists; school health professionals; information technology and other technical services staff; transportation, custodial, and cafeteria staff; and other personnel
- Students
- Representatives of law enforcement agencies (sheriff, police, state patrol), fire, rescue, poison control, phone company, electric and gas utilities, weather service, transportation, others
- Representatives of the media (newspapers, wire services, television, radio, other appropriate media)
- PTA and/or other parent–community representatives.

Planning and Preparedness

Any plan worth developing should never gather dust. Having a crisis plan that's not clearly com-

municated and readily accessible is tantamount to having no plan at all. Therefore, any organization, including a school system, should consider the following:

- ***Central and area offices.*** Training sessions should be held with all staff in these offices. How these meetings are organized will depend on numbers of staff and schedules. One meeting might involve the cabinet, another the entire management team, still another the support staff. If there are separate transportation, warehousing, professional development, and other facilities, each should host a training session. Whenever possible, all staff should meet together rather than separately, to promote teamwork.
- ***School board.*** The plan should be thoroughly reviewed with the board.
- ***Individual schools.*** Training sessions should involve the entire staff at each school.
- ***Parents and community.*** While some parents and representatives of the community will be involved in developing your crisis plan, all need to know that the plan is in place.
- ***Simulations.*** To bring life to the plan and to demonstrate the communitywide nature of some crises, school systems and even individual schools might carry out simulations that involve not only school staff but other community agencies as well.
- ***Copies of the plan.*** Copies of the comprehensive plan should be distributed to each school and office in the district.
- ***An abbreviated plan.*** Since a crisis plan can be quite lengthy, many schools and school systems develop abbreviated checklists, spelling out what must be done immediately if a crisis strikes. A relatively small document that easily fits into pocket or purse might summarize the crisis plan, while providing specific bulleted lists of what each of several groups should do immediately, ranging from the school nurse and secretary to the superintendent and principal. Nothing should be left to chance. In some cases, emergency numbers are placed beside each office or classroom phone.

A SAFE HAVEN VS. THE REALITY OF VIOLENCE

Schools are among the safest havens in any society. Yet, over the last decade some of these sanctuaries for learning were hit with devastating, high-profile armed attacks. Many students and educators died and others were wounded. Those who staged the attacks ranged in age from 11 to 18. Most were 14- to 17-year-old boys.

Immediately, these incidents became worldwide news stories. Within minutes, live television turned the names of schools, perhaps little known outside their immediate communities, into household names in the most distant reaches of the globe.

Those school systems best able to deal with these attacks had a crisis plan ready to go.

YOUTH VIOLENCE DECLINES

Despite dramatic attacks on schools, the incidence of youth violence seems to be declining. In August 1999, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control released results of a nationwide study, which concluded that the number of students who "carried a weapon on school property" declined from 11.8 percent in 1993 to 8.5 percent in 1997. Those who said they had engaged in "a physical fight on school property" dropped from 16.2 percent in 1993 to 14.8 percent in 1997.

The U.S. Department of Education reported in 1999 that 3,930 students were expelled for bringing a firearm to school during the 1997–1998 school year, a drop of 31 percent from the previous year's figure of 5,724.

WHERE DO ACTS OF VIOLENCE TAKE PLACE?

A study conducted by researchers at the University of Michigan and the College of New Jersey concludes that acts of violence in schools generally take place outside the classroom in common areas without a great deal of direct supervision. Those areas include hallways, cafeterias, bathrooms, locker rooms, libraries, and school grounds.

School Communication Leader Rick Kaufman on Managing Crisis Planning

A veteran of school communications and public relations, Rick Kaufman, APR, is the Executive Director of Community Relations and Emergency Management Coordinator for Bloomington (Minnesota) Public Schools. He served in this same role for Colorado's largest public school system, where he led the Crisis Response Team for the Columbine High School tragedy in April 1999.

Kaufman is a nationally respected consultant on crisis management and communications, media relations, community engagement, and communication planning. He has provided media relations and crisis management counsel and training to the U.S. Bureau of Prisons for the Timothy McVeigh execution; the New York Education Commission and New York City Schools following the terrorist attacks in September 2001; the U.S. Department of Education; the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA); the Los Angeles Office of the Federal Bureau of Investigation; the Wisconsin Health and Hospital Association; and numerous universities and state emergency management agencies.

What have schools learned recently when it comes to crises in schools and crisis communication?

The most important lesson learned is the need to be prepared—and it is much more than just saying one is prepared. It's actually being prepared with specific response plans with definitive steps—written and practiced—of what will be done in the event of a crisis.

When we talk about crises in schools and school systems, the type of events we may experience are very broad in terms of severity or magnitude, and their impact on students, staff, parents and community. Consider that school emergencies or crises fall on a continuum—those more commonplace on one end and other events, such as what we faced at Columbine High School in 1999, on the opposite end. Regardless of where an emergency may align on this continuum, knowing what to do when faced with a crisis can be the difference between chaos and calm—or even life and death. Knowing what to do, then, should be part of a well-defined crisis response plan, with clear procedures to guide responders to resolving the crisis, minimizing its impacts, and restoring the teaching and learning environment after a crisis.

We also learned to be vigilant. It is one thing to have a plan; it is quite another to bring a plan to life. Merely publishing a document will not prepare a school system for a crisis. This can only be achieved through practice, such as "table-top" scenarios or simulated drills. In a crisis situation, you will react as you are organized and trained.

One thing we know for certain: Every organization will face some type of crisis, and every crisis will have its own uniqueness. Too many potential scenarios exist to develop contingency plans for every known or as yet unknown scenario. Therefore, it's important that we are constantly preparing and learning about handling communication during a time of crisis.

What are some of the best ways to keep learning about and preparing for school crisis communication?

One of the best aspects about organizations such as the National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA) and its regional chapters is the ability to network with other school leaders and communication professionals, as well as resources such as the NSPRA Complete Crisis Communication and Management Manual.

At Columbine, 10 years ago, when we were in the thick of an incredible crisis none of us ever envisioned or had previously experienced, we came to the realization fairly quickly that we couldn't go it alone. I had a small team of professionals on staff, but we were outmanned with the severity and complexity of the largest public school shooting in history at that time. So, I reached out to our state school public relations association [Colorado School Public Relations Association] and NSPRA for assistance and support. Since then, we've helped state chapters to create and train "rapid response teams" as a network of professionals who can provide on-the-ground assistance to established school crisis-response teams, or for school districts that do not have enough people. Today, there are also many advances in communication technology, which means we no longer have to put emergency response experts on a plane to get help to a school in crisis.

Networking is a very important part of the overall success of crisis response, whether that is in advance planning or managing the many communication functions during a crisis.

How can school leaders remain vigilant in identifying potential crises? Can we avert crises by being vigilant?

Schools have long dealt with unfortunate incidents, such as the death of a beloved

(*continued*)

teacher or student, and the occasional bus accident that required an appropriate communication response. But none of us got into this profession thinking we'd have to deal with a school shooter hell bent on wreaking havoc and mayhem.

But vigilance today is being prepared for that broad range of potential crises. It is no longer a matter of if, but when a crisis occurs, are you ready? When I started training school districts across the country in the aftermath of the Columbine High School tragedy, I would often ask groups, "How many of you have crisis plans?" At that time, it was usually 50 percent. Today, almost everyone has a crisis plan. So the important questions I ask now are, "How many of you have actually trained to implement that plan?" and "How many of you have pulled that plan off the shelf recently and reviewed it?"

In 2003, the U.S. Department of Education identified four stages of disaster planning often called the four phases of crisis management. The first two phases—mitigation and prevention—address what schools can do to minimize or eliminate the risk to life and property. This is a vigilance piece that, if we put the right energies and commitments into these phases on the front end, we could save a whole lot of headache and heartache and money on the back end. Preparedness is the next phase. This is where school systems focus on planning a rapid, coordinated, and effective response to a specific crisis. Finally, we move to response and recovery, the latter often sorely overlooked.

Without vigilance, we don't see the warning signs. We don't see the red flags. And this is critical because those red flags may be the key to preventing a tragedy.[1]

• ***Disks and intranet.*** Certain portions of the plan, such as prototype backpack letters, might be distributed to those who need them on a disk or possibly become a regular feature of the school system's intranet.

• ***In case of emergency.*** Because a building might be sealed in an emergency, administrators and crisis management team members might wish to carry copies of essential plans, including calling lists, in a special container in the trunks of their cars.

CRISIS MANAGEMENT TEAMS ARE VITAL

Crisis management teams should be established at the district level and within each school. These teams might vary in size from five to a dozen people. Each will have clearly understood responsibilities in the event of various types of crises. They will also ensure that the staff is regularly updated and simulations are held, if needed.

While there are many types of crises, the most traumatic—those that cause the highest levels of stress—are human-caused and life-threatening. However, each crisis demands appropriate attention. The types of crises requiring a crisis-management-team approach might include:

- Accidents and injuries
- Armed attack or an armed intruder
- Bomb threat
- Child abuse, neglect, sexual assault
- Communicable diseases
- Criminal indictment
- Death of a student or staff member
- Demonstrations
- Fire
- Gas or chemical leak or spill
- Terrorist attacks that might involve chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear agents or devices
- Tornado or hurricane, other extreme weather conditions
- Vandalism or property loss, theft.

WHEN A CRISIS STRIKES: WHAT TO DO

Communication is the essence of dealing with a crisis. The relationships and communications systems developed in the crisis plan must immediately spring into action. Lives are at stake. Therefore, people need to know what to do.

Demands are intense during a crisis, especially when it involves an armed attack or other life-threatening incident. This means a school system must be ready, on a minute's notice, to put first things first. Early action can save lives and lessen confusion that immediately surrounds any act of violence.

Immediate steps in dealing with an act of violence include

- ***Report the incident to law enforcement.*** At the same time, don't be surprised if your first call comes from a reporter who has picked up the information from the police radio. *Avoid the temptation not to report an incident for fear that the school's reputation will be damaged. Not reporting it at once will cause the real damage.*
- ***Get as many facts as possible.*** Despite the demand for information, never report rumor.
- ***If possible, verify that the school has initiated its emergency action plan.*** Confirm that students and staff are being moved away from immediate danger and determine the level of emergency that has been declared.
- ***Be sure the superintendent or designee has been informed.***
- ***Clear your schedule.***
- ***Go to the scene.*** Meet immediately with the principal or other person in charge of the control center, as well as with representatives of other agencies, such as public safety officials. Determine what decisions have been made and the dimensions of the crisis.
- ***Support law enforcement in establishing controlled access to the site by the public and the media.*** It is likely that the facility or area involved will be declared a crime scene, off limits to anyone other than law enforcement.
- ***Be sure crisis intervention team leaders have been alerted.*** These teams should immediately be deployed to work with students, staff, and parents.
- ***Determine decisions yet to be made and make them.*** An example might be letting parents know where they can pick up their children without tying up traffic for emergency medical vehicles.
- ***Dispatch people to help at emergency sites and student evacuation centers and to be present at hospitals and the morgue.***
- ***Establish regular communication with hospitals.***
- ***Determine and/or announce the location for a media camp.*** During the 1999 incident at Columbine High School in Colorado, it was estimated that more than 750 media outlets were on the scene, with a large number of trucks and other vehicles.
- ***Inform the media where and when an initial briefing session will be held.*** Appropriate agencies on the scene, such as law enforcement, might be included in the initial briefing session.
- ***Be clear about who will serve as the primary spokesperson.*** Generally, the chief spokesperson will be the person in charge of districtwide communications.

WHAT SHOULD HAPPEN IN THE FIRST TEN MINUTES?

The following list, "10 Steps in the First 10 Minutes," is adapted from an emergency action plan developed by the Lyon County Schools in Eddyville, Kentucky, and focuses on an incident at a school:

- Activate the Emergency Action Plan. A first consideration should be the safety and security of students and staff. An emergency announcement might be, *"Attention all staff. Initiate security procedures at once. Avoid the _____ area."*
- Report the incident. *In most communities, that will mean a call to 911.*
- Decide whether to lock and secure or evacuate the building.
- Provide first aid until rescue units arrive.
- Verify what has happened.
- Notify the superintendent's and/or district communications office.
- Designate a control area.
- Start keeping a record of the time and sequence of events and log all phone calls made and received.
- Have runners deliver any additional instructions to classrooms and bring back student and staff status information.
- Direct parents and the media to a designated area, with the assistance of assigned crisis team members.

- ***Prepare and deliver an initial statement.***
- ***Hold briefing sessions at appropriate intervals.*** In the beginning, the briefings might take place hourly, then twice daily, and then daily.
- ***Set up a phone bank where people can call for information.***
- ***Place the contents of each briefing on the school district Web page.***
- ***Determine when the superintendent, principal, and other key school leaders need to make statements.***
- ***Call for outside help, if needed.*** If assistance is needed in communications, contact the National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA) (www.nspra.org) or the state NSPRA chapter. If help is needed with crisis counseling, contact the National Association of School Psychologists (www.nasponline.org). In advance, if at all possible, arrange for low-cost or complimentary hotel rooms for volunteers who are invited to come to your community. Also consider how and when food and refreshments might be delivered to school district and volunteer staff working directly on the crisis.
- ***Develop fact sheets.*** Generally, fact sheets about the school already exist.
- ***Be sure board members, central office staff, principals, and other staff in the school system are briefed.***
- ***Prepare letters for distribution to parents.*** These letters will explain the nature of the crisis and what is being done. Depending on the magnitude of the crisis, these "backpack letters" might be distributed by every school in the district.
- ***Be prepared to deal consistently with copycat incidents.***
- ***Establish a command center as a headquarters for communications personnel from all agencies working on the emergency.*** Those agencies might range from the school system to law enforcement and human service organizations.
- ***Schedule regular multiagency meetings at the command center.*** At these brief meetings, information can be shared, efforts coordinated, rumors squelched, and plans made.
- ***Consider holding a multiagency news conference.*** The news conference might summarize what has happened during the first and second days of the crisis and provide additional time for questions.
- ***Establish a central computer file for all statements and other documents produced in dealing with the incident.***
- ***Hold regular debriefings.*** Crisis management teams should hold regular debriefings to review what has been done and to consider strategic next steps.
- ***Remember to eat and sleep.*** In addition, those working directly on the crisis may need to delay their own personal grieving process.

Activate Your Communications Command Center

A command center is essential in dealing with any emergency. Whatever you call it, communications

Web sites can be extremely valuable for disseminating information in a crisis. Use your district or school Web site to:

- Provide current, accurate information about the crisis and what actions the district is taking to protect students and staff.
- Post news releases and fact sheets.
- Provide tips on warning signs to watch for in children and suggestions for helping children cope with trauma.
- Provide links to other quality sites with resources and advice for parents.
- Provide a forum or chat room for parents, students, and community members to share feelings, concerns, and suggestions about the crisis and related issues.
- Post a message board for get-well wishes or condolences.
- Post safety and discipline policies and behavior codes and the consequences for violation.

Source: NSPRA's Complete Crisis Communication Management Manual for Schools (15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855 (www.nspra.org). National School Public Relations Association, 2001), p. 67.

and coordinated decisions need to come together at some point. Otherwise, the approach to dealing with a crisis may seem fragmented.

Here are characteristics of a command center:

- The site has been predetermined in developing the crisis plan.
- It is near but not inside the school building or other facility that is the scene of the problem.
- All agencies substantively dealing with the crisis establish their communications operations at the center. Those agencies might include the school system, law enforcement, district attorney, FEMA, and human service organizations.
- At least daily meetings are held involving at least one person from each agency who has strategic responsibility for dealing with the crisis. This communication promotes cooperation. Misunderstandings and misinformation are corrected. Coordinated efforts are planned. Observations, statements, and requests are shared.
- Adequate numbers of telephone lines are installed.
- Two or more fax machines are installed.
- Banks of cell phones, batteries, and battery chargers are made available.
- Banks of television monitors are set up to watch coverage from local stations and networks. A person is assigned to scan reports for new information, errors, questions that may need to be answered, and reactions to what has been said or done.
- Numerous computers are installed, all with the capacity to go online.
- All statements, memos, letters, and other written materials are stored in a common computer file as well as in daily paper files.
- News media requests are recorded on special forms. Each receives an appropriate response.
- Questions that require a specific response or action are relayed to those who can handle them.
- The school system communications staff, including qualified professional volunteers, is organized around internal communication, external communication, news media relations, and volunteer coordination. One person is assigned to the role of strategist, observing everything that is happening, holding at least daily meetings, making strategic suggestions, and preparing crucial statements. Support staff will also be needed.
- Security is established at the command center.

WORKING WITH THE MEDIA

Initial Statements Are Critical

As soon as possible after an incident, the school system and perhaps other agencies should be prepared to make an initial statement to the news media. Parents, others in the community, and often people around the world are waiting to hear what you have to say.

Here are guidelines for developing and delivering your first statements to the media:

- Try to deliver the statement in the place where later briefings will be held. The area was likely predetermined in your crisis plan.
- Plan for what you want to say and practice, keeping sentences short and words and ideas clear.
- Keep in mind that the media may already have reported some of what you have to say. However, don't allow that to deter you from reporting what people need to know. Make no assumptions.
- Remember that microphones may pick up whatever you say walking toward or away from the briefing area.
- Keep the statement relatively brief.
- Ask yourself what you would want to know if you had a child involved.
- Objectively describe what has happened, what actions have been taken, and the present situation.
- Report that the immediate concern is the health and safety of students and staff, perhaps others, if they are involved. What have you done to secure their health and safety?
- Appeal to parents and other citizens. These appeals might include keeping streets and driveways open for emergency vehicles.

• Provide factual information about the school, such as enrollment, general location, name of the principal, spellings of certain personal and place names, and so on.

• Actively listen to your audiences. Reflect their concerns and what they might be thinking. Help them feel confident that you share their concern and that the situation is being well managed.

• At an appropriate time, state that the education and safety of our students are driving our decisions and that the school system will try to return to a sense of normalcy as soon as possible.

• Remind reporters of the school and district crisis plan and how it has been communicated.

• Provide operational information for the media, such as the time of the next briefing. You might even wish to say to the media, "Here is how you can help us . . ."

• Avoid taking on the role of law enforcement or health officials. Ask their spokespersons to provide that type of information, and make clear when an incident is under police investigation.

• Take questions. Use the questions as a lead for additional information that might be needed.

• Have an exit line in mind to wrap up the briefing, such as, "I look forward to sharing any further information we have with you at 3 p.m."

• Thank everyone for coming.

• Leave the briefing immediately so that you can move on to other responsibilities.

Working with the News Media as a Crisis Continues

In a free and democratic society, the media report the news as they see it. Because of advances in technology, television and other media can, with some ease, have live pictures on the air before some key school district officials arrive on the scene. With satellites and the Web, those pictures may be reaching every part of the world within minutes of the incident.

Competition among the media has increased dramatically. Therefore, television, radio, wire services, magazines, Web sites, and other media will want to be on the scene early, if not first, and will constantly press for new information. The coverage of several school shootings, for example, has been wall to wall.

The general rules for working with the media still apply, such as always telling the truth. However, a crisis such as an episode of violence will require skills and actions that go far beyond the day-to-day.

Here are guidelines for working with the media throughout a crisis:

• The safety, security, and education of students, staff, and community are your first consideration.

• Report facts, not rumor.

• Provide regular briefings at a consistent location.

• Have the superintendent, principal, and/or other key official deliver a statement during one of the first few briefing sessions to express heartfelt concern and to give reason for confidence in how the incident is being handled.

• Set up media operations in your command center with all calls directed to the person(s) handling media requests.

• Develop a form for taking media requests. Respond appropriately to each one.

• While serving all media, set priorities, since time and the demands of the situation will not make it possible for you to handle all requests. Priorities might include (1) local media; (2) national and international media that serve as a source for others (e.g., CNN, Associated Press); (3) other national media; and (4) media from other countries.

• Accommodate as many media requests as you can. Reporters and producers will generally understand that your primary responsibility remains managing the crisis.

• Prepare talking points, brief statements that embody what the community needs to know. Among them might be a statement that the school system's primary focus is the safety, security, and education of students and returning the schools and community to a sense of normalcy.

• Always keep in mind that if you don't provide certain information, reporters may find what they need from someone else, and it may not be accurate.

- Investigative teams will want all questions answered by today's deadline, despite the fact that the official investigation has only begun and may take weeks or months. Report only what you know.
- Listen to suggestions from reporters who have ideas about how to improve coverage. For example, a reporter at one briefing following a school shooting stepped from behind the camera and said, "Please, give us some new images so we don't have to keep airing that tape of kids running out of the school with their hands up."
- Remember that the site of the incident will likely be a crime scene, not accessible to the media. First, law enforcement and, eventually, the school system will decide when and how reporters will have access.
- Be ready for reports that certain types of media are offering substantial amounts of money for a picture from a surveillance camera or access to the crime scene.
- When needed set up media pools.

The news media are usually helpful when the school system insists on pool coverage.

Space limitations, the need to respect the sanctity of a remembrance service, or the establishment of a safe zone for students as they go back to school may call for the establishment of a media pool or, at the very least, special arrangements.

In a pool operation, one or two television networks or stations, a radio network or station, one or two photographers, and perhaps an online service might be asked to provide coverage and make it available to all other media.

Only those providing pool coverage are allowed into certain events. A special area is generally designated where they may sit. Consideration is given to where any media trucks might be stationed, sometimes at a distance or behind a barrier to lessen the appearance of a media circus. Special, highly visible badges are provided for members of the pool. Entrances are guarded, and only those with tickets or special badges may enter. Guidelines are set for the types of pictures that may or may not be acceptable, for example, no tight shots of grieving students or parents.

Most reporters are highly respectful of the need for pool coverage of certain events, such as memorial services, since they also want to respect the true meaning of the occasion. A few reporters will have just flown in and not heard of the pool arrangements. Some may try to break the pool and work their way in through other means. They should not be admitted. A cardinal rule is to never allow anyone to break the pool, because it sends the wrong message to those who respect it.

In some cases, such as students returning to school, a special parking area might be set aside at some distance from but still in view of the school building. That arrangement will make it possible for students to return to classes without confronting reporters, while the media are still able to cover the event.

Media pools and restricted coverage are only for very special occasions or circumstances. They do not apply to day-to-day coverage.

Providing Media Access to Students and Staff

The health and safety of students and staff come first. However, immediately following an incident, reporters will very likely speak to people who were there when it happened. Reporters might also call the homes of students to get their reactions or to arrange interviews. These types of encounters are generally outside the control of the school system.

Students and staff might be involved in developing crisis plans. Through counselors, training sessions, or a student newspaper or newsletter, students might be informed about the short- and long-term effects of their comments. For example, in a crisis, students will sometimes say things that they later deeply regret or talk with reporters from publications or programs with which they may not want to be associated. In a crisis, they are vulnerable.

However, the school system, with parental consent, might make the student council president available at a media briefing or on the day students return to class. Some students may want to talk about what they have been through. Others may not.

The same is true of certain school system staff. For example, a teacher who came in direct contact

with an attacker but was uninjured may be so upset by the situation that he or she is unwilling or unable to meet with reporters.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

How the Board, Superintendent, and Principal Contribute to Crisis Communication

When an incident occurs, everyone is tempted to express a point of view. However, yielding to that temptation can cause communication to break down and could even result in confusion. Reputations, and in some cases even lives, may be at stake.

All media calls should be referred to the communications office or to those assigned to handle that function.

The assigned spokesperson will provide regular briefings and respond to most media requests. The principal and superintendent will need to make statements, generally at a briefing, as soon as possible after the incident, and at other appropriate times. They have other functions to perform in helping steer the system through the crisis. The superintendent and principal may also wish to call the families of those who were killed or injured, make hospital visits, and provide encouragement to the legions of staff, volunteers, community agencies, and media who are working day and night to deal with the aftermath of tragedy.

The board's primary role in a crisis is its advance consideration and adoption of a policy that supports a crisis management plan. Although board members should be briefed immediately after an incident and regularly during its aftermath, and their wise counsel should be sought, they should not speak individually with reporters about the incident. Others will have more immediate information. However, on appropriate occasions, the board president may be asked to make statements at briefing sessions and at various events. Board members might also play key roles in comforting those who are suffering, providing support and encouragement for those on the front line, and working with the community to remember those who were injured or whose lives might have been lost.

PREVENTION: YOUR FIRST AND BEST STRATEGY

The best way to deal with acts of violence is to stop them before they happen. One way is to pay attention to warning signs. In some cases, school systems have installed high-tech security devices. While that type of hardware might be helpful, it is only part of the equation.

A growing body of evidence indicates that young people too often feel unaccepted, bullied, or left out. Cliques form, with names ranging from jocks and nerds to cowboys and the trench coat mafia. When certain groups gain unofficially sanctioned advantage, perhaps because they are stars of the football team, trust for the system breaks down. Intolerance grows, and conflict is not far behind.

Effective communication is at the heart of a sound school climate and a culture of tolerance. Students need to be treated fairly.

According to the U.S. Department of Education, characteristics of safe schools include: a focus on academic achievement, the meaningful involvement of families, solid links with the community, an emphasis on relationships among students and staff, open discussions of safety issues, students who are treated with equal respect, ways for students to share their concerns and to feel safe expressing their feelings, a system for referring children who are abused or neglected, extended day programs for students who would benefit from them, promotion of good citizenship and character, a willingness to identify problems and to assess progress toward solutions, and support for students who must make the transition from school to adult life and the workplace.

See Chapter 8 to apply the key communicator concept to identify sparks before they become fires.

RECOGNIZING THE WARNING SIGNS

In *Early Warning, Timely Response: A Guide to Safe Schools*, the U.S. Department of Education, working with representatives of education leadership organizations, pinpointed a number of key warning signs to help schools identify students who might be at risk

of committing an act of violence. Those warning signs include the following:

- Social withdrawal
- Excessive feelings of isolation and being alone
- Excessive feelings of rejection
- Being a victim of violence
- Feelings of being picked on or persecuted
- Low school interest and poor academic performance
- Expressions of violence in writing and drawings
- Uncontrolled anger
- Patterns of impulsive and chronic hitting, intimidating, and bullying behaviors
- History of discipline problems
- Past history of violent and aggressive behavior
- Intolerance for differences and prejudicial attitudes
- Drug use and alcohol use
- Affiliation with gangs
- Inappropriate access to, possession of, and use of firearms
- Serious threats of violence

Immediate Warning Signs

If students exhibit certain immediate warning signs, schools should make safety a primary consideration and take immediate action. School security personnel and possibly law enforcement authorities should intervene. Parents and appropriate community organizations should be notified. Those immediate warning signs include the following:

- Serious physical fighting with peers or family members
- Severe destruction of property
- Severe rage for seemingly minor reasons
- Detailed threats of lethal violence
- Possession and/or use of firearms and other weapons
- Other self-injurious behaviors or threats of suicide
- A detailed plan (time, place, method) to harm or kill others
- Carrying a weapon, particularly a firearm, and having threatened to use it

HANDLING THE AFTERMATH OF A CRISIS

Following an act of violence, depending on the magnitude, a community and its schools should return, as soon as possible, to a sense of normalcy. Returning to "normal" and "bringing full closure" may not be realistic, since things will never likely be the same.

Nonetheless, any organization or community that has gone through a period of crisis, especially when it involves an act of violence, must deal with the aftermath, while at the same time moving forward. For a school system, that means learning from what has happened, healing the wounds, and looking after the long-term health, safety, and education of students.

The following are steps to consider in dealing with the aftermath:

- ***Hold debriefings.*** Determine what went well and what didn't. Modify policies, plans, and procedures, as needed.

- ***Continue crisis counseling.*** Psychological wounds may take time to heal. Many students, staff, parents, and others in the community may suffer from posttraumatic stress disorder and may have difficulty getting through the grieving process, as they struggle with denial, anger, sorrow, and acceptance.

- ***Be prepared for lawsuits.*** When the immediate crisis subsides, people will often try to place blame. During the crisis, the school system should consult with its legal counsel and keep records of what it has done and said. A general policy of openness and a well-organized, thoughtful approach to dealing with an incident may lessen the likelihood of lawsuits.

- ***Establish appropriate memorials.*** Consider memorials ranging from sculptures to living memorials, such as a conference devoted to working together as a community to end violence. Preserve what people have left at memorial sites, from poems to stuffed animals.

- ***Account for donations and gifts.*** A school system may even want to seek further donations to fund ongoing activities in memory of those

whose lives have been lost or significantly changed because of the incident.

• ***Recognize those who have contributed, volunteered, or helped.*** During the crisis, try to keep lists of people who have been a part of the team or who have made contributions.

• ***Pay bills.*** A crisis can also be costly in dollar terms. Many individuals and organizations will have incurred reimbursable expenses. Pay these bills as quickly as possible.

• ***Examine school culture.*** Each school should take a microscopic look at its culture and make needed changes. Exclusive versus inclusive cliques are a symptom of an even greater problem. Do some individuals and groups have greater advantage at the expense of others? What does the school do to make sure *all* students feel included and not excluded?

• ***Be ready for long-term attention.*** For years, perhaps even for decades, the news media may want to do follow-up stories; focus on certain regular events, such as back-to-school or graduation; or do flashbacks and status reports on the anniversaries of the incident. The community might also hold periodic remembrance ceremonies.

Questions

1. Beyond planning, what is the importance of rehearsing or conducting drills on crisis preparedness to ensure effective crisis communication?
2. How might a crisis in one school district cause another school district to become the focus of media attention—even when it isn't directly involved in the crisis? How can school communicators prepare for such media interest?
3. What are the four identified phases of crisis management, and how can some of these phases be used to help mitigate risk to life and property in school crises?
4. What are major steps to undertake in dealing with the aftermath of a crisis?
5. What characteristics and skills should be considered when choosing a spokesperson for a crisis? What's the most important ability needed?

Readings

The Complete Crisis Communication Management Manual, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008. Fearn-Banks, Kathleen. *Crisis Communication: A Casebook Approach*, 3rd ed. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum., 2007.

Lukaszewski, James E., *Crisis Communication Plan Components and Models: Crisis Communication Management Readiness*. White Plains, NY: Lukaszewski Group, 2005.

"The Role of Communication in Crisis Management," *School Public Relations*, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008.

Thomas, R. Murray, *Violence in America's Schools: Understanding, Prevention, and Responses*. Lanham, MD: Rowman and Littlefield Education, 2008.

Endnote

1. Taken from correspondence in January 2010 with Rick Kaufman, APR, Executive Director of Community Relations and Emergency Management Coordinator, Bloomington Public Schools, Bloomington, MN.

Chapter

10

Communication about School Services and Special Events

A significant portion of this text deals with direct and indirect forms of personal contact with the public outside the school. Both of these forms of personal contact arise from meetings, conversations, telephone calls, correspondence, home contacts, observations, and special events. They are important in shaping popular attitudes toward, and opinions of, the institution and its personnel.

It is a reasonable assumption that no school system can expect to develop and maintain desirable relations with people in the community until it studies the nature and location of its contacts. It should have a practical knowledge of where such contacts occur and how they are handled. An attempt should be made to appraise their effectiveness in creating impressions and conveying ideas that develop public understanding, cooperation, and school support.

In this chapter attention will be given to the more significant types of community contacts that influence public opinion, and suggestions will be made on how to handle these contacts.

CONTACTS WITH THE BOARD OF EDUCATION OR TRUSTEES

What people think and how they feel about a school system are influenced by the board of education. Because of the board's central position, the behavior of members and the nature of their decisions are watched carefully by citizens and school employees. No community relations program will achieve satisfactory results unless the board of education sets a laudable example for the school system to follow.

Board Meetings

School board meetings are occasions when a school district can either put its best foot forward or fall flat on its face. By law these board meetings are required to be public meetings, specifically to keep the local citizens informed about their schools. A school board that conducts an informative meeting goes far in carrying out the spirit of the right-to-know statutes. Those boards that acknowledge the presence of local citizens at a public meeting by affording them an opportunity to address the board will build

From Chapter 10 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

much trust and public faith in the community. On the other hand, boards that conduct public meetings in a vacuum, by not explaining certain actions to citizens in attendance, serve to build a climate of mistrust with the very folks who can help the schools. Helpful suggestions on what a board should and should not do at a public meeting are contained in the following list.

Some Do's and Don'ts for School Board Meetings

Here are some suggestions for school-board-meeting communication. School communicators should, of course, make certain than any communication complies with the local or state laws and regulations that govern such meetings.

Do

- Distribute agendas containing all the nonconfidential material the board members have.
- Start on time. A newspaper reporter or a local citizen may turn into a critic if a meeting is delayed for an unreasonable length of time for no apparent reason.
- Provide adequate seating for guests.
- Have legible nameplates in front of every member.
- Provide a special place for the press, preferably near the board members. Also assign a school representative to sit with the reporters to answer any immediate question. A press table near the board will enable the reporters to cover all details of the meeting. This proximity to board action will minimize inaccurate reporting.
- Give citizens an opportunity to address the board.
- Explain to the public any action or discussion by the board that may need clarification.
- Be discreet with off-the-cuff remarks. With the press present, these remarks may appear verbatim in the next issue of the paper.
- Take the opportunity to have some phase of the school district highlighted. It is an ideal occasion to have students talk about studies, teachers explain a new course or program, or a noninstructional person show a video or PowerPoint presentation on transportation, cafeterias, or maintenance.

Don't

- Permit nonresidents to address the board unless the content of their remarks is known ahead of time. It is not uncommon for organized groups to send representatives to board meetings in a number of districts to espouse a cause and unwittingly spread alarm and aggravation.
- Permit citizens to speak out at just any point in a meeting. A specific time should be set aside for them to address the board. If this is not adhered to, a school board will have no control over its own meetings.
- Interrupt a regular meeting with an executive session. Instead, schedule such sessions before or after the regular meeting.
- Become involved in an argument with a citizen at a public meeting. A number of people who address school boards will attempt to use the meeting as a public forum, hoping that they will stir the anger of a school board. A polite "Thank you" after a citizen's remarks can often eliminate further problems.
- Become involved in spending an inordinate amount of time discussing minor items.

Many boards have made great efforts in recognizing citizens at board meetings and in keeping them informed about procedures and about the board members. Many boards distribute a brochure to help citizens at school board meetings. It contains the names of the school board members, information on how to address the board, the time and place of monthly meetings, and the names of the administrators. Such a publication is helpful to the people attending the meeting and shows them that the school district is sincerely interested in communicating with its citizens.

Credibility Gap of Political Boards

Unfortunately, a number of politically dominated school boards still remain in the United States. These boards receive their orders from the local political machine and therefore make decisions that benefit the party in power. They pretend to be interested in the welfare of the children, but more often they are interested only in keeping taxes to a minimum so as

to make the party in power look good. Such boards are appointed by the political power structure or are endorsed for election by a dominating political party that may have been in office for decades. In these localities the school system becomes a haven for political patronage appointments, with people being appointed to positions on the basis of party affiliation and with little consideration for their professional qualifications or educational competence.

Local citizens place very little trust in school districts with politically dominated boards. A credibility gap constantly exists and becomes greater over the years. The media are usually unfriendly toward such school boards and constantly question their decisions. Whatever the district does, even when its moves are educationally sound, the media are apt to see an ulterior political motive involved. Community groups are reluctant to become actively involved in the schools because of knowledge of the political control in the district. Even a structured community relations program will be ineffective because the taxpayers place little credence in what a politically oriented school district says. Until the political control is removed from a district, it can expect to have a bad image with the public.

From Chapter 10 of The School and Community Relations, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Reisch. Information Age. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

For boards that are not politically dominated, not enough stress can be laid on the importance of keeping the public informed of board business. In communities where good schools are steadily undergoing improvement, the board of education has shared its problems with the people and educated them to the needs and policies of the system. This has been done by publishing complete and accurate reports of official meetings in local newspapers; by letting the public know what questions must be decided at future meetings; by inviting citizen expression of opinion before policy adoption; by authorizing the superintendent to prepare materials for the information of taxpayers; by having citizens involved in setting goals and evaluating them for a school system; and by doing business in the open. Every board should develop a plan for informing the people of what it stands for and what it does in the interest of children and the community.

RECEIVING SCHOOL VISITORS

Board of education relations with the public are supplemented by face-to-face contacts of school employees with businesspeople, salespeople, job applicants, parents, social workers, and others who have occasion to visit schools and school system offices. These contacts are crucial in the formation of impressions that create public opinion. School employees should be trained to handle these contacts successfully, and the appearances of offices should be considered in terms of the effect these have on school visitors.

Staff Training

All school employees should know how to meet visitors. They should understand the meaning of common courtesy and realize the importance of performing services willingly and efficiently. Periodic in-service community relations workshops should be conducted for all noninstructional staff members.

FRONTLINE WORKERS

A thorough and specialized program should be developed for office workers. These individuals are in the front line of community relations. For a visitor to the schools or to a telephone caller they *are* the school. Often what they say or do creates a lasting impression on the public. The following suggestions are offered by the National School Public Relations Association:

In order to build a positive image—good public relations—a school must have a warm climate, caring staff, and constantly encourage students to be the best they can be. And, the school must work hard at communicating its good image to others. The goal is to build support for the students, the school and the school district.

The frontline army of communicators in most schools is the support staff. They are, more often than not, the first people to greet children and parents each day. Bus drivers are the first and last school employees many children see daily; school secretaries are the key office contact for parents and teachers; the groundskeeper may be the only employee some homeowners (without children) near the campus ever see.

As frontline communicators, support staff have tremendous credibility with the public, and along with that, a tremendous responsibility to deliver a good first impression of the school or district.

Here are some tips to help everyone in your school, not just support staff, to become better communicators:

- Know important facts about your school and district.
- Get to know the people who deal regularly with your school and its employees. They are often community opinion leaders, so help them get the answers to their questions.
- Treat every patron who comes to or calls the school like a board member. Treat every staff member like the superintendent.
- Acknowledge people immediately. Greet the parent AND child. Learn names whenever possible.
- Don't appear to protect or cover for an administrator, but don't speak for him or her.
- Never act or appear superior to others.
- Use positive body language.
- Be empathetic. Deal with people from the heart.
- Don't give opinions. Listen to all sides of a story. Don't jump to conclusions.
- Let people know you care and have pride in your job and your school.
- Avoid gossip. Be mindful of confidentiality.
- Maintain a positive office/campus atmosphere.
- Know the process your school or district takes when handling inquiries. Share that information when parents and others ask you for assistance.
- If you hear rumors about your school or district, report what you hear to your immediate supervisor. Also, seek clarification on the rumor.[1]

At any community relations workshop for office workers telephone manners should be highlighted. The telephone company may send a representative to show a film or video and to demonstrate telephone courtesy and proper manners. More is said on the handling of telephone calls later in this chapter.

As a follow-up to a workshop, a manual for good community relations can be developed for continual review by secretaries and clerical personnel. It should outline exact expressions and procedures to use in answering a telephone. Such topics as being friendly with people, the need for prompt and efficient service, situations calling for patience and tact, meeting requests for information, where to make referrals, and how to be a good listener should be included.

CUSTODIANS, MAINTENANCE WORKERS, AND BUS DRIVERS

Often forgotten in any in-service community relations workshop are the custodians, maintenance personnel, and bus drivers. Yet these individuals can be very instrumental in creating a positive image with the public. Many times they are the initial contact of citizens with the school system, each in different ways.

In a community relations workshop, custodians and maintenance workers should be reminded of the importance of being helpful and friendly to visitors to a school. They should have a thorough knowledge of the school and the school system in order to give visitors proper directions and to refer them to the person most likely to be helpful. If there is an evening public event, the custodians on duty should be aware of the importance of their own appearance and that of the areas to be used by the visitors.

Bus drivers, in a sense, take the school physically onto the highways as they move along streets and roads in their conspicuous yellow vehicles. Their manner of driving, hopefully courteous and safe, goes a long way in advancing a school system's community relations program. Occasionally, they will meet parents at bus stops. They should be friendly and answer questions as best they can, avoid arguments, and be sensitive to the parents' innate concern for the safety of their children. Periodically, bus drivers should have the opportunity to attend in-service workshops highlighting their community relations responsibilities as members of the school district family. Some school systems issue guidelines for bus drivers. Districts that outsource transportation should provide written information about schools to the applicable bus drivers.

FOOD-SERVICE WORKERS

Much of the community relations responsibility of school food-service workers lies within the school itself, where they come in contact with students, other employees, and administrators. There are occasions,

nevertheless, when they come in contact with the community through meals served to the public at special events. Personal appearance, efficient service, and courtesy are paramount at such an event: The impression made goes a long way in conveying a good image of the school.

Moreover, in their contacts with citizens away from the school, food-service workers should know where citizens can get the correct answers to questions about the school system. It is the responsibility of the administrators to schedule in-service community relations workshops for these workers to help them carry out their public relations role.

Appearance of Offices

The appearance of school offices contributes to the impressions visitors take back into the community. As much as possible, offices should reflect the spirit of the system and the educational ideals it stands for. All rooms where visitors contact office personnel and wait for appointments should be furnished in good taste, painted in attractive colors with pictures on the walls, and have facilities for making visitors feel at home. Modern businesses have recognized the contribution of properly equipped offices and waiting rooms in winning the goodwill of customers, and they have employed receptionists who are trained to meet visitors. The same technique could be used by school systems at little or no additional cost by placing qualified secretaries or clerks in this position and scheduling other work for them to do at their reception desks.

HANDLING TELEPHONE CALLS AND CORRESPONDENCE

The number of direct personal contacts with school visitors is small compared with the number of contacts made through telephone calls, e-mail, and other forms of correspondence. Too often the use of these tools is taken as a matter of fact, and their part in a community relations program is not considered. Nevertheless, telephone calls and correspondence do determine the nature of the impressions people get of a school system.

Telephone Calls

Each time an employee of a school picks up the telephone to answer a call from a parent, to talk with someone in the community, or to inquire about the price of instructional materials, he or she is playing a vital role in the community relations program of the school. The telephone, which is taken so much for granted, is a powerful influence for good or poor school–community relations.

Parents are naturally interested in their children and should feel that it is proper to pick up the telephone and inquire of a teacher when a question arises about a child's reading, writing, or mathematics or about something that occurred at school.

The handling of telephone calls to or from the home, involving children at school, also requires tact and good judgment. Messages from parents usually can be delivered to the child rather than the child being called to the telephone. Knowing that the child can be contacted if necessary leaves parents satisfied that the school is doing its part and that the child is in good hands.

The telephone is the most personal contact some citizens have with the superintendent and central office staff. Impressions of the type of people in the office begin with the receptionist handling incoming calls. It is easy to conclude that a school system is well run or poorly run by the greeting "Hello, City Schools" and the conversation during the next few seconds. In a business, this voice can mean a satisfied customer or the loss of a sale. In a school system, it can mean a vote for the schools at the polls or the loss of a friend of education. The telephone manners of the receptionist and other personnel should receive careful consideration at all times. A frequent busy signal or long wait can play havoc with a school system's community relations. School systems should call on the telephone company for assistance in developing the best telephone techniques.

Citizens calling the superintendent or other administrative personnel soon learn that the next voice they hear after the receptionist is that of a secretary. The use of a secretary to screen calls is accepted in business. Since this practice often adds to the long wait, however, the secretary should be as pleasant as possible. The efficient secretary is one who recognizes the voices of the people who call frequently and greets them in an appropriate, cheerful manner. She or he knows that certain calls are transferred to the administrator: "May I tell Mrs. Jones who is calling?" Some are handled by "May I help you?" and in other

cases the number of the calling party is requested so that the call can be returned as soon as possible.

Surprising improvement can be made in telephone manners and techniques when special instruction is given to employees. Simple demonstrations and periodic discussions of the problem are enough to bring about good results. The secret of continued success, however, lies in delegating responsibility to a staff member for supervising telephone service within a single building or for the entire school system.

Voice mail was designed to let the caller leave a taped message for an intended party. Gordon Matthews, the inventor of voice mail, contends that it is being misused and is frustrating callers. Organizations are using it instead as a receptionist, forcing callers to work their way through a maze of menus. He contends that a human should direct the initial call.

Schools jeopardize good community relations by misusing voice mail regardless of how much emphasis is placed on the economics of it. Imagine what happens to unhappy parents or citizens calling the school and working their way through a menu of numbers and names. They will go from being unhappy to being completely irate. The schools have conveyed a "We don't care" attitude to them.

It should be added that efficient telephone service begins with the accessibility of the school to people in the community. They should be able to find the telephone number of any building without having to ponder on how it is classified in the telephone directory. Numbers are classified in many communities under remote headings like "city of" and "township of." Since the average person thinks of "schools" when looking up the number, the first step in improving telephone service is to see that listings fall under the heading of "schools." Another way is to list each school individually in the white pages.

School Correspondence

E-mail messages and letters offer some advantages over face-to-face relations and over telephone conversations as a form of personal contact. Personal correspondence, whether online or through the mail, enables the writer to communicate directly and economically with the other person and to exercise more control over the expression of ideas. These advantages make correspondence an effective instrument in community relations, especially if the tone is warm and friendly and if mechanical details are correct.

No contact should be allowed to remain unanswered for several days. In fact, e-mail inquiries should be acknowledged promptly—ideally on the same day in which they are received. Common courtesy demands a prompt reply. Where facts must be gathered and opinions sought that will cause a delay, an interim e-mail message or letter should be written explaining the situation and promising complete information in the near future. In general, all correspondence should be concise and to the point, with thought given to an outline of their contents before they are written. If it appears that an inquiry or request requires a lengthy reply, a telephone call may make it possible to handle the matter through a personal interview instead.

To tell an effective story, educators must consider the person with whom they are corresponding. When writing any correspondence, the following factors should be considered:

TONE

The tone of an e-mail message or letter plays a prominent part in influencing the reaction of its reader. It should be warm, friendly, conversational, and, above all, written as though it were spoken directly to the person who reads it.

STEREOTYPED PHRASES

The quality of content in any correspondence may be lowered through the use of stereotyped business phrases, which tend to make replies stiff and formal. Antiquated expressions, such as the following, should be scrupulously avoided: *beg to advise, happy to inform you, please be advised, permit me to state, replying to yours, due to the fact that, may I call your attention to, wish to acknowledge, kindly advise, beg to assure, regret to inform.*

JARGON

As in every profession, there is a tendency among educators to employ jargon or a technical vocabulary in discussing their problems and to use phrases that are foreign to the thinking of other people. Words and phrases should convey ideas easily and understandably; they should not be barriers to communication.

Words and phrases, such as *rapport, maladjustment, experience unit, heterogeneous grouping, integrated curricular progression, linguistic construction level, quantified standardization,* and *instructional media* defeat the purpose of good letter writing.

POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE WORDS

It is always important to state ideas in a way that evokes positive rather than negative responses. Of the two lists given in Table 10.1, one contains words and phrases that are considered to provoke

TABLE 10.1 **A List of Positive and Negative Expressions Helpful in Checking School Correspondence for Improved Writing**

Negative Expressions	More Positive Expressions
Must	Should
Lazy	Can do more when she or he tries
Troublemaker	Disturbs class
Uncooperative	Should learn to work with others
Cheats	Depends on others to do his or her work
Stupid	Can do better with help
Never does the right thing	Can learn to do the right thing
Below average	Working at his or her own level
Truant	Absent without permission
Impertinent	Discourteous
Steal	Without permission
Unclean	Poor habits
Dumbbell	Capable of doing better
Doesn't care	Is unmotivated
Calamity	Lost opportunity
Disinterested	Complacent
Expense	Investment
Stubborn	Extremely self-confident
Insolent	Outspoken
Liar	Tendency to stretch the truth
Wastes time	Could make better use of time
Sloppy	Could do neater work
Incurred failure	Failed to meet requirements
Nasty	Difficulty in getting along with others
Time and again	Usually
Dubious	Uncertain
Poor grade of work	Below his or her usual standard
Clumsy	Awkward in movements
Profane	Uses unbecoming language
Selfish	Seldom shares with others
Rude	Inconsiderate of others
Bashful	Reserved
Show-off	Tries to get attention
Will fail him or her	Has chance of passing, if

negative responses, and the other suggests ways of expressing the same ideas to elicit positive reactions. Both lists may prove helpful as a start in checking school correspondence and improving future writing.

The emotional impact of the first letter on this page is decidedly negative, and Mr. Smith probably would assume that the writer is offensive, abrupt, and discourteous. The letter also may raise questions in his mind about the board policy and its application.

Mr. John Smith
60 Church Street
Chattanooga, Tennessee
Dear Mr. Smith:

We *cannot* comply with your request of June 10 to assign your child to the Barger School next year. In *rejecting* your request may we call your attention to the fact that children *never* are allowed to attend a school in another school zone since the Board of Education's policy *prohibits unjustifiable* assignments outside a school zone.

Very truly yours,

Jane Jones

Superintendent

Mr. John Smith
60 Church Street
Chattanooga, Tennessee
Dear Mr. Smith:

I always welcome an opportunity to correspond with parents who are sincerely interested in the education of their children. It is with regret, however, that I explain that Mary will not be able to attend the Barger School as requested.

School zones have been established for all elementary and junior high schools in the city. This has been done to help ensure that one school is not crowded while other nearby schools have vacant rooms. Although a child attends the school in the zone where he or she lives, under Board of Education policy, our board has provided ways to adjust the number of classes between zones. However, in your case the Woodmore School, which Mary will attend, has a small number of classes, whereas Barger's class enrollments are the highest in the city.

I believe Mary will enjoy going to school at Woodmore as much as she did at Barger because it also has a fine school spirit and a principal and faculty devoted to children. I hope we can get together to discuss this and other matters of interest at a convenient time.

Sincerely yours,

Jane Jones

Superintendent

To improve the letter, the writer should substitute positive or neutral words for the negative words. The result may at best be a neutral letter (see the second letter).

SIMPLICITY

Words and ideas used in letters to the public should be simple and mean essentially the same to most people. A sentence intended for one of Roosevelt's famous fireside chats in its original form read, "We are planning an all-inclusive society." In the talk, the sentence had been rewritten to read, "We are building a society in which no one will be left out." Simple words transformed this sentence into one that practically everyone could understand.

FORM LETTERS

Form letters, duplicated in large numbers, are economical and at times functional. But too often these letters are reproduced on cheap paper, laid out poorly, and difficult to read because of mechanical

imperfections. Sometimes their physical features are enough to discourage a person from reading them. The number of form letters should be kept to the barest minimum unless they can be given the appearance of a personal correspondence. Otherwise, they may not be read.

SERVICING COMPLAINTS

Complaints are made about almost every phase of school operation and the educational program. In some respects such complaints are the inevitable and normal outcome of institutional functioning. Coming from private citizens and organized groups, complaints are made to all personnel in a school system, including board members, administrative officials, teachers, and noninstructional staff members. Whether the complaints are justified or not, good community relations require that they be handled systematically and efficiently.

Importance of Complaints

The proper handling of complaints is important for several reasons. Parents and others who complain do so because they have grievances, real or imagined. They want them satisfied. Unless the school welcomes their complaints, extends courteous treatment, and takes positive action within reasonable limits, it destroys goodwill and breeds resentment.

Large business firms look on complaints as one of their best sources of public relations information. Some keep careful records of all complaints, no matter how trivial they may seem, and review them periodically. This material enables them to get a picture of prevailing attitudes toward company policies and of shifts taking place in public reactions. Of somewhat greater importance, however, is the knowledge these firms acquire of weak spots in their organization and of services that are failing to meet the criteria of good public relations. Research done by the Coca-Cola Company and others indicates that when complaints are handled well, people tell others about the treatment they received. They also buy more of the product. When complaints are not handled well, people also tell others and buy less of that product.

There is no real excuse for schools to overlook the value of similar information in strengthening their own policies and practices.

Procedures for Servicing Complaints

School personnel who are called on to handle complaints need to learn the gentle art of listening while people purge themselves of the problems that weigh on them. Anger, fear, or resentment, growing out of a feeling that a child has been mistreated, builds up within the individual until finally release must be provided. An understanding of the effectiveness of a sympathetic and attentive listener under these circumstances is important.

Complaints and criticisms usually should be allowed to flow freely. Experience has taught many superintendents and principals the effectiveness of listening without comment. When the relaxation that follows severe tension under such circumstances is achieved, it is often advisable to say that the matter will be investigated and that the person making the complaint will be called on for assistance at a later date.

When handled in this manner, most complaints seem to lose their intensity. Quite frequently the parent, citizen, or teacher who has demanded to see that justice is done will request that an investigation not be made if it will embarrass the wrong person. The complainant's reason for bringing the matter to the attention of the school official, it is pointed out, has not been to get the person in trouble, but rather to be sure that the official had all the facts. Chapter 8 gives further details on meeting criticism and attacks.

School personnel, especially those in administrative positions, must learn to analyze criticisms and complaints objectively. Unjustified complaints should be handled in a dignified and professional manner. A sincere belief that the schools belong to the people leaves no other course of action.

MEETING EVERYDAY CONTACTS

Every person who is connected with a public school system enjoys innumerable contacts with people in the community after regular working hours and over weekends, holidays, and vacations. Although little

attention is paid to the import of these informal contacts for community relations, people get many of their ideas and impressions about a school system from them.

For too many years, school boards and superintendents have kept teachers and noninstructional employees in ignorance of the systems that paid their salaries. Believing that teacher and nonteacher interests should be limited to the performance of assigned duties, school officials did nothing to share their problems, to explain administrative organization and operation, or to take teachers and other school employees into their confidence on policy decisions. As a result, few teachers or employees were able to answer questions people asked about their schools. Even today this condition prevails in some schools, and it is a serious obstacle to good community relations.

Boards of education and administrators must recognize that the everyday contacts of employees outside of the school are a part of the community relations program. Ideally, they should see that teachers and nonteachers understand important facts about the system, feel responsible for representing the school in the best manner possible, and keep their disappointments and troubles within the institutional family.

REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION

Expressions such as "Do they think we should know everything?" have been used by school employees following telephone calls requesting information. Instead of being critical, school personnel should consider such a request a challenge and an opportunity. For those school systems that accept the supplying of information as a normal service function, there are certain techniques of community relations to be observed and implemented. Since many requests will be made by telephone, the basic principles of telephone courtesy discussed previously need to be observed. Procedures also should be established to ensure that such requests do not violate the basic principle that schools operate primarily for the education of children.

Important documents that assist school employees in answering requests for information are a handbook, directory, and school calendar. As a part of their programs, the local professional organizations should provide employees with information on all organization activities affecting schools on the local and state levels. Citizens do not expect school staff members to be walking encyclopedias, but they do have a right to expect that these employees will have readily available certain basic information about the school system. If an employee is unable to supply the information requested, he or she should give the name and telephone number of the person who can supply it.

A common dodge used by employees is to explain that the questions do not pertain to the work they are doing, but this cannot be considered an adequate reply for those who really are concerned about community relations. The employee who is asked about the entrance age for first-graders should stifle the impulse to say, That doesn't concern me," if for no other reason than that his or her personal prestige may be at stake.

Here are some of the questions people ask. If staff members cannot answer them, both the employees and the administration should be challenged to take steps to correct the situation.

- What guidance services are available at Hardy?
- In what grade does the teaching of science begin?
- Who is the principal of the Trotter School?
- What are the dates of the spring vacation?
- What is the compulsory attendance age?
- How does a child secure a work permit?

The principal in the office and also at home must consider the supplying of information a normal function of his or her position. Questions will range from the types listed above to other questions about the operation of the school or the school system. No matter how modern its buildings or how complete its instructional program, a school system cannot be more effective than its community relations program and its services to the community. Employees who accept the supplying of information as a normal service to the community win respect for the schools and the profession.

A combination of the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) and the Internet has generated a flood of information requests for school districts. Most often they land on the public relations person's desk.

One school district received open-records requests for 22,000 e-mails it received as a result of the school board's decision to prohibit students from saying the Pledge of Allegiance.

In some cases, parts of a communication audit are delivered orally, since media and others could obtain any written document under FOIA. It's not uncommon for media to request all phone bills, including cell phone bills, for instance, to develop a controversial story.

All records and documents, except those pertaining to personnel covered by privacy laws, are open and available to the public. Included also are e-mails, hard drives, databases, and videos. It's imperative that school districts have a written policy covering requests for recorded information. Put as much information as possible on the district's Web site to reduce the number of requests.

Working with the school district's attorney, the public relations director and other administrators should become familiar with the Freedom of Information Act, the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), and the state's public record laws. These will provide the backdrop for answering requests for information.

PARTICIPATION IN COMMUNITY LIFE

The number of contacts increases and the school and its professional personnel take on new importance when staff members become identified with the social and civic life of the community relations program. Thought must be given to staff preparation and opportunities for participation.

Importance

Four significant gains are made in community relations when staff members become active in the life of the community. First, the attitudes of citizens change as they learn to know the men and women who are responsible for their schools. Second, participation opens opportunities for social and civic leadership and, consequently, higher status in the community. Third, participation enables staff members to discuss the schools with many people. Fourth, evidence supports the hypothesis that citizen concern for education increases as staff personnel become more actively identified with the social and civic life of the community.

Staff Preparation

School personnel who take part in community life should have an insight into and understanding of people and institutions if they are to function successfully in their capacity either as professional employees or as private citizens. They should be familiar with local history, ethnic and religious groups, customs, prejudices, and social restrictions. They ought to know something of the cultural and economic life of the community, its social agencies, form of government, and channels of communication. Awareness of social organization and community leaders is important.

The bulk of this information should be available from the findings of the sociological survey described in an earlier chapter. With this knowledge, staff members are more likely to be tolerant of local customs, to avoid pitfalls and conflict situations, and to follow an intelligent course of action in their relations with the public.

Participation in Community Activities

Teachers and pupils have many opportunities to participate in community life. Every neighborhood and every district present real problems for study and social action. There are hundreds of problems, including traffic hazards, proper methods of handling trash, sewage disposal, garbage, youth recreational needs, fire protection, and clean streets. Public contacts growing out of successful study projects by pupils and teachers develop respect for the school and lay the groundwork for future cooperation.

Similar results have been attained in districts where administrators, teachers, and pupils responded to requests for assistance from agencies and service organizations interested in the education and welfare of children. The following are some of the activities in which the school can participate: surveying community recreational needs; locating pupils who would benefit from glasses, special shoes, and diet supplements; organizing Little League baseball teams for after-school and vacation periods; participating in forums and public discussions on local

problems; increasing public library facilities; and developing summer day camps for young children.

Participation Identifies Local Talent

Another aspect of participation is that of using community resources for instructional purposes. Any number of competent men and women are available to talk with pupils along the lines of their special vocational and avocational interests, to lend objects and visual materials high in instructional value, and to share their knowledge and experience with teachers in curriculum study programs. Classes may be taken on field trips to worthwhile places and interviews scheduled with people in positions of leadership. Cooperative work experience and tours of business and industry are means for understanding the economic life of the community and appreciating employment demands. Each time such resources are used, they enrich instruction and create friendship between citizens and representatives of the school.

Participation through Group Membership

Instructional and noninstructional employees should be encouraged to join community groups and organizations. Their own lives become richer by associating with people of different occupational backgrounds and interests and by engaging in activities of a challenging and enjoyable nature. At the same time, they are in an excellent position to interpret the school and to acquire a knowledge of how people react toward its program.

SCHOOL PLANT APPEARANCE

The appearance of the school plant, both outside and inside, has a continuing and cumulative effect on public attitudes toward a school system. An attractive plant, even though the buildings are old and located on sites that fall below modern standards, is generally regarded as an asset to the community and an expression of educational accomplishment. People have a feeling for and a sense of pride in a system that maintains well-kept grounds and buildings. School plant appearance is an important factor to be weighed in planning a community relations program.

Outside Appearance

There is no justifiable reason why new plants cannot be designed attractively and older ones improved in outward appearance. New plants should be designed to harmonize with their surroundings and to create aesthetic impressions by mass arrangement of lines and angles, color and texture of building materials, treatment of terrain, and effective landscaping. With older plants, improvements may be achieved by proper maintenance of grounds, excellent building repair, grading of sites, erection of appropriate barriers, renovation of exteriors, and the planting of grass, flowers, shrubs, and trees.

Not to be overlooked are schools that are no longer in use. Until a building has been sold or converted to other use, the district should be conscious of the external appearance of the building and the grounds.

Inside Appearance

The inside appearance of the schools is influenced, for the most part, by furniture, decoration, and housekeeping standards. A building is always more attractive when it is equipped with good-quality furniture, attractively arranged, and kept in excellent repair. Broken, scarred, and worn pieces detract from the appearance and strongly imply to the taxpayer a waste of public money.

Tasteful decorations can transform the tone of a school almost overnight. New effects may be produced by repainting walls in pastel colors that are varied throughout the building, by improved lighting, and by near-white ceilings. What appear to be shabby rooms and offices can sometimes be made into pleasant working areas by dressing up windows, hanging good pictures, and replacing furniture.

Housekeeping standards are of primary importance in the maintenance of a clean, sanitary, and attractive building. Nothing detracts more from the appearance of a building than dirty walls, floors, and windows; unclean lavatories and drinking fountains; paint that is peeling; untidy classrooms and offices; or corridors reeking with unpleasant odors from shower rooms, the cafeteria, and the gymnasium. Good housekeeping requires the full cooperation of pupils and faculty members and a knowledge

by custodians of the standards they are expected to uphold. Some administrators believe that custodians take more pride in their work and make a better impression on visitors when they are dressed in attractive but practical uniforms.

SPECIAL PROGRAMS FOR OLDER PEOPLE

Administrators who are sensitive to the importance of community relations cannot overlook the need for establishing special programs catering to the hobbies and secret ambitions of senior citizens.

Programs should not be restricted to the evening school as many senior citizens prefer to pursue their hobbies or more formal educational activities during the day. Such programs have the added advantage of placing the adult in close contact with the regular school programs, particularly if carried out in the same or an adjoining building. Alarm over what modern schools are doing to children often changes to public statements of support as these older citizens become personally involved in special programs. Such programs are valuable also because they provide opportunities for these citizens to know teachers and administrators as people and to see firsthand that they are devoted to the education of our youth.

Programs for older adults can be initiated on the proverbial shoestring. The school system furnishes the buildings, facilities, and coordinating personnel, and the program is under way. Instructors are available in the ranks of the adults. School buildings become an investment that produces increased dividends when they serve all age groups, and bond issues are more meaningful and better supported.

As the miracles of modern medicine continue, the senior citizen will become an increasingly important political and economic force in the community. The voting potential of the increasing number of older adults takes on an added significance when the support of schools is considered.

Gold Card Club

Quite popular with a number of school districts are the Gold Card Clubs for senior citizens. Usually, the member must be a resident of the school district and be 65 years of age or older. Each member who registers with the school district is issued a card annually, which entities him or her to free admission to all athletic events, the adult school, concerts, plays, and other public school activities.

Often school districts will call on this group to become involved in the schools as speakers, as advisory committee members, and as feedback agents in the community. These fixed-income citizens often desire a feeling of belonging with a school system that they have helped to support long after their children have attended school. A Gold Card Club serves to satisfy this need among those over 65 and in a small way expresses a thanks for their support of the schools over the years.

Some districts have invited these citizens to participate in Thanksgiving and holiday luncheons held in the schools of the district. Transportation is often provided at least one way. Usually, at these luncheons, the superintendent, a board member, and other staff members welcome the retirees and discuss the schools. A number of topics are discussed informally, from the cost of food and educational programs to budget preparation and even taxation.

Opportunities to recognize senior citizens and to provide school experiences for them are limitless, as are the community relations values that result.

OPEN HOUSE

Often held in the fall of the year, an open house is conducted by many schools to invite the community to visit the schools. Although some schools choose to operate in a constant fishbowl atmosphere by allowing visitors to attend classes at any time, many school officials prefer to invite parents and other interested residents to attend a special program once or twice a year. The purposes of an open house are to acquaint citizens with the nature of the school building and its teachers and staff and to help parents understand more fully the work of the school. Such events also provide opportunities for parents to see evidence of pupil accomplishment and lend themselves to building goodwill for the school system.

Open-House Programs

The programs presented by the majority of schools during open house are fairly simple in design. A common type is that of an escorted tour, with pupils and teachers serving as guides. Visitors are taken through the building and shown its facilities, introduced to members of the administration and instructional staffs, told about objects on exhibit and instructional supplies and equipment used in classwork, entertained in various ways, and served light refreshments. Or the program may start with a meeting in the auditorium at which school officials talk about the educational practices of the institution and pupils furnish musical and other forms of entertainment. This part of the program is followed by visits with teachers in classrooms where pupils' work is on display and explanations are made of the curriculum in particular grades and subjects. The program is often rounded out with a social period for further visitation and refreshments. It is typical in secondary schools to have parents follow the class schedule of their children on a shortened-period basis. By going from class to class, parents meet teachers, see the physical setup of classrooms, receive information on what is taught and what is expected of pupils, and ask questions on points of interest. Refreshments may be served at the close of the evening.

Variations from these program designs include a day during the week for observing classes in action; afternoon socials for parents and teachers; discussion forums on school policies, challenges, and achievements; clinics for parents on problems of child development; student assemblies open to the public; parent–teacher conferences; and faculty meetings open to students and the public.

Preparing Teachers

Open-house programs are most effective when teachers are adequately prepared to meet their responsibilities by attending to the many details that make a favorable impression on the public. Most teachers have little, if any, background to help them deal with the public in an open-house or back-to-school-night situation. Since many teacher preparation institutions do not prepare teachers for dealing with parents, it is the responsibility of the principal and other school officials to prepare them in this area.

Teachers should convey a feeling that implies that they welcome the opportunity to establish a cooperative relationship that will continue throughout the school year. They should be told of the interests parents have regarding what is being done in the classroom.

An effective learning technique is to have experienced teachers conduct back-to-school-night practice sessions using role playing. This kind of approach will give new teachers the opportunity to get a feel for the kinds of questions and situations to anticipate. Such in-service assistance is appreciated and pays dividends for the entire school family. At such in-service programs, teachers should be refreshed on school policy on the controversial topics that might be introduced by visitors. If all employees are familiar with policies, inconsistencies that breed problems can be avoided. School officials should not assume that giving new teachers a copy of the policy manual suffices in this regard. Emphasizing the controversial policies and providing specific suggestions to handle particularly challenging questions can be of great help. Teachers should be told which facts most parents are usually interested in so that they can include these in their presentation. In fact, teachers might be encouraged to seek feedback from parents to determine which topics to cover in the limited time available. Parents will appreciate the time taken to determine their interests, and teachers will be ensured an interested audience if the topics have been requested.

Teachers should realize that the way they present facts and material at open house might very well be the single factor determining the image that parents have of them. They should present facts in a clear way that leaves no room for ambiguity. They should be encouraged to use simple language that includes no educational jargon. Open house is an opportune time for teachers to communicate a warm concern for students, when they can convey that they want to work closely with parents for the same goal—the best education possible for children. Simply stated, this is a time when teachers and parents can gain a mutual respect that will serve the child well.

Attending to Details

Good public relations requires that school officials spend an appreciable amount of time in planning

efforts, to guarantee a smooth-running open house. More and more school administrators are realizing that involving parents, teachers, and students in planning open-house and other special programs means better programs. Parents, teachers, and students contribute sound ideas and suggestions for such events and support them more when they are involved in their operation. The planning committee for open-house programs should be established in plenty of time to ensure that no unrealistic deadlines cause frustration.

The date should be selected so that it does not conflict with other important community events. It should also be chosen with television interests in mind. For example, if a sports event of national interest is scheduled for Monday night, it might be better to schedule open house for another night. A good night to offer such events is the fifth "anything" of the month. Many organizations to which active parents belong hold meetings on the first Tuesday or the third Wednesday of the month. Because no day of the week occurs a fifth time every month, organizations do not meet then. Thus, the school is virtually guaranteed a no-conflict date by choosing such a night for open house. The time should also be carefully determined. Too often school officials check to see what time the event has been held in previous years and reschedule it for that time. Did it work at that hour? Are new circumstances present that would suggest a change? For example, a split shift might necessitate a later start if custodians need time to prepare the building.

Other key considerations must include the following:

PROPER PUBLICITY

An open house should justify three news releases in the local newspaper. One release, about two weeks before the event, should, in a paragraph or two, provide the main facts. The second release, about a week before the event, should give additional information and include a quote from the principal. The third release might be a photo of employees and students preparing the school for open house. This might appear the day before the event. The school district Web site and newsletter should include information about the event, and area houses of worship might cooperate in listing it in their bulletins. Notices can be placed in stores and other places frequented by parents.

EFFECTIVE INVITATIONS

Too often parents and other visitors receive invitations that are written in a cold, almost officious, manner. Such writing is hardly conducive to enthusiastic attendance. Some schools, especially in the lower grades, have children prepare the invitation for their parents. The personal touch helps. Teachers can also call parents to invite them to open house. Many school officials report that such calls result in appreciably larger attendance. The calls also serve to show that teachers do care about students and their parents and that school officials can call about something positive. (Many calls from the school are based on negative incidents.) Another effective technique is for individual departments to issue invitations to parents. Parents and other visitors should be given three weeks' notice of the event in an invitation from the school.

ADEQUATE STAFF

An important ingredient for a smoothly functioning open house is the availability of staff to meet any unexpected problems. This means that the administrator must anticipate possible problem areas and assign staff members to handle them. For example, some teachers may face unexpected emergencies, necessitating their missing the open house. Extra professional personnel and a game plan for this possibility must be ready before the problem occurs. Any time a large crowd is expected, some special arrangement should be made to cope with a medical emergency. A nurse should be on duty to handle any such problem. Custodians should be present to handle sudden cleanup problems and to make sure that the building is in presentable condition for the visitors. Maintenance personnel should also be available to overcome heating or lighting problems. Audiovisual specialists should be close by to cope with microphone, video, and projector problems.

INFORMATION AREAS

Parents and other visitors are often frustrated when they don't understand the procedure to follow. They are often reluctant to ask questions of teachers and

student guides because they don't want to appear uninformed. Information areas in the halls, staffed by students and teachers, enable people to ask all kinds of questions. For instance, parents who have forgotten their children's schedules should be made to feel comfortable about asking for another copy at an information center.

COMFORT CONSIDERATIONS

From the time visitors enter the parking lot to the time they leave it, they are forming an impression of the way the schools are run. By having an organized parking effort and clearly marked signs directing people to the proper entrance, school officials can get visitors off on the right foot. Alerting area police to the crowd expected can be helpful in overall traffic control. If visitors will be wearing coats, provisions should be made for checking them or hanging them as easily as possible. Remember that many of the people will arrive at about the same time and that security is an important consideration. Routes to classrooms should be easily seen and restroom areas should be designated throughout the building. Displays of student work should be placed in key locations in the halls and lobby. However, traffic flow should not be impeded by poorly located displays that attract attention of crowds and make it difficult for visitors to get from one classroom to another in the allotted time.

FEEDBACK OPPORTUNITIES

Administrators can learn much from people visiting the schools. All they have to do is ask for information. By providing visitors with easy-to-understand cards that ask for reactions to the open house as well as for comments about other key school questions, school officials can gain opinions that will help them know what some taxpayers are thinking. Ideas to improve the open-house program will also be received.

BUILDING DEDICATIONS

The dedication of a new school building can provide opportunities for good school–community relations. Frequently, however, many such opportunities are overlooked. To help prepare an effective dedication, many of the ideas advanced earlier in this chapter regarding open house can be applied. Yet it must be recognized that the dedication undertaking requires other specific plans. Overall, the dedication of a new building can be a source of community pride and achievement. School officials should make every effort to demonstrate how the building will benefit many people in many ways. For example, if a new gym is to be used by a large number of community groups, representatives of those groups should be invited to the dedication. Newsletters and news releases should point out how many people are expected to benefit from the facility.

Preparing the Publications

Underlying the planning should be the thought that whatever the building is, it will benefit children and others in the community in some way. This means that materials prepared for and about the official dedication ceremony should focus on the people the building will serve rather than on the building itself. The publication should applaud the efforts of the people who made the building possible. This includes all taxpayers, who should be shown how the building will contribute to the overall well-being of the community.

Key community figures should be invited to the ceremony. Area media representatives should be given sufficient notice to assign personnel to attend. Often forgotten are board members who played important roles in the initial efforts to make the building possible. Frequently, these men and women are no longer board members when the building is dedicated; a good practice is to invite them and recognize them at the dedication ceremony.

Planning for the dedication must be thorough. To forget someone who contributed in a major way is one way to lose a friend for the schools. Checking and double-checking with people involved at various stages of the building program is necessary to ensure that no one is slighted.

AMERICAN EDUCATION WEEK

American Education Week is a national observance in support of the schools. It was proclaimed in 1921 under the sponsorship of the American Legion and

the National Education Association. Later the U.S. Office of Education and the National Congress of Parents and Teachers became sponsors along with the other two organizations.

The most successful observances of American Education Week are planned and carried out cooperatively by the school and community. The leadership is usually taken by the board of education and the superintendent of schools. Parents and representatives of civic groups and organizations are invited to cooperate in planning this celebration. After a year or two, the entire project may be turned over to the community. The school then takes its place on committees in the same way as any other organization. It is expected, however, to furnish ideas, materials, and clerical assistance and to prepare a substantial portion of the week's program. This is logical in view of the nature of the celebration. The school can meet these requests without dominating the situation or in any way destroying the feeling that the project belongs to the whole community.

Each year the national sponsoring organizations adopt a theme for American Education Week. An example is *Schools—Your Investment in America.* Local groups are urged to foster store window exhibits, posters, a day for visiting schools, newspaper stories, open houses, museum displays, special printed materials, a proclamation by the mayor, pageants, and similar activities that illustrate the theme. These approaches can deepen public understanding and appreciation of what education has meant to this nation and what it means today.

BUSINESS–INDUSTRY–EDUCATION COOPERATION

More and more, business leaders are recognizing the importance of quality schools. Some school officials call on chief executives to provide financial support for specific school needs. Company executives, on the other hand, look to schools to help prepare solid workers. Some school administrators work closely with company managers to provide adult school classes that meet the training and literacy needs of workers.

Adopt-a-School is a form of business–school partnership. The Adopt-a-School commitment can take a number of directions, but it primarily focuses on ways a company or organization can help a school do a better job of educating students.

Some companies donate used and new equipment. Others provide executives as speakers and paper readers. All contribute a caring kind of encouragement that communicates a recognition of the school's importance.

Many schools report that a successful community relations venture is Business–Industry–Education Day. Worked out cooperatively, a day is set aside annually or biennially for teachers to visit different business and industrial firms in the community. Either the same or the next year, the school systems return the invitation to business, industrial, and, in some instances, labor representatives. The purpose of this plan is having each become better acquainted with the work of the other through first-hand observation and on-the-spot discussion.

COMMUNITY USE OF SCHOOL FACILITIES

The public schools belong to the public. One effective way to demonstrate this is to make school facilities available to individuals, groups, and organizations when regular classroom demands are over. Community use of the school at night or during vacations goes a long way toward showing some community members what their tax dollars are buying. People who have been in a school building during the year preceding a school finance election tend to support the needs of schools appreciably more than do those residents who have not been in a school building during that time. Allowing people to use the buildings is consistent with the function of the school as a social institution and is clearly a service in the public interest.

Use of Facilities

In an age of more and more leisure time when public education is no longer considered as something limited to people between the ages of 5 and 18, facilities are used by many people in a variety of ways. The senior citizen group may meet in a classroom or a special meeting room. The Catholic

Youth Organization may use the basketball courts one night a week, and the Lions Club may choose to conduct business in the school cafeteria once a month.

The cafeteria may be used for special community banquets and dinners; the gymnasium may be tapped by many groups for dances, athletic events, exhibits, and community recreational programs; the auditorium may be used hundreds of times a year for forums, conferences, movies, dramatic productions of community groups, and other entertainment; the industrial arts areas may be used for automobile and furniture repair so that valuable equipment does not stand idle.

The instructional materials center (or library, as most community members will call it) should also be made available to residents on some controlled basis. For recreational reading and for information about business and personal concerns, the school library can serve many people. The homemaking rooms can be used to help interested residents learn about sewing, cooking, canning, and interior decorating, among other things. Office equipment can be called into service for classes to assist those who want to learn to type or to use equipment in the evening or on Saturdays. Science rooms can lend themselves to productive use by lawn enthusiasts wishing to conduct soil tests or by those wishing to pursue hobbies that require these materials and equipment. Music rooms can bring satisfaction to those in the community who belong to choral or other music groups. The athletic fields can serve thousands of residents who would otherwise never consider the public school as being of any service. For example, the local Catholic high school may play three football games on the public high school field, thus showing that some public school tax money is of value to thousands of parents and friends of the Catholic school team. Such decisions must be made with the good of the community and the service provided by the schools as the prime considerations.

Regulations

Community use of school facilities is a major ingredient in a solid school–community relations program. Yet too often plans are incompletely formed to cover the various requests that will be made of a board of education regarding such use. The board, to be thorough, should anticipate all kinds of requests and should establish written policies to cover those requests. The policies should be adequately publicized to prevent friction and to ensure all groups equal treatment. If the board does not have such policies, whatever decision is made regarding specific requests is likely to be interpreted by some segment of the community as unfair. The board runs the risk of giving the appearance of reacting to personalities and groups on an individual basis if fair policies are not established that can be applied to all requests. Such policies ease the administrative pressures of making facilities available.

The rules should specify when school facilities are available and the purposes for which they may be used. Also spelled out should be the procedure for applying and for securing approval. The fees should be stipulated and the priority of school functions over other events should be clearly outlined. Also imperative is the responsibility factor; those using the facilities must recognize their legal and other responsibilities. If insurance is required for those conducting a large meeting, this stipulation must be in the rules governing facilities use. What will the school district do regarding the facility? What must the organization do? These distinctions must be made in writing to avoid disagreements that could more than negate the goodwill fostered by the use of the facilities.

In establishing the regulations, school officials must consider the overall benefits accruing to the community. Special pressure groups and internal empire builders must not have the final say about use of facilities. The decision must be based on educational facts and the philosophy of the schools regarding the community's right to tap the school district's resources. For example, an athletic director who feels that a football field shouldn't be used by the local midget team because the extra use will mar the turf should of course be heard by school administrators. However, the administrators must weigh the overall community good against the problems caused by such use. School facilities belong to the community, but guidelines for their use must be established.

ADULT EDUCATION

The extension of educational opportunities into adult life is another service the school can perform for the community. Programs can be established—both formal and informal, cultural and practical—that are built around the personal and social desires of adults for self-improvement. Courses can be offered to meet the needs of a wide spectrum of the community served by the school. Basic reading and writing courses will be needed in some communities to help overcome illiteracy. Others in that community may be interested in learning a skill or keeping up with the approaches to mathematics being learned by their children.

Determination of Need

An adult education program, to be sufficiently broad and vital, should consist of more than the offerings that school officials believe adults want or should take for their own betterment. It should represent the needs and interests of the adult population as closely as they can be determined. They may be determined with a fair degree of reliability by dividing the adult population in different ways—by age, educational achievement, socioeconomic background, family status, and group affiliation—and then analyzing the needs in each of the divisions. Or a council on adult education may be formed, consisting of men and women drawn from a cross section of the community. This council can be asked to study the problem and to make recommendations for a suitable program of activities. However, better results are possible when both methods, or others equally beneficial, are employed.

An effective way to determine if a course will be popular is to survey those attending adult school to find out whether or not it would attract enough people to be feasible. Effective adult education programs are conducted by administrators who work closely on an ongoing basis with the people being served.

Program Possibilities

Numerous possibilities exist for developing interesting, worthwhile programs suited to the personal and social needs of adults. As examples, creative experiences may be offered in art, music, drama, crafts, and writing. Discussion groups can be held to consider local political challenges, intercultural relations, civic improvements, world affairs, and so forth. Special workshops can be offered to prepare leaders for community service clubs, the school board, and other organizations. Forums and debates on pertinent issues can be held, with the school supplying moderators and speakers. Special courses can be conducted for the foreign-born preparing for citizenship. Classes for those who are illiterate can provide a real service, as can courses designed to help people prepare for the high school equivalency examinations. Industrial education offerings can attract large numbers of men and women interested in learning to use equipment to make and repair items. Sewing, cooking, and hobbies are also commonly attractive subject areas that adult schools can offer. Foreign languages and recreational skills, such as golf and tennis, are being offered by more and more adult education programs as the amount of leisure time increases. Some adult schools, located in communities in which a large segment of the population is college-educated, offer programs aimed at improving competency in jobs. Courses in public speaking, making effective presentations, leadership training, and others are common in these instances. Some school districts cooperate with area colleges to offer undergraduate and graduate programs. The program possibilities are limited only by the desires of the people being served.

Community Relations Outcomes

Community adult education programs that meet the needs of large numbers of people are bound to have a favorable influence on public opinion regarding the schools. Those who take part in the programs almost always appreciate the opportunity provided for continuing their education and satisfying other interests. They become acquainted with regular employees, who teach many of the classes, and, through these relationships, have more confidence in the school system. Moreover, every class taught by a regular employee serves to demonstrate the

advancement made in instructional methods and materials over the years. Many are awakened to a deeper realization of the contribution education makes to their own lives and the lives of others, and they become stronger supporters of the school. The public goodwill and understanding thus created is worth much more than the cost of this service alone.

Publicizing Adult School Offerings

For an adult school to be successful, people must know about it and what it has to offer. This means that the administrator responsible for the adult school must be aware of publicity and communications techniques that will attract students. Many of the ideas explained in other chapters can be easily applied to this undertaking. Some specific publicity ideas follow:

- Work with an advisory committee to set up courses and to determine a calendar.
- Use the local radio station in a variety of ways. Public service announcements, interview shows, and call-ins to talk shows can bring attention to adult school offerings. Brief news items explaining new courses and registration can be written for radio.
- Get the most out of area newspapers. News stories can be written about registration, the courses offered, and the number of people attending. Feature stories can be prepared on people and on unusual results of a class. Classified ads designed for specific audiences can attract some students. Display advertising can be effectively used to list all courses. A tear-out coupon for registration can be used in the ads. Some school districts share the cost of a large ad in an area daily newspaper to provide general information about adult schools.
- Work with the various community groups. Prepare a video to show the groups what adult school has to offer. Ask those attending the presentation to complete forms you distribute asking for course suggestions.
- Distribute evaluation forms at the last class. Ask people to suggest other courses and to candidly react to the course completed. Ask permission to quote them in advertising for the next session.
- Distribute a brochure that provides complete information about courses, registration, and so forth to all residences served by the school district. If necessary, get professional help to do an effective job.
- Publicize the adult school on the school district Web site and in other school publications.

COMMUNITY EDUCATION

This country's population is growing older. If schools are to get continued support, they are going to have to answer the question "What's in it for us?" from those people who do not have children in schools. One answer is community education.

Community education goes beyond the K–12 years and attempts to provide education, as requested, for many members of the community. It can provide learning in the classroom or in a field setting for those wanting to learn something new, to fill some gaps in old learning, to spend leisure time more constructively, or for those wishing to retrain for a new job because their occupation has become outdated. In this program the schools, working closely with representative community groups, provide the kinds of services that groups request, if such requests are educationally sound.

Interaction and communication between the schools and the public are important ingredients in a community education program. Common, in addition to learning situations, are such activities as surveys, meetings, feedback channels from the public, publications, and citizen involvement in planning courses and projects. Such activities are also common to sound school–community relations programs. Therefore, a functional community education program focusing on citizen needs can be a beneficial part of a total public relations program.

In some school systems the director of public relations is also the community educator. The responsibilities are similar—two-way communications and community involvement—and as more and more school districts become involved in community education, the director of public relations appears to assume the responsibilities of the community educator.

Questions

1. Call your school district and see what kind of reaction you get. Don't identify yourself if a person answers the phone. If a person does not answer the phone, determine how long it takes to figure out the menu and how much time elapses before you can get to your party. Is this the kind of response that an angry caller will be calmed by?
2. Drive by your schools. See if they present an overall image of a caring administration. When was the last time you conducted a workshop for secretaries, clerks, and others who deal with your students, their parents, and other taxpayers? Many first impressions are created by these people. Outline a workshop that would help them communicate more effectively.
3. Check on your school district's policy on community use of school facilities. Be sure that there is no room for interpretation that will allow a school employee to favor one group over another.
4. Why is it important that calls, e-mail, and written inquiries to schools be acknowledged and addressed promptly? What would you consider reasonable timelines for school employees handling inquiries?

Readings

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations Theories and Practices That Make a Difference*. Dubuque, Iowa: Kendal/ Hunt, 2006.

Bagin, Rich, *Making Parent Communication Effective and Easy*. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2005.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center and Glen M. Groom, *Effective Public Relations*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall, 2008.

Hughes, Larry W., *Public Relations for School Leaders*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

Kowlaski, Theodore J., *Public Relations in Schools*, 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Merrill, 2007.

Newsom, Doug, Judy Vandyke Turk, and Dean Kruckeberg, *This Is PR: The Realities of Public Relations*, 10th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2009.

Seitel, Fraser P., *The Practice of Public Relations*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2006.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics*, 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2008.

Endnote

1. "Best PRactices: Frontline Communication Tips for Support Staff," *PRincipal Communicator* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, February 2002), p. 1.

Chapter 11

Working with the Press

The press plays a major role in a school–community relations program. This chapter discusses the importance of the press and offers ideas for improving school relationships with newspaper representatives. It provides specific suggestions to enable educators to increase their opportunities for better news coverage of schools, it offers ideas to assist school officials in their everyday dealings with reporters, and it provides schools with information on how to prepare news stories properly.

The important role of the press in the overall school–community relations program must be realized. Studies consistently show that the prime sources of information about the school are students and newspapers, and not always in that order.

As the number of taxpayers with school-age children decreases, newspapers will most likely become an even more important source of information about schools for many people. Still others suggest that much news will be obtained from online news sources rather than from traditional print newspapers as we know them.

Whatever the role will be tomorrow, the newspapers are here today, and the astute administrator will not underestimate the power of the press—whether their news is disseminated in print or online. Appreciating the power of the press, the administrator then must understand the role of the press in its dealings with the public schools. Educators are often suspicious of newspaper people, fearing that they will hurt the cause of the schools. But newspapers feel they have a responsibility to report on all public institutions, including public schools.

In the book *Building Bridges with the Press: A Guide for Educators,* author Julie Blair expresses the situation this way:

> Obviously, there are reasons to be wary of the press. Many administrators worry aloud about the exploitation of children in their care, the disruption of classes or testing schedules, or the possibility of liability issues. Others fret about being misquoted, having their words taken out of context, or being unfairly maligned. Many, functioning in a never-ending time crunch, wonder how they could possibly carve out time to work with reporters on a regular basis.
>
> From the media's perspective, however, it seems that school officials don't trust us or that they have something to hide. We wonder: Are these administrators simply worried about children, or are they concerned that we'll unearth a problem they didn't know about or don't want the public to find out about?
>
> Two perspectives—dangerously out of sync. The fears and distrust are the tangible result of a deep disconnect between the education press and those who manage, work and learn in K–12 school communities.[1]

From Chapter 11 of *The School and Community Relations,* 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

When accountability demands that educators show where the money is going and when taxpayers want answers on how the schools are being run, the school administrator must be able to work effectively with the press. And if members of the press want to build bridges with the local school officials, the newspaper people responsible for printing information about the schools must understand what is going on in the schools. Reporters and editors also need more than a surface knowledge of school activities, achievements, and problems.

The newspaper, of course, has a legal right to this kind of information. School districts spend public funds. Thus, newspapers have just as much right to report about the schools as they do about other government agencies. School officials should know the state law on the public's right to know. School administrators who are aware of the reporter's right to information can save themselves and their schools severe embarrassment. Too frequently school officials refuse reporters information that is eventually made public when a court intervenes. More damaging than the harm done to the relationship with the reporter is the mistrust generated by hiding facts.

GUIDELINES

To help education department employees know what reporters have a right to know, one state superintendent of schools issued guidelines. An elaboration of these guidelines as well as other suggestions follows.

ANSWER QUESTIONS HONESTLY

Any responsible employee of the school is expected to answer questions about those topics concerning his or her position. The educator who appears to be hiding something by attempting to dodge or circumvent an issue only prompts additional investigation by the reporter.

Every school system needs an operating procedure for dealing with the press. If this procedure fails to give reporters information when they need it, the procedure will undoubtedly come under fire in the press. More than one school district has felt the wrath of both the press and taxpayers when the superintendent was out of town and reporters were informed by all other administrators that "only the superintendent may speak to the press." Such a situation will provoke three reactions: (1) disgust by reporters, (2) concern for their own competence by other administrators, and (3) puzzlement on the part of citizens who wonder why people running the schools aren't allowed to talk to the press.

All employees should know who can speak for the schools when the superintendent isn't available. And the next person in line should be designated in case the number two person is unavailable. In fact, all employees should understand their role in working with the press. This includes administrators, teachers, and clerical employees. It may be necessary to conduct an in-service program for employees so that all will be comfortable when speaking to reporters. Local reporters will usually cooperate in such a program because it helps them do their job better and more easily.

RESPOND PROMPTLY

This guideline means knowing and respecting newspaper deadlines. The reporter who is told by an administrator's secretary that he or she "is busy and will call back" will understandably be irate when the return call comes too late to meet that issue's deadline. Getting information on time is a reporter's job; if the administrator recognizes this pressure and assists the reporter, the reporter will appreciate it and will respond favorably.

Deadlines vary from newspaper to newspaper. The thorough administrator should know the deadlines of all area newspapers, weeklies as well as dailies. Weekly newspapers might have a deadline two or three days before the paper is on the streets. By knowing the various deadlines, the administrator can be sure to submit information on time and can avoid bothering reporters and editors with unimportant information and social calls at deadline time.

ALL REPORTS AND SURVEYS ARE PUBLIC PROPERTY

You may *not* withhold such data when they are requested, even though you believe the reporter is

FREEDOM OF INFORMATION: COMMUNICATING IS THE LAW

The Internet has made information sharing easier for average citizens. As a result, school administrators need to be prepared to handle the increased requests for information that result from both informal requests and formal requests under freedom of information (FOI) laws and regulations. Specific FOI requirements vary by state and other jurisdictions, so local school administrators need to stay current on the specific rules that may govern their responses to such information requests. In addition, new communication technology, such as the increasing use of e-mail, e-newsletters, discussion boards, and other online information exchanges, is adding to the challenge of storing information and determining what is and is not covered under various FOI requirements.

The Freedom of Information Center, a reference and research library located in the University of Missouri School of Journalism on the campus of the University of Missouri– Columbia, maintains an extensive Web site offering information on federal and state FOI laws and issues, sample Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request letters, issues and background research, and so on. Its Web site can be found at: http://www.nfoic.org/about-the-foi-center.

Another organization, the Reporters Committee for Freedom of the Press, also maintains FOI information and resources on its Web site at http://www.rcfp.org.

Many state governments maintain Web resources dedicated to helping citizens and organizations comply with local FOI rules. The federal government, through its various departments, uses the Web to offer guidance on the federal FOIA. *Some examples:* The Department of Education (http://www.ed.gov) FOIA page can be found at http://www.ed.gov/policy/gen/leg/foia/foiatoc.html.

going to use the material to hurt a program. You do not have to release rough drafts, working papers, preliminary figures, or notes, but you may choose to do so.

DON'T PICK YOUR OWN TIME FOR PUBLICITY AND REFUSE TO PROVIDE INFORMATION UNTIL THAT TIME

Some administrators fall into the routine of sending out news releases every Friday because that's the day allocated to that phase of running the school. But news is often timely, and waiting a few days to release it might jeopardize its chance of being printed. Reporters sometimes seek information about a project or innovation before the program coordinator or principal is ready to wrap up the final report. The educator should answer the reporter's questions when the questions are asked. This does not preclude the possibility of preparing a news release when the project is completed and all the information is available.

For example, much ballyhoo usually accompanies the start of an innovative program in schools. Yet few districts do much to indicate progress and problems as the innovation is implemented. Frequently, school officials want to wait until the end of the year to chart and report measurable progress. Yet it's natural for the public and reporters to ask for information before the year is over.

IT IS NOT NECESSARY TO BE AUDITOR-ACCURATE WITH FIGURES

Reporters dislike hearing the excuse that not all the figures are available. If reporters need to know the expected September enrollment for the August 15 "Back-to-School" issue, they realize that the figures might not be exact. An approximate number will suffice.

AVOID EDUCATION JARGON

The educator must constantly guard against using words that noneducators won't understand. This applies to talking with reporters. Most newspapers cannot afford the luxury of a full-time education reporter who might have the background to understand educational terminology. Thus, school officials should explain educational terms when they use them or should substitute words that everyone will understand. "Minimal fenestral areas" might be fine for a group of educators considering the

merits of air-conditioned plants. For the public and for the reporter, however, it's better to say "only a few windows." A criticism leveled at educators is that they try to confuse the public with "educationese" and don't talk the language of the layperson. This contributes to a credibility gap between the school official and the public—a gap that breeds distrust.

Educators who want to establish sound, believable relationships with the public and the press will avoid words and expressions that are jargon-laden and will use easy-to-understand words in their writing and speaking. Language choice should be made to communicate an idea, not to impress people that they have mastered certain polysyllabic words.

DON'T BE AFRAID TO SAY "I DON'T KNOW, I'LL CALL YOU BACK IN TEN MINUTES"

Reporters looking for answers don't expect school officials to have every response every time. It is appreciably better to admit not knowing than to give an inaccurate answer. Remember to get back to a reporter quickly if he or she is fighting a deadline. Don't allow other problems to intervene if information was promised by a certain time.

NEVER ASK A REPORTER TO SHOW THE STORY BEFORE IT IS PUBLISHED

Just as a reporter is expected to respect expertise in educators, his or her reporting ability must be respected. Asking to see a story before it's published implies to most reporters that they are not trusted to write a sound story. If certain points should be emphasized in the story, emphasize them in the interview. But remember that the reporter's idea of what's important and the educator's concept of what should be played up may differ. The reporter's responsibility is to the public and to the newspaper, not to making the school and a program look good.

Also, don't ask reporters to send a copy of the story after it appears in the newspaper. They have other responsibilities to think about; besides, educators should be buying and reading newspapers regularly. School officials must remember that newspapers are operated by people who are in the newspaper business. Thus, editors and reporters don't expect educators to tell them how to run newspapers, just as school officials don't expect newspeople to tell math teachers how to explain set theory.

A SCHOOL OFFICIAL WHO HAS TALKED TO A REPORTER ABOUT A SUBSTANTIVE ITEM SHOULD NOTIFY HIS OR HER IMMEDIATE SUPERIOR

The superintendent of schools should be informed immediately if the topic has districtwide implications or is the kind of topic that lends itself to comment from the chief executive officer. If other key personnel don't know about this matter, the story might wind up being a series of statements from various administrators, each one contradicting the other.

BE A KEY MEMBER OF THE MANAGEMENT TEAM

School representatives responsible for press relations must enjoy the confidence of key school officials. Otherwise they will be ineffective. The school's press relations person must also have access to all information. This means attending all key administrative cabinet meetings, executive sessions of the board, and all major meetings. If this is not the case, the press will consistently bypass the press relations representative, who will be relegated to writing news releases about PTA meetings and class trips.

BE ACCURATE

Reporters' reputations ride on the accuracy of their stories. If people read something that is incorrect, they will have less confidence in the rest of that reporter's articles. Thus, it's imperative that all information provided to reporters be checked for precision. This is especially important in the spelling of names and the placement of decimal points. People dislike seeing their names misspelled in the newspaper and will usually blame the reporter even if the fault lies elsewhere. This does not enhance the school's relationship with the reporter.

KNOW ALL REPORTERS ON A FIRST-NAME BASIS

Probably the most important step that an educator can take to improve school–press relations is to get to know reporters on a first-name basis. When an administrator is just a title and a name, it's fairly easy

for reporters to choose letters on the keyboard that can form critical words. Establishing solid rapport with reporters cannot be considered a guarantee that prevents criticism; however, it can be thought of as a way to ensure a fair chance to tell the school's side of the story.

Reporters will respect educators who make an effort to understand them and their job. This might mean leaving the office to meet with reporters at their newspaper office, or getting together for lunch informally. It's always better to meet a reporter when no pressure exists for information on a negative story. Once reporters know an educator, it will encourage them to call the school for facts rather than looking elsewhere for them. This ensures the opportunity to present the school's side of a story, an important ingredient when a controversial topic is in the headlines.

Make it a point, in planning the publicity program, to discuss with editors what types of stories they are interested in and how the news should be handled. This responsibility should be assumed either by the superintendent or by the person in charge of school publicity.

KNOW WHAT "OFF THE RECORD" MEANS

Talking to reporters "off the record" means you are offering information for their knowledge but that it is not to be used in the newspaper. This can be extremely risky and can cause all sorts of problems if not properly understood by all parties concerned. Two schools of thought exist in regard to providing off-the-record information to reporters. One school believes that reporters are always reporters and that any information given to them will eventually find its way into the newspaper. Advocates of this position therefore remind school officials that reporters are reporters all the time, not just when carrying a clipboard at a school board meeting.

Others feel that off-the-record information enables reporters to bring a fuller understanding of complex and controversial issues to their reporting, even though such information is not printable.

BE AVAILABLE WHEN NEGATIVE NEWS OCCURS

One of the most consistent criticisms leveled against school officials is their inaccessibility when something that appears to be negative happens in a school. As one reporter put it, "Why are the same administrators who are always available when a student wins some academic recognition suddenly in hiding when a problem occurs?"

The day when board members and taxpayers expect schools to be perfect is over. However, the day of accountability and administrative responsibility has not passed. And school administrators who are expected to provide leadership for a school district cannot abrogate that responsibility when the going gets rough.

No one expects educators to boast about problems that occur. However, attempting to cover up problems that affect an integral part of the school's operations can lead to much larger difficulties. The wise administrator will recognize the problems, propose alternative solutions, and explain why the solution selected is the most appropriate one. By ignoring problems the administrator projects an image that will not build the confidence needed to gain public support.

KNOW WHAT NEWS IS

A major complaint of newspaper editors and reporters is that most school officials fail to recognize what news is. This results in two things: (1) Important school news is not sent to the papers, and (2) news releases with no news value demand the time of editors. Educators can improve their understanding of what constitutes news by talking with reporters and editors. It's surprising to many school officials how helpful newspeople can be when asked. Also reading the area newspapers can be extremely helpful in determining what news is.

One of the most common errors made by educators is to assume that something is newsworthy just because it is of interest to them. The editor has a different yardstick: How many readers will the item interest? Answering this one question will encourage many stories to be written and will cause others to be rejected.

Furthermore, different papers have different standards. The local weekly, for instance, might use a story about sixth-graders on a class trip to the police station. However, the daily newspaper will usually reject such a story unless there's an unusual twist to it. Why? Because many sixth-grade classes visit police stations.

School officials complain that reporters don't know enough about the schools. Yet few school people understand the workings of a newspaper. To improve school–press relations, school administrators must gain information about how a newspaper operates.

COMPILE A DIRECTORY OF KEY NEWS CONTACTS

Keep a directory of various editors, photographers, and reporters. This directory should include office and home phone numbers and information about their working schedules and special interests. This will allow the school official to contact the proper people as soon as a news story is available.

GIVE HOME PHONE NUMBERS TO MEDIA REPRESENTATIVES

Few things bother a reporter more than having part of a story and not being able to get in touch with the knowledgeable person for other integral pieces of the story. School officials, especially the person in charge of community relations, should give the press the home phone numbers of school representatives. News releases should also list home phone numbers of the community relations person and key people mentioned in the releases. Then, when reporters rework their story, they can easily contact people for additional information.

THE ROLE OF REPORTERS

The people whom most school officials will want to know best are the reporters from the local papers who cover the school. Understanding the roles and responsibilities of these reporters will assist educators in their relations with the press. Furthermore, good person-to-person relationships with reporters and editors can overcome fear of the press. A few specifics that should help school officials better understand the role of reporters follow:

- Reporters seldom write headlines. On some small weekly newspapers, the reporter covering a board meeting might write a headline—as well as sell the advertising and do the proofreading. On most papers, however, the reporter writes the story, and someone else writes the headline. This is important to remember. More than one district has marred its relationship with a reporter by assuming that he or she was responsible for a headline that school officials considered negative.

- Reporters aren't always responsible for the errors that appear in the paper. So don't be quick to blame the reporter when a tax increase of 2.2 mills is printed as 22 mills, or when 62 percent of the students achieving some success is printed as 6.2 percent. Proofreaders and editors usually deal with the copy before it is printed.

Changes are made for a number of reasons. Editors may want to shorten the story to make room for other stories. In so doing, they may delete part of the story you and the reporter thought was important. Don't blame the reporter for this. Editors may want a different beginning (called the lead to the story) because of some other related news event, or simply because they feel that something other than what the reporter wrote first should be the lead. Remember, it is the editor's news judgment that determines what gets into the paper.

Help the Reporter

Reporters, like all of us, enjoy doing their job well. To help reporters do a better job, try these techniques:

- Distribute a list of key school personnel, their responsibilities, and phone numbers to all reporters. Give basic data about the school, including enrollment, growth, calendar, and other information that reporters might be able to use.

- If time does not permit preparation of as many stories as desired, periodically distribute a list of story ideas to all reporters. This list should contain ideas for stories, the people to contact, and their phone numbers. Of course, the staff listed as contact people should be notified of this so they will be prepared for phone calls.

- If a good news story that is not school-related is detected, offer it to reporters. They will appreciate the tip. This helps build the necessary rapport sought.

- Alert reporters to an announcement that will be made soon. If possible, prepare background material that will enable them to do a more thorough job of reporting. For example, if the superintendent

is going to announce at the board meeting a $250,000 grant to improve the teaching of reading, reporters will appreciate receiving as much information as possible about who presented the grant, how it was obtained, who will implement it, how pupils will benefit from it, where such an approach was tried before, and so forth.

• Remember the local reporters when news of statewide or national importance occurs. It's easy to forget the reporters on the local weekly and daily newspapers when wire service reporters or national television personalities seek information from you. The schools may have a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to gain national recognition. Quite naturally, cooperation is required with those who request information about your schools, but remember that the local press must be taken care of. It's the local reporters who will cover the schools tomorrow and the day after tomorrow, and they should expect to receive special consideration when an extremely important story is available.

• Be selective in suggesting stories to reporters. Many newspapers are understaffed; therefore, reporters don't have time to pursue all possible stories. Just as editors dislike receiving news releases that contain little or no news, reporters resent spending time on possible stories that are little more than attempts to publicize personalities. Point out why a possible story merits a reporter's attention. If the reporter's background in education is weak, explain the educational angle that makes the story newsworthy.

• Issue a glossary of educational terms to reporters. Although this does not excuse school staff members from using understandable language, a reporter, armed with the glossary, might frequently avoid errors when reporting education news.

• Send all reporters a copy of the school district newsletter before the newsletter is distributed to the community. In fact, write a news release on one or two key newsletter stories and include the newsletter with the releases. Taxpayers who see the newsletter mentioned in the newspaper might look for it and read the articles referred to in the press.

• Treat all reporters with the same professional respect. Even though some reporters will be more cooperative than others, remember that public schools have a legal responsibility to provide all newspapers with the information that public right-to-know laws demand.

Because a particular school employee dislikes the treatment accorded the schools by a certain paper, he or she has no right to treat that paper's reporters with less than respect. The employee must not withhold public information from that newspaper's representatives and then offer the same information to a friendly reporter with a competing paper. All newspapers covering the schools have the same right to information coming from the schools. However, if a reporter has uncovered a special story that is not being developed by the school, school officials should not bring this information to the attention of competing reporters. This would justifiably anger the reporter who thought he or she had an exclusive story.

• If reporters err in reporting a story, give them a chance to correct the mistake, if indeed it's worth correcting. School officials who immediately go over the reporter's head to an editor will hardly improve their relationship with the reporter. No one likes to be told he or she was wrong by a boss. Thus, bringing the error to the editor will only alienate the reporter. Too many school officials overreact to errors in the press. A demanded retraction might win the battle, but it could very well lessen chances for winning the war.

Perhaps the reporter and school officials can correct an error without a retraction. For example, a story that implied that a better reference check should have been made on a teacher who was just dismissed could be followed a week later with a feature story showing the elaborate personnel procedures used before a candidate is hired.

Keep a file on the stories written by each reporter. If one reporter makes mistake after mistake, and school officials have done all they can to help him or her, the editor should be contacted. At a meeting with the editor, copies of the reporter's stories, with errors pointed out, should be shown to the editor. Doing this, it must be remembered, may prompt the reporter to look for problems in the schools with a previously unknown zeal, if a new reporter is not assigned to cover the schools.

• If reporters have done an outstanding job, let them know it. Like all people, reporters enjoy praise. Don't hesitate to let their editors know about the quality of a particular story. Don't, however, thank a reporter for a story. Some reporters will interpret a thank you as some sort of sign that they overdid the story in the school's favor. And most reporters value their reputation for objectivity.

• If a controversial story is breaking and reporters will be calling, prepare a statement that can be quickly given to them. This will do two things: First, it will enable comments to be consistent, and second, it will please reporters because a statement is ready. In fact, one of the most effective contributions to school–press relations is anticipation of what news is. By anticipating, educators can prepare positions and statements, clearly giving the impression that school officials are organized and know what they are doing.

Common Errors

Educators constantly admit their respect for the press, and yet they often treat the press with great disrespect. This leads to misunderstanding and frequently causes crises in the schools in their relationship with the papers, as well as with the community.

Good press relations suffer when such common errors as the following are made by school people:

• Threatening, denouncing, and bringing pressure on the editor to print or withhold a story. Nothing produces friction faster and is resented more deeply by the editor.

• Complaining when the facts of a story are reported incorrectly, when headlines give the wrong impression, or when individuals are misquoted. The remedy lies rather in friendly discussion, accurate copy, and sometimes an objective statement in the section on letters to the editor.

• Refusing to release timely information to the press or pretending to be unacquainted with the details of a story. Such action creates suspicion and reflects unfavorably on the institution. The story will be published anyway, without the cooperation of the school and the benefit of complete background material.

• Sending out too many releases that do not have news value. Editors are pressed for time; they cannot waste it reviewing copy that belongs in the wastebasket.

• Complaining if stories do not get published. It must be remembered that news selection is a function of editors. They work under space limitations and publish whatever they believe will appeal most to readers.

• Becoming emotional with reporters and editors over the publication of unfavorable news stories. School people must learn to accept the good and the bad in the normal flow of publicity.

• Being drawn into controversies on a personal basis when the school is criticized or attacked in a news story. No board member or school official has the right to speak for the system unless authorized to do so.

• Creating the impression that educators know more about reader interests than either the reporter or the editor. The persistence of this attitude is certain to antagonize the reporter and the editor.

• Failing to invite the press to special school affairs that should be reported in the paper; or, having invited the press, failing to show the courtesy and hospitality that are expected.

• Causing reporters to sit in the waiting room for a long time for an interview with a school official. If an interview must be delayed, word should be sent at once to the reporters. They have deadlines to meet and cannot afford to lose time under these circumstances.

THE PRESS AND SCHOOL BOARD MEETINGS

School boards and school administrators must be accountable for the way public funds are being spent. One of the ways to be accountable is through the press, and the relationships between school officials and reporters often determine the kind of coverage local newspapers provide.

Too many board members and administrators consider reporters as a necessary evil that must be tolerated. Often this attitude is communicated to reporters

who are attempting to do their job. Some school officials give the impression to reporters that they are allowed at board meetings only through the courtesy of the board rather than as a right of our democratic government. Board members and school officials rightly feel that they are performing a community service as they work for better schools. Reporters, too, feel they are rendering a community service—one that informs readers of how public funds are being spent.

Before anyone becomes a board member or a school administrator, he or she should be aware of some key points in the school–press relationship. If these points are not learned from orientation meetings or from educational preparation, someone in the district should assume the responsibility for educating school officials before the initial board meeting.

Before the Board Meeting

The superintendent should prepare for board members a succinct summary of each important item on the agenda. This summary should be delivered to board members long enough before the public meeting to allow them to familiarize themselves with the main topics to be discussed. It should include a statement of the problem, possible solutions to the problem, and the superintendent's recommended solution. Inasmuch as board members are usually busy people, succinctness is appreciated. A more thorough, in-depth presentation of facts and background material should also be included in the materials presented to the board.

Before the board meeting, reporters will appreciate the chance to meet with the superintendent, the board president, or the school communications specialist. If the board meeting is held at night, the meeting with reporters might be held in the afternoon. At this meeting, the agenda could be discussed and resolutions given to reporters. Prepared statements and background materials could be distributed.

For example, if a grant is to be announced at the meeting, provide reporters with plenty of background information, such as the following: Where is the money coming from? Who will be responsible for implementing the program? Has it been tried elsewhere? When will it start? Who can provide additional information? All of this information will permit reporters to write thorough stories instead of hurried, incomplete stories pressured by deadlines and the unavailability of key personnel at midnight following the meeting.

One important reminder: Have someone contact all reporters if some board action is inconsistent with what was discussed in the afternoon session. Failing to do this can cause much embarrassment.

At the Meeting

Make reporters feel comfortable. Provide a press table somewhere near the action. Give reporters a copy of the agenda, and share with them copies of just about all materials board members have copies of. Only a few items might be considered confidential. With a copy of the agenda, reporters will be able to follow the actions of the board intelligently instead of groping for facts in a frustrated fashion.

Nothing alienates the press and the public more than executive sessions of the board. Reporters' adrenaline flows at the mention of an executive session. If they think the board is trying to block the public's right to know about public business, they will move into high gear to ferret out the behind-the-scenes undertakings. Secret meetings (and that's what the public considers executive sessions) will guarantee a bad press. Avoid them as much as possible, especially on the same night as the regular public meeting. Be sure you respect public meeting laws.

School officials with excellent press relations might consider inviting the press to attend an executive session on an off-the-record basis. This can do two things: First, it will communicate clearly that the board is not discussing in private something that should be public; second, it will indicate to reporters that you trust them and want to cooperate with them. To attempt this, school officials must enjoy a sound relationship with the press.

Schedule something of educational interest at each meeting. The press will love you for it. Too many meetings have required the reporters' presence for four or five long hours, and the only story has been about a dull subject such as who received the fuel bid or about flooring for a new building.

Every meeting should include a brief report on some phase of the school curriculum. The educator making the presentation should limit the report to a half hour and should have copies of pertinent materials for the press. Reporters will usually write a story on the innovation or progress taking place in the schools because the story has news merit.

During the meeting, the communications specialist or someone appointed as the board's press representative should be available to provide needed materials and to answer questions. Each board member should be clearly identified. This will eliminate the possibility of a quote being attributed to the wrong person.

Taping board meetings sometimes helps school officials and audience members choose their words more carefully. It also reminds everyone that everything said at a public meeting is public information. Nothing is off the record at a public meeting. After the meeting, school officials should be available to the press to respond to questions. Radio stations may want to record a brief news spot early in the morning. Someone from the schools should work with the stations on this.

THE NEWS CONFERENCE

The news conference, when properly prepared, can be an effective vehicle to communicate an important news event to the press. Improperly handled, it can backfire, causing immeasurable harm to the relationship between schools and the press. The most obvious consideration when deciding to hold a news conference is whether the reason is sufficiently newsworthy to justify taking reporters' valuable time. A news conference that results in little or no solid news for reporters prompts justifiable criticism and ensures sparse attendance at the next conference.

Planning the Conference

Once it's decided to call a news conference, notify all newspapers. If time permits, notify them with a memo; a phone call follow-up serves as a friendly reminder. The conference should be scheduled for a time that is convenient for the press. This means knowing deadlines of the various papers and planning the conference at a time when editors can spare a reporter. Although most schools will hold such conferences infrequently, conference times should be carefully planned to give equal time breaks to the various papers. This kind of fairness is respected by all concerned, even though some reporters and editors will try to get the break all the time. They are merely doing their job, attempting to do what's best for their employer, but they will respect fairness.

News conferences must be held at a time when the news has time value. However, if the luxury of time is available, a good day to hold a news conference is a day when other news may not be occurring in great quantity. For example, the fifth anything of a month is usually an excellent day for a news conference. Few town governing bodies meet on the fifth Monday or Tuesday of the month. Thus, little other news is forthcoming, allowing more room for news from the schools.

An often overlooked phase of preparation is anticipating the kinds of questions that will be posed by alert reporters. Someone in the school district, preferably the person responsible for press relations, should play devil's advocate. This necessitates asking the kinds of controversial questions that reporters will pose. School officials who are not ready to field tough questions should not announce news conferences. An invitation to a news conference is an invitation to probe all areas related to the topic of the conference.

At the Conference

Distribute a kit of information and materials to all reporters who attend. This is a time-saving idea that also ensures that key statements are received accurately. If a new superintendent is being appointed, the kit should include a photo plus a biography and some of his or her statements on key educational issues in the community.

At the conference, the key person should be surrounded by knowledgeable assistants who will be able to provide specifics as needed. For example, the superintendent should be able to call on an assistant superintendent to explain an important curricular change if the news conference will include discussion of curriculum in a new school.

Reporters should feel comfortable at the conference, knowing that extra pencils, paper, and other materials are provided. Reporters pressured by a deadline should know where phones are and that the phones will be available to them. They should always be given the full names of conference participants. Phone numbers, both at school and at home, should also be provided. Participants should be alerted to the possibility that reporters might call later with questions.

After the Conference

Someone should be responsible for obtaining additional facts requested by reporters. This person should be known by the reporters, who should have no reluctance about calling him or her at a later date.

Reporters who couldn't attend should be able to obtain a kit and the basic information distributed at the conference. Most reporters feel, however, that information elicited by a probing question from a reporter privately after the conference should not be made available to those not attending.

What People Want to Know about the Schools

If one of the objectives of the news relations program is to generate public support for school needs, it is necessary to determine which topics taxpayers perceive as important. Thus, if the people are concerned with guidance and discipline, news releases about educational trips of administrators will do little to effect the desired support.

Determining what people want to know about the schools is vital before other phases of the news relations program can be developed. Chapter 3 explained a number of methods for obtaining feedback on school issues, and these can be implemented to find out possible news topics that should be considered.

Interest in what parents and other taxpayers want to know about the schools began as early as 1929. Farley, studying 5,600 people in 13 cities, determined that parents are primarily concerned with pupil progress, achievement, instructional methods, and courses of study.[2]

Since then, many studies have been reported, showing that parents are primarily interested in curriculum and that other taxpayers care most about discipline and costs.

It is more important to know what taxpayers in your community want to know than to know what other taxpayers in other locations in another era cared about, however. Once school officials have determined the interests of the community, a planned program to provide information on those topics can be undertaken.

FOREIGN-LANGUAGE NEWSPAPERS

In addition to preparing materials for English-speaking audiences, school officials in some schools must be cognizant of groups that do not speak and understand English. To serve these groups, some school districts take advantage of foreign-language newspapers. Working closely with editors of these newspapers, school officials prepare articles in time for translation. Or, in some cases, they use a staff member to provide the translation for the newspapers. Urban areas, especially, may be faced with the communications challenge of a Spanish-speaking and a Chinese-speaking audience that would not be served by the usual communications channels. It is the wise educator who provides information for these groups in their own language. This might mean extra effort for school administrators, but the effort extended should reap the reward of better overall support for the schools. Some newspapers feature one column written in a language of interest to a large segment of the readership. School officials should seek such columns and capitalize on their availability.

Some schools offer newsletters written in two languages or print part of each newsletter with articles written in a second language. Such efforts clearly communicate that school officials care about the people served. It is important that the person responsible for the non-English portion know the language and its nuances well.

NEWS TOPICS IN YOUR SCHOOLS

Since school news must compete daily with material from hundreds of other sources for newspaper space, it must be newsworthy. Newsworthiness means that the information contains elements that

make it readable—news that the press will accept and the public will read.

Occasionally, an educator will be disappointed when a news release about a school play fails to be printed in the area daily newspaper. This disappointment sometimes leads to a negative attitude toward the newspaper that culminates in a do-nothing approach to preparing other stories. The daily newspaper, meanwhile, would probably appreciate receiving well-written articles on school topics readers would like to read.

Timeliness Is Important

Be sure the average reader won't have a "so-what" reaction to any story submitted. To avoid such a reaction, you should analyze why particular articles in the newspaper seem to interest readers.

First, to be of news value, the story should be timely. Daily newspapers, especially, want stories as they happen. Something that happened yesterday might not be news for tomorrow's daily. Thus, it's imperative that someone in the schools know how to alert the press when the stories are still fresh. A news release sent on February 14 about a "recent" Thanksgiving party held by a class will be rejected rapidly. Worse, it will indicate to newspaper people that the school is ignorant of what news is.

The local weekly newspaper may not have stringent standards for timeliness. Shopper specials, which feature advertisements rather than timely news, may also accept articles that miss the daily newspapers' standards for timeliness.

If it is possible to relate a news item about the school to something of national or general interest, the timeliness factor can be enhanced. For instance, high school students studying political parties and elections would be of more interest around election time than at any other time. A story about the study of a particular foreign language might be especially timely if the U.S. president is presently visiting a country that speaks that language.

If It's Unusual, It Could Be News

Frequently, a news story is news simply because it is unusual. Readers want to know about stories that occur for the first time or that have an angle or circumstance that makes them something out of the ordinary. For example, a class of students giving their teacher a report card and evaluating the kind of teaching done would be an unusual enough twist for an effective story. If done on the same day that students received their own report cards, the feature could lend itself to all kinds of interesting quotes. After attracting the editor's attention (and the readers' attention, too) with the unusualness of the story, the educator could explain how the report is part of an overall program to encourage teachers to determine how students perceive their teaching. It might be explained that feedback from students in specific areas will encourage teachers to continue certain practices and to modify others.

If It's Local, It Could Be News

Readers are concerned about what's happening in their community. A murder in a distant city seldom attracts and holds the interest of the average reader. However, an attack in a reader's neighborhood stirs reader concern. Thus, a school's initiating a computerized busing schedule could be news in the local newspaper even though the story has appeared hundreds of times in other communities. Statewide test scores showing the achievements of fourth-grade students may be of limited interest to readers. Yet, the same kinds of scores for the local school system would prompt appreciable reader interest.

Finding ways to give a local angle for a national story can increase the number of stories used by an area newspaper. For example, if a national association of English teachers passes a resolution advocating a certain approach to teaching writing, the school district can release a statement from the English department chairperson giving the district's views on the resolution. Because the statement is coming from someone in the community, it possesses the local flavor editors are seeking.

Names Make News

The cliché "names make news" is not always true. Yet an important person can make a story significant. Thus, a superintendent issuing a statement about reading in the schools takes on more importance than a similar statement made by someone with less

responsibility. If a representative of the state education agency visits the school and praises a new program in career education, this would be newsworthy. The fact that the visitor possesses a state title makes his or her name and statements of some importance to local newspapers.

Every quote in a news story, of course, must be attributed to someone. It is not acceptable, for example, to include the following statement in a news release: "The Sharpkirk Schools are without a doubt the best in the country." Such a statement must be made by someone. If it is not attributed, it will be discarded by most newspapers.

The more important the person making the statement, the better the chance of the statement's appearing in newspapers. Names almost always make news in local weekly newspapers. A list of students named to the honor roll or a group of pupils who went on a field trip will usually be printed by the small weekly newspaper even though the larger daily newspapers don't have room. When preparing such a list, double-check to be sure that names are spelled properly. Everyone enjoys seeing his or her name in the newspaper—especially if it's spelled right (and providing it is good news, not bad). Also, check thoroughly to ensure that all students who should be on the list do appear on it.

Innovation Is News

Anything being initiated in the schools could be newsworthy. If it's being done in a way that differs from the way it was done when most of the readers attended school, the topic could rate newspaper consideration. When preparing a news release about an innovation, the educator should look for those bits of information that will appeal to the largest number of readers. This guideline, of course, should be applied to all newswriting.

A new approach to teaching science, a new way to correct tests, a novel approach to gym class, or the use of a common teaching device in a different way can all be considered innovations, and as such, they merit news consideration. Obvious questions will be posed by readers when an innovation is announced. The educator must keep these in mind when explaining the introduction of an innovation. For example: How much does it cost? Has it been used elsewhere, and if so, was it effective? How will it help students learn better? Who decided to adopt the innovation? How will it be evaluated? This last question is one that has gained prominence since accountability became a vital part of education.

Evaluation Is News

As accountability continues to gain importance in education, evaluation claims appreciably more attention in overall communications and public relations efforts. Evaluation means tests or some other measures that can be applied to determine if certain approaches or materials are working. Some schools have been making results of standardized tests known to the public for years. Other school administrators cringe at the suggestion of such score sharing with the public. Despite the numerous arguments of those opposed to making evaluations known to the public, the trend is toward disclosure.

The releasing of evaluation information requires a large amount of homework by the school administrator who is inexperienced in this area. Releasing such data without sufficient explanation can severely harm the school's relationship with the community and with the press. Most reporters and most laypersons simply do not understand the terminology used by educators in the field of testing. However, those same reporters and readers are intently interested in what the tests or other evaluations show about their schools. The help of a guidance or testing expert can ensure a fuller explanation. Yet, this is not enough. Just as important is the involvement of someone who understands the kinds of questions that reporters and laypersons will ask. By anticipating these questions, the educator can prepare a news release or an in-depth series that provides information that people want to read.

Most readers will not enjoy statistic after statistic. More important would be an explanation of what the statistics mean or what the options are. For example, when evaluations are being published, school officials can use the opportunity to focus on programs and materials that are needed to improve a certain phase of instruction. If the educator doesn't offer possible solutions to obvious problems, laypersons will

conclude that the educator lacks the answer. It is better to take the offensive in this situation rather than to react defensively later to the inevitable criticisms.

Controversy Is News

Educators generally overreact to school news that is controversial or negative. Yet people enjoy reading about controversy, and if readers want it, newspapers will print it. School officials can use this knowledge to their benefit by preparing news articles about the schools that show both sides of a story. This kind of news release is quickly accepted by editors and is well read by taxpayers. It shows that educators do consider more than one approach to solving a problem. A good example of showing alternatives that could be controversial would be the possible ways to close schools in response to falling enrollment. By explaining the various strengths and weaknesses of each possibility in some detail, school officials can demonstrate that various solutions have been considered.

Money Is News

An increase in school taxes is always news because it involves the money of many taxpayers. Thus, newspapers will constantly seek information about school undertakings that seem to cost more money than others. Reporters have been trained to seek specifics regarding the new school budget or a proposed referendum for a new building. Educators who give the impression of trying to dodge legitimate questions from reporters in these areas will suffer a credibility problem. Thus, it's imperative that school officials prepare elaborate explanations of budget requests for reporters.

If possible, translate dollars into programs. For example, if two new speech therapists are being requested in a budget, explain in a news release that the two therapists will enable *X* children to improve their speech habits. Explain specifically what two new people, if approved, will do to improve the overall educational offerings of the school system. And after the therapists have been on the job for a while, don't forget about them. Issue a news release showing what the extra $50,000 in the budget has produced in terms of learning. Taxpayers like to see what their money has bought.

New Positions Are News

Every time a new position is established, a lengthy explanation of the rationale for establishing it should be provided in a news release. How will this position help students? Why couldn't the responsibility be assumed by someone now on the staff? What kinds of specific responsibilities will the person have? Do similar positions exist in comparable school systems? How will the position improve education in the school system?

When every tax dollar counts, school officials must be ready to justify the creation of a new position. The most effective way is to show, before the person is appointed to the position, how the job will enable the schools to do certain things better. This should be done before it appears as if the administration is on the defensive.

TYPES OF STORIES

Newspaper stories are usually divided into two types: the hard (or straight) news story and the feature story. Columns, photographic stories, editorials, letters to the editor, and fillers are other important ways to get school information in newspapers.

The News Story

The hard (or straight) news story is a straightforward account of a happening. It presents the facts in an objective way, and the style is impersonal, direct, and uncolored. It answers the standard questions of *who, what, why, when,* and *where* about an event or happening. Some stories require inclusion of the *how* to complete the story. Details of the story are arranged in decreasing order of importance. This is done because editors seldom have enough space to run the entire story as presented. Frequently, stories must be shortened, and the easiest way is to omit the last paragraph or the last two or three. This points out the necessity of placing the most important facts early in the story.

The straight news story can be of different types. It can be an advance story, which tells as much as possible about an upcoming event. It can be a cover story, which relates in detail what took place at the event. This usually is reported the same day the event took place or on the day after. The follow-up

story could report reactions of those attending the event and ideas they have implemented as a result of having attended the event.

The Feature Story

The feature story presents factual information but does so in an interesting and lively way, frequently with a human interest touch. Although the feature story is considered more difficult to write than the hard news story, the feature does allow the writer to be more creative. It also permits emotional content and perspective to be included in the story. Built around some unique aspect of an event or a personality, it is designed to evoke a smile or laugh, to appeal to the imagination, or to stir the emotions of the reader. The supply of feature stories in any school is limited only by the number of people and ideas available. Some topics for feature stories might be a day in the life of a teacher, the first day of school for a kindergarten child, the role of the school secretary, reactions of first-graders to their trip to an orchard, a pen-pal relationship of students with students in a foreign country, unusual projects undertaken by science class students, views of eighth-graders regarding career education, or a comparison of today's sophomores with those of twenty years ago as seen by teachers who taught both groups.

The Special Column

The newspaper column is an often overlooked vehicle for communicating school news. The column can be used in two ways: either by providing information to newspaper columnists or by school personnel writing a regular column. Local weekly newspapers will often welcome a column written by the superintendent. Such a column allows opinion and provides a constant opportunity to inform readers about topics of the superintendent's choosing. Newspaper columnists are always looking for topics. They constantly face deadlines and always appreciate having the embryo of a story idea. Every columnist faces days when the ideas are scarce, and a call from a school official suggesting a column topic would be greatly appreciated on such a day. To enhance the chance of making the suggestion that results in a column, the educator should read all area or local columnists' writings to recognize the kinds of stories that might appeal to each writer.

Editorials

The editorial is a type of story in which opinions are expressed by the newspaper on public questions. On most large daily newspapers, editorials are written without the input of local educators. However, reporters' opinions are sometimes sought, and if the reporters have good rapport with educators, solid, helpful information can be provided to the editorial writers. In some instances, editorial writers will contact local education leaders for information before writing education editorials. The public's right to know about school issues, bond issues, career education, reading methods, accountability, test scores, student militancy, and teacher rights makes all these good subjects for editorials. Like all writers who face daily deadlines, editorial writers occasionally experience days when ideas come slowly. An occasional suggestion from an educator, with accompanying accurate information, would usually be accepted and used.

Consider preparing a column or article for the page opposite the editorial page. This allows an opportunity to offer opinions.

The weekly newspaper, unlike the large daily, will usually gratefully accept editorial ideas. Some newspapers, in fact, will go so far as to run editorials on education topics written by local school officials. It is incumbent on school officials, in this case, to be accurate at all times to protect the reputation of the newspaper and the school.

Letters to the Editor

Letters to the editor are views expressed by readers on questions of current interest, published by newspapers under such titles as "Voices of the People," "What People Think," and "Letters to the Editor." These letters rank high in reader interest. Letters to the editor have several uses in the school's newspaper publicity campaign. One use is to evaluate school interests of some people in the community. Although not necessarily representative of the community's thinking, letters to the editor do indicate how some people feel about certain school officials.

Letters to the editor also provide an excellent opportunity for expressing appreciation for services rendered to the school. Municipal officials who speak to classes on government, parents who help in a study of school building needs, or civic groups who cooperate in a scholarship program can be publicly thanked in this fashion. The general public can be thanked by school officials for attendance at school functions or for participation in some special school undertaking. The administrator will find that it pays to write a letter now and then commending the newspaper for fine coverage of significant school events and happenings.

Occasionally, a school official may wish to correct an error in the newspaper or respond to criticism with a letter to the editor. This decision, however, must be made on the individual merits of each case. Most school public relations practitioners agree that a verbal battle in the letters-to-the-editor section seldom increases public confidence in educators. If the chief school administrator, for example, challenges a critic, the general public will usually side with the underdog against the public official. There are times, however, when a letter to the editor is in order. An example would be if a citizen's letter to the editor accused a drama coach of pocketing funds from student plays. If such an accusation is false, the administrator should explain the disposition of the money in a letter to the editor. Under no circumstances, however, should school officials take up serious criticisms or attempt to meet destructive attacks through letters to the editor. There are better ways to solve such problems without running the risk of engaging in open conflict that does little more than stir animosity and sell newspapers.

Filler

A seldom used but effective means of telling the school story is through the use of filler. Filler consists of brief statements that newspapers employ to fill columns when their stories are slightly short. Instead of a blank space appearing, the newspaper will insert a filler. Usually fillers are purchased from news services and are used with little or no thought given to their content. In fact, filler selections are ordinarily made by their length rather than by what they have to say. Filler items, as prepared by the news services, are usually of little or no interest to local readers. For example, the fillers might note an increase in gin consumption in the United States in the past year.

Most local newspapers would be pleased to receive and use filler prepared by the local schools. Filler items should be brief, double-spaced, ranging from two to six typewritten lines. They should contain a headline that would fit in one column of the local newspaper in the point size used by that newspaper for such items. The content can include just about any information about the schools, local or national. Of course, local items are preferred by the newspapers. However, sometimes national items can be used with a local tie-in. Filler of this nature tends to keep the schools in the news and also serves as a plus for internal public relations. Many of the ideas submitted for news stories do not merit a news release, yet they can be used for filler.

Here is an example of a filler that a school system could use.

> **Books Increase**
>
> A larger enrollment required more textbooks in the Blankville Schools. This year some 52,000 texts are being used by 8,400 students.

Fillers are used by fewer papers each year as more publishers convert to computer-generated publications. Check with editors to see if they still use filler.

NEWS SOURCES

News is found everywhere in the school system. There is never a scarcity of it. For every story published, a dozen more could be written containing important information. A checklist, like the following, indicates sources from which stories may be drawn. If the checklist is developed with the aid of professional reporters, it will be richer in ideas and practical suggestions, besides having the further value of familiarizing the reporters with the makeup and operation of the school system. Referring to the checklist leads to better copy and broader coverage.

Checklist of News Sources

Administrative Activities
- Board meetings
- Board actions
- Board members
- Board elections
- Board officers
- Speaking engagements
- Programs under consideration
- Speeches made
- Recognitions received
- New administrators
- Surveys conducted
- Changes in organization
- Choosing which school to attend
- Cost of education
- Record systems
- School budget
- Decline in number of employees
- Interviews with board members
- Interviews with administrators
- School calendar
- Web site enhancements
- Research studies
- Educational needs
- Long-range challenges
- Attendance at conferences
- Participation in community projects

Classroom Activities
- Field trips and excursions
- Methods of teaching
- Curriculum study
- Curriculum changes
- Testing programs
- Results of testing
- Special study projects
- Exhibits
- Demonstrations
- New instructional materials
- Textbook selection
- Library references
- New equipment
- Trends in teaching practices
- Promotion policies
- New techniques and devices
- Work of supervisors
- Homework policies
- Evaluating pupil progress
- Parent participation
- Provision for children with disabilities
- Guidance suggestions
- Course offeringsEducational objectives
- Humorous incidents
- Unusual happenings
- Success stories of individual children
- Character development

Community Activities
- Services to community
- Use of community resources
- Citizen participation in school program
- School–community projects
- Staff participation in community affairs
- Cooperation with community groups
- Community surveys and opinion polls

Activities of Graduates
- Business success
- Special awards and honors
- Reunions
- Acts of valor
- Success in college
- Contributions to school
- Alumni programs
- Marriages and births
- Opinions on school questions
- Citizenship activities
- Participation in community affairs
- Services to community
- Vocational outlook
- Work after school

Staff Activities
- Scholarships, awards, and special honors
- New members
- Exchange teachers
- Summer activities
- Acts of bravery
- Leaves of absence
- Professional interests
- Avocational interests
- In-service education
- Attendance at conferences
- Activities in community
- Retirement

- Visiting educators
- Rewards of teaching
- Special talents
- Offices in professional organizations
- Books and articles written
- Promotions
- Biographical material
- Deaths
- Speeches
- Donations to charity

Parent Activities
- Parent–teacher association programs
- Services to the school
- Conferences with parents
- Participation in school
- Special parent projects
- Parent publications
- Officers of parent–teacher association
- Attendance at educational conferences

Plant Activities
- New building construction
- New building financing
- New building locations
- Sale of a building
- Features of new buildings
- Community use of buildings
- Special recreation programs for adults
- Building maintenance
- New installations
- Dedicatory exercises
- Safety measures
- Renovations and extensions

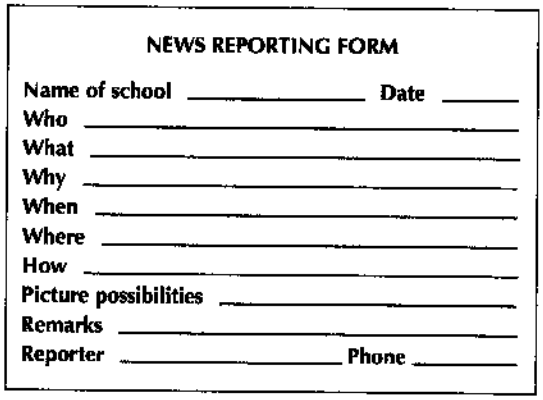
Pupil Activities
- Academic achievement
- Career education
- Scholarships, awards, and special honors
- Hobby interests
- Success in special fields
- Outstanding talent
- School clubs
- Musical programs
- Athletic events
- Various contests
- Assembly programs
- Student council
- Pageants and festivals
- Good deeds and acts of valor
- Attendance
- Graduation exercises
- Special projects
- Opening of school
- Donations to charity
- Speeches

Special Activities
- Open-house programs
- Observances—birthdays, holidays, special weeks
- Operation of cafeteria
- History of school
- Demonstrations and exhibits
- School bus service
- Visits by celebrities
- Guidance facilities
- Drives and campaigns
- Outstanding graduate selects teacher who influenced life
- Research projects
- Health measures
- Teaching homebound pupils
- School camp

NEWS ORGANIZATIONS

No matter whether a school system is large or small, some form of organization is necessary to provide news. In larger systems, news responsibility is usually divided between a communications director and the individual principals. The person responsible for communications or community relations may be known by a variety of titles. Among them are assistant superintendent in charge of communications and coordinator (or director) of community relations, public information, or public relations. The person responsible for handling communications is generally charged with news originating from the board of education or central administration. In addition, this person provides leadership for other departments and personnel, helping them understand what news is and how to get it to the media.

The communications person also arranges interviews with key school personnel and builds rapport with reporters and editors. To help identify news



NEWS REPORTING FORM

Name of school _____ Date _____
Who _____
What _____
Why _____
When _____
Where _____
How _____
Picture possibilities _____
Remarks _____
Reporter _____ Phone _____

FIGURE 11.1 Form for news reporting.

stories, he or she usually develops a news-collecting network; to do this, each principal appoints someone in the building to work with the communications person. Frequently this person is a teacher. In some school systems, the principal sends the information or news release to local media with a copy to the public relations director. In other systems, all news is sent to the public relations person, who then filters it or embellishes it before sending it to the media. This process is commonly used in many school districts. To encourage teachers and other employees to suggest news, easy-to-use forms are placed near staff mailboxes (see Figure 11.1) and the "it's just as easy as a phone call" approach is used. This approach ensures coverage of all schools in the system, immediate reports of stories that break, and the professional treatment of releases.

If the director of community relations is employed on a part-time basis, then he or she may find it expedient to turn the material from building representatives over to a high school English or journalism class, especially in cases where news is compiled weekly for a school page in the local newspaper. Members of the class edit the material and write releases under the guidance of the teacher, who is often the person in charge of community relations. Copy is checked for news content and style of presentation, and the better stories are selected for publication. Important news from administrative offices is taken care of by the director of community relations.

It is common in small districts for the superintendent or supervising principal to serve as the news representative for the school system. Success in publicizing and interpreting the educational program depends on a sense for news, the ability to write interesting copy, and the time invested in the work.

GETTING THE NEWS TO THE PRESS

Various ways exist to get news stories to the press. Included are the news release, the fact sheet, the news memo, and the news conference. The last method, the news conference, has already been considered. Of the other methods, the news release is the most common approach to getting news stories in the papers.

News Release

News releases traditionally have been mailed to the news media. In certain special situations, urgent news releases may be hand-delivered or sent by courier.

New technologies, however, are changing the ways in which some media prefer to get news releases. More and more reporters want e-mail versions. Others prefer faxes, especially in breaking-news situations. Still others may prefer to pick up news releases that you post on your Web site.

If you want to send news releases to a variety of sources nationally, consider using newswire services. Two of them are (1) Business Wire, 40 East 52 Street, New York, New York 10022; Web site: www.businesswire.com, and (2) PR Newswire, 810 Seventh Avenue, New York, New York 10019; Web site: www.prnewswire.com.

Preparing News Releases

Editors assign more space to school news when releases conform to press standards. The standards take into consideration style of writing, quality of writing, and the mechanical makeup of the copy. Many editors will confess that they use some stories that are not as good in content as some they reject. Why? Simply because those accepted were received in a style that enabled them to be used with a minimum of editing. This is especially true with small weekly newspapers and understaffed daily newspapers, where rewrite time is a scarce com-

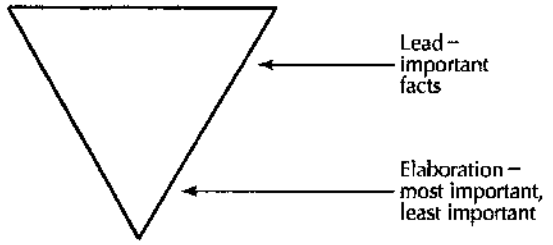


FIGURE 11.2 The inverted pyramid style.

modity. Editors are busy people who receive a large number of news releases daily. Seldom do they have time to read every release from start to finish. Thus, the first rule for writing an effective news release is to put the key news in the first paragraph. This will attract readers and will also gain the attention of the editor.

Most newspaper articles, especially hard news stories, are written in what is called the inverted pyramid style (see Figure 11.2). The most important elements of the story are told in the first or lead paragraph, with each succeeding paragraph being somewhat less important than the one before it. The story has no climax or conclusion. Stories are written in this style because many readers read only the headline and the lead. Also, as noted previously, this style allows the editor to cut the story at any point and know that the least important paragraphs are being lost.

The lead paragraph usually answers some of the following: who, what, where, when, why, and how. However, not all of these questions can always be covered in a lead. A common error of the novice is to try to cram all of this information into one sentence, which becomes a marathon challenge to any reader. Most good leads are written in fewer than 30 words; in fact, most readers prefer leads of 20 words or fewer. In writing a hard-news lead, emphasis is usually placed on the single fact or aspect of the story that is likely to have the strongest reader appeal. In feature stories, the lead varies with the writer and the nature of the material. In either type, the lead can make or break a story, no matter what information follows it. The writing of a concise, forceful lead is an art that requires a sound sense of news and much practice. One way to sharpen lead-writing ability is to read good newspapers and focus on their leads. Here are two leads that present facts concisely:

> A new reading program designed to upgrade reading achievement of Blankville's students was announced last night by Superintendent of Schools Harvey Jones.

> Enough spaghetti to stretch from Chicago to Green Bay was served in Blankville's school cafeterias yesterday.

The second example could be an unusual lead for a story about the school lunch program. Students might have been involved in determining how much spaghetti was served and how far the spaghetti would stretch if laid end to end. Having attracted the editor's (and reader's) attention, the educator could continue the story to elaborate on the school lunch offerings and the nutritional aspects of the program. Contrast this lead with those routinely submitted by most schools, such as this one:

> During the first fiscal quarter of this school year, a large number of Type A lunches were served to students in both the elementary and secondary schools of Blankville, according to Superintendent of Schools Harvey Jones and Food Services Director William Smith.

The reaction of most readers would justifiably be "Who cares?" It might be fine to explain how many such lunches were served, what the Type A lunch is, and why it is nutritionally sound to provide such lunches. But this information should come later in the story, and it should be written in an interesting way.

Here are additional examples of effective leads:

> Local high-school students will meet with the mayor at 11 a.m., Monday, in the Council chambers to plan a workshop on city government.

This lead is considered a conventional one, giving the basic who, what, when, where, and why information. While this lead has been traditionally acceptable, the newspaper would make for monotonous reading if every lead were presented in the same style. Variety is necessary for the newspaper; it's also vital for the success of the person writing news releases.

What do high-school students know about their government?

The question lead can be effective, especially when it involves the reader. Some readers will find themselves answering the question. This entices them to read more to see if their answers agree with those presented in the story. Other readers will continue reading after the lead to learn the answer to the problem.

> "We want to know where our tax money will be going so we're meeting with the mayor," said James Buren, president of Blankville High School's Student Council.

The quote lead makes the story come alive from the beginning. It seems to add a dimension to the story. In fact, using quotes throughout news releases, when appropriate, provides a certain liveliness that encourages readers to continue reading.

> High school students may be turned on most by rock groups—but they're also interested in their city government.

The contrast lead, which can be effectively used with feature stories especially, provides a change of thought that may entice the reader to read a story he or she would otherwise ignore.

Whether the lead features one news element or another depends on the nature of the story. For example, if the governor declared that school building costs must be cut, the who element would be emphasized because of the governor's prominence. If a similar statement came from a school board member, the stress might well be placed on the effects of the proposed cuts for local taxpayers.

The lead is followed by the body of the story. The body consists of one or more paragraphs explaining the facts. The details are arranged in order of importance, thus making chronological treatment seldom feasible. Paragraphs should not be too long because they become cumbersome for the reader's eye when put in one column in the newspaper. One typewritten line could well become as many as three lines of type in the newspaper column. Thus, the typewritten paragraph of 10 lines necessitates the editor's getting the pencil out simply to save the appearance of the paper. Too many long paragraphs make the paper appear too gray.

It is not necessary to worry about smooth transitions when writing hard news. It is more important to limit the paragraphs to 5 or 6 typewritten lines. For a change of pace, there is nothing wrong with a one-sentence paragraph. Many effective leads are just that—a one-sentence paragraph.

Quality of Writing

Newspapers want copy in clear, concise, simple language. Editors do not want to sift through the pompous writing of the educator who is trying to impress rather than trying to communicate. Here are some tips to help school officials who are preparing news releases. Much of this information can be applied to letter writing and writing for school publications.

USE FAMILIAR WORDS THAT ARE EASILY UNDERSTOOD BY READERS

Using comfortable words indicates that educators understand their audience and are writing for them. The use of long words for short ones tends to make the release more difficult to read. For example, use *total* instead of *aggregate*. When *use* fits, use it instead of *utilize*. One of the enemies of clear writing is the persistent use of words with more than three syllables.

AVOID JARGON

Educators generally use too many "in-words" that only other educators are comfortable reading and speaking. Be alert to educational terminology and explain it if it's used. Although educators will understand *modular scheduling*, *accountability*, *team teaching*, and *percentile*, the average reader will resent these terms being sprinkled in written material aimed at laypeople.

USE SHORT, SIMPLE SENTENCES FOR THE MOST PART

Although sentences should vary in length and kind, most sentences should be of the subject–verb–object kind. This allows the main thought to be communicated without phrases and clauses getting in the way. Most journalists say it another way: Limit each sentence to one idea. A key roadblock to easy reading is the long sentence. A series of long sentences makes the reader work too hard to get the writer's message.

And in an era with so many competing messages, the writer who wants to be read must communicate as effectively as possible.

USE ACTION VERBS AS MUCH AS POSSIBLE

Check releases for the overuse of the verb *is* and other forms of *to be*. Substitute stronger verbs that communicate action and a sense of movement when possible. Too many educators insist on writing in the passive voice. When overdone, this communicates a stodgy stiffness and encourages readers to look elsewhere for interesting reading. Editors will change passive voice writing to active in most cases. For example, don't write, "The bill was received by the superintendent and payment on it was made by the board." Instead, say, "The superintendent received the bill, and the board paid it."

IDENTIFY PEOPLE WHEN THEIR NAMES ARE USED

Give full names, not just last names. If a staff member has a certain responsibility that relates to the story, give the title and responsibility. Too many educators take this a step further and insist on giving early in a story credit to all who worked on an undertaking. Readers are seldom concerned with the names and titles of the people who helped develop a program as much as they care about what the program offers, how it will be implemented, and how much it will cost. Give credit, certainly, but later in the story.

PERSONALIZE THE MESSAGE

Whenever it is possible to involve the reader in a story, do so. Relating an article to an experience the reader had is an effective way to make a story warmer. For example, an announcement of the expansion of guidance services might start with reference to school services that were missing 30 years ago but are now offered. Or a new approach to teaching mathematics might be introduced with a lead that involves the reader. For example, "Remember when you memorized how many rods are in an acre or pecks in a bushel?" The reader will usually be stirred by such a lead and will continue to read. The article could then explain why such memorization has been discarded and what kind of new approach has been substituted.

DON'T MAKE JUDGMENTS

Avoid adjectives that are someone's judgments or opinions unless, of course, they appear in a quote that is attributed to that someone. A statement in a release that lauds the school's "excellent" science program should only be made if the person calling it excellent is identified. Using such adjectives marks the school official as a novice in news release writing; the good editor will cross them out.

MECHANICS OF THE NEWS RELEASE

Newspaper editors use a style sheet or style book to prepare their copy. This guideline allows reporters to be consistent in writing certain words. For example, some newspapers spell out the word *street* when it appears as part of an address; other newspapers prefer to abbreviate the word. Knowing the style of the newspapers can enable school officials to prepare copy the way editors want it—a definite advantage in the overall news release program. Although newspapers differ somewhat on technical requirements for abbreviation, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling, most agree on the following standards for written news releases:

- The story should be prepared on white or light paper, 8 1/2-by-11 inches in size..
- The releases should be typed, double-spaced, on one side of the paper only.
- The date that the story is being sent and the date it is to be released should appear at the top of the page.
- The name of the person sending the release, the person to contact for more information, and the school name and address and telephone numbers should appear at the top of the first page. The home telephone number of the press relations person should be included.
- Copy should begin about one-third of the way down the page so that enough space is available for the editor to write in a headline. The editor might also use this space to write comments for the staff to follow up on the story.
- Limit the release to one or two pages unless unusual circumstances are present.

OTHER METHODS

The Fact Sheet

In addition to the news release, news can be presented to newspapers in the form of a fact sheet. This technique is effective if the newspaper has sufficient staff to spend the time to convert the facts to a story. Ordinarily, the small weekly newspaper will not appreciate the fact sheet because staff time to write the story is scarce.

A check with editors will enable school officials to determine if the fact sheet idea is workable. If the person responsible for getting news to the press has little time to prepare such information, the fact sheet could allow him or her to provide more news information in a shorter time. Fact sheet forms can be available in key locations in all schools. They would be completed by staff members and sent to the school news official, who would make necessary changes and forward them to the press.

The Phone Call

Often overlooked by school officials as a way to get news in the papers is the phone call. Perhaps school officials feel more secure with a copy of the release in front of them, or perhaps they just never considered the phone call. Whatever the reason, many good stories have been lost because educators failed to get the information to the press on time.

A phone call giving key statements made at a public meeting usually will prompt a story in the newspaper. The same comments submitted two days later are stale. In fact, this kind of rapid reporting provides much additional coverage in daily newspapers that don't have enough reporters to attend all meetings.

So it comes back to this idea of having the public relations person guide the media to the best spokesperson for each situation. It also depends on helping all school officials understand that at times they will have work directly with the news media and offering them the training and support needed to succeed in that job.

School Public Relations Leader Tim Carroll Talks about Schools and the News Media

Tim Carroll, APR, has served as Director of Public Information for the Allen Independent School District in suburban Dallas since 1995. Prior to that, he held a similar position for 14 years with the Penn-Harris-Madison Schools, located near South Bend, Indiana. He has over 20 years of experience managing community education and outreach programs for school districts. He also teaches as adjunct faculty in the communications department at Texas A&M University at Commerce.

How have media coverage and relationships between the new media and schools changed recently?

There has been a bigger shift in the workings between the media and schools in the last few years than at any time in my career. The biggest change I've observed in recent years is that a majority of news gathering is now being done from a central location. The old system was designed with a beat reporter assigned to cover the school district. We would have two or three media outlets covering a typical school system. The reporters would regularly call with questions and we would send them news releases to keep them informed about school events.

The electronic age has created a process where news is posted on the Web site and the media can pick and choose from those postings. As more news and data are posted online, there is less contact with media representatives. One person can scan numerous school-district sites for news.

At the same time the media, especially newspapers, have consolidated their staffs. Instead of having a beat reporter covering one or two school districts, it's not uncommon to have a reporter covering many different school systems in a region. One result is that you don't see reporters as much as you once did. In this new system, news coverage in person usually comes when bad things happen. The "good news" covers itself when it is posted online.

Trend reporting also has become more common. So instead of investigating or watching one school system, the media look more for trends or issues that might be investigated or covered in a number of schools systems. This results in more special reports and trend types of news coverage, such as test cheating or bus

safety, for example. Editors ask reporters to cast a net over all the schools with a question to see what they catch. This creates more Freedom of Information requests and less personal interaction.

The old golden rule in media relations was to establish a good relationship with that one reporter covering your school system. What is the golden rule now that coverage has become more centralized? Do relationships still count in school and media relations?

Absolutely, relationships still count. If you are 1 of 15 school officials dealing with a reporter on news issues, knowing that person by name and having a good working relationship with that person is essential to performing your job. Relationships also help reporters better understand how issues being reported on really affect your school system.

Using the example of a bus safety news piece—if you have a good relationship with that reporter you can spend time helping that reporter understand the real issues when it comes to safety. You are in a better position to explain side topics like funding and state legislation.

A good school public relations person can use relationships to help reporters do their jobs better. This also pays benefits when less flattering news coverage comes your way. Reporters are more likely to get both sides of a story when they can trust their source. Give them as much insight and information as you can—and give them ideas of other stories or ways to cover issues they are interested in.

If relationships count—and relationships take time to develop—how can people just starting to work with the media on behalf of their schools be effective?

There are so many facets to the public relations role in schools—everything from taking pictures, to writing backgrounders, to preparing Web content and so on—that it can be very easy to get lost in these details and forget the importance of beginning to develop good personal relationships with the people you have to work with. It's easy to fall into the trap of posting news releases and never calling a reporter. As a result, you fail to build a relationship with the people who can impact your organization's image the most.

One of the biggest dangers when you are new to the field is becoming overwhelmed by the variety of tasks you have. Don't resort to just cranking out news materials. Call reporters, get to know them, and talk to them about the issues they have an interest in.

The simple answer is "Yes." A good school public relations person needs to become a broker for spokespeople who can best meet the needs of the school system and the media.

Some textbooks will advise you to have a single spokesperson. This can be true in some situations such as a crisis that's getting considerable coverage and you need to be presenting a clear and consistent message.

There are times when other people may have more credibility as a spokesperson than the school public relations person or even the superintendent.

One way to decide on a spokesperson is to ask yourself who parents might want to hear from on the issue. If you are releasing new test scores, the superintendent or some other key administrator might do a much more credible job of explaining the scores and what they mean than a public relations person or some other official. But if you have a gas leak at a neighborhood school and you have to evacuate the campus, the school principal most likely is the person that parents and others would like to hear from. In a situation such as this, it might be better to see the principal on TV, standing in front of the school, reassuring people that everything is under control and the kids are safe.

At other times, when reporters need background information on broader issues they are investigating, the school public relations person might be the best resource for reporters.[3]

Questions

1. Would you ever go off the record with a reporter? If so, why? If not, why not?
2. What are five areas in which a school official looks when trying to uncover good news about schools to share with the news media?
3. How would you decide who might be the best school district spokesperson for a particular issue?
4. Why is it crucial to develop good media relationships, and how can school public relations officials work to develop such relationships?
5. What are the key characteristics of good writing that are essential when preparing media materials?

Readings

Blair, Julie, *Building Bridges with the Press: A Guide for Educators*. Bethesda, MD: Education Week Press, 2004.

Doty, Dorothy, *Publicity and Public Relations*, 2nd ed. Hauppauge, NY: Barron, 2001.

Howard, Carole M., and Wilma K. Mathews, *On Deadline: Managing Media Relations*, 4th ed. Prospect Heights, IL: Waveland Press, 2006.

Newsom, Doug, Judy Vandyke Turk, and Dean Kruckeberg, *This Is PR: The Realities of Public Relations*, 10th ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2009.

Smith, Ronald D., *Becoming a Public Relations Writer*, 3rd ed. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum, 2007.

Wilcox, Dennis, *Public Relations Writing and Media Techniques*, 6th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2009.

Endnotes

1. Julie Blair, *Building Bridges with the Press: A Guide for Educators* (Bethesda, MD: Education Week Press, 2004), p. 7.
2. Belmont Mercer Farley, "What to Tell People about the Public Schools" (New York: Bureau of Publications, Teachers College, Columbia University, 1929), p. 1.
3. Taken from correspondence in January 2010 with Tim Carroll, APR, Director of Public Information for the Allen Independent School District, Allen, TX.

Chapter

12

Radio, Television, Exhibits, and Presentations

Although most studies indicate that newspapers and students are among the main sources of information about schools, some school districts have found that a local radio or television station is the prime vehicle for communicating school information to area residents. Even in places where stations cover large geographical areas, encompassing many school districts, schools can occasionally capitalize on the availability of news and public service time to communicate key messages.

In addition to radio and television, presentations, videos, and displays can play important roles in a school's communication efforts. A presentation or video with impact, and an attention-capturing exhibit can contribute effectively to a school–community relations program. All have one trait in common—they require a certain amount of expertise to put over their messages.

Because of this requirement, some school officials hesitate to use these audiovisual media. Yet the impact of such efforts can be well worth the investment of time and money. Many audiences not reached by written communications may appreciate a message carried by an exhibit or a video. The potential impact of well-devised and attractively prepared video or presentation is still to be felt as a way for schools to create stronger citizen interest in education.

USING RADIO

Radio stations play a vital role in the overall distribution of news. Because of the immediacy of radio, opportunities abound for providing almost instant information as well as for dispelling rumors and correcting misinformation. Radio is a mobile medium, allowing people to listen while working, driving, or relaxing. Messages can sometimes be communicated to people listening to the radio who would otherwise miss the message. People who would not take the time to read a newsletter or story in the newspaper or come to a meeting might very well receive a radio message. Thus, it is important for school officials to know how to take advantage of radio opportunities.

From Chapter 12 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

Broadcasts may serve any one of a number of school purposes, such as those that follow:

- To educate the public more fully on the work of the school
- To introduce new policies and practices
- To invite community cooperation in school improvements
- To awaken community interest and concern for public education
- To explain the need for more financial support
- To assist the classroom teacher in instruction.

Radio is one of the most selective of the mass media in that stations seldom aim their programming at the total available listening audience. Their orientation is toward the saturation of specific audience groups—teenagers, young adults, farmers, the news-hungry, the religion-oriented, and that popular group broadcasters term "middle-of-the-roaders."

Because schools frequently strive to be different things to different people, selective use of the appropriate message on the appropriate station at the right time can produce significant results. Thus, school officials should be aware of the various stations serving the school district's listening audience that can best be reached by each station. By directing specific announcements or information at a particular station, educators might communicate with a large number of those people for whom the message was intended. For example, a 60-second announcement encouraging high school dropouts to return to school would probably be most effective on the stations aiming at the high school audience. Yet an announcement that senior citizens can obtain a school district Golden Age Card for use at school events might be better directed at a station that aims for the older audience.

Advantages of Radio for Schools

Radio, in contrast to television, has smaller, more defined audiences and appreciably lower production costs. It is therefore practical for school purposes. Some advantages of using radio as a channel for school communication include

It's immediate. If children must be sent home because the heating system went awry, radio can inform many people quickly.

It's comfortable. Large numbers of people will listen to school news if it is interestingly presented. Radio permits listeners to learn about the schools while allowing them to do other things simultaneously.

It's quick. Most stations limit the time they give to any one topic on the news. Thus, providing information for the radio usually means capsulizing only the main points of the story.

It's easy. Most radio stations are extremely cooperative, and radio personnel will often work to help school officials learn how to prepare materials for radio.

It's focused. Narrowly defined audiences can be reached with radio, making it more likely a specific message will reach a particular audience.

It's captive. Some audience members are confined to a limited space, such as those in cars, making it easier to reach them.

Knowing How to Use Area Stations

A district planning to use radio should start by conducting a survey of stations heard by local audiences. School officials, while driving back and forth to work, can determine the needed information. They should listen for the basic format of stations, paying particular attention to message length, editorial biases, target audiences, and depth of news coverage. Listening during "drive time" ensures school officials that they are hearing stations at their best since radio is most popular during Monday through Friday rush hours. By gaining this kind of information about each station, school officials will be better able to prepare messages for specific stations.

Radio stations offer a wide range of opportunities for schools, including the following:

Spot announcements. Short 10-, 20-, 30-, and 60-second announcements can be information giving or can be appeals for support for special school undertakings. They can be succinct interviews with various staff members, or they can be a series of quick comments from students and staff members about a topic of general concern. The shorter the show (or spot), the better the chance of its being used.

HOW SCHOOLS MAKE RADIO WORK

The Topeka, Kansas, Unified School District has produced a 10-minute radio show, "Super Talk," every week for the past 10 years. The show is taped at the district's administrative offices with Brad Stauffer, director of communications, interviewing the superintendent. Copies of the tapes are dubbed and delivered to participating stations.

The time a program is aired can have a major impact on its success. Initially, "Super Talk" was broadcast at 8:30 or 8:45 A.M. on a weekday. It has since been bumped to 5 A.M. Saturday and 12:15 P.M. Sunday slots. Stauffer said the district received many more comments on the program before it was moved to the weekends.

One mid-sized northeast Kansas town used a series of radio programs to help successfully pass a referendum. The superintendent was interviewed by the station manager; then listeners called in their questions.

Source: Cindy Horchem and G. Kent Stewart, œGetting Your Message on the Air," *The School Administrator* (Web Edition). Arlington, VA: American Association of School Administrators, September 1999.

Newscasts. Stories to be used in newscasts must have solid news value. In preparing such material for radio, remember that only a short time (perhaps 20 seconds) will be given to the story.

Infomercials. Regularly scheduled short announcements, or "factoids," can develop a regular audience for education-oriented information.

Questions of the day. A teaser question on a topic of interest can be presented to the audience as part of another announcement or program. The answer would be offered later in the program or at the end of the spot announcement.

Sports programs. Local stations will sometimes broadcast school football, basketball, or other games.

Music programs. There is public interest in school bands, choruses, and other musical groups. Special shows are sometimes taped, especially during the holiday season. If properly informed, local stations might consider taping a brief segment of a musical presentation to use in their regular programming.

Discussion programs. A good panel show on a topic of general interest can be attractive to stations. Roundtables and debates, if properly planned, can be fast-paced and interesting. Topics and participants must be carefully selected.

Dramatic programs and documentaries. Student-produced dramatic productions and special in-depth programs that probe strengths and weaknesses of a specific school topic can serve the community and show that the schools are providing service to a public other than those actually attending the schools.

Talk and interview shows. Here more than ever the topics and guests must be chosen with great care. A deadly speaker whose monotone lulls listeners to sleep—or chases them to another station—hardly encourages station personnel to air similar shows. Teachers and their new approaches in the classrooms are often overlooked for interview shows. Yet they can be extremely informative and stimulating guests, especially inasmuch as many listeners are concerned with what's new or different in the classroom.

Stations responding to a survey said they air the following programs, in addition to the spot announcements and broadcasts mentioned above:

School Forum. A 30-minute weekly program hosted by the district's school–community relations director. This show features a different school each week.

Learning Is for Living. A 5-minute program about curricula and activities in the school district.

School Scene. A 30-minute program prepared by and featuring high school students.

Ask the Superintendent. A 30-minute weekly call-in show that allows listeners to pose questions for the superintendent of schools.

School Wrap-up. A weekly 5- to 15-minute show that offers school news and a brief interview of someone in the school district who made news that week.

School Rap-up. A weekly panel show that offers students and others an opportunity to discuss and debate key educational issues, usually from 15 to 30 minutes.

School Today. A 5-minute show that can be used in prime time to discuss current school issues. Most shows can be taped but the opportunity exists to present a live show. This can be effective in an emergency.

The program's format may be adaptable to the needs of the school districts. Other programming ideas might include art, music, and drama, as well as health and science. General topics that could be covered on a radio program would include drug information, budget information, a review of school board action, rumor information, and answers to questions that people are asking about the schools.

A common complaint of radio personnel is the poor choice of speakers made by school officials. Too often the school spokesperson for a radio show is an administrator with an impressive title, but with a monotonous voice and dull vocabulary that are guaranteed to lose listeners. If it is imperative that such a speaker be on the air, someone with radio expertise should develop a format conducive to the best possible presentation of the speaker's strengths.

Radio stations appreciate receiving good programs prepared by the schools. They suggest, though, that schools use professional or semiprofessional equipment. (Many radio stations will be glad to cooperate in making the station's equipment available for taping and will often help with microphone and taping techniques.) It is also vital that programs be timed accurately. If a school-produced show is supposed to run for 28 minutes, it should run for precisely that time. Any deviation could cause problems for the station.

Working with the Radio Station

There are many ways in which school–community relations and radio news can be handled together. All are based on the assumption that most radio stations do not have extensive individual news operations. News departments need a constant flow of material, but they need it packaged as much as possible.

Beginning with a late-breaking hard-news story, most radio news directors will be happy to take copy down in longhand or take copy over the phone. The copy, whether read by the community relations person or played into the phone from a recorded tape, must be ready for radio use—15 to 30 seconds' reading time—when it is called in. Some radio stations run program blocks, usually 15 to 30 minutes, of soft news or background stories. These programs will use 2- or 3-minute tapes that can be prepared in advance and mailed to the appropriate contact person at the station.

A general rule of thumb would be to avoid a commitment to a long, regular program unless there is a great deal happening in the district. Thirty minutes a week can turn out to be a very long time. However, if a district produces a program of this type, it can be taped at the station and do double duty as the basis for feature stories for the print media. Other radio possibilities might involve shorter, student-prepared reports and use of halftime program slots on stations airing the school sports events to publicize other aspects of school life.

A 30-minute call-in show where a school administrator answers questions from the radio audience can be a positive communications opportunity—or liability. The ability of the school officials to handle difficult questions will determine the effectiveness of such an approach.

Here are some additional recommendations set forth by the National Association of Broadcasters in its copyrighted publication *If You Want Air Time:*

1. All types of programming, from 90-minute spectaculars to brief spot announcements, require planning and cooperation with the radio station(s). Teamwork is the key to success in any project.
2. Accept suggestions and constructive criticism. You will be working with experts in a field that is probably foreign to you.

3. Know your limitations. A half-hour interview program might seem ideal for your purpose, but spot announcements, if well produced, can be more effective than a long program which is inadequately prepared.
4. Persons who work for radio stations are usually pressed for time. Do not drop in on them unannounced. Telephone first and set up an appointment.
5. Be on time for a live program or a taping. The clock waits for no one.
6. Submit all program copy and ideas to the program director or station manager as far in advance as possible. Ten days would not be too soon.
7. When writing for radio, use simple, descriptive words that form pictures, give dimension, and add color. Radio reaches only the ear—the listener must be able to sketch in his or her own mind the picture you are trying to create.
8. Make sure all spot announcements are accurately timed. Ten-second spots usually contain 25 words; 30-second spots contain about 75 words; 60-second spots usually contain 150 words.
9. When preparing for a live broadcast or a taping session, accept instructions for proper microphone technique—distance from microphone, voice projection, and how to avoid extraneous noises (paper rustling, chair squeaking, etc.) during the production.
10. After your production has been broadcast, send a letter to station personnel showing your appreciation for their help. This practice will strengthen your relationship with the station and will increase your chances of getting airtime in the future.
11. Let the station know of any reactions you receive about your production. The station tries to serve its community and, therefore, is vitally interested in the responses to the programming it broadcasts.[1]

WRITING FOR RADIO

If time permits, write separate releases for the electronic media. Here are some guidelines for radio news releases. They are basically the same as those for newspapers. However, it must be remembered that radio news is geared toward the ear rather than the eye.

- Write simple spoken English.
- Try to keep one thought to a sentence.
- Try to use the present or present perfect tense.
- Avoid using the word *today*. This will permit news editors to date the story to meet their individual needs.
- Do not use synonyms. Synonyms can confuse the listener.
- Do not use pronouns. Repeat proper names.
- Avoid direct quotes—paraphrasing is safer.
- Always find a way of repeating a location. Repeating the location toward the end of a story is important for the listener.
- Keep adjectives to a minimum. Adjectives tend to clutter speech and obscure the main line of the story.
- Use verbs—do not drop verbs. Listeners need verbs.
- Do not use appositions. Many appositions are not natural to speech. Appositions usually confuse listeners because they cannot see the necessary punctuation.
- Do not start sentences with a prepositional phrase or a participial phrase.
- Give attribution at the beginning of a sentence, not at the end.
- Pinpoint the location. If a release is written to be aired in the same town as the subject of the release, precede the location with "Here in Blanksville . . ." (Example: "The principal of Wilson High School, here in Blanksville, . . .")
- Avoid the first person. Use "first person" only if you, the writer, really mean "you." For instance, when speaking of the school district, do not use *we* or *our*. Simply say, "The Blanksville School District."
- Be conversational. Do not try to be too formal. Choose words that are concise, precise, and grammatically correct.
- Be specific. Do not use vague language or imagery.

• Every release should focus on only one topic or subject. Additional topics should be covered in later releases.

• Use strong action verbs to help the listener visualize the story.

WORKING WITH RADIO PERSONNEL

Here are some general recommendations for dealing with radio stations:

• Try to establish a regular contact at a radio station. This will help create rapport and reinforce credibility.

• Once a relationship with a radio station is established, prepare *evergreen* short features that may be used at any time and *sidebars* that support a more important story. They provide a continuing source of program material and help form professional working relationships with local radio stations.

• Mail releases 10 days prior to an event. Research shows about one-third of the releases received in the mail arrive after the fact because of the uncertainties of the postal system. And if a release arrives too early, it can be forgotten.

• Make releases one page. It's difficult for any newsperson to go through five or six pages of rather dry material looking for the real story buried somewhere in the release.

• Type all copy double- or triple-spaced on $8^1/_2$-by-11-inch paper, using only one side. Start the release one-third of the way down and leave larger margins than usual. This is done so that writers and editors can make notes directly on the release.

• Prepare sharp, legible copies. And run off enough releases so that you can provide extra copies if they are needed.

• Prepare a news and photo memo when someone of importance or prominence is mentioned in the release. Radio stations can use these memos as biographical sketches and reminders of an upcoming event. News and photo memos should let stations know in a thumbnail whether the person is worth a trip to the school for an interview. If the name is difficult to pronounce, provide a phonetic spelling. These memos should be typed on colored paper so that they stand out.

• Team up. The more that schools and organizations become involved in a new project, the more weight a station will assign to it, although many stations will go with the good one-school story, too.

• A sense of timing is important. Do not schedule school events on election day, for example, because station personnel are busy and will probably not cover them.

• When you visit a station, do not ask for a particular person. Just give your release to the news editor. If you ask for a particular person who is off for a few days, your story may not make it on the air because no one opens the other person's mail.

TELEVISION OPPORTUNITIES

As in commercial radio, commercial TV stations give a percentage of their broadcasting schedule to public affairs programs. School-sponsored programs usually fall into this category. Such programs can establish a more direct and almost personal relationship with residents. Local viewers can be shown what a modern school is like and how it functions. Or viewers can be shown why a district needs more money to build, expand, or remodel current facilities.

A TV program dealing with problems of the schools is almost as effective in stimulating thought, discussion, and action as a forceful speaker, panel, or roundtable held in a school auditorium before a live audience.

For the most part, the same kinds of programs that are aired on radio may be aired on TV. In fact, a number of programs are interchangeable. Spot announcements, sports and music programs, discussion and panel shows, and interviews and news releases can serve double duty. Once these spots are produced for TV, the voice tracks can often be extracted from videotape or film and dubbed onto audiotape for use on radio.

GETTING TELEVISION TIME

How do schools get airtime on television? Just as they do on radio, by calling the program or public affairs director and setting up an appointment. If a small station does not have a director coordinating

public service programming, the general manager will usually be helpful. Generally, the basic strategies listed for radio apply to TV.

Independent and cable TV stations in many markets often give schools an opportunity for getting their public affairs programming broadcast.

If a school is producing something longer than a spot announcement, publicity should be given to it so that residents are aware that it is to be carried on a local TV station. And if there are spot announcements that are being aired, they should be placed on as many stations as possible. An overall campaign is advocated, with the school producing spot announcements, ranging from 10 to 60 seconds, and extracting from the voice track. By using videotape, the same announcements can be placed throughout a market on all TV stations accepting them, and the audio portion can be offered to all of the radio stations at the same time. Before preparing copies for television, check with local stations to learn their requirements for tape size and format.

Schools could offer local newspapers the same message in the form of a display ad and ask the newspaper to donate available space. The entire campaign should be reinforced with news releases.

PLANNING FOR EFFECTIVE TELEVISION

As broadcast opportunities present themselves, school officials should be ready. Schools should invest time preparing staff for television appearances.

In its text, *School Public Relations: Building Confidence in Education,* the National School Public Relations Association suggests these basic communication strategies:

- Always prepare for any interview of media appearance. Find out what the interview will cover and gather as much relevant information on the topic as possible.
- Develop key message points. Write key points so you can refer to them during the interview. Be brief and use language that will be memorable. Try to keep points in "sound bites" of only a few seconds.
- Practice "bridge" answers to make key points. Example: "I can't address this specific personnel issue, but what I can tell you is . . ." "But what I can tell you" helps to build a bridge from the question to the answer you can offer.
- Build credibility by answering clearly and factually.
- Get some media training. Practice working in front of a camera or microphone. Review your replies and work on perfecting your delivery.[2]

Once a school has its foot in the door of a television station, it should live up to the arrangements that are made. This means keeping appointments, being on time for rehearsals, controlling the conduct of pupils, submitting advance copies of scripts when they are due, furnishing necessary props, and generally respecting the wishes of the station.

The Philadelphia School District has developed the following list of suggestions, "Principles in Production Techniques":

1. Simplicity is essential to successful productions. A message can be highlighted and the best camera work done when backgrounds are plain, the number of participants small, and movement from set to set is minimized.
2. A small number of participants facilitates camera work, permits close-ups, and avoids confusion. Close-ups enable the viewer to get a better look at the activity or demonstration being presented, while wide-angle shots reduce objects and people on the television screen to a size that is indistinct.
3. Printed materials and charts should be avoided unless they are large enough to be read easily.
4. Detailed scripts are not necessary for television programs. A prepared rundown sheet may be used instead. The rundown sheet should indicate the various people and items to be shown, the order of presentation, and the physical location of persons and items on the set. It should also state the time allocated to each segment of the story.
5. Interesting content, with a change of pace, helps to produce a good program. Good material is ruined if the pace is too slow or the action does not move fast enough. Smooth transitions enliven the pace of a production.

6. It is not necessary to put makeup on children, but women look better with a medium shade of pancake and dark lipstick, while men need pancake to cover their beards, even after shaving.
7. Contrast in colors is important on black and white television. Pastel colors, for example, look alike, and colored maps can be seen better when they are copied in black and white.
8. The integration of pertinent film material adds scope and variety to a program. Short bits of commercial film can be rented for small fees and used at appropriate points with or without recorded sound.

The National Association of Broadcasters makes a number of suggestions to any organization planning to use TV to communicate its message:

1. Check with the program or public affairs director on slides, films, videotapes and photographs that can be used to help communicate a message. Make sure the text (copy) that is written to accompany visual aids fits with the slide, film, tape, or photo being shown. Time all copy at a slightly slower pace for TV than for radio. Standard announcements for TV run 10 seconds (about 20 words), 20 seconds (40 words), and 60 seconds (125 words).
2. Provide one slide or photograph for each 10-second spot.
3. Keep in mind that slides are preferable in most cases to photographs. They can be made professionally at a minimum cost. When photographs are used, matte or dull-surfaced prints are preferable since glossy prints reflect studio lights.
4. Ask that visuals be returned immediately after use. Otherwise, they may be discarded.[3]

Personal Appearance

When school representatives go on the air, they will want to look and sound their best. TV personnel will give participants helpful suggestions and appreciate cooperation. The National Association of Broadcasters suggests that personal appearance is vital to the success of any presentation.

> Wear suits or dresses of soft, medium colors. Avoid sharply contrasting patterns and colors. Keep jewelry simple and uncluttered. Pearls and dull-finished metals reflect less light than sparkling and highly polished jewelry.
>
> Men may require a little powder on a bald head, or if the skin is exceptionally oily. Pancake makeup is advisable for a heavy beard or shadows around the eyes. (Station personnel can be of help in suggesting the correct brand and shade of makeup to be used.)
>
> Women are advised to avoid heavy makeup and overuse of lipstick.
>
> Glasses may be worn. On live or taped telecasts, studio personnel will arrange lighting to avoid glare.
>
> Cooperate with the director and floor managers during the appearance. They may find it necessary to give hand signals during the show to control the speed of the presentation. Before the program goes on the air, ask the director questions about the show.
>
> Nearly everyone has preprogram jitters. To relax throat muscles and nerves, it is suggested that participants yawn or stretch their body as they would if they were tired.
>
> When on the air, avoid unnecessary movements or gestures. They immediately attract the attention of the viewer and distract from what is being said and done.
>
> Move more slowly than normal—quick hand and body movements are difficult for the camera to follow.
>
> It is suggested that persons being interviewed look, listen, and speak to the person conducting the interview. However, if a participant has something to say to the viewing audience, he or she should look directly at the camera with the red light on it.
>
> Imagine a good friend is in place of the TV camera. Participants are urged to talk in ordinary conversational tones, with all the enthusiasm and sincerity that they have for the subject. [*Authors' additional suggestions:* Maintain eye contact. Avoid sudden eye movement. Look directly into the camera.]

Participants should not worry about the role they are playing. They are appearing on the program not as an actor or actress but rather as interesting persons in their own right.

Participants should resist the temptation to look at themselves on the TV monitor in the studio; this is distracting to the viewer.

Above all, be on time. In producing a TV program, many things must be accomplished in a short period of time and each minute is usually carefully planned.[4]

SCHOOL EXHIBITS

Included in the communications efforts of a school are school exhibits. Various kinds of exhibits can serve a multitude of purposes; all can demonstrate some phase of the school system operation that would be of interest to a segment of the public. A properly planned exhibit can command the attention of large numbers of people who might be attracted to few other communications devices used by the schools. Because exhibits require a minimum of effort on the part of viewers, they frequently allow key messages to be comfortably communicated.

In-School Exhibits

The in-school exhibit is the most commonly used display effort of schools. Most of the time, the classroom exhibit claims more time, space, and effort than any others in the school. The purpose of a classroom exhibit is to show students, parents, teachers, staff members, and visitors what children are studying and accomplishing. Such exhibits are placed on walls, tables, windowsills, and other easily accessible areas. Used effectively as instructional aids, these exhibits should be updated frequently to recapture students' interest and capture the attention of outsiders. An out-of-date notice or a bulletin board with fall-colored leaves in the spring indicates carelessness and poor attitude.

Parents, especially, enjoy seeing their children's work, particularly in the elementary grades. Care must be taken to ensure that the exhibits communicate the major point the teacher wants to share with parents. Every effort must be made to check the display for accuracy. People are quick to judge educators on the basis of their spelling and grammar; therefore, a thorough proofreading of each word on the exhibit is imperative.

The corridor exhibit is an effective vehicle to acquaint visitors with student undertakings and accomplishments. These exhibits should be changed every three or four weeks or as new information and ideas are available. Some of the most important displays should be placed near the main entrance so every visitor will notice them and leave with at least one additional bit of information about the school.

The all-school exhibit offers the best opportunity for publicizing and interpreting the educational program. Usually an annual event, the undertaking features display materials from all grades or subject-matter departments of the school. Such an exhibit can be limited to one instructional area, such as homemaking, science, language arts, or health. Modern teaching methods, instructional materials, and individual and class projects can be explained by students and teachers at these exhibits. If a facility is available, this kind of exhibit can be combined with a presentation of a physical education group or a series of songs by the glee club, for example. The all-school exhibit is one of the best means available to bring people into schools.

The systemwide exhibit brings together materials from various schools in the district. Located at a convenient central place, this exhibit usually focuses on one subject or on a specific level of education. Some schools use creativity as a theme to demonstrate ideas presented by students. Others choose to have science fairs that permit students to work on a project for a class and to display that project to the public. It is, of course, necessary to communicate clearly the guidelines for such exhibits or fairs, especially if awards are made for outstanding projects. Many well-meaning parents have become involved in helping their children prepare exhibits, causing consternation on the part of other parents and children who chose to play the game by the rules they understood.

Exhibits in the Community

Bringing the public into contact with the work of schools is a desirable outcome of a school–community

relations program. One way to take advantage of numerous opportunities in this regard is to use the out-of-school exhibit. The topics covered or the ideas to be communicated are limitless. The only guideline is whether or not the project will help people to understand the schools better. A little imagination combined with models, specimens, photographs, and technical devices can make such exhibits both interesting and informative.

There are many different places in the community where the exhibits may be shown. A local store is a suitable and often-used location. The exhibit may be arranged either in a section of the store or else in the store windows, where it can be seen from the street. Another location is the county fair, which schools in rural and semirural areas may use to acquaint the public with their work. In addition, exhibits may be shown in public libraries, hotel and bank lobbies, and government buildings.

Shopping malls are becoming more widely used for school exhibits. Public relations directors for the malls are constantly seeking unusual attractions, and an exhibit prepared by the school can be a positive attraction for both the mall and the school. Some schools have capitalized on the mall opportunity to conduct a class, using modern techniques and equipment.

The portable exhibit can be put to much use in the course of a year. Many companies offer professional-looking display materials that can be easily transported. They can be placed in banks, office buildings, shopping malls, libraries, and other locations. An exhibit can be built around just about any school subject, challenge, or need. This kind of exhibit can provide an excellent backdrop for a presentation made by a speaker from a school. It can be a sound investment in the overall school–community relations program because it may be borrowed by various community organizations, clubs, and business organizations to help them better consider a school problem or need.

Preparing the Exhibit

No matter what kind of exhibit is used to provide the public with information, the results are better when there is careful planning. Too often exhibits give the appearance of little planning and little knowledge of effective communication techniques. If an exhibit is to prompt community reaction to a school effort, it must be done in a first-class manner. This means that certain basic questions must be properly answered if the exhibit is to evoke positive reactions. Some of these questions follow.

WHO IS RESPONSIBLE FOR THE EXHIBIT?

Too often committees get in the way of decision making. The exhibit planned by a committee can be excellent if it is clearly understood that one person has the final responsibility for it. With deadline pressures to face and materials to prepare, one person must be charged with getting the job done.

WHAT IS THE BEST DATE AND PLACE FOR THE EXHIBIT?

Although this seems like an obvious question, it is sometimes more important than planners think. For example, a one-day exhibit could flop if scheduled on the same day as another crowd-drawing event. Thus, a check with community organizations to clear the date is a wise step in the planning. How long will the exhibit last? Will people be available to staff it if needed? Will the exhibit best be used in conjunction with some other event, like American Education Week, or would it be better used by itself? Are there available times at key locations that would be worth waiting for rather than accepting a second-best place?

WHO IS THE AUDIENCE?

To whom should the exhibit appeal? This is a key ingredient in planning the exhibit. In fact, it is often the vital question that is forgotten as different groups or individuals attempt to guarantee that their interests are protected. The audience consideration must override all other planning topics if the exhibit is to be successful. Some specific areas needing careful planning are the level of the language, the complexity of the message, and the ease of viewing. Unless these are determined with the audience, rather than the school officials, in mind, the exhibit could be totally ineffective.

WHAT IS THE PURPOSE AND THEME?

One of the early decisions to be made when planning the exhibit is its purpose. Often overlooked, the purpose is the basis for other decisions, including the topics covered and the materials needed. Perhaps the most important question to ask when determining the purpose is "What do we want people who see the exhibit to go away thinking?" Answering this question permits planners to simplify the exhibit, especially if they can agree on one purpose. Communicating one idea is appreciably easier and can be much more effective than confusing the audience with a series of messages containing disjointed facts. Exhibits should focus on a single concept. Each message should support the central theme, using both words and pictures to tell the story. Emphasis on visual rather than written material makes it easier for viewers to retain the message. Avoid excessive detail. Try to create a single, bold message that will be easily remembered.

WHAT SHOULD THE CONTENT BE?

Exhibits should focus on a single concept. Each message should support the central theme, using both words and pictures to tell the story. Emphasis on visual rather than written material makes it easier for viewers to retain the message. Avoid excessive detail. Try to create a single, bold message that will be easily remembered. To help decide which items to use, the following questions might be asked: Does the item fit the purpose and theme of the exhibit? How well will the item be received by the audience? Is it simple and concrete enough to be easily understood? Does it lend itself well to the exhibit form of communication? In selecting content, choose those items that visualize facts, ideas, and illustrations in a way that is interesting to follow and that leaves vivid impressions.

Applying Basic Principles

A picture story to be told through photographs or a PowerPoint presentation should be specific and limited to things not requiring motion for complete understanding. A story of broader scope involving motion as an essential factor can be told more effectively through the production and use of video. However, no matter what medium is chosen, careful and detailed planning should be completed before beginning actual production.

The subject matter used to create the content for any type of presentation should be selected and treated with the particular target audience in mind. It should be kept as free as possible of extraneous and unrelated materials, and it should not be developed too rapidly for the inexperienced to follow the concepts presented. Productions concentrating on a single idea or activity are much more effective than those attempting coverage of too broad an area with numerous minute details. Crowding too much into the production will inevitably decrease its effectiveness.

Preparing the Presentation

Once the basic purpose has been identified, work can begin on the outline, listing scenes in a logical sequence. Production costs for slides and filmstrips are relatively minimal. Digital photography, excluding the cost of the hardware, can be very inexpensive. Slides are made using color transparent film and can be developed through a local camera shop. When taking photos, remember that film is relatively inexpensive. One or two extra shots are worth taking to ensure having all of the needed photos. Although it is occasionally necessary to pose certain photos to communicate a specific idea, most photos should be unposed to convey a true-to-life image.

Some school officials prefer to write the script first and later take photos consistent with the script. Others feel more comfortable working with an outline until the photos have been taken, after which a script is written and (usually) recorded. It must be remembered that the script should be lively and interesting to hold the audience's attention. Educators must avoid the tendency to use the language appropriate only for colleagues or for a publication. A practical idea that works for some people is to record the script originally, and then to improve it from the transcribed copy. This approach usually encourages people to use words that laypeople will understand—an important consideration

for any communication effort. Titles for slide presentations can be photographed from printed or hand-lettered copy. New software programs for microcomputers can help produce the titles. A menu board can also be used for this purpose. Some graphic arts firms prepare professional title slides fairly inexpensively.

MOVIES AND VIDEOS

The school-made video production is an effective device for furnishing information to the public. It permits the showing of actual conditions and practices and effectively captures motion, something that photographs alone cannot do. The material, if properly presented, can be easily understood and assimilated, and a substantial number of ideas can be presented in a relatively short time. Video plays an important role in the community relations program and it can be used to acquaint people with innovations, accomplishments, and challenges. Video can bring the classroom to people who do not come to the classroom to see what modern educational techniques encompass. It can also be used to anticipate needed changes and can develop a sense of pride among taxpayers. As with all communication attempts, videos must show the schools as they are. Focusing only on problems and negative situations or showing only positive situations can cause critics to accuse school officials of intentionally misrepresenting the facts. A balanced picture of the schools should be shown.

Guiding Principles

The production of school videos should be based on a set of guiding principles that are consistent with the underlying concepts of the community relations program and the standards of good production. Every movie and video should

- Carry out a definite objective
- Fit the type of audience or audiences for whom it is intended
- Depict school conditions with truth and accuracy
- Avoid "selling" personalities or spreading propaganda
- Meet the requirements of excellent photography
- Tell a well-organized story
- Cover only one general idea or subject
- Explain the content in understandable English
- Be financed with public funds.

Producing Video

No production is any better than the planning behind it. One of the initial decisions must be whether or not to employ a professional producer. Among the advantages of hiring a professional is that overall excellent quality is just about guaranteed. However, the cost is sometimes prohibitive. Some schools, tapping the expertise of community volunteers and staff members, make productions on a low budget. Although the quality is seldom as good as that done by professionals, the involvement of residents and employees sometimes overcomes the quality difference. Some schools that offer courses in film or video production are calling on students and teachers to get hands-on experience by making productions that school officials can use for community relations purposes. In some instances, school districts receive consulting help from instructors at area colleges.

Underlying every audiovisual presentation should be a focus on students. Without them there is no need for schools, and this should be remembered when planning a production. An empty classroom corridor can be sterile; add students enthusiastically going to their next class and education comes alive. The superintendent behind a desk talking "at" viewers for several minutes can turn off the most interested audience. But a superintendent narrating student action or talking with a group of parents can show vitality in the administration.

An important part of the production is the editing, one of the crucial steps requiring a professional. School officials should be sure that the purpose of the film or video is considered at every step of its production. Often personal and political considerations impede progress as individuals and groups place their interests before the good of the school system. The editor must know who is responsible for overcoming such problems.

Students and others usually enjoy seeing themselves in audiovisual productions of the schools. Yet, for the protection of the district, written releases

SOME SAMPLE WAYS MANY SCHOOLS USE VIDEO IN THEIR COMMUNICATION PROGRAMS

- A montage of student and parent testimonials about the quality of education they receive, to be played at a back-to-school rally for all employees
- A variety of one-minute videos featuring various teachers who make a difference, for use on closed-circuit shopping mall video systems
- Marketing or promotional pieces about your district designed for a specific community audience (realtors, chamber of commerce, parents of preschoolers, etc.)
- An orientation video for incoming middle or high schoolers featuring a tour of their new school
- Video annual reports for key communicators in the district and community.

Source: Network, National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org), 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855, January 2002.

should be secured from parents of students, permitting the students to appear in the production.

Be alert to other potential issues, too, such as showing shop students without eye protection, food-service workers without hairnets, or athletic participants not wearing head protection.

Distributing Videos

Numerous outlets exist in the community for showing school-made videos. Advantage may be taken of parent–teacher association meetings to tell the education story. Productions may be shown in connection with open-house programs, graduation exercises, anniversary celebrations, and special events attended by the public. American Education Week is a natural occasion for free distribution of videos to local movie theaters and TV stations. Notices may be sent to a selected list of clubs, organizations, and civic groups stating that films and videos are available and telling how they may be obtained from school authorities. Streaming video on school Web sites offers another outlet for reaching key audiences.

After people have seen a school video, it is a practical idea to ask them for their reactions. Brief questionnaires can be distributed, allowing people to complete them anonymously and place them in a container on the way out. Responses will allow school officials to understand how well the productions are being received and will provide suggestions for changes.

Questions

1. What are the main considerations when preparing messages and announcements for possible use on radio?
2. Cable television provides schools many public relations opportunities on a local level. Prepare a memo to the superintendent suggesting three ways your schools might capitalize on the availability of cable in your area.
3. Your superintendent will be appearing on a local television talk show. She'll be interviewed by three local news reporters. She's asked for your help as she prepares for the show. What are the main suggestions you would make to help her prepare?

Readings

Finkelstein, Ellen, *How to Do Everything with Microsoft Office PowerPoint 2007.* McGraw-Hill Osborne Media, 2006.

Gillis, Tamara, *The IABC Handbook of Organizational Communication: A Guide for Communications Professionals.* Jossey-Bass, 2006.

Gormly, Eric K., *Writing and Producing Television News*, 2nd ed. Blackwell, 2005.

Hilliard, Robert L., *Writing for Television, Radio, and New Media*, 9th ed. Wadsworth, 2007.

"Include Video as Part of Your Communication Plan," *Network*. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, January 2002.

Kant, Garth, *How to Write Television News*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2005.

Raiteri, Charles. *Writing for Broadcast News: A Storytelling Approach to Crafting TV and Radio News Reports*. Rowman and Littlefield, 2005.

Endnotes

1. *If You Want Air Time* (Washington, DC: National Association of Broadcasters).
2. *School Public Relations: Building Confidence in Education*, 2nd ed. (Rockville: MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007), pp 100–102.
3. Memo, n.d.
4. *If You Want Air Time*, op. cit.

Chapter

14

Preparing Published Materials

Most school districts prepare and disseminate publications as part of their overall communications efforts. Administrators have learned from research and from the success of business and industrial organizations that planned, informative, and attractive publications are important tools for conveying information to various audiences.

School publications can be aimed at specific audiences, such as employees or prospective teachers, or can be prepared for a general audience, such as all taxpayers. Most school officials consider publications to be vital components of the communications program. It is imperative to remember, however, that publications and other written endeavors compose only one part of the total effort.

Publications can serve school officials well because they can communicate detailed ideas to large numbers of people at a minimum cost. Some school districts consistently prepare excellent publications that serve their purposes well and garner national awards. A large number of schools, however, distribute publications that are ineffective, unattractive, and basically a waste of time and money. This chapter suggests techniques and ideas that should enable school officials to prepare effective publications that are read, understood, and appreciated.

OBJECTIVES AND SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS

The initial step in planning any school publication is to decide exactly what its objective(s) should be. Too many school officials undertake publishing a newsletter or an annual report simply because "all other districts are doing it." Such a rationale frequently leads to a lack of direction. Publications that exist without goals are seldom effective. Thus, the first step in developing a publication should be a written statement of purpose. Such a statement determines how the publication will be developed, to whom it will be distributed, and how its effectiveness will be evaluated.

One major objective of publications prepared for staff personnel is to establish communication that is not possible through personal contact. Employees want to know what is going on where they work; thus, a major objective of internal publications is to improve employee morale.

Internal publications also can keep the staff informed about educational policies, practices, and problems; they can explain reasons for particular courses of action; and they can encourage all employees to submit constructive ideas to improve the schools.

From Chapter 14 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

If properly prepared, internal publications can contribute appreciably to employees' understanding their role as interpreters of the school system. Such publications should not be aimed specifically at the teachers, but at all staff members.

The major objectives of publications addressed to students are to increase their understanding of educational opportunities and problems and to communicate that informed students are an important part of the school operation. Such publications also demonstrate that school officials are concerned about providing information to this important audience. Too often administrators forget students when planning a total publication program.

The major objectives of publications prepared for parents are to cultivate a partnership between school and home, to increase parents' knowledge and understanding of the educational program, to increase parent participation in school affairs, and to educate parents about specific school problems.

Among the major objectives of publications addressed to special community groups and to the general public are keeping citizens informed of the policies, practices, and needs of the school system and cultivating a sense of partnership in advancing the cause of public education. Such publications can also serve to increase lay participation in the school system, show what the tax dollar buys, report on educational progress, dispel misconceptions, and neutralize harmful propaganda. Publications aimed at the community can thank individuals and groups for contributions to the schools and can show how the schools contribute to the community. They can explain problems and possible solutions; they can pave the way for important changes in education practice and can help inform government officials, sometimes leading to gaining their support.

After establishing the general objectives of school publications, it is important to be specific about objectives in subsequent issues. What is the purpose of this issue? What do school officials expect people to do after reading the publication? If the publication is an evening class brochure, readers might be expected to seek a registration form and enroll. If the publication is a bond-issue brochure, people might be expected to volunteer to aid a building campaign or to vote yes in a referendum. Keep a specific purpose in mind for each publication.

KNOWING THE AUDIENCE

One of the first considerations of any communications attempt is a simple one: Know the audience. Too often school publications appear to be written for the school board or for school administrators rather than for the intended audience. It is difficult to prepare one publication that will meet the needs of all audiences; realizing this is a sound beginning.

A good place to start in aiming at a specific audience is to determine, from a content standpoint, what the audience already knows about the schools. A common error is to assume that readers know almost as much as the school officials. This assumption, especially when coupled with a writing style that features educational gobbledygook, frustrates and discourages readers. Educators frequently use terminology that only they understand, forgetting that most people are not responsive to the jargon of the educator. Terms such as *natatorium, learning stations,* and *stanines* may be common to the educator, but to the layperson they are not familiar and are apt to breed doubt about school officials' ability to communicate and about administrators' sincerity in wanting people to know what the schools are doing.

Use Comfortable Words

In addition to using educational terminology, educators are frequently guilty of writing words that are not understood by average readers. Before preparing a publication aimed at the public, school officials should determine the reading level of that public and write at that level. An easy way to determine the reading level is to apply a readability formula. One of the best such formulas is the Gunning–Mueller Fog Index,[1] which considers average sentence length and the number of words with three or more syllables. For ease of reading, sentence length should seldom be more than 17 to 20 words, and the two-syllable word is clearly preferred to the five-syllable word. One mark of an educated person is the ability to communicate at a level that a specific audience will understand.

Determine Reader Interest

Before starting a new publication, an attempt should be made to determine the interests of those who will be expected to read it. For instance, a teacher-recruitment brochure should apply research findings in this area and include such information as the proximity of graduate schools, cost-of-living data, and the specific opportunities and challenges that make the district what it is. A newsletter earmarked for the community should meet the interests of that community. Particular interests should be determined before the newsletter is started and rechecked periodically. Again, this guarantees that the publication will communicate with the audience. A publications committee of students, staff, and the public could be helpful in determining reader interest. It may be decided occasionally that no existing publications are natural vehicles for the particular information that is to be communicated, and that another communication technique or a new publication will be necessary. This decision must, of course, be dictated by the needs of the audience and the available funds.

CHOOSING CONTENT

Publications that are attractive and well written will gain the attention of potential readers, but the content must be solid as well. Too many school publications dwell on awards and recognition received by the schools and too few include information on problems that the schools are facing, with possible solutions. If content is constantly about the achievements of the district with no mention of problems, people will dismiss the publication for what it is: a puff piece to laud school officials either directly or indirectly. Such a policy could justifiably cause taxpayers to question the wisdom of using tax money to support the publication.

Content should focus on people, not on buildings and programs. Students' learning, teachers' teaching, and people involved in the education process can bring content alive. Emphasis should be placed on what people in the schools are doing.

Instead of an article on the cost of the new speech program, show the new speech therapist in action. Indicate how many students will be helped in how many ways by the therapist's presence. Of course, money is important and people want to know how their tax dollars are being used. But show them in a way that communicates more than just figures.

Content must be balanced. Again, what is included in a publication depends on reader interest and the long-range objectives of school officials. Some suggestions for content include classroom innovations, building plans, community relations ideas, problems of students and how they are being met, and follow-up information on previously publicized innovative programs.

If the audience is concerned about a topic, that topic should be treated in the publication. A careful watch must be kept on overplaying one topic because of the personal preference of the editor of the publication or an administrator. Many school publications go overboard on cocurricular activities, such as sports and drama undertakings. Although these are important parts of the schools' offerings, they should not be emphasized merely because coaches and advisers cooperate in providing information.

People are interested in reading about those things that are different than when they attended school. This means that publications should explain new materials, teaching approaches, use of buildings, and administrative and special services.

DETERMINING WHO SHOULD WRITE THE PUBLICATIONS

The writing should be done by people who know how to put facts and ideas into simple, readable language that attracts attention and holds interest. Usually, there are one or two staff members in most school systems who have a flair for writing and can learn to produce readable copy. They cannot be expected to do this work along with regular responsibilities; good writing takes time, and allowance for it should be made in the daily schedule.

If it is necessary to go outside the school system, a local editor or commercial publicist can be engaged from time to time to write the texts of important publications.

The tendency in progressive districts is to hire an experienced writer, who is placed on the staff of the

From Chapter 14 of The School and Community Relations, 10/e. Edward H. Moore, Donald R. Gallagher, Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

superintendent, or to hire a director of community relations who is competent to supervise the entire publications program.

KNOWING HOW TO PUBLISH IT

Not too long ago the toughest decision schools faced when making printing decisions was whether to print something in black-and-white or color. Not so today. New printing and digital publishing technologies have ushered in a new world of options and decisions for school–communications executives.

Even the terminology has changed, and it is still evolving. More and more planners think of their products as school "documents" instead of school "publications"—reflecting the varied ways in which these items may be stored and distributed. Today's school publication—or document—planners should make sure first to review options in three main areas:

- ***Digital publishing***—offering publications to users by way of the Internet or on CD-ROMs.
- ***Short-run printing***—using new-generation, high-speed laser or other printers to quickly (and inexpensively) print limited quantities of documents. Today, producing color publications and printed materials for small audiences can be options for many school districts. In the past, both were often too expensive to be considered.
- ***Traditional printing***—using traditional press and finishing machinery (either in the school print shop or by hiring an outside print shop) to produce typical brochures, handbooks, pamphlets, and so on.

Importantly, publication planners should keep in mind that new publishing options don't always necessarily replace old options. Rather, they might be better used to supplement traditional printing and distribution efforts to better ensure that all audiences are getting key communications. Example: A school district might now make its annual calendar available on its Web site. But it still must publish and mail the traditional calendar. Reason: Not all parents have access to the Web site. And many of those who do still like to have the print calendar to hang on the refrigerator.

The good news in this scenario is that with little up-front cost the calendar can be placed on the Web site and updated as events change throughout the year. The district can remind parents that calendar changes are available on the Web site. The bad news is that, while new technology allows this information to be posted on a Web site at little direct cost, there is a cost in the staff time and commitment needed to constantly keep such previously fixed publications up to date throughout the school year.

Although schools continue to experiment with various digital publishing options, many seem to be using three primary ways to make their publications or documents available in digital form:

1. They produce HTML[2] versions of their traditional print products and offer them as Web pages. Increasingly, commonly used document- preparation software, such as Adobe PageMaker or Microsoft Word, includes options allowing the creation of Web-ready HTML files from files designed for traditional printing. But planners should remember that traditional print designs don't always convert well to screen viewing. They often will need at least some design modifications.
2. They produce "pdf" documents, allowing users to view the publication in their Web browsers or download it for later use. Or they distribute these documents on disks or CD-ROMs. (The *pdf* refers to the file name suffix given to documents prepared with Adobe Acrobat and readable by those using the easily available and free Adobe Acrobat Reader. For more information, see www.adobe.com.)
3. They produce documents for use with commonly available word-processing software, such as Microsoft Word. The advantage in this option is that many documents prepared for internal use can easily be made available for those who want them. The downside: Not all people may have the right software needed to view them. Also, the long-term warehousing of large numbers of documents on any school Web site can create significant document-management issues as the number of available files grows.

PRIORITIES FOR TRADITIONAL PRINTING

If the district buys printing equipment and decides to print most of its forms, as well as newsletters and other publications, it is imperative that someone be given the responsibility for establishing priorities for use of the equipment. Many school officials have caused employees at all levels much grief by making printing decisions that seemed based on personal relationships rather than on printing needs. Guidelines should be communicated and forms prepared to ensure that the person doing the printing is capable and understands the printing needs. If someone is not empowered to make deadline decisions on printing, graduation programs may be wet from ink that didn't have time to dry, newsletters may be distributed on March 30 telling about an event planned for March 25, and report cards may be delayed for a week because the printer didn't realize the importance of the deadline.

The best guarantee for using the most efficient method for each printing job is to have someone on the staff who knows the field. This might be a school communication specialist, a former editor who knows printing, or a printer. This person will be able to advise when the school's equipment is not suitable for a particular job in terms of time and money. This person could also advise when two colors are better than one and could recommend many ways to improve the overall impact of a publication. If the staff does not include such a person, it would be a wise investment to tap a consultant to take a look at the district's printing and publications. With a bit of professional help, districts can avoid oft-repeated errors and increase readership.

Maximize Your Desktop Investments

Some schools have spent millions of dollars on sophisticated desktop publishing systems. Others accomplish some desktop publishing with little more than a single personal computer, some word-processing software, and a laser printer.

Since the term *desktop publishing* came into use in the mid-1980s, the industry has undergone rapid-fire change, making it tough for schools to keep up—and to know how to best invest in the new, emerging options.

The bottom line: A school's desktop publishing program consists of little more than the hardware (computers and printers), software (programs that make, store, and display documents), and staff (people who make it all work). When making decisions on how to build or improve desktop capabilities, planners should balance costs against how new technology can better serve their audiences with improved communication products and the direct and indirect cost savings that might be generated.

Too often schools invest heavily in new technology but fail to adequately train or support the staff needed to get the most out of it. But, increasingly, as school budgets tighten and taxpayers become more comfortable with technology, school publication planners might expect increasing pressure to prove that they have made sound investments in technology and are using existing technology wisely.

Edit Effectively

Schools could save a decent sum yearly by editing copy better. It is not uncommon for a good editor to condense what was originally a 48-page annual report to a 28-page report without losing any of the important information. To make this idea work, however, the chief school officer must place confidence in a skilled editor so that the ego involvement of the authors of the various articles is not permitted to overcome the sound judgment of a professional communicator.

Plan to Avoid Tight Deadlines

Anticipating printing needs is another way to save money. Printers that bid on printing that requires such a tight deadline that they must pay overtime to meet the time-pressured date will necessarily charge more than when they can schedule the work in their regular workday. If working primarily with one printer, provide forms and other materials that have no time strictures so that they can be done at the printer's convenience.

Avoid Elaborate Designs

Unless the school has an artist who volunteers artwork services, elaborate designs may necessitate the

printer's placing a graphics specialist on the job. This means more dollars. Be sure that the design in some way enhances the message and is not merely design for the sake of design. Artwork can get in the way of the message rather than helping to communicate it. This is where a professional in the field of publications is needed. Suggestions can more than pay for the fee by encouraging school officials to communicate the most for the least cost.

For example, bleeding is running the artwork, photo, or color off the edge of the page. Research indicates that the readership rate is increased only slightly by bleeding. Yet the cost may increase sufficiently to cause school officials to reject the concept of bleeding almost all the time. Bleeding requires a larger sheet of paper to be used because the color or photo must run to the edge. The only way to do this is to print on larger-size paper and cut it. Bleeding may be cost-efficient if your finished brochure size can be slightly smaller than standard.

Use Standard-Size Paper

Before allowing the creative mind of the art department chairperson to order an unusual size of paper for some special report, check on its cost. Frequently, the decision will be to return to a standard-size paper. Occasionally, some special effect will be desired, perhaps justifying the additional cost of an unusual size. Check with the printer before specifying a size; he or she may advise that by changing the size slightly, much money can be saved.

Avoid Dating Publications

The astute educator can save money by planning publications to avoid obsolescence. For example, the teacher-recruitment brochure that includes salaries as part of the permanent brochure is outdated by next year, when the new salary schedule is announced. One way to overcome this is to print inserts to enclose in the brochure each year. The colors and layout concepts of the original brochure are carried through to the insert. Another approach is to include a pocket in the brochure that allows up-to-date, changing information to be inserted.

Get the Most Out of Each Expensive Printing Item

Some schools publicize the cost of printing each publication. This is sound in that it mandates that educators consider the benefits of the publication against the costs incurred. This cost consciousness can lead to using an expensive printing item for more than one purpose. For instance, a full-color cover originally used for a teacher-recruitment brochure might also be used for the cover of an annual report.

A logo originally designed for a newsletter can be used on all publications and stationery. An effective logo can communicate the spirit of the school district and serve to identify the publication as coming from the schools.

When designing a logo, be sure to judge how it will look in actual use. Often, a logo, conceived for an annual report cover, looks brilliant displayed on an artist's poster board. But if it is also to be reduced to letterhead or business-card size, the type may become illegible or the lines on the artwork too close together.

Once chosen, a logo may be applied to thousands of items that will carry the district's name over a period of years. A poorly designed logo may haunt a district for a decade or more. It is often worthwhile to engage a graphic designer to aid in the creation and proper application of a new logo. A school district logo is shown in Figure 14.1.

Use Photos Intelligently

Is there an extra charge for using photographs? Are the school's photos good enough to justify any additional charge? Check with the printer. Too many photos offer

FIGURE 14.1 School district logo. Forsyth County logo in Cumming, Georgia, uses a student-centered logo reproduced on a variety of image-building materials—from stationery and mouse pads to admission passes and license plates.

poor contrast and little action, thus detracting from the publication. It is better to omit poor-quality photos that do not enhance the publication. This will save money and improve the publication.

DESIGNING AND LAYING OUT THE PUBLICATION

Why do readers pick up one publication and toss another in the wastebasket? Reasons differ from reader to reader, but one of the most common reasons is the layout and design of the publication. Some publications simply look inviting; others do not. School officials responsible for preparing publications would do well to pay attention to attractive and inviting design; not to do so is to waste money. The cost of printing is about the same, the time invested varies little, and the distribution costs are constant, whether or not the publication is read. And one way to increase the chance of its being read is to make it attractive to the eye in the quick first glance that potential readers give today's mail. Remember that the school publication is competing with other publications, most of which the reader has paid for. This means that readers feel some responsibility to read some of the publications. The school's publications, on the other hand, arrive free and must capture the reader's attention.

Some public relations practitioners have the knack of putting together effective publications, and others don't know where to start. The differences in quality are vast. What do some practitioners know that others don't? What are the ingredients for effective layout and design? The ideas listed below offer suggestions for preparing publications that will be visually appealing.

Prepare Every Publication for Three Kinds of Readers

If school district officials conducted a study of the way readers look at school publications, they would probably be able to group them into three categories: the 30-second readers, those who casually glance at the publication as they separate the mail; those who spend two or three minutes looking at the publication; and those who read most or all of the articles in the publication. The educator who prepares each publication for all three kinds of readers gets the most out of every printing dollar spent.

The 30-second reader, the one who flips pages not really looking for anything, should have messages especially designed to catch the eye. This is easy to do; therefore, it is surprising that so few school districts employ this approach. One of the most eye-catching methods that also serves as a copy-breaking device is the bold one-sentence or one-phrase statement that "teases" the reader to read the article from which it is taken. Called a *blurb*, this device also provides an opportunity for school officials to communicate a few key points to just about everyone who picks up the publication. Inasmuch as the segment of the audience that spends less than a minute on a school publication is relatively large in most districts, it makes sense to include blurbs.

Accommodating Those Who Scan Needs Eye-Catching Messages

For the audience segment that spends about three minutes scanning a school newsletter, headlines that inform are vital. So are photo captions that provide basic information. These should be written with the assumption that the accompanying story will not be read. For these readers, too, it is important that the first sentence of every story contain vital elements of the news that the editor deems readers should have. This first sentence should also entice readers to continue reading.

The final segment of the readership audience is the group that will read most of the stories most of the time. However, in most school districts, this segment is the smallest of the three groups.

Use White Space Effectively

School officials are justifiably concerned about getting as much as possible for every tax dollar spent. The public is demanding this more and more. Yet educators who are not knowledgeable in the field of school publications can misapply this concern. For instance, some administrators and board members might feel that every page should be filled as much as possible. They believe that white space implies that

there isn't enough information to fill up the publication. Yet the publication that has no or very little white space is read less than a publication that uses white space functionally. White space provides contrast as well as a resting point for the readers' eyes.

Break Up Large Blocks of Text

Because all school officials are money-conscious, the *dollar-bill test* is a good one to use to determine if the publication is violating one of the basic rules of layout and design. The idea works like this: Place a dollar bill anywhere on a page of the publication at any angle. It should always be touching something other than copy (text). This means that a subhead or a headline or a photo or clip art or a blurb should touch the dollar bill at all times. If this is not the case, the page should be redesigned to avoid the long blocks of type that will undoubtedly cause some would-be readers to reject the page because it looks like too much to read. In addition to the use of blurbs and subheads after every fifth or sixth paragraph, editors can apply other copy-breaking devices, such as an occasional box around an article, a Benday or tint, or boldface type over tint blocks for easy legibility. Bullets or numbers can also be used to break up a long list. A head-and-shoulder shot of a speaker can be inserted in a story to break up a steady stream of words.

A good technique is to collect publications that are appealing. By analyzing them, most editors can come up with ideas that have worked for other people and apply them to their own publications.

Attempt to Maintain a Balanced Page

Theories abound regarding the best approach to maintaining balance on a page of a newsletter. The professional editor knows all about this vital phase of layout and design; the beginner should realize primarily that each page must seem pleasing to the audience. It must not be top- or bottom-heavy. This means that not too much visual weight should be located on one section of the page. For example, the logo and nameplate and two photos should not all be at the top of the page with all copy on the bottom two-thirds.

Consider a Standard Design for Certain Publications

Publications issued periodically may lend themselves to a standard design that can be used time after time with minor variations. A four-page community newsletter or a one-page internal newsletter, for example, may use the same basic format each time. This of course saves the editor time. Such a standard design immediately identifies the source of the publication and guarantees that just about any editor with basic layout knowledge can implement the design concept effectively.

Since such standardized designs for important publications may be used over a period of years, it may be a worthwhile investment to consult a graphic artist to establish a workable yet flexible design that an editor can follow easily.

Determine Which Stories Deserve Emphasis

A common error is to give all stories equal emphasis. Perhaps for internal morale purposes, school officials sometimes demand that each story be of approximately the same length. This only confuses readers; understandably, they wonder what the educators consider important. The editor must decide, after consultation with the superintendent, what is the most important news for each issue. Then the design and layout must be determined to communicate the importance of certain information.

Consider the Relationship between Facing Pages

When preparing any publication with more than two pages, always plan the relationship of facing pages. If the two pages treat the same subject matter, show that they go together. A few ways to do this would be to run a line over the top of the two pages, to extend a headline over the two pages, and to use the same size type and column width and the same margins on the two pages. The layouts of the two pages also need to be balanced. Consider the page elements as they relate to each other on both pages: photos, heads, boxes, and tints.

Use Color Wisely

The beginning editor usually errs by using too much color. The judicious use of color can enhance a publication and attract additional readers. The misuse of color in an ostentatious and gaudy fashion can turn off readers and add expense. When competing with top commercial magazines for attention, school publications can easily spend a lot of money. Perhaps it is better to offer quality one-color publications than to sprinkle color throughout. If in doubt, consult an expert. When choosing colors, do so intelligently, not merely on a personal preference basis. Consider the psychology of colors. For example, a controversial topic might best be handled with a cooling green as a second color. A brochure explaining the school budget should not be printed in red ink. To attract attention in piles of mail, some schools use a light-colored paper like yellow, green, beige, or blue printed on with black ink.

Don't Print over Illustrations

Every once in a while, a creative person decides to inject a touch of cleverness into a publication by printing copy over an illustration. Usually this backfires. One school district produced a holiday message in red ink over a green tree. Someone thought it was a new idea; most recipients of the publication lost some respect for the publication because the message was almost impossible to read. Black or dark type over an illustration will usually be readable if the illustration is screened very lightly in the background (5 to 15 percent, depending on the color). This is a graphic device that should be used sparingly.

Choose Ink and Paper Carefully

People are accustomed to reading body type (the text) in black ink. Research indicates that black ink on yellow or white paper is extremely legible. For some reason educators occasionally print publications in green or red ink. Some editors, wishing to vary the impact of the publication by changing a color of ink each issue, print photos in that color. Basically, it is not pleasing to see blue or green people. The professional who knows colors can effectively deviate from the standard combinations; the amateur who does this usually misses in an attempt to offer an innovative-looking publication.

Most printers can be helpful when it comes to selecting colors for ink and the proper paper for the publication. Schools usually want to avoid the impression of spending too much money for expensive paper. The printer can assist in this regard. Choose paper with a dull or glossy finish but avoid the high-gloss sheets. Contrast between ink and paper is important, so do not select an ink that is close to the color of the paper. An off-white or cream-color paper can give a rich look and still provide the desired contrast.

The opacity and weight of the paper (stock) are important, too. Will the reader see the ink showing through from the other side of the paper? If a publication is to be mailed, will the difference between 60-pound and 70-pound paper necessitate adding postage for each mailing? Will the publication be read once and discarded or will it be kept for frequent use? The answers to these questions should help dictate the kind of stock used. The cost of the paper is another necessary consideration. The printer may be able to guide school officials to a less expensive paper that will serve as well as the one originally selected.

GETTING THE MOST OUT OF TYPOGRAPHY

Typography plays a vital role in the overall impact of the publication. An integral component of the layout and design, typography—sometimes in a subtle way—helps determine whether people will read a particular article and whether they will remember what they read.

Despite its importance, typography is often overlooked when a publication is put together. More often than not, the printer's judgment is accepted. And frequently printers have little background in typography research and legibility studies. The following suggestions are offered to help educators make the best use of type.

Select a Body Type That Is Easy to Read

If using a printer for the publication, check to see what typefaces (also called fonts) the typesetter has

for body type. Adopt one and use it for most of the body type in all publications. Desktop publishing programs offer several fonts, and inexperienced desktop publishers are tempted to use them all. Vary the size, but stick to one basic type to avoid a circus-like appearance caused by mixing a number of types for text. Each typeface has its characteristics. Some are traditional; others are more modern. Some are excellent for headlines but poor for body type. One consideration should outweigh all others when picking a body type: Is it easy to read?

Much modern advertising features *sans serif* typefaces. These are typefaces with no finish strokes or feet on the letters. Yet research indicates that certain *serif* typefaces are more legible, and material read in such type is retained longer. Cheltenham and Century are two serif typefaces that offer maximum legibility. Cheltenham communicates honesty and reliability, certainly desirable characteristics for a school publication. Century offers clarity and elegance, again desirable traits. Most readers obviously will not affix these characteristics to typefaces, but the editor should know about them. Some other typefaces generally accepted as being highly legible are Times Roman, Baskerville, Bodoni, Caslon, and Optima. Readable headline typefaces include Helvetica, Avant Garde, and Optima, usually set in bold.

Avoid Script, Italic, and Bold Type for Body Copy

Script type, which looks like handwriting, is difficult to read. Some argue that it seems more personalized because of the way the letters are formed. This may be true, but typeface decisions must be based on legibility, and script is one of the least legible types available. Italic type is also among the less legible typestyles. It should be used sparingly, occasionally to emphasize a point or for a blurb. It should not be used for large blocks of copy. Boldface type should also be used sparingly, for emphasis or for headlines.

USE UPPER- AND LOWERCASE TYPE FOR BODY COPY

The most legible type, in terms of capital and small letters, is that which we are accustomed to reading. This means the kind of type in which this paragraph is set. Capital letters are used for the first letter of each sentence and for proper nouns, and lowercase letters are used for the remainder of the words. Research indicates that this is the most legible combination. It is also one that readers find comfortable. Occasionally educators use all capital letters for a publication; they are unaware that this slows the reader and takes almost half again as much space as standard upper- and lowercase type.

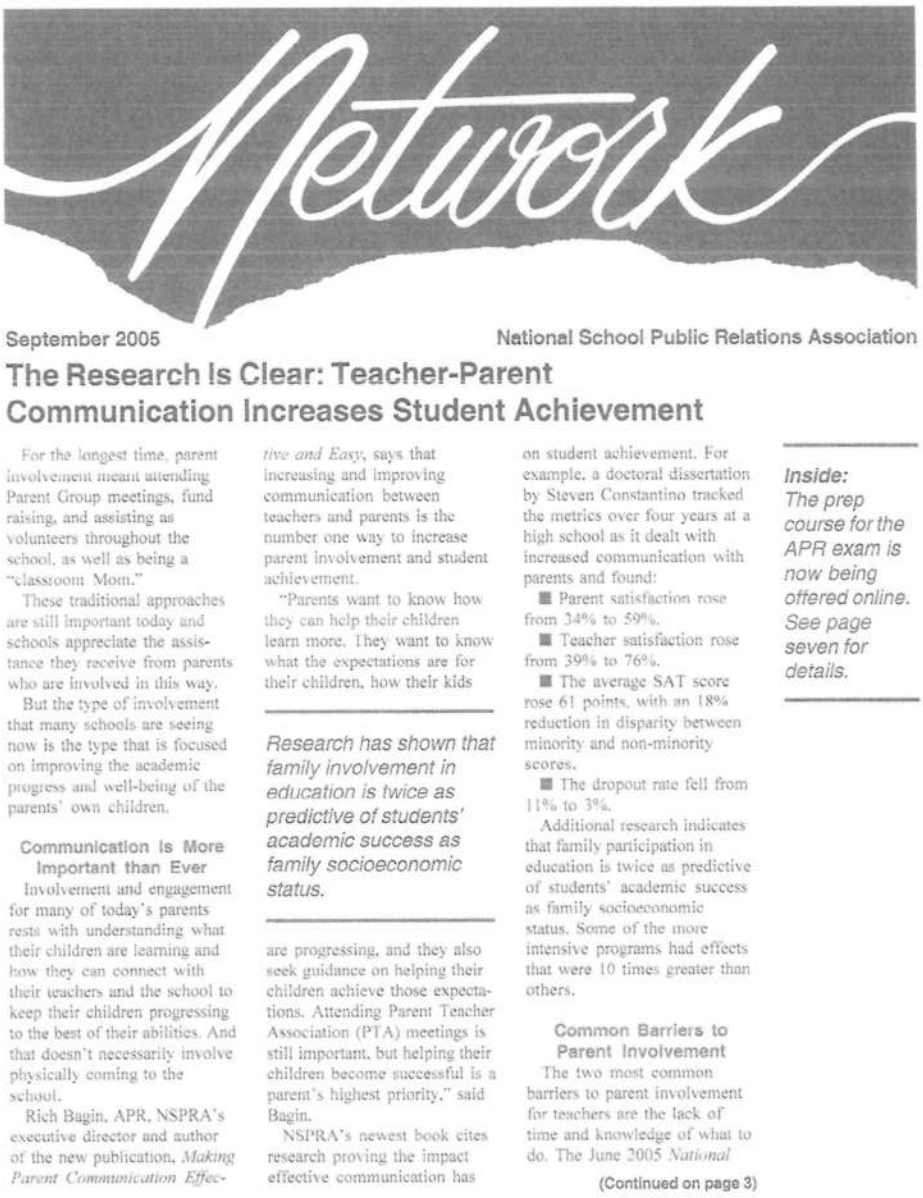
Headlines are also more readable in upper- and lowercase letters. One popular style for heads is the first word and any proper nouns capitalized, with the other words lowercase. This is especially useful when the head is written in subject–verb format.

USE A SENSIBLE COLUMN WIDTH

Many school newsletters and other school publications make a negative first impression on potential readers by using only one column of type across most of an 8 ½-by-11-inch page. This is too wide a column for the eye to follow without a considerable amount of work. And most people won't work that hard to get information about schools. The problem is easily solved. If the paper size is 8 ½ by 11 inches, use two columns, or one column no wider than 5 inches. Use the remainder of the page width for miniheadlines, or use the white space functionally. An easy rule to follow is to limit column width to twice the point size of the font in picas (6 picas = 1 inch). For example, for 11-point type, the width should be no more than 22 picas, or 3 ⅔ inches.

USE A TYPE SIZE THAT IS EASY TO READ

The same people who insist on using no white space and cramming information on every available square inch of paper delight in using a type size that allows for the most words on a page. This is done at the expense of those who have difficulty reading small type and generally alienates readers. Type smaller than 8 points should never be used in a school publication. In fact, most typography experts suggest that 10-point or 11-point type be used for body copy. (There are 72 points to the inch.) Allow at least 2 points of leading between lines. Leading, or line spacing, is the space between the lines of type. The greater the width of the column, the more the leading needed.



Network

September 2005 National School Public Relations Association

The Research Is Clear: Teacher-Parent Communication Increases Student Achievement

For the longest time, parent involvement meant attending Parent Group meetings, fund raising, and assisting as volunteers throughout the school, as well as being a "classroom Mom."

These traditional approaches are still important today and schools appreciate the assistance they receive from parents who are involved in this way.

But the type of involvement that many schools are seeing now is the type that is focused on improving the academic progress and well-being of the parents' own children.

Communication Is More Important than Ever

Involvement and engagement for many of today's parents rests with understanding what their children are learning and how they can connect with their teachers and the school to keep their children progressing to the best of their abilities. And that doesn't necessarily involve physically coming to the school.

Rich Bagin, APR, NSPRA's executive director and author of the new publication, *Making Parent Communication Effective and Easy*, says that increasing and improving communication between teachers and parents is the number one way to increase parent involvement and student achievement.

"Parents want to know how they can help their children learn more. They want to know what the expectations are for their children, how their kids are progressing, and they also seek guidance on helping their children achieve those expectations. Attending Parent Teacher Association (PTA) meetings is still important, but helping their children become successful is a parent's highest priority," said Bagin.

Research has shown that family involvement in education is twice as predictive of students' academic success as family socioeconomic status.

NSPRA's newest book cites research proving the impact effective communication has on student achievement. For example, a doctoral dissertation by Steven Constantino tracked the metrics over four years at a high school as it dealt with increased communication with parents and found:

- Parent satisfaction rose from 34% to 59%.
- Teacher satisfaction rose from 39% to 76%.
- The average SAT score rose 61 points, with an 18% reduction in disparity between minority and non-minority scores.
- The dropout rate fell from 11% to 3%.

Additional research indicates that family participation in education is twice as predictive of students' academic success as family socioeconomic status. Some of the more intensive programs had effects that were 10 times greater than others.

Common Barriers to Parent Involvement

The two most common barriers to parent involvement for teachers are the lack of time and knowledge of what to do. The June 2005 *National*

(Continued on page 3)

Inside:
The prep course for the APR exam is now being offered online. See page seven for details.

FIGURE 14.2 An example of a vertical layout in a newsletter published by the National School Public Relations Association in Rockville, Maryland.

CONSIDER HORIZONTAL LAYOUT RATHER THAN VERTICAL

A large number of school newsletters use the vertical layout concept. Issue after issue, they employ the three-column format on an 8 ½-by-11-inch page, with each column running the full length of the page. The length of the column has a tendency to turn off some readers. To obviate this problem, the horizontal layout can be used; it allows more typographic versatility without overpowering readers with long columns of type. (Samples of vertical and horizontal layouts are offered in Figures 14.2 and 14.3.)

The Scroll
A Publication of the Glassboro Public School District
560 Joseph Bowe Memorial Boulevard • Glassboro, NJ 08028 • www.glassboroschools.us FEBRUARY, 2006

Pushing Literacy to the Max at the Bowe School

"We are pushing literacy to the max," reported Bowe Principal Carmen Mitcho to the Board of Education in January. "We are doing what other districts would love to do." Mitcho and three teachers from the school were on hand at the regular meeting of the Board to report on the school's Literature Circles program, which is being incorporated into the curriculum for all grade levels this year at Bowe, and in various forms throughout the district.

"Literature circles are small, temporary groups of students who read the same book or other work of literature and share their ideas about the selection through discussion," explained sixth grade teacher Sue Kornicki. "Groups meet regularly and students within the group agree to take on a particular role to facilitate sharing of informa-

continued on page 2

Educators Earn County, District Recognition

Following an extensive selection process, five educators from Glassboro Schools have been chosen to be honored during the Gloucester County Teacher Recognition/Educational Services Professionals Program in April. Six additional teachers will receive Glassboro Golden Apple Awards during the district Recognition Dinner to take place in May.

On Wednesday, April 5, the Gloucester County Superintendents' Association will honor teachers and educational service professionals countywide for exceptional contributions in the areas of teaching and learning. Glassboro's honorees include Barbara Fortini (J. Harvey Rodgers School), Cheryl Tartaglione (Dorothy L. Bullock School), Deborah Redfield (Thomas E. Bowe School), Daniel Corradetti (Glassboro Intermediate School) and Richard Morrison (Glassboro High School). The event will take place 11:30 a.m.-2:30 p.m. at Woodbury Country Club and will provide an opportunity for networking with outstanding teachers from throughout Gloucester County.

Glassboro Schools will host its annual Recognition Dinner on Thursday, May 18, with an opportunity to recognize the county award recipients in addition to the Glassboro Golden Apple honorees.

continued on page 3

GIS Celebrates Arts and Artists

Seventh grade student and budding musician Travis Kirsch warms up the keyboard for a performance during Fine Arts Friday at Glassboro Intermediate School in January. More than 50 student musicians and vocalists performed for parents and community members who attended the first-time event. Student artwork was also on display. According to Principal Marianne Carver, the event gives the young performers an opportunity to develop skills before an audience.

"It also gives our community a chance to see the level of talent our students possess," she said. A second Fine Arts Friday will take place in April.

Corrective Action Plan Progress Updated

Superintendent Dr. Michael Gorman updated the Glassboro Board of Education on progress the district continues to make in implementation of the Corrective Action Plan during the January regular meeting of the Board. The plan addresses compliance issues in special education classification, monitoring and regular classroom intervention strategies.

Part of the plan's objectives is to correct over-representation of minority males in special education. The rate of black males classified for special education increased to 30.8% from 1995-2001, with an average of 16.98% for white boys during that period.

"Our goal is to bring the disproportionate numbers down," said Gorman.

According to Gorman, each building in Glassboro Schools has already conducted or scheduled community-based focus

continued on page 5

Coming in March:
A special edition of the Scroll focuses on the school budget and the April 18 school election.

FIGURE 14.3 An example of a newsletter layout with horizontal components from the Glassboro Public Schools, Glassboro, New Jersey (Heather Simmons Communications).

USING PHOTOS TO ENHANCE PUBLICATIONS

A photograph should be used in a school publication to communicate a message, not merely to break up copy or because "all the other schools use them." Photos serve two purposes: They give a bit of information to the hasty reader, and they attract readers to a story. Also, more attitude changes occur with a story and an accompanying picture than with the story alone. Too many editors of school publications are guilty of using sterile, posed, nonaction photos of poor quality; readers must thus conclude that no one in the schools knows anything about how to take a good photo. If the quality of available photos is bad, why advertise the fact by using them? Unless a poor-contrast photo shows some historic event of major news significance, forget it. Such photos detract from the overall first impression of the publication.

Head-and-shoulder shots, though not imaginative, can add to the overall layout of a page and can identify people with whom citizens will be dealing. Action shots are best, and because kids are what schools are all about, school publications should contain shots of students in learning situations. Too many publications use such photos as the superintendent behind a desk or feature the front of a new building (with no students) or a four-member teacher committee posing for the camera.

Some other tips regarding photos for school publications:

- Use large photos; small ones are noticed less and forgotten more quickly.
- Take a close-up shot if possible. If not, crop extraneous background material to focus on the action. You can use two L-shaped pieces of cardboard to help you frame the picture.
- Have the action in the picture point toward the story; if the action is going the wrong way and if no type appears in the photo, ask the printer to flop the photo.
- Place a related photo near its story, preferably *above* it. (Research says stories get higher readership with a related photo nearby as opposed to an unrelated photo placed nearby.)
- Always include a caption, preferably below the photo. Write captions with care; readers' attitudes toward the people in the picture can be altered by the caption.
- Use black-and-white photos. They reproduce the most clearly. If you use color film, allow enough time for processing and for converting to black-and-white. Usually, conversion takes a few days, and every lab does not handle it. The printer can transform a color photo into black-and-white for your publication. Printing full color in your publication is usually too costly for most schools.
- Make sure the photos for general or national publication show something unusual about your school; for instance, a teacher-recruitment brochure showing a teacher and a child at a chalkboard tells nothing about the uniqueness of your schools.
- To prepare for the printer, mount each photo on a piece of 8 ½-by-11-inch paper, using tape along two opposite edges. Label with the name of the job, indicate the top of the photo, and name the person(s) in the photo. Type captions on a separate piece of paper and designate the typeface, the size of type, and the width.

DISTRIBUTING PRINTED PUBLICATIONS

A school publication, no matter how well written and designed, does little good unless it is properly distributed. Making the right publication available to the right audience requires planning and implementation.

The first group to receive any publication—even those aimed at the general public or at teachers to be recruited—should be the internal audience. Distribution should be made internally first so that employees will be able to discuss topics in the publication intelligently with friends and neighbors.

The obvious approach to distributing the publications is not always the best one. For example, many schools send newsletters home with students and assume naively that parents are receiving the publications. Studies have shown that after about fifth grade, very few students give the publications to their parents.

Newsletters from a school principal directed exclusively at parents serve a purpose. The information

ordinarily concerns students, parents, and the school staff; therefore, it is imperative that it be received by parents. Some principals announce in a newsletter mailed home early in the school year that newsletters will be sent home with the students on certain dates. This is followed up by a short article in the local newspaper announcing the availability of the newsletter.

The most effective vehicle is of course the mail. In an era when the public demands better communication from the school, the expense of a newsletter sent to parents is not only justified but a necessity if the home and school are to work together effectively.

Districtwide newsletters should be made available to all residents. Too often school officials send newsletters of a general nature only to parents of students and include nonparents only before a school finance election. Quite understandably, many taxpayers resent this incomplete "we'll communicate only when we need you" approach. Newsletters should be mailed to all households, taking advantage of the school's nonprofit status to use the lowest possible nonprofit rates. Sound rapport with local postal authorities will serve school officials well, especially when the deadline for information is close at hand. Nonprofit mail does not guarantee delivery by any particular date. If an occasional time-pressure problem exists regarding a publication, cooperation from postal employees may be needed even more than usual.

The best time for your mailings should be determined with the cooperation of the local postal authorities, who can advise about such things as holiday mail and days when large area firms mail bills and advertisements. If possible, avoid times of the year when reader interest would be down because of preholiday planning or vacations.

Schools use different ways to decide on a mailing list for their publications. Some hire mailing firms to send the publications to all people on their list in the geographic area served by the school district. Others prepare their own list, working from tax roles, voter registration, and public utility customer lists. No approach is foolproof; each is time-consuming to keep up to date. The time and effort expended by school employees must be weighed against the cost of employing an outside firm to handle the mailing.

Public schools, as agencies of state, county, or municipal governments, qualify to mail nonprofit mailings using simplified addresses. Instead of applying a specified name and address, have imprinted on the mailing piece Postal Customer Local, Residential Customer Local, or Business Customer Local. The post office will deliver a copy to, respectively, all addresses, all homes, or all businesses. There is no additional charge for this service, though the post office requires that mailers prepare their mailings in a particular way. Discuss the procedure with the local postal authority or customer service representative.

Another technique to explore is inserting your publication into a local daily or weekly newspaper. Depending on how well read the paper is, your newsletter may get wide distribution. It will also be read at the same time the recipient chooses to sit down and read the paper.

In addition to mailing the community newsletter, school officials should place copies in stores and other places commonly frequented by area residents. Placing copies in offices and shops where people must wait for services, such as laundromats and doctors' offices, is a practical technique.

An effective idea is to prepare a news release on the main story in the community newsletter. Released to the media on the day the newsletters are expected to arrive in homes, the story can whet the appetite of potential readers of the publication. For some reason employees have been found to read school publications more after the area press has accorded them recognition by using a story or two from them.

Some publications can be made available through the cooperation of area groups. Real estate agents, for instance, would be pleased to have a general publication about the schools to distribute to potential or new residents. Welcome Wagon personnel could easily distribute the same kind of publication. So could the local chamber of commerce, the Jaycees, and other service organizations. In fact, a list of presidents of the various organizations in town might be used to mail publications that do not go to the general public. Also be sure to place copies in all local libraries.

EVALUATING SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS

Just about every editor of every publication asks at some stage, "Is anybody reading our publication?" The school administrator who is responsible for publications should evaluate them to determine if anyone is reading them; the evaluation results should be the catalyst for improving the publications.

Various ways exist to determine whether or not people are reading publications; among them are questionnaires, interviews, and focus panels. The questionnaire can be included as a readership study in the publication itself. To encourage readers to return the questionnaire, make it an easy tear-off form that takes no more than a few minutes to complete. Even with this approach, a very small percentage of the readers will return the questionnaire, and it is not appropriate to conclude that the nonresponding public shares the views of those who responded. The telephone survey and the in-person interview can provide data on which to base publication decisions. These methods can be more representative than the tear-off survey.

An editor can learn much from inviting a number of people receiving the publication to discuss it in a small group called a focus panel. Four groups of five or six people can help the editor see strengths and weaknesses as perceived by these groups. Out of these discussions will come recommendations for improvement. This kind of feedback is imperative. Publications can win national awards for their excellence, but if the intended audience is not reading the publications, changes must be made.

Another way to improve publications is to have them evaluated by publications experts who have no vested interests to protect. Often school publications reflect the thinking and biases of a couple of school officials who control the content and the design. Outsiders who know the publication business can suggest improvements. If the intent of the school publications is to inform as many people as possible, investing a small consultant fee in improving the publication will, in the long run, reduce the cost per article read.

Another way to have school publications evaluated is to enlist the service of an association or company that offers a critique service. A source for evaluation information is the National School Public Relations Association, 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, Maryland 20855.

DECIDING WHICH PUBLICATIONS TO PRINT

Many school districts annually struggle over decisions regarding which publications to print. Most school officials agree that a newsletter aimed at the general community is imperative. With the ever-increasing demand for accountability and public involvement in public education, this kind of newsletter appears to be a must for any school administration that recognizes its responsibility to communicate. Also on the must list of most administrators is an internal publication that keeps employees informed of activities and plans. Some districts combine this with a report of school board action. Annual reports, publications for parents, and other special-topic publications must be considered by the district that is concerned with a total publications undertaking. For an example, see Figure 14.4.

Many pages in this chapter have dealt with the community newsletter. Suffice it to say here that such a publication can be a major plus for the communications effort. So, too, can an effective internal publication that dispels rumors and presents the facts.

Many schools now provide a wrap-up of board of education meetings to employees. If it is distributed the morning after the board meeting and if the information is accurately and fairly presented, this publication can help improve employee morale. Everyone likes to know what is going on where one works. Some schools also send a board wrap-up to parents via their children. Parents like to know what is going on, and reading board briefs gives them a sense of inclusion.

Welcome to the School Board Meeting

This type of publication can be beneficial in many ways. It can identify board members and provide biographical information for the audience. It can explain the procedure to be used by those who wish to address the board. By offering such a publication, the board communicates that the same rules apply to

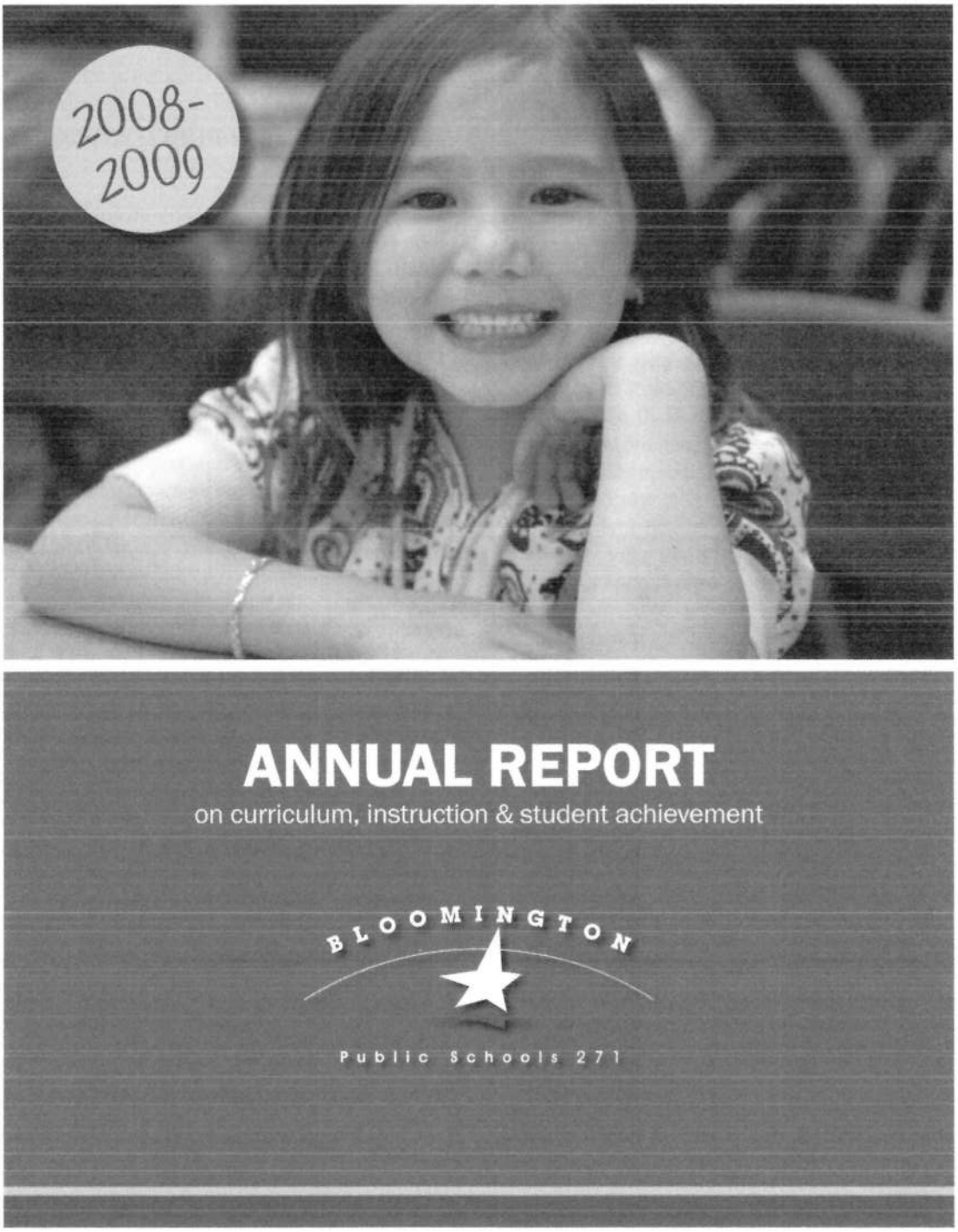


FIGURE 14.4 School district annual report. School districts use annual reports to keep communities updated on key trends and achievements. This annual report was produced by the Bloomington, Minnesota, Public Schools.

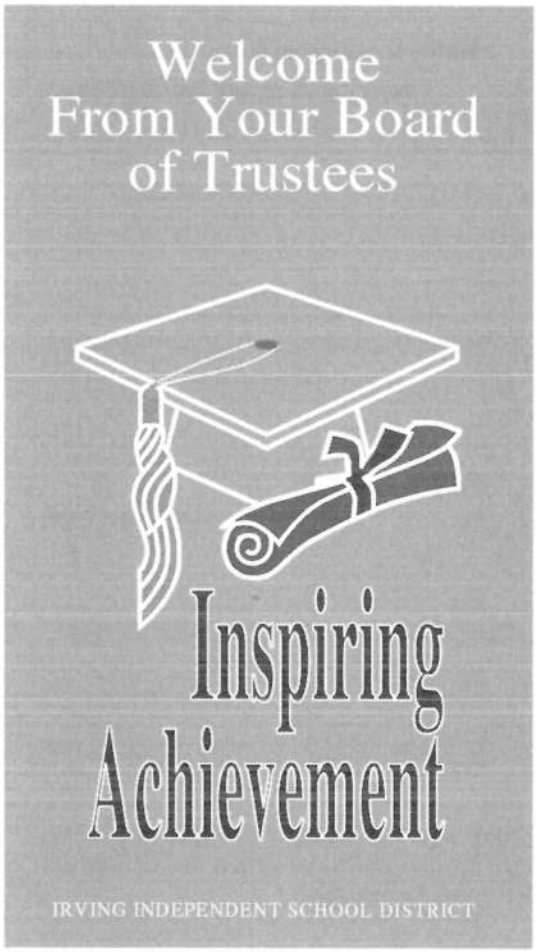


FIGURE 14.5 A welcome to board meetings from Irving Independent School District, Irving, Texas.

all groups and individuals. The inexpensive publication can include some basic facts about the schools presented in succinct fashion. One board's publication is shown in Figure 14.5.

Teacher-Recruitment Brochures

With the supply of teachers dwindling in certain disciplines in some regions, districts are preparing teacher-recruitment brochures. Some direct the brochures to a special kind of teacher or to teachers in subjects, such as math and science, where shortages exist. The brochure should provide information

FIGURE 14.6 Teacher recruitment. Increasingly school districts are turning to interactive CD-ROMs to recruit new teachers and staff. This CD was produced by the Davidson County, North Carolina, Business Education Partnership to help recruit for three school districts in the county.

that tells the candidate specifically about the school or whets his or her appetite enough for further inquiry. The school systems of Davidson County, North Carolina, recruit teachers with an interactive CD-ROM as shown in Figure 14.6.

Parent Publications

More effort should be put into preparing publications that help parents understand their role in the educational process. School officials and other educators and parents constantly talk about the need for cooperation between the home and the school if the child is to receive the best possible education. Yet most schools do little to help the relationship with their publications. Some schools distribute materials that explain to parents what a child should learn in a particular grade. Many schools offer a kindergarten brochure that helps parents as their child takes that first giant step to school. Contact state or national education associations or board association groups to find out what brochures they offer. A district can adapt a brochure to its needs or use it as is. Available are topics like "helping your child with homework," "TV

and your child," and many others. These publications show that school administrators recognize the contributions that parents make to the education process.

Special-Topic Publications

More and more districts are distributing publications on specific topics. Some focus on one topic in their regularly scheduled newsletter. One issue might offer an in-depth treatment of art in the schools; the next issue might focus on reading. It is usually more effective to include content of broad appeal, however, so there is something for almost every reader. Schools, especially those with their own printing facilities, can publish brief reports on special issues and topics. The Brooklyn, New York, schools distributed an excellent brochure on vandalism to encourage parents to help quell the outbreak of costly destruction of property. Other schools have prepared special publications for parents on topics such as drugs, test results, and the contribution that volunteers can make to the schools. Some schools have prepared publications for substitute teachers, bus drivers, volunteers, and cafeteria workers. Others have distributed special publications aimed at helping parents (and teachers) get the most out of parent–teacher conferences.

The Happy-Gram

Although low in cost and easy to use, happy-grams forge links between home and school. Happy-grams can come in any form: a letter, a postcard, a note. In a happy-gram teachers write a short message telling parents that their child did something positive. Some schools then mail them home, while others let the child take them home. For many parents, especially those who experienced little success in school, the happy-gram can be the first positive note from the school.

"I Have an Idea to Help the Schools" Form

The Haverford Township, Pennsylvania, schools adopted a communication package of inexpensive materials to foster two-way communications. Among the materials are forms to facilitate communication between the community and the school. One of the forms, placed in key locations around the community,

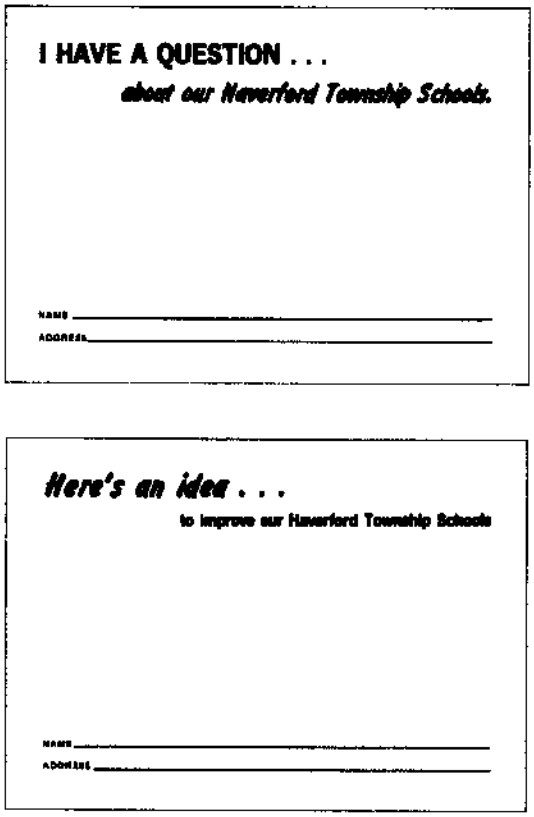


FIGURE 14.7 An excellent technique for soliciting public opinion used by Haverford Township Schools, Havertown, Pennsylvania.

encourages people to submit ideas to improve the schools. Another form encourages questions about the schools. These forms are inexpensive and can be photocopied. As part of a total publications package, they can be effective. (See Figure 14.7.)

The Annual Report

Before publishing an expensive annual report, school officials should ask the questions "What is the purpose of the annual report? Could that purpose be served in a less expensive way?" Frequently, school districts publish annual reports only because they always have or because other area school districts are producing them. If an annual report is required by law, it can often be done in a way that inexpensively provides the information mandated. Too often school officials rationalize a legal requirement into a full-blown publicity piece for

the district. In many cases the money spent on elaborate annual reports could be more wisely invested in a large number of smaller publications.

If an annual report is published, it should contain not only accomplishments of the past year and comparisons and contrasts with previous years, but also challenges and problems yet to be solved. Including these topics will ensure more credibility for the publication. Some school districts also effectively use the annual report format for a general publication that provides information for real estate agents, new residents, candidates for positions with the schools, and for community groups that wish to discuss the schools. Also, remember to keep the focus on children.

The School Calendar

A publication that has gained popularity each year is the school calendar. School districts are preparing the calendar and making it available in a variety of ways. Some are distributed free to all parents; some go to all households; some are sold to a parents' organization, which then sells the calendar for a small fee; others use advertising as a means of support. The calendar should be attractive enough to grace a kitchen wall for the year. It should run for 12 months and should feature children. Part of the space for each day can be filled with scheduled school activities; another part can be left blank for family messages. The calendar can include general information about the schools, such as absentee procedures, inclement weather announcements, and phone numbers of key personnel. (See Figure 14.8.) Other examples of school publications are featured in Figures 14.9, 14.10, and 14.11.

THE ROLE OF STUDENT PUBLICATIONS

For many years student publications—newspapers, yearbooks, and the like—were considered another arm of the school administration. The purpose of the publications, in many cases, was to show the schools in a favorable light. This has changed appreciably as students have demanded and the courts have backed their right to print material critical of the administration and to use words that some administrators find objectionable. It is imperative that school officials select teacher-advisers wisely because the sage adviser can prevent many community relations problems by establishing student respect for journalistic expertise. Too frequently advisers with no background in journalism are appointed to these potentially explosive positions. Students, sensing that a teacher has little knowledge in the field, challenge his or her leadership and decisions. Chaos and community relations problems usually result, causing innumerable headaches for the administrators.

Before the school year starts, it is prudent for the student editors of the various publications, the teacher-advisers, and the school board attorney to get together to discuss the legal issues affecting the student publications. If everyone knows the rules and if written guidelines are developed before controversial issues emerge, cool heads can prevail to solve problems through anticipation. Time spent planning can bring immeasurable benefits regarding student publications. When no plans are made and a volatile issue erupts, all the school's officials suffer in some way or another as the community divides on various sides of the issue.

Davenport, Iowa, Community School District approved the following policy statement concerning student publications:

> School publications are vital and necessary tools of education to be utilized in teaching students the purpose and functions of mass media in a democratic society. Students who participate as editors and staff members shall be offered the opportunity to gain educational and realistic experiences in the concepts of the provisions of the First Amendment to the Constitution that asserts the freedoms of the press and speech.
>
> The criteria for the inclusion of a story or any other material in the publication shall be determined by the journalists and the advisors, considering restrictions relating to libel, privacy, contempt, obscenity and copyright.
>
> Students should be provided with a professionally trained advisor to teach, to advise, and to counsel them in achievement of an accepted, responsible journalism. They should provide a forum for all diverse opinions, to service the interests and needs of the reading public, and to provide news and commentary that is accurate and honest.

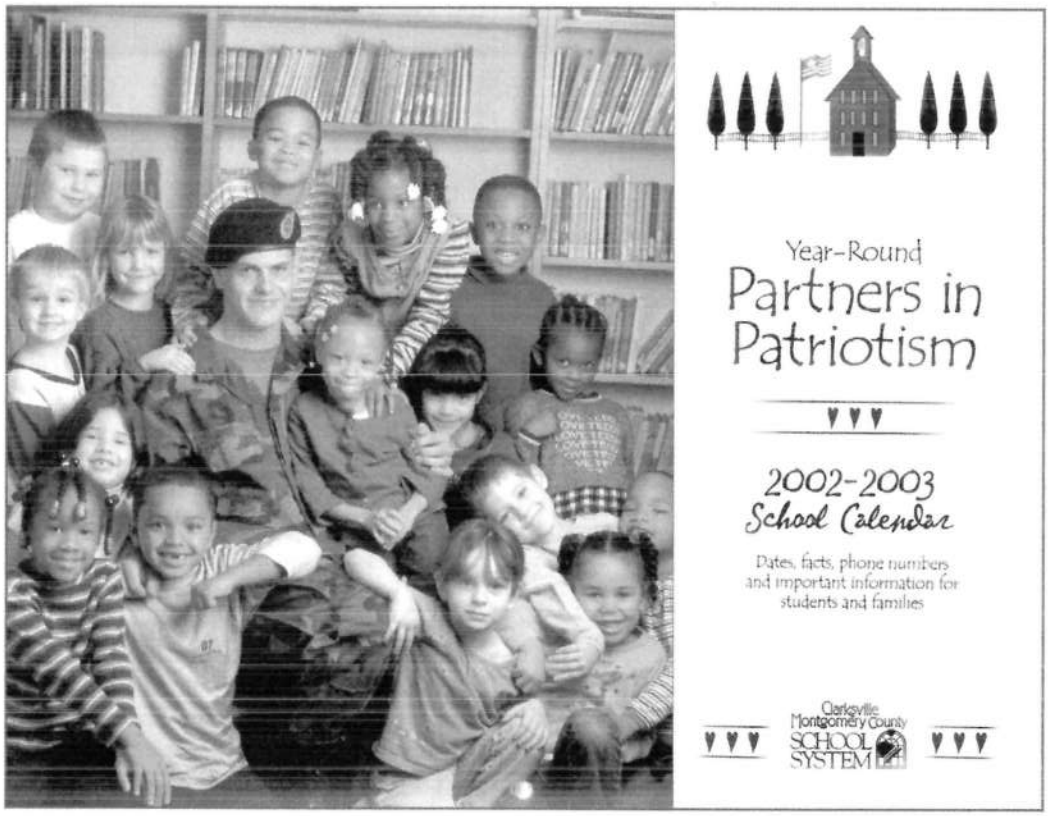


FIGURE 14.8 School calendar. Annual calendars are used by school districts to disseminate key dates, policies, and other information to the community. This calendar was produced by the Clarksville Montgomery County, Tennessee, School System.

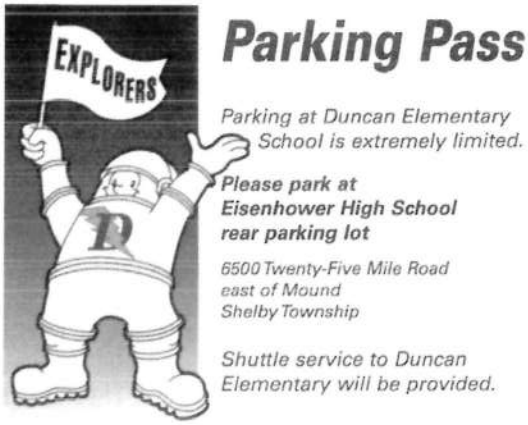


FIGURE 14.9 Special-event publications. Special events in school districts are supported by a variety of publications. This innovative parking pass to a new school dedication was created by the Utica, Michigan, Community Schools.

Newssheets and Newspapers

Thousands of elementary teachers and pupils prepare simple one- to four-page newssheets that are sent home to parents at intervals during the year. Usually photocopied or printed on laser printers, they contain samples of work done in class and describe and explain some of the learning activities carried on with a particular group of pupils.

Students can serve as reporters. Many schools are using children's computer publishing programs to produce these types of newssheets. Even young children can produce an attractive newspaper with these programs.

These publications are greatly underestimated for their value in communicating with parents. Checks on readership show that they are read thoroughly and are genuinely interesting to most mothers and fathers,

WEST MIFFLIN AREA SCHOOL DISTRICT
Proudly serving West Mifflin and Whitaker

WM schoolscene

VOLUME 9
NUMBER 2
SUMMER 2002

WHERE ARE THEY GOING?

West Mifflin Area Seniors are going places. Take a look at the list of colleges, universities and military schools students have been accepted:

Aurora University
Allegheny College
Baldwin-Wallace College
Bethany College
California State University
California University of Pennsylvania
Carlow College
Carnegie Mellon University
Clarion University
College of Wooster
Community College of Allegheny County
Dickinson College
Duquesne University
Edinboro University
Gannon University
Geneva College
Grove City College
Harvard University
Howard University
Indiana University of Pennsylvania
Illinois Institute of Technology
Johnson & Wales University
John Carroll University
Kent State University
Long Island University
La Roche College
Marietta College
Median School of Allied Health Careers
Ohio University
Penn State University
Point Park College
Robert Morris University
Rochester Institute of Technology
Rose-Hulman Institute of Technology
Saint Francis College
Saint Vincent College
Slippery Rock University
Thiel College
United States Air Force Academy
United States Naval Academy
University of Dayton
University of Illinois
University of Michigan
University of Pittsburgh
University of Sciences/Philadelphia
University of South Carolina
University of Tampa
Valley Forge Christian College
Virginia Tech University
Washington & Jefferson College
Waynesburg College
West Chester University
Western School
West Liberty State College
Westminster College
West Virginia University
Wittenberg University

West Mifflin Area Graduates Focus On Theme of Brotherhood, Perspectives

West Mifflin Area 2002 graduates are focusing on "The Renewal of Brotherhood and Perspectives" as they prepare for their futures. Valedictorian Leyna DeNapoli and Salutatorian Brian Barna spoke to more than 200 high school graduates during commencement exercises about the importance of helping each other and remembering what is important in the wake of a troubled year for the United States.

"After the September 11th incident, the nation came together," said DeNapoli. "Now, as things wind down, we can't stop helping each other."

Barna, who was a member of the Soccer Team, the Track Team and the National Honor Society and the treasurer and the secretary of the Physics Club, spoke to graduates about how precious life is.

SALUTATORIAN BRIAN BARNA AND VALEDICTORIAN LEYNA DENAPOLI LOOK OVER THE FALL CALENDAR AS THEY ANTICIPATE COLLEGE LIFE

"Since September 11th, everyone has had a greater sense of patriotism," Barna said. "They see the bigger picture now. They aren't taking life for granted."

The DeNapoli household is familiar with valedictorians, since Leyna's brother Matt was valedictorian in 1999. Leyna says she plans to study Forensic Chemistry at Ohio University's Honor's Tutorial College in Athens, OH this fall.

DeNapoli, who was a member of the National Honor Society, the Interact Club and the Track Team, attributes her success in school to her mother.

"My mother has been a big influence on me," DeNapoli said. "She has pushed me academically since kindergarten."

Barna, who plans to pursue

Continued on page 2

District Adds New Colors, Styles to Dress Code

Students in K-8 can now add more colors to their wardrobe. The school board voted to add more colors to the existing dress code policy. Now, students can wear yellow, pink, red, black and/or green shirts in addition to the navy, light blue and white shirts. Students can wear black and green pants in addition to the already designated colors of navy and khaki. Blue jeans are permitted as well. In addition to the button down collared style shirts, students can wear pullovers.

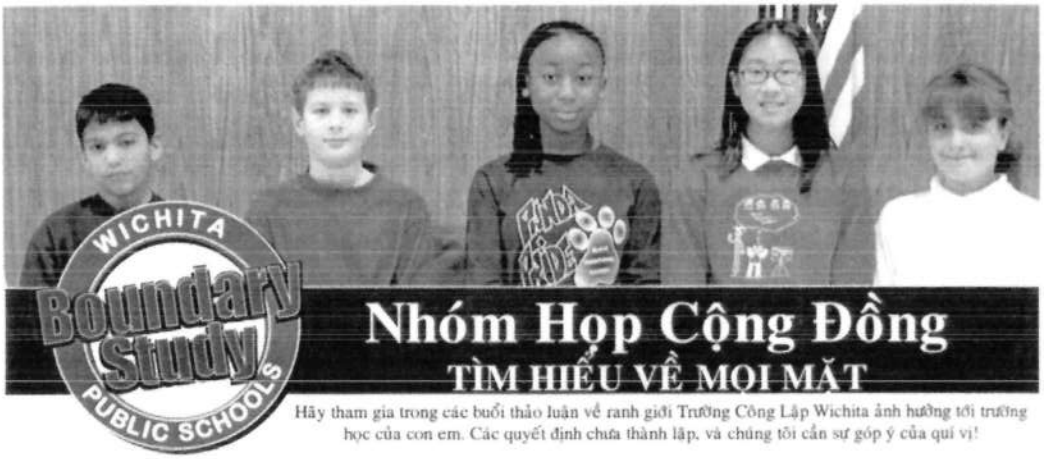
A special opt-out provision is also included in the new dress code for parents or guardians who feel wearing the school uniforms conflict with philosophical or religious beliefs. Exemption forms can be found at each school building upon request.

The district also specified disciplinary procedures that would be taken if students did not follow the guidelines. The complete dress code and

Continued on page 3

FIGURE 14.10 School district newsletter. Regular newsletters help keep communities informed about school events and progress. This newsletter was published by the West Mifflin, Pennsylvania, Area School District.

FIGURE 14.11 Publication translation. School districts often offer multiple versions of publications to enhance communication in diverse publications. These meeting announcements, produced by the Wichita, Kansas, Public Schools, appear in English, Spanish, and Vietnamese.



Thứ Năm, 6 Tháng 2 7:00 tối: **Phòng Gym Tiểu Học Kelly**, 3143 S. Millwood. *Những trường bị ảnh hưởng: Enterprise, Funston và White* **(Khu 4)**

Thứ Ba, 11 Tháng 2 7:00 tối **Phòng Gym Tiểu Học Adams**, 1002 N. Oliver. *Chú trọng về cộng động về việc làm giảm tác động lạm dụng về các trẻ em người Mỹ gốc Châu Phi. Những trường bị ảnh hưởng:Price-Harris và Adams* **(Khu 2)**

Thứ Năm, 13 Tháng 2 7:00 tối: **Phòng Thính giả Coleman Middle** ,1544 N. Governeour. *Chú trọng về các trường tiểu học và trung học middle và những thay đổi có liên quan. Những trường bị ảnh hưởng: Buckner, Chisholm Trail, Gammon, Pleasant Valley Middle, Minneha và Coleman* **(Khu 2)**

Thứ Ba, 18 Tháng 2 7:00 tối: **Phòng Gym Tiểu Học Colvin**, 2820 S. Roosevelt. *Những trường bị ảnh hưởng: Allen, Caldwell, Clark, Colvin, Griffith, Jefferson, Kellogg, Linwood, Washington, Jardine, Mead, và Curtis* **(Khu 3)**

Thứ Năm, 27 Tháng 2 7:00 tối: **Phòng Gym Tiểu Học Cloud** , 1205 W. 26th St. N. *Những trường bị ảnh hưởng: Horace Mann, Park, Irving, Cloud, Dodge,* **(Khu 1)**

(Tất cả các buổi họp đều có dịch vụ giữ trẻ và thông dịch cho những nơi được cần.)

▶ Tại sao đổi ranh giới?

Các lớp học mới hiện đang được xây cất như một phần của trái phiếu $284.5 triệu nhằm cải tiến trường học. Các Trường Công Lập Wichita hiện thời có thể nghĩ cách để vẽ lại ranh giới riêng cho từng trường hầu để làm giảm đi tình trạng quá đông học sinh và cho phép các học sinh thưởng thức các khoảng trống của trường mới.

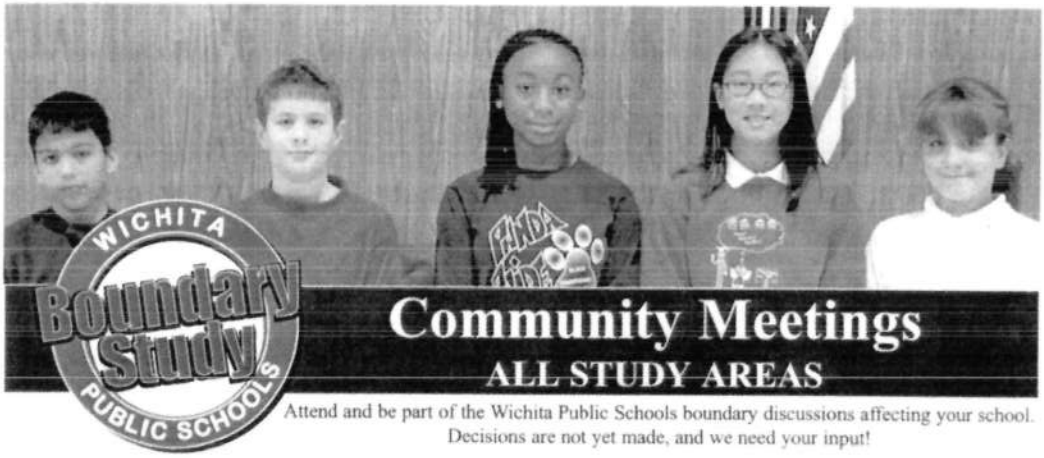
▶ Hãy tích cực tham gia trong các trường tương lai của mình!

Vietnamese/Community Meeting- All

www.usd259.com hoặc 973-4515

1/30/03

FIGURE 14.11 continued



Attend and be part of the Wichita Public Schools boundary discussions affecting your school. Decisions are not yet made, and we need your input!

Thurs., Feb. 6, 7 p.m.: **Kelly Elementary Gym**, 3143 S. Millwood. *Schools impacted: Cessna, Enterprise, Funston and White* **(Study Area 4)**

Tues., Feb. 11, 7 p.m.: **Adams Elementary Gym**, 1002 N. Oliver. *Focus on community promise to reduce impact of busing on African-American children. Schools impacted: Price-Harris and Adams* **(Study Area 2)**

Thurs., Feb. 13, 7 p.m.: **Coleman Middle Auditorium**,1544 N. Governeour. *Focus on new elementary and middle schools and related changes. Schools impacted: Buckner, Chisholm Trail, Gammon, Pleasant Valley Middle, Minneha and Coleman* **(Study Area 2)**

Tues., Feb. 18, 7 p.m.: **Colvin Elementary Gym**, 2820 S. Roosevelt. *Schools impacted: Allen, Caldwell, Clark, Colvin, Griffith, Jefferson, Kellogg, Linwood, Washington, Jardine, Mead, and Curtis* **(Study Area 3)**

Thurs., Feb. 27, 7 p.m.: **Cloud Elementary Gym**, 1205 W. 26th St. N. *Schools impacted: Horace Mann, Park, Irving, Cloud, Dodge* **(Study Area 1)**

(All meetings will provide childcare and translation services where needed.)

▶ Why make boundary changes?

New classrooms are currently being constructed as part of the $284.5 million bond issue improvement plan. The Wichita public school district can now consider how to redraw individual school boundaries to reduce overcrowding and allow students to enjoy the new school spaces.

▶ Become involved in the future of your schools!

www.usd259.com or 973-4515

1/30/03

FIGURE 14.11 continued

who find them to be clear and convincing evidence of pupil achievement. Quite often these newssheets are passed around to neighbors and friends when something related to their own children is reported.

Practically all junior and senior high schools publish a student newspaper weekly, semimonthly, or monthly. Some newspaper staffs are now doing their own layout and design on a desktop publishing program. Most student newspapers are printed rather than photocopied. Compare a printer's capabilities and cost to your school's capabilities and cost before deciding. Aside from the educational experiences received by pupils on the newspaper staff, a well-organized and carefully prepared paper gives an accurate reflection of the daily life of the school. Its stories deal with courses of study, methods of teaching, programs, special opportunities, accomplishments, and shortcomings of the institution.

All members of the administrative and instructional staff should recognize that parents, merchants, professional persons, and other workers in the community—as well as students—read the school newspaper. Copies are taken home by pupils and mailed, in some school systems, to selected adults, including the editors of local commercial newspapers. Surveys indicate that from 45 to 75 percent of the parents read the school newspaper when it is brought home by their children and that it is reviewed with interest by others who receive it.

Questions

1. Explain the role of design in developing a school publication. Is an intricate, colorful design always important to attracting readers? What are some of the key factors that should be evaluated when designing a school publication?
2. When preparing a publication aimed at the general public, what are some things you might do to entice the 30-second reader to look at some of the materials in that newsletter?
3. Is white space a plus or a waste of taxpayer money used for printing? Why?
4. How do you know anyone is reading your school publications? What evaluation methods do you now use to see if the publications are being read and are considered to be effective?
5. Explain how print publications can be distributed in electronic forms, and list the benefits of using electronic forms of distribution for school publications.

Readings

Conover, Theodore, *Graphic Communications Today*, 4th ed. Clifton Park, NY: Thomson Delmar Learning, 2003.

Green, Chuck, *Design It Yourself Newsletters: A Step-by-Step Guide*. Beverly, MA: Rockport, 2002.

Hahn, Fred E., *Do-It-Yourself Advertising and Promotion: How to Produce Great Ads, Brochures, Catalogs, Direct Mail, Web Sites, and More*. New York: Wiley, 2003.

Hamilton, Edward A., *Newsletter Design: A Step-by-Step Guide to Creative Publications*. New York: Wiley, 1997.

Parker, Roger C., *Design to Sell: Use Microsoft® Publisher to Plan, Write and Design Great Marketing Pieces*. Redmond, WA: Microsoft Press, 2006.

Parker, Roger C., *Looking Good in Print*, 6th ed. Phoenix, AZ: Paraglyph Press, 2006.

Samara, Timothy, *Publication Design Workbook: A Real-World Guide to Designing Magazines, Newspapers, and Newsletters*. Beverly, MA: Rockport, 2005.

Saville, Laurel, *100 Habits of Successful Publication Designers: Insider Secrets for Working Smart and Staying Creative*. Beverly, MA: Rockport, 2008.

White, Jan, *Editing by Design: For Designers, Art Directors, and Editors—The Classic Guide to Winning Readers*. New York: Allworth Press, 2003.

Endnotes

1. A registered trademark of Robert Gunning Clear Writing Institute. 560 Ricardo Avenue, Santa Barbara, CA 93109-1624.
2. HTML is the programming language used to create most Web pages. It's an abbreviation for HyperText Markup Language.

Chapter

13

Preparing Online Communications

The rapid adoption of new communication technology by schools and school systems has made profound changes in the way school public relations practitioners disseminate and collect information.

New technology is allowing schools to open new lines of two-way communication with key constituencies and it is allowing school communicators to find new uses for traditional communication tactics. Web sites, e-mail, e-newsletters, social media tools, streaming video, and more now give school communicators the ability to disseminate and collect information instantly and continually. Meanwhile, online access to publications and information that might previously have been printed have given schools the new option of serving information on demand—that is, being able to deliver information to constituents when they want it as opposed to mailing or delivering information as it is published.

Online access has created new pressures on school communicators to be timely and transparent with their communications. But new communication technologies also have allowed schools to reduce the costs associated with producing and delivering materials. A primary benefit of adopting new communication technology is boosting both the effectiveness and the efficiency of communication programming.

HOW NEW AND OLD MEDIA CONVERGED IN ONE DISTRICT

Tim Carroll, APR, has served as a school public relations director for more than 30 years. Since 1995 he has been Director of Public Information for the Allen Independent School District in Allen, Texas. The Allen Independent School District serves about 40,000 households in a rapidly growing suburban community located 23 miles north of Dallas. Student enrollment has more than tripled over the last 20 years. The district currently serves about 18,000 students in 15 elementary schools, 3 middle schools, 1 freshman center and 1 high school.

The school system's communications efforts have been repeatedly recognized for excellence by the National School Public Relations Association and the Texas School Public Relations Association. According to Carroll, the development of online communication efforts and the resulting changes and benefits are typical of those that can be found in many formal school public relations efforts.

From Chapter 13 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

New Media, New Tactics

"We use print materials probably half as much as we did 10 years ago," Carroll said. The main reductions have come in the area of print publications. The district recently sought to cut expenses across the board, and the majority of cuts in public relations came from reducing or eliminating some print publications. But because new online communication efforts were developed to fill the void, Carroll said the cuts created little impact on programming and little public concern. "One big surprise was that we had no reaction to these cuts, and the big reason is that more and more the expectation of our public is that 'If I want it I can get it online.' As a result, we make sure our online presence is robust—and that includes the availability of publications online. Everything you could possibly want to know about our schools is available at the click of a mouse."

Printed publications continue to have a place in school public relations efforts. But that role has changed to one that targets smaller or segmented audiences. Publications are used less to reach mass audiences, which now can access information and publications online. "We still print publications though," Carroll said. "For example we still print an annual report. But we once printed 35,000 copies and mailed it to every household in the community. Now we print only 3,000 copies and mail it to key communicators throughout the community, and we make the annual report available online. Print newsletters mailed throughout the community used to be a mainstay of the communications program. We have completely eliminated the print newsletter in favor of e-newsletters delivered online."

"What we have found is that readership has not gone down—people have just changed preferences in the way they get information and we are just re-packaging it in different ways to accommodate different delivery modes."

There are some audience segments served by the Allen Independent School District that still have a preference for print. The school public relations program accommodates these readers with magazine racks in all schools for displaying key publications. Carroll stressed that the need for some publications generally is not an issue of residents' lacking Internet access or skill. The need is based more on specific needs of some audience segments. Carroll explained: "The degree to which you still need to offer a mix of online and traditional information documents is more a matter of knowing and accommodating the various segments in your community. Typically, ESL (English as a second language) programs, calendars, school bus routes, and other publications such as these—publications that people may have more a need to hold in their hands and look at—are best disseminated in both online and print formats."

"One way to measure is to recognize that publications that are more technical in nature and less editorial in nature tend to perform better when offered online and in print. Those publications that focus more on editorial issues—covering strategies, issues, and goals— do well when distributed online."

Changes in planning

The convergence of media has also changed the way communications are planned and implemented.

Communication efforts to communicate information during bond issue campaigns are one example according to Carroll. Face-to-face communication remains key to such efforts. But the initial communication-planning focus has shifted from print efforts to online efforts supported by print.

"In our most recent campaign, rather than plan publications as we once did, the first step was to gather and create as much information and content on the issue as possible," Carroll explained. "With the content assembled we then developed a content-rich Web site (referred to as a dark Web site since it was not yet activated) in advance covering the issues related to the bond issue. In this way, as soon as the bond program got under way the Web site was ready to go, and people in the community could begin using it to learn more about the election. Next came a brochure with key facts and figures, which was printed and was made available through the schools. We printed about 10,000 of those inexpensive pieces. Next came a kind of prospectus brochure—an 8 1/2- by -11-inch document with photos and more information on the plans

for the bond funding. About 1,000 of these were printed for distribution to key communicators and other who requested it."

"So the new emphasis now is first on electronic or digital distribution—meaning online distribution. These communication efforts are then reinforced with targeted printed publications in a way that is much more efficient and cost-effective than older print campaigns, using communitywide mailings, might have been."

Digital Technology in Publishing

On-demand publishing, using high-quality laser printing, has also contributed to options open to school communicators. Such in-house printing has made short-run printing cost-effective and has given schools the ability to customize content—meaning that different versions of a basic brochure can include different information customized for different audiences. On top of this, the basic print versions can also be made available online—either in the exact same format or formatted slightly differently to better accommodate online readers—further supplementing the distribution of actual printed copies.

Here's how this might work in a typical project, according to Carroll: "Suppose a bond issue is designed to support 10 new building projects throughout a community. A brochure might list and describe all of those 10 projects. Each time a school official goes out to make a presentation to the community, the project listings in the brochure might be reordered to highlight the 1 or 2 projects that audience might be more interested in. Using the same strategy, when a publication is placed online, the 10 projects might be listed by name with links to more information on each particular project. In this way, online readers can click through to get information only for those projects in which they have an interest."

Digital and online production and distribution have given school communicators a new level of flexibility and immediacy to their communications that adds potential for better serving the information needs and interests of key audiences.

"You cannot do this if you are printing everything," Carroll explained. "In the old days—before digital and online options were available—someone would have written and designed a brochure, paid to have thousands of them printed, paid more to get them distributed, and that would have been that. Changes or customizations to update information or meet the needs of specific segments of an audience would not have been possible because of cost and time issues. Today, digital production coupled with online distributions offers an almost unlimited potential to update and customize products to better serve the interests and information needs of every audience segment."

Video and Presentations

Beyond print, video and other presentation support materials (such as PowerPoint presentations) can effectively be distributed online to supplement their use in face-to-face meetings in schools and throughout the community.

PowerPoint-type presentations are especially effective with small- to medium-size audiences, where more costly video productions might be too expensive, according to Carroll. "Despite the growing use of video, PowerPoint presentation materials, when produced well, can be extremely effective with audiences both in person and online," he said.

One benefit of online distribution of print, video, and presentation material is that school officials making public presentations and running community meetings can direct audience members to a school Web site for copies of materials used in a meeting or to get additional information on topics discussed.

"It's a tremendous benefit when a school official can tell an audience that 'all of this material and more can be found on our Web site,'" Carroll said. "So in a meeting for example, a school official can talk about a new tax rate resulting from a planned bond issue, and he or she might review tax rates for the past 5 or 10 years. But if someone wants even more historical information on tax rates, she or he can easily get it if you make that kind of supplementary information available on a Web site. Detailed Web-based information, supplemented by the specific information made available in presentations and print publications, can bring a level of total transparency to school decision making and communications."

Access Issues Declining

In a survey of its community, Carroll's school district found that 94 percent of households reported now having Internet access. "This trend has allowed us to make tremendous changes in the way we distribute information—and made that process more effective and efficient in the process," he noted.

One example: The district publishes a student handbook annually that runs more than 100 pages. With more than 18,000 students—and every student getting a copy—this was an enormous print and distribution effort. Today, the district still produces that handbook but it is distributed mainly online. The district still prints about 1,000 copies of the handbook and makes it available in all of the schools. Any parent or student who wants a printed copy of it can get it. But the school district now distributes only about 700 printed copies, saving $30,000 per year. The rest of the copies are distributed online.[1]

Online Presence and Tools Grow

Studies by the U.S. Department of Education reflect the rapid expansion of Internet technology in public schools. According to a report from the National Center for Education Statistics, only 35 percent of schools had Internet access in 1994. By 2002, nearly all schools (99 percent) had Internet access, with 94 percent of those schools using broadband, or high-speed, Internet connections.[2]

A survey of members of the National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA) also revealed that along with school districts, many individual schools have adopted new communication technology. In the NSPRA survey, 72 percent of members responding from school districts said all of their individual schools now maintain Web sites. Only 13 percent of the school districts responding reported that none of their individual schools maintained Web sites.

In addition to maintaining basic Web sites, many schools are expanding their online presence as they implement expanding online technology to both disseminate information and collect feedback (see Figure 13.1).

Web pages have given way in some districts to database-driven Web offerings that can, for example, help new home buyers plot what specific

Some of the online communications techniques now being employed by schools include:

- District and school Web sites
- Special purpose Web sites, such as those covering issues like bond campaigns, new buliding efforts, fund-raising initiatives, and so on
- Interactive Web data retrieval efforts aimed at general public audiences, such as those showing school attendance boundaries by home address, real-time calendars, tax and budget data, and so on
- Interactive Web-based data retrieval efforts aimed at parents and students, such as online grade books and lesson plans, course descriptions and requirements, school policies, and so on
- E-newsletters and other electronic publications
- Mass e-mails, listservs and discussion groups
- Streaming audio and video on school events and programs
- Podcasts and other downloadable MP3 or other audio or video files covering academic, athletic, or school activities
- RSS (really simple syndication) efforts offering shared content and news feeds
- Online surveys and feedback forms
- Intranets or internal computer networks hosting professional development and administrative and other information for faculty and administrative staff.

FIGURE 13.1 Communication options for online communication by schools continue to expand.

schools serve a neighborhood they're considering or offer parents data on transportation schedules or menu offerings.

E-newsletters, electronic versions of their print counterparts, offer a new and inexpensive option for quickly getting information to many people at once at both the district and school building levels. Online surveys and feedback forms provide a constant source of school patron input and feedback.

Streaming video and audio add sight and sound to the school message and provide a new channel for broadcast distribution that carries none of the costs associated with more traditional broadcast or videotape distribution efforts.

USING WEB SITES TO COMMUNICATE

The communication capabilities of Web sites continue to evolve, and online communicators continue to work to establish specific standards to define the characteristics of Web sites that function efficiently and effectively.

Several issues confront schools when they seek to communicate through a Web site. The available technology and the school's proficiency at deploying it, as well as the capability of each school's audience to access and use this technology, influence Web site effectiveness. Design—or how the Web pages look on computer monitors of various types and sizes—influences effectiveness. Navigation—directed by the architecture of the Web site and how it helps users find information—influences effectiveness. Content—the information and data made available—influences effectiveness. And the writing—the copy used to convey important messages and data—also influences effectiveness.

Measuring Web Success

Schools should use a set of performance areas to assess overall Web performance, along with evaluations of specific content. The Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools, for example, evaluate school Web sites in an annual competition by judging the following: usefulness of content, clarity of design, frequency of updates, ease of navigation, and adherence to Fairfax County Public School Web policies. Their evaluations also consider content items, such as links to other district information and Web services (see Figures 13.2 and 13.3).

NSPRA evaluates and recognizes excellence among school district Web sites in its annual Publications and Electronic Media Awards Program. Some school district Web sites recognized by NSPRA include:

Allen, Texas, Independent School District, www.allenisd.org

Arlington, Virginia, Public Schools, www.arlington.k12.va.us

Bay Village City, Ohio, School District www.bayvillageschools.com

Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools, www.fcps.edu

Rush-Henrietta, New York, Central School District, www.rhnet.org

Hurst-Euless-Bedford, Texas, Independent School District, www.hebisd.edu

Kingston City, New York, Schools, www.kingstoncityschools.org

Newport News, Virginia, Public Schools http://sbo.nn.k12.va.us

Paradise Valley, Arizona, School District, www.paradisevalleyschools.org

Prince William County, Virginia, Public Schools, www.pwcs.edu

San Bernardino City, California, Unified School District, www.sbcusd.com

Virginia Beach City, Virginia, Public Schools, www.vbschools.com.

Communication, Design, and Technology Mix

School Web site development and management call for a mix of technological and communications expertise. While technology is essential to the successful operation of Web sites, overall effectiveness depends heavily on informative and timely content. Planners

Best of the FCPS Web

Award Application

Fairfax County Public Schools Best of the Web awards recognizes outstanding public web-based internet communication efforts between schools and the communities they serve. This award program is sponsored by the Office of Community Relations and the Dept. of Information Technology.

Best of the Web Awards are given annually to three elementary schools, one middle school and one high school that best demonstrate the award criteria:

- Usefulness of Content
- Clarity of Design
- Frequency of Updates
- Ease of Navigation
- Adherence to FCPS Web Policies

A panel of judges from the Office of Community Relations and the Dept. of Information Technology evaluates all entries. Awards are announced at the Spring Curator User Group Conference.

BEST OF THE WEB AWARD APPLICATION

1. Name of School _____

2. Name of Web Site Curator _____

3. Website URL _____

4. Answer the following questions. Does your home page...

• link to the FCPS home page	☐ Yes	☐ No
• link to the FCPS search site	☐ Yes	☐ No
• contain the date the page was last updated	☐ Yes	☐ No
• contain the name of the curator with link to his or her e-mail	☐ Yes	☐ No

NEW Requirements. Does your homepage...

• Bell schedule	☐ Yes	☐ No
• School supply lists	☐ Yes	☐ No
• School address and central phone numbers	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Names, phone numbers, and e-mails of key school administrators	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Picture of principal	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Link to School year Calendar (www.fcps.edu/cal.htm)	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Link to FCPS Directives (www.fcps.edu/Directives/index.htm)	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Link to FCPS Emergency Announcements page (www.fcps.edu/news/emerg.htm)	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Link to school lunch menus (www.fcps.edu/parents/schlunch.htm)	☐ Yes	☐ No
• Link to school profile (see also School Profiles)	☐ Yes	☐ No

5. Briefly describe the strengths of your web site. (No more than 10 sentences, please. Attach to application.)

6. Attach one testimonial from a user of your site.

7. Curator Signature _____

8. Principal Signature _____

Application due by February 1
Send to: Meg Carnes or Jill Kurtz, Office of Community Relations, Burkholder Center.

FIGURE 13.2 The Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools sponsor an annual Best of the Web awards program to identify and salute excellence among school Web sites in the district. The award application outlines criteria used to judge school Web sites.

FIGURE 13.3 Winning school Web sites in Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools Best of the Web Awards program are offered a logo to post on their home page recognizing their excellence.

should consider Web sites as a communication vehicle (see Figure 13.4).

Communication planning should drive Web site content, while design and technology planning should consider the most effective ways in which to deliver the content. In this process, communication planning first establishes key informational items, such as which key audiences need to be served, what needs are to be communicated, and how messages and data can best be presented and delivered in the context of a Web site.

Web design planning then begins to bridge the communication needs with technological capabilities by creating the ways in which Web pages, and the information and images they offer, will be created and presented.

Technology planning applies existing, or identifies needed, technological capabilities to develop and deliver the Web site's information and images. Communication, design, and technology planning is an ongoing process. Regular evaluation of Web site use should be done to assess how well all three elements are functioning in serving the key audiences that were identified in initial planning, and to provide the basis for continued improvements and enhancements to the Web site's content, design, and technology.

Research to Determine Content

Research conducted during the communication planning phase of a Web site's development should consider overall items or subject areas to be included among the site's content. Surveys should be conducted among users or potential users (including, for example, parents, teachers, taxpayers, prospective residents, area businesses, and so on) to assess each group's Web behaviors and information needs.

Audits or reviews of other school Web sites serving surrounding populations or similarly sized school populations might also provide ideas on key content areas to include—as well as suggestions on design and technological aspects that might be considered.

Generally, school district Web sites include at a minimum:

- A home page, including a brief description or statement about the district, often accompanied by a brief welcoming statement and easy-to-follow links to all major content areas
- Names and contact information for key district and program administrative leaders, schools and principals, and school board members
- Current news or happenings around the district
- Web versions of recent district print and electronic publications, including key policies, student handbooks, and so on
- Information on academic programs, student achievement, notable accomplishments, accreditations, and so on
- Information on extracurricular and athletic programs
- School and district key dates and calendars
- Basic district information, such as operating hours for various facilities, key phone numbers, and so on
- Employment opportunities and human resources information
- Registration information and other data for new parents or residents new to the district
- Basic information, policies, and contacts for support services, such as transportation, nutrition, facilities, and so on

FIGURE 13.4 This section of the home page of the Carrollton-Farmers Branch Independent, Texas, School District's Web site displays the rich mix of content that a school district Web site can offer to visitors. Links at the top of this page guide users to audience- and district-specific content. The page's main body provides links to other informational offerings, including video and audio content, that cover school events, achievements, and programs.

- Links to the Web sites of outside organizations or partners working closely with the district, such as a school foundation, parent organizations, alumni groups, business partners, social service agencies, and so on
- A site map offering a quick navigational guide to key content areas.

Often, Web site home or entry pages, sometimes referred to as *portals*, also offer audience-based links to help users guide themselves through a site. For example, the initial entry page might offer links to "subportals" with titles such as:

Information for Students

Information for Parents

Information for Residents

Information for Staff and Teachers.

Web Design and Copy Work Together

Good Web design and copywriting help Web site visitors to immediately grasp the key messages that are being presented by creating a focus on the main points and ideas. Design and copy also work together to help Web site users quickly make judgments about what content to read or skim, based on their personal information needs. Successful design and copy also combine to help users develop trust in the Web site as a dependable information source.

In a sense, Web site design and copy are partners in this process. Neither can perform these jobs alone. Good copy presented in a bad design or a good design made up of poorly written copy will hurt the effectiveness of any Web site. Web design and copy also work together to signal a clear starting point or entry point for viewers so Web site users naturally know where to begin scanning or reading the page. The way in which the design presents its copy and illustrations helps to create a logical "flow" for users.

Those trained in the design of print publications might be tempted to apply print design devices and standards to Web pages. But while many design devices, such as headlines, subheads, photographs, and colors, are employed in both print and Web design, the rules for using such devices are not always the same between the two venues. The smaller "page" space offered by many computer screens usually means online designs need to be shorter than their counterpart print designs might be. The quality of images, including type, can vary onscreen as well. The act of scrolling by users on Web sites, essentially moving a page up and down and at times from side to side, presents a different set of placement needs than those faced by designers of a static print page.

Web sites, however, do offer writers and designers the ability to better segment information and articles into appropriate, easy-to-read "bits" of information that can be linked to a main page or article. This gives readers the option to access the information only if they feel they need to, and to do it when they want to. Links can be created to open new pages on the screen, retrieving information stored on other pages.

Helping users navigate their way through these mazes of pages is an important design element, too. It's important, however, that a Web site always include components that make it clear to users how they can return to a previous page or main starting point, making sure that users never get the feeling that they've become lost in a jumble of information.

To assess how well users navigate their Web sites, schools should consider creating focus groups of Web users to allow individuals to discuss their experiences at finding information when using the sites. It can also be helpful to ask participants to find certain kinds of information on the Web site during such sessions so that researchers can observe how well and quickly users are able to navigate through portions of the Web page.

In addition, all Web pages should offer some type of feedback device, which can be a phone number, an e-mail address, or a simple form to be filled out and submitted, to report problems or ask questions that the user could not find the answer to on the Web site. Analysis of such ongoing feedback can be an important tool to improve the effectiveness of the school Web site's design and copy.

Serving Special Issues and Audiences

Sections of school Web sites also can be developed to serve the special information needs of certain audiences. Web-based informational efforts can provide schools with cost-effective ways in which to reach audiences that may be too small to reach with more expensive print communications.

Many school districts now offer special sections on their Web sites to deliver information or key district publications in languages other than English. The Web site for the Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools, for example, offers links to information in Arabic, Chinese, Farsi, Korean, Spanish, Urdu, and Vietnamese (see Figure 13.5).

Special Web site sections might be devoted to delivering details on specific programs or campaigns, such as budget planning, pending bond or finance elections, new school construction progress, public engagement activities, new curriculum, and so on (see Figure 13.6).

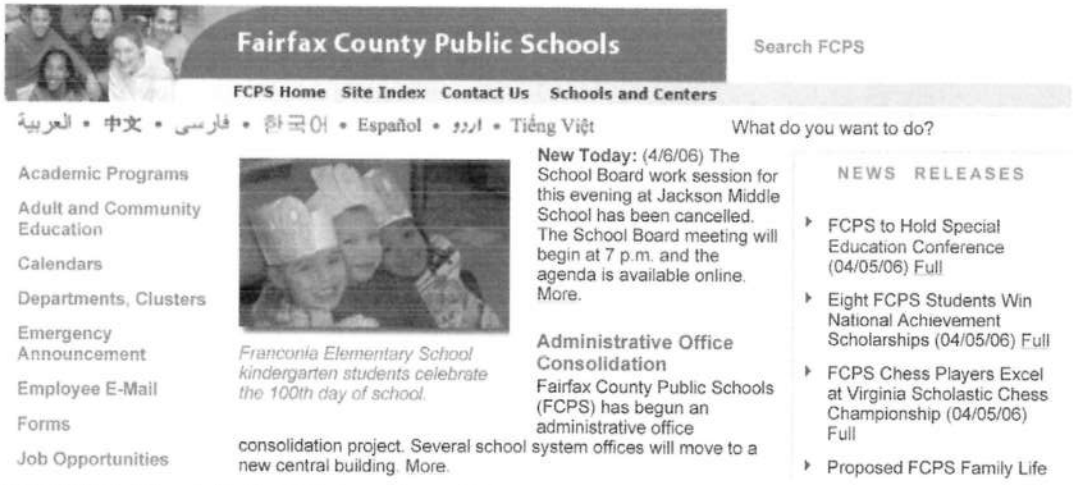


FIGURE 13.5 School district Web sites often offer links to deliver information to audiences with specific needs. The Fairfax County, Virginia, Public Schools Web site offers links (at top) to information in Arabic, Chinese, Farsi, Korean, Spanish, Urdu, and Vietnamese.

Other additions to school Web sites that are growing in popularity include online grade books, lesson plans, homework support, and other academic information. These password-protected, secure sites, where parents or other users must register for access, offer the potential for ongoing communication between teachers and parents that can directly influence student achievement. Many such services also can be customized by users, allowing, for example, a parent to elect to receive automatic e-mail notification when a

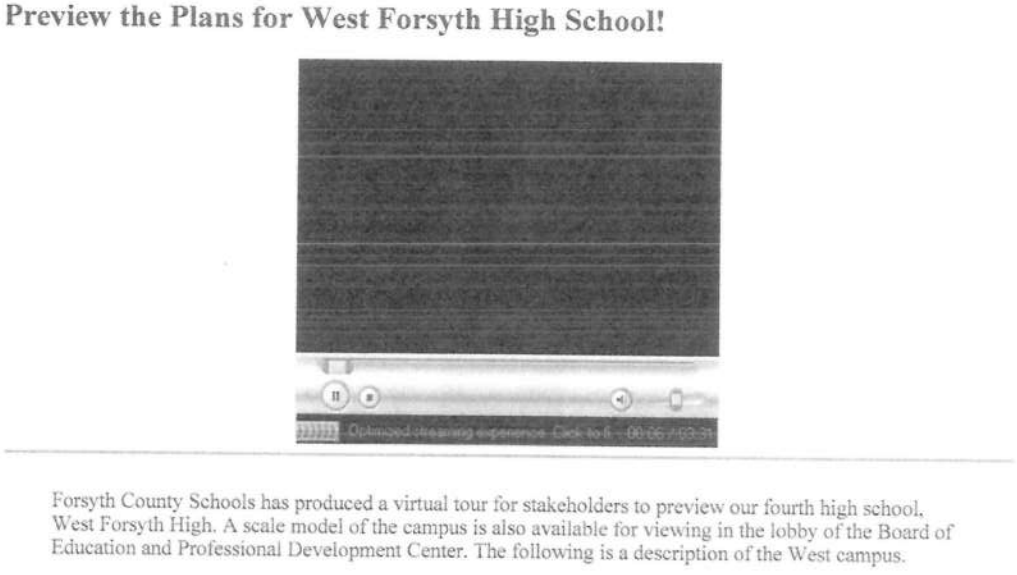


FIGURE 13.6 School Web sites can effectively be used to deliver information, including audio and video, on many special school projects, activities, and campaigns. Forsyth County, Georgia, Schools use their Web site to deliver a wide variety of content, including this video preview of plans offered when a new high school was under consideration.

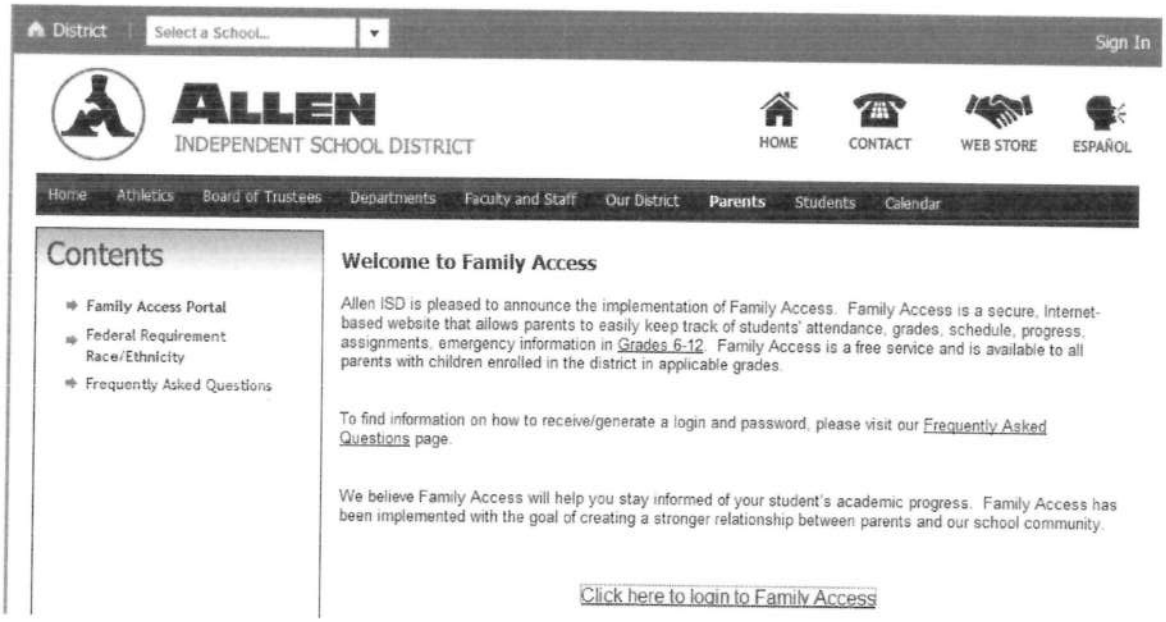


FIGURE 13.7 More school district Web sites, such as this one from the Allen, Texas, Independent School District, incorporate online grade books to allow parents and guardians to conveniently track the academic progress of their children.

child fails to turn in an assignment, misses a class, or receives a low grade on a test or quiz (see Figure 13.7).

Online communications also can be efficient ways for school districts to reach wide audiences in times of special need. In a major crisis that receives coverage from the news media, for example, individuals around the world may turn to a school district Web site for more specific information and details. School administrators should therefore include procedures for quickly using online communication tools to offer statements with current information about a crisis situation, as well as steps being taken to ensure the safety of students and others. The district Web site also can be used to relay basic facts about any incident and to offer links to more information related to other organizations or agencies that may be of assistance to those affected by the event.

Policies on Content

Although they vary among school districts, most school Web programs have guidelines or policies in place to govern the use of online information to protect student safety and privacy. In general, such policies often prevent the use of any names on Web sites unless the district has a signed release from a parent or guardian for students, or from a staff member or other individual for adults. Personal information, such as addresses, telephone numbers, and personal e-mail addresses, are rarely if ever used. Some districts forbid the listing of student last names in many circumstances.

Many districts do list employee e-mail addresses so parents and others can contact teachers and staff directly. Other districts, however, choose to list only general district or school e-mail addresses to protect staff from unwanted e-mail. Some schools choose to privately offer teacher e-mail addresses only to the parents of students enrolled in a teacher's class as one way of restricting access; others list a teacher e-mail address behind the secure areas of online grade books, on Web pages that only registered parents can access. Whatever the individual policy, school district Web planners must strive to find a balance between protecting staff e-mail addresses and not appearing to be overly restrictive in allowing access to teachers and others by those with genuine needs and concerns.

Photographs pose another challenge to school Web planners. Some policies suggest not using any photos in which individual students can be identified. Some districts prevent the use of photographs showing elementary-school students but are less restrictive in the use of photographs showing older children. Generally, however, most policies call for a signed release to be on file for any photograph displaying individuals.

One option used by some school Web designers to avoid identification issues is to use photos of students in school settings purchased from suppliers of stock photography. Other Web planners, however, argue that incorporating local photos plays an important role in communicating accurately about local schools—and personalizing their Web sites.

As new Web site management technologies allow more and more people to easily post information to school and district Web sites, school communicators are struggling with policies to help govern what can and cannot be posted. Such policies should support the district's need to post only appropriate content while not creating an appearance of being overly restrictive or cumbersome. For the most part, such policies use language stating that Web content needs to cover appropriate topics and issues in a way that reflects the district's or community's standard of good taste.

Some districts form a Web committee to review content and policies that govern it. Others leave such responsibility in the hands of a single administrative officer. Policies also apply to school-level Web sites, and often the building principal or some other building-level official is responsible for evaluating content on his or her own site.

Other Online Communication Options

School Web sites also provide a venue for distributing other forms of online communication important to keeping the community in general, and specific special-interest audiences, informed on school issues.

SOCIAL NETWORKING

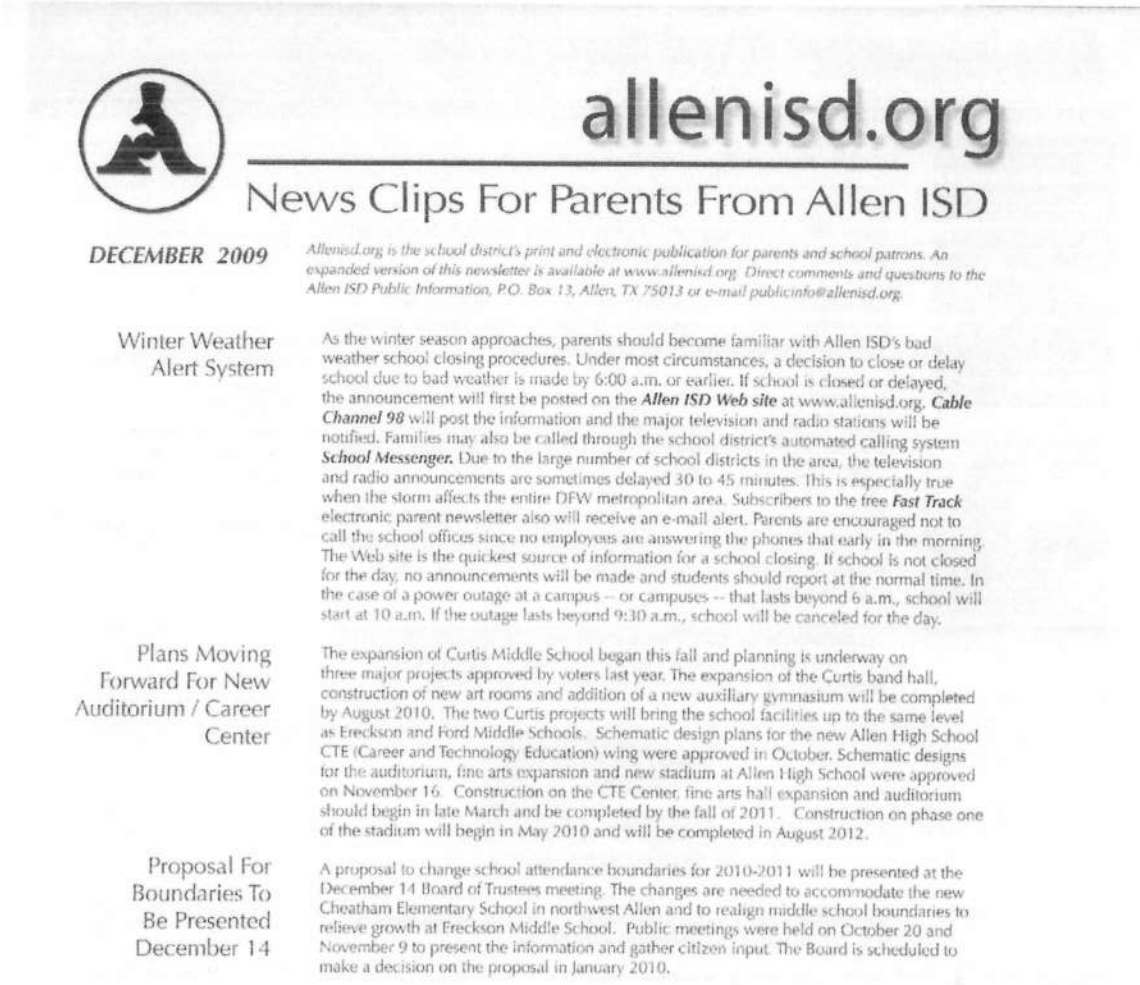
So-called social media sites, such as Twitter (twitter.com), Facebook (www.facebook.com), and LinkedIn (www.linkedin.com), have received a good deal of interest among public relations practitioners as users of these services have expanded rapidly. The ability to connect directly with subscribers to such services and the capacity to communicate instantly hold a great deal of potential for public relations efforts on an ongoing basis and in special situations, such as emerging crises.

Case studies suggest that schools experimenting with social media tools are finding ways to successfully integrate them into school communication efforts. Documenting member experiences with social media, the National School Public Relations reported:

- LinkedIn is a way school leaders can connect with thousands of educators, including other superintendents, public relations professionals, and principals, from around the country. Through LinkedIn groups, school leaders can participate in discussions and share links. NSPRA's LinkedIn group provides another way for members to get to know each other through their professional profiles. Users can also find members with expertise in areas they need.
- Twitter enables the exchange of quick, frequent postings of 140 characters or less between individuals and/or organizations. Example: One school district broke a news story about the school board's decision to appoint a new superintendent directly from its board meeting using Twitter.
- Some superintendents use social media and blogs to connect with stakeholders. While administrators and teachers can use social media and blogs to share information with their stakeholders and students, monitoring social media and blog postings is an important way to collect feedback. Monitoring services that use keywords to alert subscribers to new postings about an organization or an issue, such as Google Alerts (www.google.com/alerts) or Yahoo Alerts (alerts.yahoo.com) can help school communicators track online postings from traditional news source, social media, and blogs.[3]

E-NEWSLETTERS

Electronic newsletters, or e-newsletters, have been growing rapidly in use in recent years by both school districts and individual schools. (See Figures 13.8 and 13.9.)



allenisd.org

News Clips For Parents From Allen ISD

DECEMBER 2009

Allenisd.org is the school district's print and electronic publication for parents and school patrons. An expanded version of this newsletter is available at www.allenisd.org. Direct comments and questions to the Allen ISD Public Information, P.O. Box 13, Allen, TX 75013 or e-mail publicinfo@allenisd.org.

Winter Weather Alert System

As the winter season approaches, parents should become familiar with Allen ISD's bad weather school closing procedures. Under most circumstances, a decision to close or delay school due to bad weather is made by 6:00 a.m. or earlier. If school is closed or delayed, the announcement will first be posted on the ***Allen ISD Web site*** at www.allenisd.org. ***Cable Channel 98*** will post the information and the major television and radio stations will be notified. Families may also be called through the school district's automated calling system ***School Messenger.*** Due to the large number of school districts in the area, the television and radio announcements are sometimes delayed 30 to 45 minutes. This is especially true when the storm affects the entire DFW metropolitan area. Subscribers to the free ***Fast Track*** electronic parent newsletter also will receive an e-mail alert. Parents are encouraged not to call the school offices since no employees are answering the phones that early in the morning. The Web site is the quickest source of information for a school closing. If school is not closed for the day, no announcements will be made and students should report at the normal time. In the case of a power outage at a campus -- or campuses -- that lasts beyond 6 a.m., school will start at 10 a.m. If the outage lasts beyond 9:30 a.m., school will be canceled for the day.

Plans Moving Forward For New Auditorium / Career Center

The expansion of Curtis Middle School began this fall and planning is underway on three major projects approved by voters last year. The expansion of the Curtis band hall, construction of new art rooms and addition of a new auxiliary gymnasium will be completed by August 2010. The two Curtis projects will bring the school facilities up to the same level as Ereckson and Ford Middle Schools. Schematic design plans for the new Allen High School CTE (Career and Technology Education) wing were approved in October. Schematic designs for the auditorium, fine arts expansion and new stadium at Allen High School were approved on November 16. Construction on the CTE Center, fine arts hall expansion and auditorium should begin in late March and be completed by the fall of 2011. Construction on phase one of the stadium will begin in May 2010 and will be completed in August 2012.

Proposal For Boundaries To Be Presented December 14

A proposal to change school attendance boundaries for 2010-2011 will be presented at the December 14 Board of Trustees meeting. The changes are needed to accommodate the new Cheatham Elementary School in northwest Allen and to realign middle school boundaries to relieve growth at Ereckson Middle School. Public meetings were held on October 20 and November 9 to present the information and gather citizen input. The Board is scheduled to make a decision on the proposal in January 2010.

FIGURE 13.8 Web-based school e-newsletters, such as this one produced by the Allen, Texas, Independent School District, help schools to easily and quickly stay in touch with key audiences.

E-newsletter growth is being fueled both by the development of software making it easier for organizations to develop and distribute online publications and by the wide acceptance of e-mail as a communication medium by both educators and the general public.

Web-based publications offer school districts the opportunity to easily and quickly stay in touch with important communicators in schools and the district, including parents, community groups, business partner groups, and others. E-newsletters in particular can help to build linked communities of school supporters and serve as critical information sources to keep these individuals active and involved.

E-newsletters and other Web-based publishing programs also provide options for immediate communications by sending messages and information in times of crises or disasters. In such situations, the ability to communicate rapidly is crucial to maintaining the credibility of the school district and its officials. Slow responses to any event will harm credibility and make future communication more difficult.

E-MAILS AND LISTSERVS

Similar to e-newsletters, e-mail lists and listservs can be used to offer quick news items and announcements that need to be disseminated to parents and the

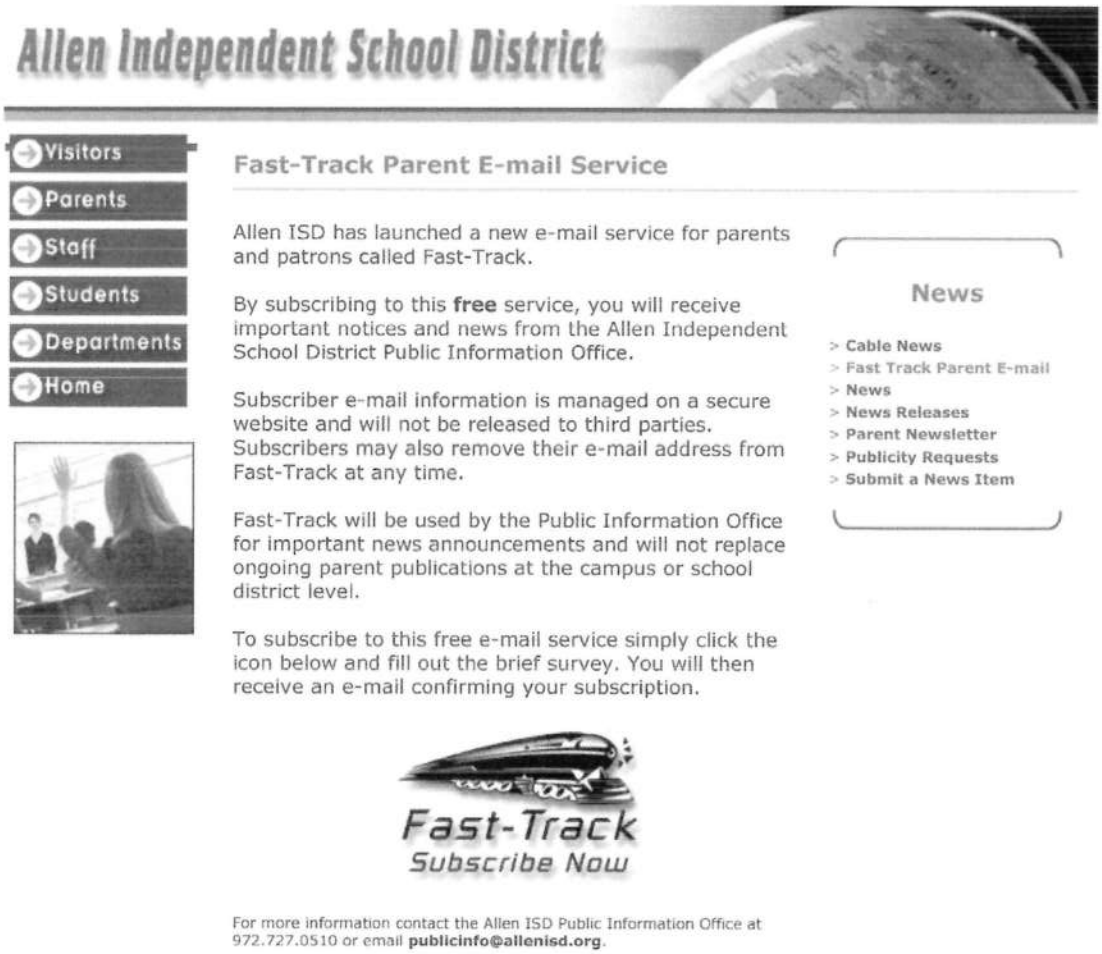


FIGURE 13.9 School districts offering online e-newsletters also offer online ways for parents and others to subscribe to the publications by completing online request forms, such as this one from the Web site of the Allen, Texas, Independent School District.

community at certain times. Many schools use such programs to communicate quickly during times of school closings because of inclement weather, for example. They're also used to communicate in times of crisis, when news events involving a school or even an event near a school may cause panic and confusion among parents and others. But these e-mail devices also are used in less urgent situations, reminding parents to attend an upcoming back-to-school night or to participate in a school fund-raising event, for example. School officials using e-mail lists and listservs need to be mindful of basic e-mail etiquettes rules when sending messages. Messages should be brief and to the point, and the number of e-mails sent should be kept to a minimum. If these rules are broken the effectiveness of such efforts will begin to fade, as recipients begin ignoring future e-mails (see Figure 13.10).

HANDBOOKS

Online versions of school or student handbooks provide ready access to publications when parents or students need information. Online handbooks also offer the ability to update the publications on an ongoing basis, as dates, policies, phone numbers, names, or other important information changes. While many schools report few problems with offering these

```
From: Fairfax County Public Schools
Sent: Monday, March 14, 2005
To: Kurtz, Jill
Subject: Fairfax County Public Schools Closed Monday, Feb. 28

Dear Jill,

All Fairfax County public schools will be closed today, Monday, Feb. 28.
Offices are open with a liberal leave policy in effect.

Extracurricular activities, interscholastic contests, team practices, field
trips,
adult and community education classes, and recreation programs
in schools and on school grounds are canceled.

School-age child care (SACC) centers are closed.

Essential personnel are to report to work.

============================================================
This service is offered by the FCPS Office of Community Relations. Your
comments and feedback are welcome.

Tell a friend about this service! Go to
http://www.fcps.edu/ocr/tellafriend.htm

============================================================
This list is hosted by Fairfax County Public Schools, 10700 Page Ave., Fairfax
VA 22030.

If you have technical problems with this service, contact
THERESE.PAYNE@FCPS.EDU

If you want to unsubscribe from this list, go to:
https://fcps.medianext.com/fcps/fcpsunsub.html

To update your profile information for this service, go to:
https://fcps.medianext.com/fcps/fcpsupdate.html

If you use an anti-spam program or service, add Keep in Touch to your safe or
permitted sender list. For details:
http://www.fcps.edu/ocr/kit/whitelist.htm
```

FIGURE 13.10 E-mail, such as this example from the Fairfax, Virginia, Public Schools, is used to rapidly communicate routine reminder information as well as urgent breaking news. Many school districts use their Web sites to offer online e-mail sign-up programs for parents and other interested community members.

items online only, some make hard copies available on request or keep copies in school lobbies or libraries for those community members who may not have Web access to them.

AUDIO AND VIDEO

Many types of school events—from monthly school board meetings to class events, from school plays to football games to graduation ceremonies—are finding their way onto school Web sites in video format. These videos can be offered as "streaming video" or audio "podcasts" in which Web viewers watch the video on their personal computers as it is sent directly from the school's Web server. The video or audio files also may be offered as downloads so users can keep the files for viewing now or later (see Figure 13.11).

INTERACTIVE DATABASES

For subjects with large numbers of data points, online databases can help the community members and even school employees find information they're seeking without having to ask school officials to track it down for them. Such databases may offer school attendance information when searched by street address.

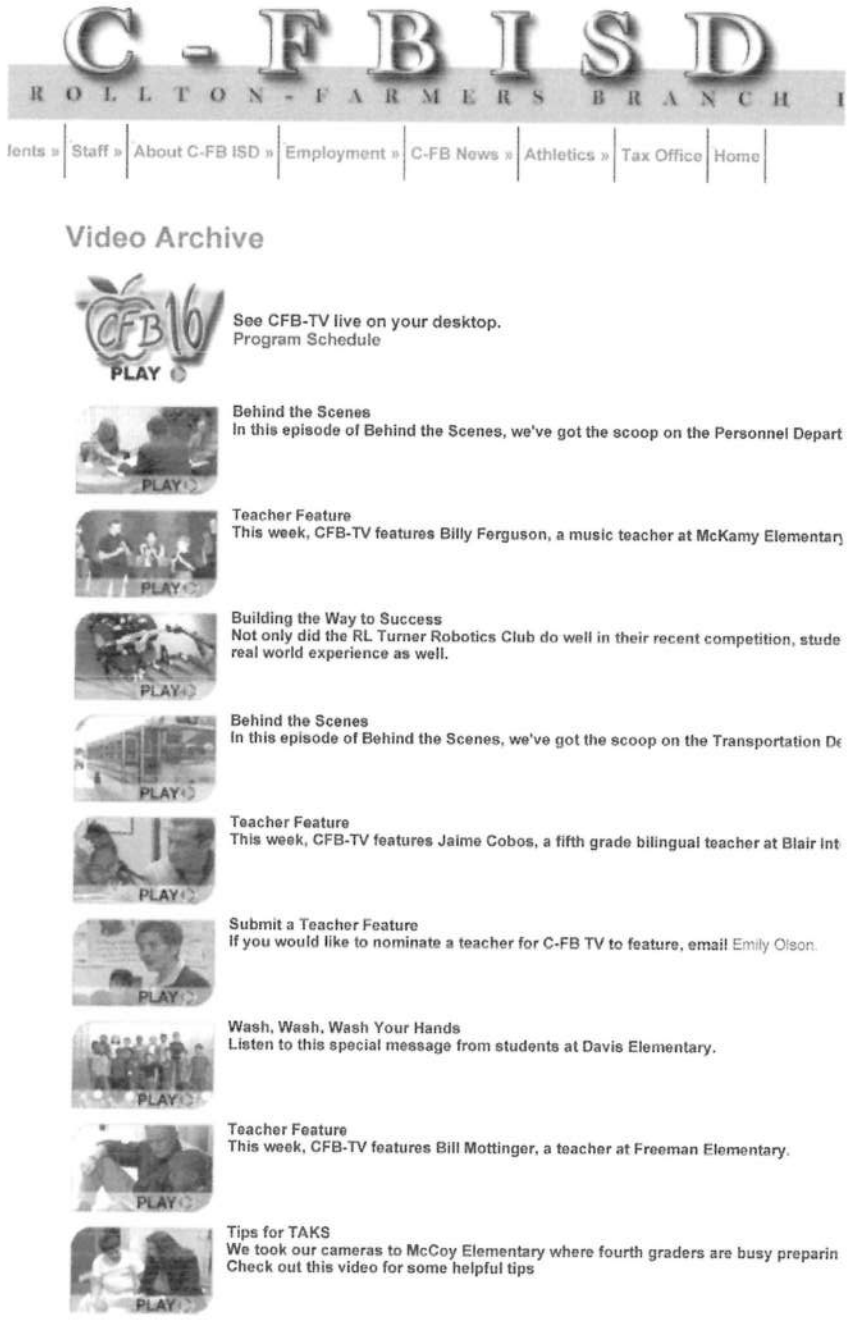


FIGURE 13.11 School Web sites can serve as centers for accessing audio and video clips of various school events, as shown in this example of a video archive page from the Carrollton-Farmers Branch, Texas, Independent School District.

SOURCES AND SITES FOR MORE INFORMATION ON ONLINE COMMUNICATION

Many organizations offer online communication resources and advice for schools. Some include:

Consortium for School Networking (CoSN)
www.cosn.org

eSchool News
www.eschoolnews.com

International Association of Business Communicators
www.iabc.com

International Society for Technology in Education
www.iste.org

National School Public Relations Association
www.nspra.org

Pew Internet & American Life Project
www.pewinternet.org

Public Relations Society of America
www.prsa.org

Society for Technical Communication
www.stc.org

Budget information may be selectable by topic or expenditure amounts. Some schools offer maps and driving directions to school facilities and events.

A number of vendors also offer online communication solutions and content for schools. Along with Web support, different vendors offer integrated notification systems (telephone, text messages, e-mail, and so on), social media development and monitoring, surveys and other online feedback tools, and message and content development. Some vendors offering services in these areas for school communicators include:

Alert Now (www.alertnow.com)

Blackboard Connect (www.blackboardconnect.com)

E-Alert (mis-sciences.com/Default.aspx)

Edline (www.edline.com)

Global Connect (www.gc1.com)

Granicus (www.granicus.com)

NewsBank (www.newsbankprofessionals. com)

One Call Now (www.onecallnow.com)

ParentLink (www.parentlink.net)

Relatrix (www.relatrix.com)

THiNQ Ed (www.thinqed.com)

Schoolwires (www.schoolwires.com)

Questions

1. Explain the importance of trends in media convergence and the expansion of online communication. How is this trend helping school communications to become more effective and efficient?
2. List the ways in which online communications can assist school officials during a time of crisis. Discuss the kinds of steps school communicators should take to make sure that their online services are properly prepared to handle a crisis.
3. Why is it important that schools take steps to secure permission from the parents or guardians of children portrayed online?
4. How can Web communications effectively reinforce face-to-face and print communication efforts by schools?
5. Why have e-newsletters become popular among schools? List two important communication needs that e-newsletters can fill effectively and efficiently for school communicators.
6. What are the likely benefits Web site users will enjoy when school Web site officials plan carefully to make sure that design and copy work well together?

Readings

Adobe Dreamweaver CS4 Classroom in a Book, San Jose, CA: Adobe Press, 2008.

DiMaro, John. *Digital Design for Print and Web: An Introduction to Theory, Principles, and Techniques*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2010.

Lengel, James G., *Web Wizard's Guide to Web Design*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Allyn & Bacon, 2005.

Lengel, James G., and Kathleen M. Lengel. *Integrating Technology: A Practical Guide*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Allyn & Bacon, 2005.

Moore, Edward H., *Mastering E-Newsletters: Helping You Get the Most from Your E-Communication Efforts*. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2005.

Moore, Edward H., "Web Pages and Electronic Communication," *School Public Relations*, 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Niederst, Jennifer, *Web Design in a Nutshell*. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly Media, 2006.

Endnotes

1. Taken from correspondence in February 2010 with Tim Carroll, APR, Director of Public Information, Allen Independent School District, Allen, TX.
2. *Internet Access in U.S. Public Schools and Classrooms: 1994–2002* (Washington, DC: National Center of Education Statistics, 2003). Retrieved from the Internet April 5, 2006, http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2004/2004011.pdf.
3. "Are You on Facebook? Do You 'Twitter'? How about a LinkedIn Account?" *Network*, National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org) (Rockville, MD: NSPRA, June 2009). Reprinted with permission.

Chapter

15

Conducting Special Issue Campaigns

Gaining community acceptance of an idea—whether it is a budget, school choice, or curriculum change—requires an organized plan of action. The alert administrator realizes that it has long been established that such community acceptance is contingent on trust and understanding—two ingredients that must be developed over a period of time.

Too often educational leaders equate community support with a specific hard-hitting, short-lived campaign designed to produce votes or some other tangible stamp of approval. When the campaign is over, they sometimes revert to considering effective communications as something to be implemented the next time a specific need arises. Although this approach met with limited success in some schools, today's better-educated taxpayer demands that communication efforts be conducted on a year-round basis. Less than this prompts justifiable criticism from taxpayers that school officials tell them what they want them to know only when they need approval of an idea. For example, the school district that distributes one newsletter a year—right before budget time—fosters a skeptical attitude on the part of the taxpayers.

This chapter provides information about the ways a community accepts a new idea. It suggests guidelines for introducing innovations and change.

HOW A COMMUNITY ACCEPTS A NEW IDEA

Although every community possesses its individuality, research findings indicate that, in most cases, a new idea is accepted or rejected in basically the same fashion from community to community. Thus, it is imperative that school officials realize the various steps that take place along the way to community acceptance. Although researchers differ on the number of specific stages in the acceptance or rejection of a new idea, many agree that five stages exist. These are often referred to as the *awareness stage*, the *information stage*, the *evaluation stage*, the *trial stage*, and the *decision* (adoption or rejection) *stage*. Beal has conducted numerous studies in the areas of diffusion of information, communication of innovations, and acceptance of new ideas.[1] He points out that face-to-face communication is the key at the all-important evaluation stage.

It is generally recognized that one-way communications play an important role in the early stages of the adoption process. Newspapers, radio, television, newsletters, and other such communications efforts are vital at the awareness and information stages. Thus, school officials should capitalize on the availability of these media outlets

From Chapter 15 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

in presenting information to the public. They should also prepare newsletters explaining how the particular innovation or finance issue will benefit the people to be affected by it. But these efforts, though important, must not be considered the end of the endeavor to gain acceptance of the idea.

As noted by Beal and others, it is the evaluation stage that presents the case for face-to-face communication.[2] When people are considering the merits of an innovation or a bond issue, they want the opportunity to ask questions or to determine how others feel about the issue. The school administrator, armed with this knowledge, must prepare a campaign that incorporates a large number of opportunities for people to learn about the proposal in a face-to-face, two-way communications setting. This means utilizing ideas like the small-group meeting, speeches (with questions and answers) to service groups, and citizens' advisory groups.

Rogers and Shoemaker, in an attempt to use research findings and to be consistent with the learning process, with theories of attitude change, and with general ideas about decision making, developed a model of the innovation–decision process.

The model is presented in four stages:

1. ***Knowledge.*** The individual is exposed to the innovation's existence and gains some understanding of how it functions.
2. ***Persuasion.*** The individual forms a favorable or unfavorable attitude toward the innovation.
3. ***Decision.*** The individual engages in activities which lead to a choice to adopt or reject the innovation.
4. ***Confirmation.*** The individual seeks reinforcement for the innovation decision..., but may...reverse the previous decision if exposed to conflicting messages about the innovation.[3]

As with the five-stage process, the early stage (knowledge) depends on mass media and more cosmopolitan sources for the information. Later stages, however, draw on friends and neighbors for discussion and opinion sharing, confirming the importance once again of face-to-face communication. Whether considered the confirmation stage or the early phases of the program after adoption, the period after gaining community acceptance is an important one that is often overlooked. It is commonly known that people who buy a new car suddenly notice that many others drive the same brand. People who purchase a particular item observe advertisements for that item appreciably more after they buy the item than they did before they bought it. Put simply, people want to confirm that their decision was the correct one. This confirmation stage, then, is one that should be capitalized on by school officials. For example, after a budget calling for two new speech therapists is approved, stories about the therapists' accomplishments with children should appear in newspapers and the school district's newsletter. A pilot program using the open-school approach should be reported on to show how the program is working, even if no hard data are available until the end of the year. People often resent being bombarded with information about a needed change and then being told little about the change after it is implemented.

THE CHANGE AGENT

To effect change in a community or to establish a climate conducive to community approval of an innovation, the schools must identify and use a *change agent.* This person must be given the responsibility for conducting the campaign. When schools neglect to charge any one person with the leadership role in a campaign, floundering inaction, conflicts, and confusion result. Often it is assumed that the superintendent, by nature of the position, should be the change agent. This is not always the case. At times the change agent should be someone other than the superintendent, especially if the superintendent has recently suffered a loss in credibility because of some controversial issue. Public confidence in the person selected as the change agent is a necessary ingredient for any successful campaign.

The public has been losing confidence in the schools for a number of years. This has been documented since 1969 by the Gallup Poll of Public Attitudes toward Education, published annually in the *Phi Delta Kappan.* Since 1974, Gallup has asked the public to give the schools a grade of A, B, C, D, or F. In 2005 the schools earned high marks (A or B) from 48 percent of the respondents, the same percentage reported in 1978. At the same time, those

assigning Ds or Fs increased from 11 percent in 1974 to 14 percent in 2005.

It is vital that schools find spokespersons who are believable. This is especially important when the schools want the public to vote for a levy or accept an innovation. The selection of the right change agents might be aided by the following seven roles of the change agent as identified by Rogers and Shoemaker:

1. ***Develops need for change.*** A change agent is often initially required to help clients become aware of the need to alter their behavior. . . . In order to initiate the change process the change agent points out new alternatives to existing problems, dramatizes these problems, and convinces clients that they are capable of confronting these problems. Change agents not only assess clients' needs at this stage but also help to create these needs in a consultive and persuasive manner.
2. ***Establishes a change relationship.*** Once a need for change is created, change agents must develop rapport with their clients. They may enhance their relationship with their clients by creating an impression of credibility, trustworthiness, and empathy with their needs and problems. Clients must accept a change agent before they will accept the innovations he or she promotes.
3. ***Diagnoses the problem.*** Change agents are responsible for analyzing clients' problem situations to determine why existing alternatives do not meet their needs. In arriving at diagnostic conclusions, change agents must view the situation empathetically from the clients' perspective, not their own.
4. ***Creates intent to change in the client.*** After change agents explore various avenues of action that clients might take to achieve their goals, they should encourage an intent to change, a motive to innovate. But the change must be client-centered, rather than change for change's sake. Here the role of change agents is to motivate.
5. ***Translates intent into action.*** Change agents seek to influence clients' behavior in accordance with recommendations that are based on the clients' needs. In essence change agents work to promote compliance with the programs they advocate. This means more than simply agreement or intent; it means action or behavioral change.
6. ***Stabilizes change and prevents discontinuances.*** Change agents may effectively stabilize new behavior by directing reinforcing messages to those clients who have adopted the change, thus "freezing" the new behavior. This assistance frequently is given when the client is at the trial-decision or confirmation function in the innovation–decision process.
7. ***Achieves a terminal relationship.*** The end goal for change agents is development of self-renewing behavior on the part of clients. . . . Change agents must seek to shift clients from a position of reliance on the change agent to reliance on themselves.[4]

The delicate nature of the responsibilities of change agents, as given above, demands that persons assuming that role be able to get along with all kinds of people. They must possess the confidence of the school board as well as the public. They must be recognized as straight shooters who can listen as well as speak. They must possess the courage to tell their superiors when they think that public opinion will defeat an almost sacrosanct issue or innovation of the board or administration. To be effective, change agents must have constant access to all information regarding the campaign. Nothing must be hidden from them. If they offer incomplete or incorrect information to the public, their reputation could be marred, leading to a lack of confidence. If this happens, school officials should consider naming a new change agent.

HOW PEOPLE ACCEPT CHANGE

Not everyone accepts an innovation at the same time. People bring different backgrounds and attitudes to the introduction of an innovation. Therefore, they react differently to the efforts of a change agent or school system when information is presented. Educators who want to acquire community support

for an idea should be cognizant of the different categories that people fall into as far as their rate of adoption is concerned. A person's innovativeness is generally recognized as the criterion by which one is categorized as an early or late adopter of a new idea. Many researchers use five categories to identify rates of adoption. The categories are innovators, early adopters, early majority, late majority, and laggards.

Innovators

Usually the first 2.5 percent of the people who adopt an innovation are eager to try new ideas. They communicate with other innovators who may live great distances from them. They usually possess more technical knowledge than later adopters and are often employed in high-risk occupations. Innovators frequently have a better financial base than others, allowing them to fail with an innovation and still remain comfortable. The innovator seeks new ventures; he or she is willing to take risks.

The school wishing to gain early support for a new idea should tap the innovators. Usually, almost immediate acceptance of the innovation will be forthcoming simply because it is a change from what has been done before. Educators must remember, though, that innovators do not provide the kind of communication leadership that will encourage large numbers of people to accept the idea.

Early Adopters

Usually considered the next 13.5 percent to adopt a new idea, the early adopters differ from the innovators in that they communicate more with other people in the community. In fact, this group could be considered the most important one to reach because it is looked to by others for opinions regarding a proposed change or finance issue. Early adopters are frequently active in community service groups or are part of the informal power structure of the community. Such people may not appear on the formal power-structure charts, but they are sought by many others in the community when decisions are to be made regarding the schools. Such people might be found among barbers, beauticians, bartenders, retired school employees, or in just about any occupation. These are people who talk to many other people, people to whom others come for advice regarding new ideas. They are respected for their judgment and will seldom accept an innovation as rapidly as the 2.5 percent innovator group.

School officials who identify the early adopters in the community are one step ahead in their campaign. By knowing who these people are, the educator can be sure to provide them with sufficient information early enough to ensure that they will disseminate it to others in the community. Early adopters, because of their position of importance among peers, should be placed on a list of key communicators and should be given appreciable information about the schools during the year. This builds confidence in school officials—a confidence that will serve educators well when they present facts to the group before community acceptance is needed for a new proposal.

Early Majority

Representing about the next 34 percent to adopt a new idea, this group provides the necessary numbers for a majority. People in this group are usually joiners—people who belong to various organizations but seldom hold office. This group follows the lead of the early adopters but is reluctant to accept a new idea too quickly. Because they often belong to many of the same organizations as the early adopters, it is possible to communicate with them through these groups. Again, this points out the sageness of working with the early adopters in the community, for they will in most cases communicate with the early majority.

Late Majority and Laggards

Making up 34 percent of the population, the late majority is skeptical and usually adopts an innovation only after social pressures are applied. Laggards, representing 16 percent of the population, are the last to adopt an innovation. Dependent on the past, they are not receptive to change or those who advocate change.

INTRODUCING AN INNOVATION

School officials planning to introduce innovations to the educational program should consider the communications and public relations phase of the

undertaking with great care. The best innovation, if improperly introduced and implemented, can backfire. If people feel that school officials are not divulging all pertinent facts, they will develop a distrust that can breed all sorts of problems for administrators. Today's parents and taxpayers are often better educated than their parents were; thus, they bring some knowledge to the education process. And that knowledge can indeed be a dangerous thing if not properly augmented with necessary facts about new programs. People fear the unknown, and if they realize they aren't being told enough about a new program, they will eventually criticize it, causing school officials to react defensively.

As with all communications efforts, the first question to be asked before introducing the innovation is "Who is the audience?" The first audience to be considered is the internal one—teachers and other employees. Community residents expect those who work in the school to know what's going on there. In addition, morale suffers if employees are not among the first to know about innovations. The next key audience to be considered must be parents of students involved in the change. These are the people who will challenge the change if they do not understand it. Some administrators precipitate problems by assuming that the time it takes to communicate could be better used for immediately pressing tasks. This kind of error leads to problems of time-consuming magnitude—problems that could have been easily avoided with solid communication attempts.

SCHOOLS AND MARKETING CAMPAIGNS

School systems increasingly are turning to marketing campaigns to supplement traditional public relations activities. School-choice initiatives, such as open-enrollment programs and charter schools, mean that more school systems need to compete for new students and their families for their school systems. Securing funding from traditional sources also is challenging more and more schools—resulting in more schools turning to school foundations and other fund-raising activities to help fill funding gaps. Whether attracting new students or seeking new funding, marketing communications and marketing campaigns are finding larger roles in overall school communication efforts.

School marketing expert Dr. William J. Banach notes that marketing first requires that school districts ask the people in their communities to define the education that they need and want, and then—to the best of their abilities and resources—marketing requires that the school districts provide this type of education to the students in the community.

Banach uses a five-step marketing process based on a "commonsense model." According to Banach, "The model actually can be used for a variety of purposes, from passing a bond to school improvement to strategic planning and more. That's why I often call it 'the process for anything.' In reality, it is nothing more than common sense systematized." Here are Banach's five steps:

Step One: Analyzing the Environment

Analysis is the first—and most important—step in the process. It begins with a study of the environment in which a school functions, and includes projections of what—in that environment—leaders want their school to become.

A school's environment has two dimensions—internal and external. The internal environment relates to perceptions of a school and the people in it. All the people working in a school need to be aware that they are continually sending signals. Taken together, these signals—how people perform, how they dress, what they say, how they behave, the language they use, and the initiatives they champion—all send powerful messages to students, parents, and others. This is why schools that commit to marketing attend to things like continuous staff development, frequent communication with parents, greeting visitors warmly, responding promptly to calls, and so forth. These little things matter because they all contribute to shaping a school's image or identity.

The external environment is related to "the big story" unfolding every day. It has to do with change and its implications. For example, long-term shifts in demographics have potential for affecting student enrollment. That's why schools need to monitor population trends, housing starts, and the number of building permits issued in their community.

Schools should consider beginning the development of a school marketing program by thinking about the internal and external environments, that is, by conducting a simple analysis. *Ask:* Do you really know what people need and want from your schools?

Step Two: Developing a Strategy

The development of a strategy is the second step in the marketing process. However, before a school can develop a strategy, school marketers will need to ask some questions about their schools and the way they operate.

How: Start by asking what you want to market, to whom, and why. Those questions lead to a strategic marketing concept called targeting, and the key question associated with targeting is *Who cares?*

When you identify what you want to market, you should ask, *Who cares?* The answer to this question will indicate the odds of your communication being "on target."

Step Three: Writing a Marketing Plan

The planning step in the marketing process translates analysis and strategy considerations into a written plan that details what is going to be done, how it is going to be done, by whom it will be done, and by when it will be done.

It's easy for schools to shortchange themselves during the planning step. Instead of identifying goals, objectives, and related activities, they simply make a list of three or four "marketing things" they should do, and then they start work on their "to do" list.

It is important that schools have broad goals and related objectives to operationalize these goals. And it is important to identify specific activities, detailing who is going to do what by when. The planning step underlines a commitment to doing something, serves as a communication vehicle for those who will execute the plan, and establishes the baseline for evaluation of the marketing initiative.

WRITTEN PLANS ARE ESSENTIAL

For these basic reasons, marketing plans must be written. If a school marketing plan is not in writing, the school, in fact, doesn't have a plan. Its leaders may have good intentions, but they don't have a plan.

Here are some typical questions to address when developing a written school marketing plan:

A. Who are the primary target audiences for (your school)?
B. What do these target audiences think about when they think about (your school)?
C. What do you want these target audiences to think about when they think about (your school)?
D. What target audience perceptions do you have to change, and what behaviors do you have to influence?
E. What is the key message(s) you should deliver to these target audiences?
F. Who will deliver this message(s), and by when?

Note that items D, E, and F can be translated into goals, objectives, and activities, respectively.

Here are some sample marketing goals for a school marketing plan from *The ABC Marketing Disk:*

School Marketing Goals

1. To involve all staff in marketing the school and its educational program
2. To reinforce public perceptions that the staff is composed of caring and competent individuals who are committed to meeting the needs of all children
3. To increase participation of parents and others in the school program

A plan to address marketing goal 1 might be written as:

Marketing Goal 1: To involve all staff in marketing the school and the educational program.

Objective: To engage all staff members in marketing planning and implementation.

Position Desired: Marketing is everyone's responsibility.

Target: All members of the school staff.

Key Message: The success of any marketing initiative is dependent on the participation of all school staff.

Activity—By Whom; Media Used; By When

1. All staff members will be provided with the rationale for educational marketing by the principal in a staff meeting before the first day of the school year.
2. All staff members will be provided with a conceptual framework for educational marketing by the public information office before the first day of the school year.
3. Staff marketing roles and responsibilities will be identified in a principal-facilitated staff meeting before the first day of the school year.[5]

Step Four: Execute the Plan

In step four of the marketing process the tactics outlined in the marketing plan are implemented; that is, school marketers do what they said they were going to do in the plan.

While this step usually takes more time than all the others combined, implementation is easy because everything—goals, objectives, activities, who is going to do what by when—is spelled out in the plan.

Step Five: Evaluate the Results

The marketing process comes full circle in step five. This is where school marketers determine what is working and what needs adjustment.

The marketing plan is the logical foundation for this evaluation. First, review the activities to see if they were completed on the timeline that was identified. Second, use this "activities assessment" to determine if the objectives were addressed and the goals were attained. Finally, determine if any goal can be deleted from the plan, whether it should be continued, or whether it should be modified.

> While school leaders should be thinking about how things are going on a regular basis, it makes sense to formally assess the marketing plan twice each year. If a plan is on a 12-month schedule, consider evaluating it in November and again in May. This will position marketers to "recycle" the marketing process for the start of the next school year. That means they can update their analysis, check their strategy, and modify their plan during June, July, and August.

A CAMPAIGN EXAMPLE

The National School Public Relations Association presents its Gold Medallion Award to school communication programs displaying excellence in educational public relations. One campaign earning a Gold Medallion was "Discover Mounds View Public Schools Week" run by the Mounds View Public Schools in Roseville, Minnesota (see Figures 15.1 and 15.2).

Colin Sokolowski, public relations director for the Mounds View Public Schools, reported that the campaign focused on having each of the district's 13 schools invite resident and nonresident families to Enrollment Information Nights.

Importantly, the campaign sought to do more than simply disseminate information. It set behavioral objectives—encouraging families to learn more about Mounds View schools and ultimately to choose to enroll or to apply for nonresident enrollment.

Using a "Discover" theme with consistent messages and images, the campaign's communications encouraged resident students to learn more about their local schools—acknowledging that the students had a school choice to make. Communications also invited nonresidents to visit Mounds View schools and to consider applying for a limited number of openings - acknowledging that not all applications would be accepted.

The campaign's audiences were identified as:

- Current families and students in targeted transitional grades
- Resident families and students not attending the district's schools
- Families and students in bordering communities
- Day care providers
- Realtors
- Local employers
- Current staff, students, parents, and grandparents
- Community organizations and associations.

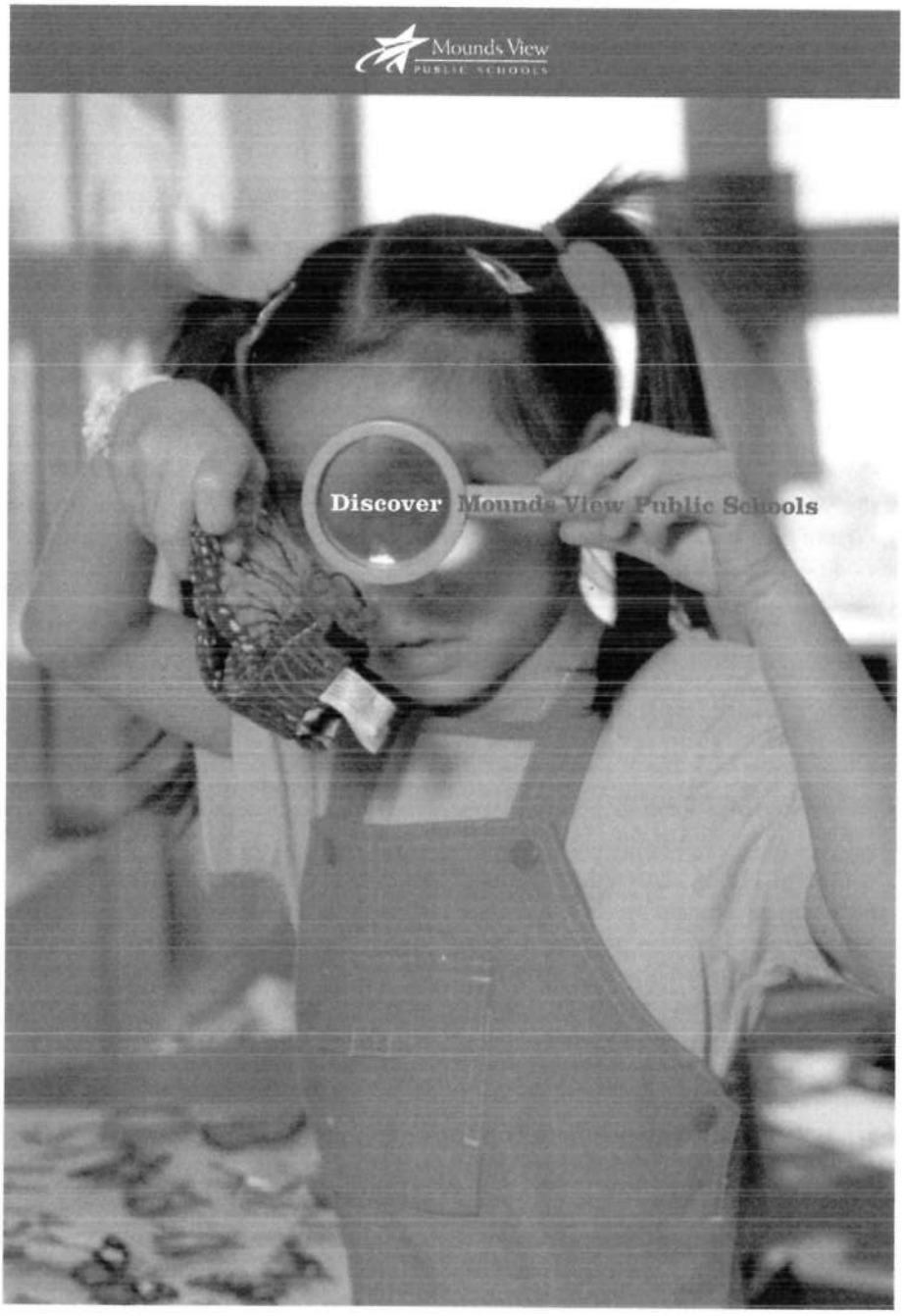


FIGURE 15.1 The Mounds View Public Schools campaign used a "Discover" theme, which was reinforced in all communications, as shown in this viewbook cover.

DISCOVER

Mounds View Public Schools

- **Meet the principal, teachers, parents and students.**
- **Visit classrooms.**
- **Explore the curriculum.**
- **Discover opportunities beyond the classroom.**

Please spread the word with friends and neighbors!

Enrollment Information Nights

Welcoming:

- **Incoming kindergartners**
- **Current 5th and 8th graders**
- **All resident non-public students**
- **Non-residents who wish to apply for limited openings**

HIGH SCHOOLS (Grades 9-12)
Irondale: January 9, 5:30 and 7:00 pm
Mounds View: January 9, 5:30 and 7:30 pm

MIDDLE SCHOOLS (Grades 6-8)
January 10, 7:00 pm

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS (Grades K-5)
January 12, 6:30 pm

Can't attend an Enrollment Information Night? Schedule a tour by calling the school.

Mounds View PUBLIC SCHOOLS **651-604-9782** **www.moundsviewschools.org**

FIGURE 15.2 Posters with key information about the Mounds View Public Schools campaign were placed in locations throughout the community. Posters also were adapted, as shown here, for use in school and district newsletters.

The campaign's communication tools included:

- Invitations mailed to all resident students attending preschool and nonpublic schools
- Invitations mailed to all resident public school students in targeted transitional grades
- Columns in local newspapers
- Newspaper advertisements
- School and district newsletters
- School banners and posters in day cares, preschools, and neighborhood companies
- Web site pages and e-news messages sent to subscribers
- E-mail messages to area realtors.

Communication continued after application deadlines had passed and enrollment decisions were made. The school district wanted to report to its communities the outcomes of its enrollment efforts. Community forums were held to discuss progress in meeting promised class-size averages. The school board delivered a report on resident and nonresident enrollment projections for the next year and discussed the relationship between enrollment and the district's financial health. A newsletter also was mailed to the community with extensive information, including an enrollment projection report and a summary of student retention and recruitment efforts.

In evaluating the efforts, the school district's public relations planners found:

- The Enrollment Information Nights attracted more than 830 students, of which 109 or more were nonresidents or non-public-students.
- Surveys indicated that the following communications methods attracted individuals to the Enrollment Information Nights (in order of importance): principal letters, postcard invitations, friends/relatives, the district newsletter, and school newsletters. Based on this feedback, the district decided that less emphasis would be placed on advertising in future campaigns.
- The Enrollment Information Nights led to a 30 percent increase in the total number of new nonresident students approved for enrollment.
- If all nonresidents accepted were to enroll, it would yield more than $300,000 in additional per-pupil funding.
- The district will retain more of its resident students.
- Class-size averages will meet or beat previous projections.
- Two kindergarten sections were added as a result of increased nonresident enrollment.

Questions

1. How does a community accept a new idea? Why is this important for school administrators to know?
2. List some key audiences that might be addressed in a typical campaign and discuss the best ways in which to reach each audience with school information. Also discuss how interests and information needs might vary from one audience to another.
3. Why is it important to list both information and behavioral outcomes when setting campaign objectives? What are some of the ways in which school leaders might evaluate the success of a campaign?
4. List the ways in which all schools now face competition and discuss why new choices in education are creating a need for marketing.
5. Discuss some of the challenges school leaders face as marketing efforts attempt to align realities with the various perceptions that may be held among key audiences.

Readings

Banach, William J., *The ABC Complete Book of School Marketing*. Lanham, MD: Roman and Littlefield, 2001.

Banach, William J., *The ABC Complete Book of School Surveys*. Lanham, MD: Roman and Littlefield, 2001.

Banach, William J., *The ABC Marketing Disk*. Ray, MI: Banach, Banach and Cassidy, http://www.banach.com, 2006.

Banach, William J., *The ABCs of Teacher–Parent Communication*. Ray, MI: Banach, Banach and Cassidy, http://www.banach.com, 2006.

Bobbitt, Randy, and Ruth Sullivan, *Developing the Public Relations Campaign: A Team-Based Approach*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Allyn and Bacon, 2004.

Guth, David W., and Charles Marsh, *Adventures in Public Relations: Case Studies and Critical Thinking*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Allyn and Bacon, 2004.

Hendrix, Jerry A., *Public Relations Cases*, 8th ed. Wadsworth, 2009.

Rogers, Everett, *Diffusion of Innovations*, 5th ed. New York: Free Press, 2003.

Endnotes

1. George M. Beal, "The Communication Process in the Purchase of New Products: An Application of Reference Group Theory," paper presented at the American Association of Public Opinion Researchers, Chicago, 1958.
2. George M. Beal, "Validity of the Concept Stages in the Adoption Process," *Rural Sociology* (1957), pp. 166–168.
3. Reprinted with permission of Macmillan from pp. 102–103 of *Communication Innovations: A Cross-Cultural Approach*, 2nd ed., by Everett M. Rogers with F. Floyd Shoemaker. Copyright 1971 by The Free Press.
4. Reprinted with permission of Macmillan from pp. 229–230 of *Communication Innovations: A Cross-Cultural Approach*, 2nd ed., by Everett M. Rogers with F. Floyd Shoemaker. Copyright 1971 by The Free Press.
5. William J. Banach, *The ABC Marketing Disk* (Ray, MI: Banach, Banach and Cassidy, 2006), http://www.banach.com.

Chapter

16

Communicating School Finance Issues

The complex nature of school financing and the emotional characteristics of discussions about taxes and government spending combine to present significant communication challenges to school administrators. In addition, school districts are among the few providers of government services that—in many jurisdictions—must seek direct voter approval for spending in some areas. Practices vary from state to state, but many school districts must seek voter consent for financial issues, such as the following:

Approval of annual operating budgets

Bond issues for new construction or capital improvements

Increases in tax or millage rates.

Keeping communities informed on finance issues is key to gaining voter approval when needed. If a school district does not maintain ongoing and clear communications with its parents and taxpayers on finance and budget issues, confusion and distrust can develop.

Many external issues, not always directly linked to local schools, can influence thinking on school finance topics and create communication dilemmas for school administrators. Some education critics focus on school finance issues when disparaging school policies or practices. Claims about spending on administrative support or other activities not directly linked to instruction can create confusion among taxpayers. Budget communications also must address the entire community served by the school district. Those without children in the local schools also pose challenges for school administrators when they try to communicate the benefits of spending on local schools and their programming. Competition for limited tax resources, ranging from the need for road and bridge repair to health care services, also can influence school finance issues.

It is recognized that many schools are faced with gaining support for annual budgets, an increasingly difficult task as teacher salaries increase and the cost of other services and materials continues to rise. Some school systems need poll support to increase taxes in order to maintain the level of educational efforts; others want to improve their programs. In either case, the requirement is the same—getting enough

From Chapter 16 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin.
Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

votes for approval. Although much of this chapter focuses on bond issues, many ideas offered are easily adaptable to budget elections as well as school-finance communication overall.

A look at the past can be helpful before planning campaigns. In fact, many school officials for some reason have been working with incorrect information regarding plans for bond issue campaigns. The research findings presented below should provide background for a campaign. Perhaps more important for the school official is a look at the history of similar elections in the school district. Because of the turnover of board members and administrators, those planning a campaign sometimes forget the importance of an advisory committee or the date of the election or some other specific that could affect the vote outcome.

WHAT THE RESEARCH SAYS

Studies have shown that voters' resistance to bond issues is based on many variables. These are not consistent from school system to school system or from state to state. Some factors in campaigns vary considerably. It is incumbent on school officials to consider local factors before making decisions on these items.

Most important for school officials working on a campaign are those factors that research indicates lead consistently to a favorable vote. They follow.

SUPPORT OF THE MUNICIPAL GOVERNMENT

Too many school officials forget about the people responsible for governing the town—until they need them. Every educator should remember that elected or appointed town officials have a large following of people. A liaison that encourages an ongoing exchange of information and ideas between school officials and their government counterparts must be conducive to a better overall relationship. Such communication minimizes conflicts and ensures that both groups will not, for example, publicly announce their desire to use the same site for different purposes. Although some educators still adhere to a "politics and education don't mix" theory, most school officials recognize the need to work with municipal officials and certainly are cognizant of the basic requirement of keeping them informed. A sound idea is to encourage the board of education to appoint one member as liaison to the municipal governing body. The town council can reciprocate, thus making a commitment to better communication between the two groups. If the municipal government opposes a bond issue, either publicly or quietly, the school faces a severe challenge to winning the election.

DEMONSTRATED NEED FOR ADDITIONAL CLASSROOM SPACE

People tend to vote for classrooms more than they vote for other building needs, such as administration centers or cafeterias. Thus, it is imperative that school officials clearly communicate the need for classroom space. This, of course, must be done honestly because any attempt to make the situation appear worse than it is could backfire and damage the district's credibility. If classrooms are crowded, show photographs that prove it. Don't, however, add a few extra students for impact. Students will tell parents, and parents will justifiably resent such attempts. Most people see schools when students are not there; hence, it is difficult for them to realize the problems caused by overcrowding. The educator must demonstrate how the additional building will overcome the crowded classroom problems and how it will help students learn better. Statistics, if not overdone, can be helpful, especially if the capacity of the building has been exceeded. Student complaints about how learning is hindered could be useful in a campaign.

PROMISE OF ADDITIONAL CURRICULUM

How does the new building fit in the overall educational plan of the school system? This question, asked by some sophisticated, well-educated parents, is sometimes answered less than adequately by school officials who develop a plan for numbers of students without giving sufficient thought to the educational program and how it would be facilitated by the proposed building. If the building will make new opportunities available in career education or will allow additional individualized instruction, people should be told so. If more students will have more chances to learn more things better, this should be said.

INCREASING STUDENT POPULATION

For too many years, it was fairly easy to explain the need for new buildings. As the number of school-age children became larger, the need for more school buildings was accepted. As the demographics of the country changed and declining enrollment became the norm, those communities with new developments and increasing enrollment faced a new challenge. For example, a formerly rural area might have become the latest suburb, with the rapid growth that such change brings. Voters will need to be convinced that their community is different from most others. Asking for the help of service organizations to conduct a school population projection might be a sound strategy in this situation. The added credibility that such involvement gives a campaign is well worth the time invested.

DISSEMINATION OF INFORMATION THROUGH ALL MEDIA

Using every available newspaper, radio station, and television possibility, the campaign director will be one step toward success. Although the face-to-face phase of the communications effort has the greatest impact in changing attitudes, the media can be important at the information and awareness stages of accepting a new idea or voting for a bond issue. The best job can be done if a sound relationship has been established with representatives of the media before the bond issue need is imminent.

A LARGE PERCENTAGE OF PARENTS IN THE POPULATION

Although parents of public school students are not to be counted automatically in the yes column, enough studies have been made to indicate that these parents vote for bond issues more than do the remainder of the population. Parents should be kept informed about the school's accomplishments and needs on a year-round basis. They should be encouraged to visit the schools and to participate in school activities when possible. Involvement of this nature is conducive to people's feeling that the schools are indeed theirs. This can usually be translated into positive votes.

CITIZENS' ADVISORY PARTICIPATION

Research frequently shows that school systems that have involved a representative group of citizens on a committee to help gain support for a bond issue have met with more success than those that have failed to stress citizen involvement. The role played by citizens in the bond issue undertaking must be an active one if overall citizen support is to be expected. The advisory committee should function at the study-of-needs stage of the bond issue. In other words, the group should help determine the system's needs and study alternatives before working for any recommended solution to meet the needs. This kind of involvement builds citizen trust in the schools.

Consistent factors leading to an unfavorable vote are opposition from any organized group, controversial placement of buildings, a large percentage of parochial school students, lack of public use of school facilities, and a large percentage of people on fixed incomes.

OPPOSITION FROM ANY ORGANIZED GROUP

When people organize to defeat a bond issue, school officials face an increased challenge. Thus, it is incumbent on educators to find out why people oppose the bond issue. Does the group offer reasonable alternatives that school officials have failed to investigate? Have any members of this group been asked to participate on the advisory group investigating the district's building needs? Does the group have specific concerns that could be overcome with additional information provided by school officials?

The well-planned campaign will consider the role of the opposition and take steps to minimize its impact. For instance, a group gaining publicity might imply that it represents a large number of taxpayers. An investigation might divulge that the group numbers six members, an important fact for reporters and other voters to know. The opposition thrives on public meetings. Such forums present an opportunity for publicity because public meetings are usually covered by the press, which seeks controversial statements. Thus, if public meetings must be held, school officials should be sure that proponents of the building make presentations to offset the thrusts of the opposition.

CONTROVERSIAL PLACEMENT OF BUILDINGS

If voters feel that a building site has been improperly chosen in terms of location, cost, accessibility,

From Chapter 16 of The School and Community Relations, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

or some other factor, the vote will suffer. People, especially those whose children will attend the school in question, want to feel that the site selected is the best possible one for their children. Accordingly, it is imperative that the rationale for the site selection be presented to voters with a full explanation of the positive considerations that might otherwise be overlooked.

LACK OF PUBLIC USE OF SCHOOL FACILITIES

The movement toward community education emphasizes the desire of many people to tap school resources more than is commonly done. Inasmuch as the public schools belong to the public, school officials should encourage community use of school facilities. As more people benefit directly from the buildings, they will undoubtedly feel more a part of the school system. Such a feeling should engender additional positive votes.

PLANNING THE CAMPAIGN

As noted earlier, the research done on bond issue support can be helpful. But more helpful is the time that school officials invest in researching their own community before starting a campaign. For example, a study of past bond issues might show that three bond issues have passed with the help of advisory committees and that two bond issues without advisory committees failed. In some systems with rapid turnover of school officials, this fact may not have been remembered. A good starting place for planning the campaign is a thorough look at facts from previous campaigns.

Surveying the building needs of a school district can require from several months to a year. Some school officials undertake this responsibility themselves; others choose to employ consultants for this purpose. It should be remembered that many taxpayers are concerned about buildings they consider monuments to school officials. One governor chastised educators for building palaces that are monuments to architects and engineers. If one elected official criticizes another in this manner, certainly taxpayers will have their doubts about some of the buildings proposed by school boards. One way to alleviate this concern is to include a cross section of citizens in any group studying the building needs of the district. The use of a consultant sometimes helps obviate taxpayer doubts about school officials asking for more than is needed.

In addition to surveying building needs, the administration should assemble all data pertinent to the problem before any public announcement of an election is made. Included among the data will be the following:

- A complete report on how funds from the most recent bond issue have been or are being spent, including lists of completed projects, current projects, and proposed projects. The report should also include such facts as square-foot costs and the number of children for whom the projects have provided schooling.
- An analysis of enrollment trends over the past several years.
- An analysis of current enrollments by grades to determine future classroom requirements in the upper grades.
- A census of preschool children by attendance areas. Members of advisory groups, parent–teacher associations, or other service groups are usually willing to conduct the necessary surveys to provide this information.
- An enrollment projection for the next five years, including data about proposed housing and apartment developments.

Most of these facts are newsworthy, and the superintendent will want to take advantage of every opportunity to inform parents and the general public. The media are usually receptive to stories about enrollment, school building programs, and community surveys. A continuous program of information about these topics will prepare the public for announcements regarding additional building needs.

DETERMINING THE PROPOSAL

As soon as these preliminary steps have been taken, the superintendent and staff should begin developing the specific proposal for meeting the building needs of the district. Every alternative should be examined, including community education, 12-month schools, additions to existing buildings, split sessions, and

whatever else any member of the community might propose. By looking at all possible solutions in depth, school officials can anticipate the arguments of opponents of any proposed program. It is of course helpful in gaining community approval if members of all segments of the community are involved in the vital stages of studying the alternatives. Included in this committee should be parents, other taxpayers, students, teachers, and other staff members.

Once a proposal has been determined, a careful check should be made with state authorities to determine the proper procedures to follow to ensure that the bond proposal is presented in a legally correct way. Such thoroughness negates the possibility of embarrassment caused when a proposal must be postponed or changed because of the intercession of a state official.

ESTABLISHING A PHILOSOPHY

Some school officials adopt a "win at all costs" philosophy for their campaigns. Others select a "tell the people the facts and whatever they do will be the proper result" approach. Some educational leaders feel strongly that it is their responsibility to gain public support for bond issues if, indeed, buildings are required to maintain education at a predetermined level. Others feel that the schools should reflect the will of the community, and therefore there should be little more than factual presentation to woo community votes. Each superintendent and board must decide which approach is better for their needs. This decision will affect other decisions, such as the naming of the campaign director.

NAMING A CAMPAIGN DIRECTOR

Leadership is an extremely important ingredient often overlooked in a campaign. Too often the responsibility is delegated to administrators who face numerous other time-consuming responsibilities. Somehow they are supposed to find the time to exert the needed efforts to guide the campaign and still perform all their other duties. If administrators assume the leadership role for the campaign, they must receive assistance with other duties. If no such help is available, the superintendent must apprise the campaign director of priorities so the administrator will know how to budget time.

Campaign directors must possess the ability to feel comfortable as change agents. They must be able to get along with all kinds of people and possess organizational ability. It is helpful if they have had experience dealing with the mass media and if they know how to meet deadlines. Occasionally, a noneducator can serve as campaign director. If this person has served on a committee studying the district's building needs, commands respect of the community, and has the time and ability to lead the campaign, he or she should be considered. Of course, this means that the person's relationship with school officials would have to be clearly communicated to all employees. If such a person were not given proper cooperation by the staff, enthusiasm would wane and leadership efforts could be minimized.

TIMING OF THE CAMPAIGN

Well-planned campaigns usually have three distinct phases. The first, which can begin a year to a few months before the election, should include a careful survey of the building needs. It should include a detailed plan for the campaign itself and should identify community leaders who will assist in campaign efforts. This phase should also pinpoint the various audiences to be reached during the campaign. This phase can also include voter registration.

The second phase of the campaign should be a period of community education concerning the building needs of the schools. Newspaper articles, presentations to community organizations, public meetings, and distribution of materials to parents and other taxpayers are activities to be carried out during this phase. This informational program must be implemented far enough before the election to allow community discussion of the needs and to provide answers to the questions prompted by the information disseminated. During this period, much face-to-face communication should occur.

Phase three of the campaign usually takes place from a month to two weeks before the election. Bumper stickers are distributed, house-to-house canvasses are conducted, brochures are mailed, and advertisements are placed in the media. A feeling of

reaching the campaign climax must be experienced by campaign workers just before the vote takes place. A campaign hastily patched together with little organization and insufficient time to establish any momentum seldom succeeds. On the other hand, a too long campaign in which campaign workers and the public lose interest before election day can backfire, especially if opponents mount an offensive during the last few days. Knowing the climate of a community can be helpful in planning the campaign length.

FINANCING THE CAMPAIGN

In many states, school districts are prohibited by law from spending public funds on campaigns. Although many states allow schools to provide information explaining the needs of the schools and the advantages of the proposed building, schools nevertheless are often prohibited from urging a yes vote by using school money. Yet campaigns cost money. It is necessary, therefore, to solicit money from businesspeople, service groups, PTAs, advisory groups, and other organizations that support the need for a new building. This is often best accomplished by the citizens' advisory group that is working on the campaign. Two sources sometimes forgotten but used by some districts are architects and contractors, who have much to gain from the passing of a bond issue. At times these groups will provide public relations help for a campaign. A budget should be determined to pay for advertising, brochures, billboards, consultant help if needed, and the cost of surveys. In some districts volunteer help can be obtained from talented members of the community. For example, a polling firm executive might donate his or her talent or facilities to feel the community's pulse a month before the election. A public relations firm president with children in the schools might offer his or her expertise to prepare a brochure. People are sometimes flattered to be asked to help. Often, they become a friend of the school and bring their friends to the polls, certainly a desirable by-product of their involvement.

CITIZENS' ADVISORY COMMITTEE

As noted earlier, the existence of an advisory committee enhances the district's chances of winning the election. The committee is most effective if it, or another similar committee, has studied the needs of the district and has been involved in the recommendation of the proposed building. People believe their friends and neighbors in most cases; thus, it is important to involve as many people as possible in the campaign. When people become involved, they feel more committed to the schools and will remember to vote and encourage others to join them at the polls.

An effort should be made to include members from as many interest groups as possible. Parent–teacher associations, the League of Women Voters, the American Association of University Women, labor unions, veterans' groups, service clubs, the Jaycees, the chamber of commerce, faith leaders, taxpayers' associations, businesspeople, realtors, media representatives, members of the school staff, and students should be represented. Every effort should be made to include representation from all socioeconomic and racial groups in the community. If the group is handpicked by school board members and includes only friends, the committee could justifiably be considered a rubber stamp for the board.

The school superintendent or the board of education, independently or together, usually invites citizens to serve on the advisory committee. The group should be organized before final decisions are made concerning the amount of the bond issue and the date of the election. The organization should take place from three to six months before the election. Any proposal submitted to the citizens' committee should be tentative, subject to change on the recommendation of its members.

Presented below are suggested steps on organizing and working with a citizens' advisory committee. These suggestions represent a synthesis of the opinions expressed by many school administrators in literature dealing with this subject.

- As soon as a definite proposal for a school bond election is announced, preferably at a meeting of the board of education, an open invitation should be extended to all citizens who may be interested in serving on a citizens' advisory committee.
- The school administration should then prepare a letter, signed by the president of the board of education or the superintendent of schools, to be sent

to every known organization in the district, inviting each one to send a representative to the organizational meeting of the citizens' advisory committee. It should be explained, however, that committee members are to serve as individuals, not as representatives of the groups.

- Letters of invitation should also be sent to other persons who may have influence in the community or who would be able to make worthwhile contributions to the work of the committee.
- At the first meeting, members of the board of education and the administrative staff should present the current and anticipated building needs of the district, the proposal for meeting these needs, and the estimated cost of such projects. A detailed report covering these points should be distributed to everyone in attendance. This report should also be mailed to groups not represented at this first meeting.
- At least two subcommittees should be chosen at this meeting—the first to make an intensive study of the proposal and to prepare a report for presentation at the next meeting, and the second to prepare a report on committee organization. This second subcommittee could nominate a general chairperson and suggest other needed subcommittees and their chairpersons at the next meeting. The administration should offer all help necessary for these subcommittees to carry out their assignments.
- After allowing enough time for a thorough study of the proposal, a second meeting of the citizens' advisory committee should be called. In the meantime, follow-up letters will have been sent to all groups not represented at the first meeting. These organizations will be urged to be represented at the second meeting.
- The first order of business at the second meeting should be the presentation of the report from the first subcommittee. This should be in considerable detail, and any modifications in the original proposal should be thoroughly explained. Following discussion, the citizens' committee should vote on the proposal. If the vote is overwhelmingly favorable, the committee can proceed to organize as a working committee to assist in planning and conducting the campaign. If any appreciable number of people oppose the issue, the committee should be asked to continue its study of the problem. Anyone unwilling to accept the recommendation of the subcommittee should be asked to serve on this study group.

Other subcommittees usually formed to assist in carrying out specific tasks of a bond campaign are those on finance, endorsements, speakers, printed materials, newspaper publicity, and radio and television publicity. Ordinarily, a steering committee is also selected to coordinate campaign activities.

OTHER CAMPAIGN PARTICIPANTS

Certain individuals and groups play important roles in school bond elections. Among these are board members, school administrators, teachers, students, and parent–teacher associations.

Members of the Board of Education

The board of education, of course, is responsible for officially determining the amount of the school bond issue and for authorizing the holding of an election. Its responsibility does not end at this point, however. Board members are also responsible for doing everything in their power to ensure that a vigorous campaign is waged. They should be involved at every step. They should assist the superintendent, the school staff, and the citizens' advisory committee in planning the campaign; they should volunteer their services to the speakers' bureau and other committees that can benefit from their talents. The board should constantly strive to build a climate of confidence and trust by conducting most business at public meetings, with a minimum number of executive meetings. Board members should remember that their friends and neighbors can learn from them what the needs of the schools are. Some studies indicate that board members' neighbors fail to vote in school finance elections because they lack sufficient information about the finance issue; their board member friend never discussed the subject with them.

School Administrators

All school administrators have made friends in the community and have an even larger number of people who respect their opinions as educators. They should be totally aware of the bond issue facts before they

are made public, and all employees should be extended this courtesy. This is good for morale, and it helps the campaign effort as this information is disseminated to other people who assume that the employees know what they are talking about. Principals enjoy a special position with the neighborhoods they serve. They should establish a communications network with parents and others in the immediate community. This network might include a weekly lunch with a different group of six or eight people. It might include an informal newsletter or an occasional principal's forum held to encourage feedback and discussion with parents and others. Whatever the communications channels are, they should be employed to inform people about the bond issue.

Teachers

The role to be played by teachers in school finance elections is still a topic for discussion among school officials. Yet many leaders of teachers' associations agree that teachers can play an integral role in gaining public support for the budget or bond issue. Teachers' salaries command a large portion of the school budget; therefore, many school officials feel that it makes sense for the teachers' association to campaign for the passage of the budget. Others argue that ostentatious efforts by teachers might backfire if taxpayers interpret such efforts as self-serving. A national teachers' group suggests that it is not a question of whether teachers should participate in a school tax campaign, but in what way.

Understandably, teachers would like to be part of the planning group that determines what the building will be like. Frequently, they can suggest changes that will make the building more functional and also save taxpayers money. In any event, teachers who participate in planning the building can be expected to support its need more than those who play a spectator role. Teachers' associations can be of appreciable assistance during the campaign. Some associations have members who possess expertise in bond issue campaigns and also have access to excellent bond issue materials prepared by state and national teacher associations. The school officials who minimize the role to be played by teachers do the campaign a major disservice.

Students

When most educators consider the role of students in finance campaigns, they think of the ways students can help sell the building needs to the community. This is a difficult area, at best. Using students to sell school needs, unless the students, themselves, organize, can provoke negative reactions from taxpayers. It is generally felt that students should not be used to distribute campaign literature or to make posters in art classes, for example. A contribution often made by students without any prodding takes place at public hearings. Often students will testify at public hearings about the need for more space, citing specifics that only they can fully realize.

Too many schools neglect an important educational responsibility in respect to students and their understanding of school finance elections. Somewhere, in every curriculum, an opportunity should be included for students to understand how public schools are supported. Every high school graduate should know how local schools are financed. High school students who are 18 should be encouraged to register. Most young voters pay no property taxes and therefore do not feel the increased taxes mandated by a positive vote on election day. Election results indicate that most 18-year-olds vote for school finance needs.

Parent–Teacher Associations

Strong support for school bond proposals is likely to come from parent–teacher association members. For this reason, school administrators should enlist their help early and seek their aid at every stage of the campaign. Following is a list of suggested ways to use the aid of parent–teacher association members:

- Invite every parent–teacher association unit within the district to be represented on the citizens' advisory committee.
- Arrange through the district council to have meetings of all units. Administrators, board of education members, and district council officers should plan the programs for these meetings.

- Invite the parent–teacher association to assist in carrying on the registration campaign.
- Invite the parent–teacher association to make periodic surveys in all attendance areas of the school district to determine the number of preschool children in each area.
- Ask the parent–teacher association to help in preparing campaign materials, assembling speakers' kits, addressing postcards and letters, taking notes at meetings, and duplicating and distributing minutes.
- Ask the parent–teacher association to organize and conduct the house-to-house canvass, if this technique is employed in the campaign.
- Ask the parent–teacher association to organize election day tasks, such as driving voters to the polls.

KNOWING THE COMMUNITY'S THINKING BEFORE THE ELECTION

After determining which groups can help in the campaign and the roles they can play, an early step should be finding out the community's thoughts and opinions regarding the need for the building. Too often school officials conduct surveys after elections to discover why the referendum failed. It is wiser to survey well before the elections to determine the best kind of campaign to wage. Surveys can elicit useful information regarding how much people know about the building, specific objections to the referendum, unanswered questions, and misinformation. Given this information, school officials can plan a campaign that answers the community's questions and helps eliminate misinformation. If, for instance, the survey unveils that a large segment of the community feels that additions to buildings would be preferred to a new building, much of the campaign will have to be directed to demonstrating that additions were fully considered but rejected. Reasons for rejection must be clearly stated and the rationale for the new building shown. School officials, acting on information from a survey, might want to reconsider their proposal before making the commitment on a referendum.

A survey can be conducted by the advisory committee, by the PTA, by service groups, or by school officials. It can be sent to all homes or to a sample of the community. The survey can also be done in personal or phone interviews, both of which lead to a solid percentage of response. If a written questionnaire is distributed, most public relations practitioners agree that the results should be made public. Hiding the results arouses suspicion, and suspicion and doubts are to be avoided at all costs. (See Chapter 3 for information on surveys.)

ADOPTING A THEME OR SLOGAN

Many public relations experts claim that a slogan or theme that captures public attention can serve as a plus for the campaign. It must be remembered, however, that a poorly chosen slogan can be a disadvantage. What works in one community could miss completely in another because of the different makeup of the public being served. If a theme is used, it should honestly represent what the referendum is all about. It should ideally focus on students and should somehow imply benefit for the community and, if possible, for the voter. The slogan should help voters remember the issue and the way that the educators would like them to vote. In California a picture of two small children was accompanied by the slogan "For Jimmy and me, vote yes on 3." Another district used "The Child Looks to You—Vote Yes on 2." The slogan included the child and the kind of vote needed, and the date of the election was added.

Many campaigns are based on instilling fear; slogans such as "Save Our Schools" imply that ruin or disaster is imminent if the building is not approved. Yet, following a defeat, the schools will continue to service children, perhaps in a less ideal way than if the building had been approved, but nevertheless in a way avoiding the ruin implied by the slogan. Slogans based on confidence and hope are usually more effective than those prompting fear. A campaign can effectively put across positive feelings in many ways—emphasizing a better curriculum, new kinds of learning resources, or more facilities for more people to use more frequently.

Certain statements lend themselves to positive impact, again depending on the public receiving the communications. Some worth considering for a building campaign follow:

- To parents, the public school represents their children's future; for all citizens, it represents the welfare of our country.
- Good schools produce taxpayers, not tax users.
- Poor schools are the most expensive tax burden.
- The schools belong to the people, and they must answer to the children.
- Inflation affects schools, too.

Remember that few people are antichildren, and most Americans believe in the value of education. Thus, educators have a solid ground on which to build a campaign. Parents, especially, find themselves caught between two of their prized possessions—their children and their money. If they believe that the referendum will help their children learn better, usually they will opt for their children over the money.

PERSONALIZING THE CAMPAIGN

Too often administrators prepare a campaign aimed at a mass audience that doesn't exist. Although certain materials (newsletters, news releases, etc.) sometimes have to be written for the general audience, much of the campaign should be developed for specific targeted audiences. The first rule of any effective communication is to *know your audience.* In the case of a campaign, this can be interpreted as meaning: Show voters how the referendum will help them in some way. Although many voters join the yes column because they are sold on the educational soundness of the proposal, many others are prompted to vote yes by one small phase of the building program. The following questions might be heard outside almost any polling place on referendum day: "Where do I vote on remodeling the middle school?" "Is this where I vote on building a new high school?" Many people are motivated by some personal need that will be met by having the building constructed.

"What's in it for me?" is the question many people ask themselves before committing themselves to a higher tax payment. School officials should make every effort to show how the new building will favorably affect different kinds of people. An early part of the campaign planning should be devoted to listing the various organizations and how they might benefit from the building. Similar lists should be developed for groups of people—the Golden Agers, the young voters, and so on.

KEEP IT SIMPLE

As in all communications from school to home, the message should be prepared in easy-to-understand language. This means eliminating educational gobbledygook and long polysyllabic sentences. Many taxpayers are befuddled by the conflicting tax increase information that is spread a few days before the election. To avoid this kind of confusion, educators should distribute simple fact sheets that clearly state the resulting tax increase if the referendum is approved. This means including an average house in the community, giving its market value, and the tax increase. Such specifics negate ill-founded rumors that invariably occur late in the campaign.

The basic facts are usually sufficient for most voters. The traditional pie charts, graphs, and in-depth statistics are noticed by few readers and understood by fewer. Some campaigns have effectively used a gimmick for visual impact to communicate costs. One community used a pound of coffee in all literature, and speakers carried a pound of coffee to all meetings. This communicated that the cost to the average homeowner would be a pound of coffee a week. It is also important to explain what the new building will mean to the community. Lower maintenance costs should be communicated as well as increased community use of facilities.

WORKING WITH THE MEDIA

As noted earlier, rapport with media representatives should be established before the campaign. The daily and weekly newspapers are, in most communities, the main source of media news about the referendum.

Superintendents who enjoy a sound relationship with local editors enhance their chances of gaining favorable editorials for the building. Early in the campaign, the superintendent or campaign director should meet with all editors to talk informally about the building and what it can offer the community. Such a meeting can encourage editors to check with school officials before printing negative editorials.

A series of articles prepared for all area newspapers about the building needs would be welcomed by many newspapers. Although some daily newspapers won't find room for them, they nevertheless should receive them. Weekly newspapers usually thrive on such information. Stories concerning the needs of the school district should begin appearing many months before the election; in fact, they should appear before the election is even announced. A survey of preschool children that would indicate future increases in enrollment can be the subject for one or several stories. Reports by the superintendent of schools to the board of education on enrollment trends, overcrowded classrooms, and dangerous or outmoded physical conditions in the schools should be publicized. Planned, continual newspaper publicity will furnish voters with an adequate background of the school district's needs and will thus make the proposal to meet these needs more acceptable. The appointment of the citizens' committee and its discussions and actions are newsworthy. If the newspapers have no representation on the committee, appoint someone capable of covering meetings of the committee and writing stories for the press. Develop a story on every talk made before service clubs and other community groups. Report each endorsement voted by an organization. Submit architects' sketches of proposed buildings, charts, graphs, and pictures for use by newspapers.

Capitalize on the community grapevine by working with key communicators to share information and dispel incorrect rumors during the campaign. Letters to the editor will be written by those opposed to the bond issue; school campaigners should have people writing letters of support for the bond issue throughout the campaign. Key communicators can play a major role here.

Radio and television stations should also be contacted early in the campaign and their support solicited. In most cases, provided the issues do not become political because of organized opposition, radio and television stations will assist school administrators in planning programs, spot announcements, and other types of publicity. Stations may be willing to donate this time on the air as a public service.

Radio call-in shows should be listened to in order to determine concerns of taxpayers regarding the referendum. In addition, school officials should appear, if possible, on community shows that allow questions to be called in. Cable television can be beneficial in many communities. As is the case with radio, materials must be prepared professionally because the reputation of the station, as well as the school, is involved. For help, check with the staff of the stations. If television is available, an effective program could be a film or tape of the school system's budget or referendum needs followed by a half hour or more of telephone calls from viewers with questions to be answered on the spot by school officials.

PUBLICATIONS CAN HELP

Online information and informational brochures are essential to informing voters about the campaign's key issues. Informational brochures should be distributed to all registered voters of the district by mail or house-to-house canvass. Brochures and online information should be attractive and easy to read but should not appear to be expensive. They should briefly explain the needs, the proposals for meeting these needs, and the cost to the average taxpayer. All materials should be prepared by someone who knows how to design effective publications and online content. Architects' renderings should be seriously considered before being used; often they contain embellishments that will not appear when the building is erected. And those embellishments (a lake or wooded surroundings) could lead readers to conclude that a palace instead of a school is being proposed. The floor plan can usually be deleted with little loss, except perhaps to the architect's ego. Few people read floor plans, and in most cases, they are reduced to such small type that they are illegible. A special feature of the building might be highlighted instead of a floor plan if visual impact is desired.

In informational material for the campaign, children should be featured. Too many school materials exclude pictures of what schools are all about—children. Parents especially appreciate photographs of children in schools. Publications and other materials should present information honestly and provide voting information, including a sample ballot. Because some new residents won't know the locations of polling places, the addresses should be given. Phone numbers of school officials and advisory group members should be included to encourage people with questions to call them. In at least one publication, alternative plans considered to meet space needs should be shown and the reasons for their rejection given.

SPEAKERS' BUREAU

A speakers' bureau should be organized as soon as the school bond election has been announced. The person designated to coordinate the activities of campaign speakers should be certain that speakers are thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the proposal. Informational kits, therefore, should be carefully prepared. Briefing sessions should be scheduled. Visual materials such as filmstrips, slides, charts, videos, and pictures should be furnished. Don't ask for volunteers; instead select only those board members, administrators, and laypersons who speak effectively.

As has been mentioned before, contact every local organization as early in the campaign as possible, and endeavor to schedule a speaker for one of its meetings. Request each unit of the parent–teacher association to arrange for a meeting during the campaign when a speaker or a panel of speakers may discuss the school bond proposal. Arrange for talks over radio and television stations for your speakers. Prepare special letters to all religious leaders of the community inviting their support as "speakers" for the referendum.

ENDORSEMENTS

Obtaining endorsements from community organizations can be an effective campaign technique. These endorsements, often received after a speakers' bureau representative has talked at a meeting of the organization, can help in three ways. First, they communicate to members who missed the meeting that their organization is behind the referendum. Second, publicizing each endorsement can cause a bandwagon effect on the part of the community. Third, toward the end of the campaign, a list of organizations supporting the building can be distributed, communicating to the community that a broad spectrum of the district is behind the proposal.

ORGANIZATION ENDORSEMENT

The Board of Education of the _____ School District has called for a School Bond Election to be held on _____. The amount of the issue is $ _____.

We agree that additional funds are needed by the school district to provide adequate housing for the children and youth of this community. For this reason, we endorse the proposed bond issue, we shall work toward its passage, and the name of this organization may be used in publicity during the campaign.

Name of Organization _____

Address _____

Signed by _____

Office in Organization _____

FIGURE 16.1 A sample endorsement card.

Individual endorsements can also be helpful. Every time a school representative speaks to a group, he or she can distribute an endorsement card—one that asks for permission to use the signer's name for publicity purposes. (See Figure 16.1.) Near the end of the campaign, a list of endorsers can be published in advertisements and publications. Undecided voters who see names of those they respect on the list might be convinced to cast a yes vote.

SMALL-GROUP MEETINGS

The small-group meeting has met with much success in many school districts. This kind of get-together allows 6 to 10 people to meet with a school official or a representative of the citizens' advisory committee to discuss the bond issue. Such meetings

can be held in homes of parents and other concerned taxpayers. Questions asked at the first few meetings might provide material for an inexpensive Q-and-A sheet later distributed to all residents. Questions that cannot be answered by school representatives at the meetings should be answered the next day by phone. Spouses who are working during the day, when most such meetings are usually held, might want to attend an evening meeting. Such meetings are conducive to attitude change and allow the all-important process of two-way communication to occur. When well organized, they reach large numbers of people and contribute much to the success of the campaign.

CAMPAIGN TIMETABLE

The following suggested schedule for school bond campaigns may be helpful to school administrators when they begin making plans for conducting a campaign in their district.

Six Months to a Year before Election

Determine future needs by studying current enrollments by grades, recent enrollment trends, adequacy of present facilities, and the number of preschool-age children residing in the district.

Four to Six Months before Election

- Study past campaigns and reasons for successes and failures.
- Survey the community to determine citizens' attitudes toward space needs and means to solve the needs.
- Develop a specific proposal and present it to the board of education.
- Explain and discuss the proposal with all school employees.
- Publicize the proposal and the reasons for making it.
- Organize a citizens' advisory committee to review the studies leading to the proposal and to assist in organizing and conducting a campaign.
- Name a chairperson for the campaign and apprise others to work with that person.
- Meet with the parent–teacher association to determine cooperatively what roles members can play in the campaign.
- Begin a campaign to register all parents of preschool- and school-age children.
- Attempt to discover any possible opposition to the bond issue and to win it over or to neutralize it.
- Establish a timetable and budget.

Three Months before Election

- The board of education should officially set the date of the election and announce the amount of the bond issue.
- Select a theme.
- Contact all organizations in the community, and endeavor to arrange for programs concerning the school bond proposal.
- Organize a speakers' bureau.
- Prepare information kits for speakers and for house-to-house canvassers.
- Take advantage of every opportunity to publicize the bond issue in newspapers and over radio and television. Continue until election day.
- Have subcommittees of the citizens' committee begin work on all phases of the campaign.
- Prepare information for teachers and arrange for meetings with them to discuss the proposal and to invite their support.
- Begin soliciting endorsements from individuals and organizations, publicizing the fact each time an organization endorses the bond issue. Continue until election day.
- Begin preparation of campaign materials, such as brochures, posters, bumper stickers, billboards, letters, postcards, filmstrips, banners, slides, window displays, and newspaper advertising.

One to Three Months before Election

- Organize workers for a house-to-house canvass.
- Organize and conduct small-group meetings.

• Organize workers for election day. Prepare specific directions for every type of worker who will be employed on election day.

• Arrange advertising schedules with newspapers, radio stations, and television stations.

• Begin using motion pictures, videos, and other audiovisual materials before meetings of community organizations.

• Send absentee ballot information.

Three to Four Weeks before Election

• Put up window displays.

• Distribute posters for placement in store windows.

• Distribute bumper stickers.

• Put up billboard advertising.

• Send letters to all religious leaders in the school district asking for their support of the bond proposal.

Two to Three Weeks before Election

• Mail general brochures to all registered voters of the school district or distribute them through a house-to-house canvass.

• Schedule informational programs, such as panel discussions, for radio and television. Continue until election day.

• Obtain feedback (surveys, if possible) to determine the feelings of the community; regroup final plans based on the findings.

Final Two Weeks before Election

• Mail special letters to all parents inviting their support on election day.

• Space newspaper, radio, and television advertising throughout this period.

• Mail postcards or pamphlets to all potential yes voters to arrive the day before election, reminding them to vote.

• Publicize a hotline (telephone number for citizens to call for information).

• Have "truth squads" counter misinformation that is disseminated in the last stages of the campaign.

• Continue small-group meetings.

• Reprint favorable editorials for wide distribution.

Election Day

• Telephone committees should begin calling all parents and other potential yes voters.

• Check polls to determine which yes voters have voted.

• Offer transportation and babysitter services to those who haven't voted.

• Remind teachers and other school employees and students to vote.

Follow-Up

• Write letters thanking all who took active parts in the campaign. Also write to newspapers, radio stations, television stations, businesses, and organizations that assisted in promoting the bond issue. The personal touch of a phone call is even better if time permits.

• Analyze the campaign as soon as possible after the election. Determine points of strength and weakness by talking with citizens, advisory members, parent–teacher association members, school administrators, and others.

• Conduct a postelection survey to see why people voted the way they did. Record the results for use in future campaigns.

• Send a financial report to all who contributed to the campaign.

RECOMMENDATIONS TO IMPROVE ELECTION DAY RESULTS

The following recommendations are offered for the consideration of school officials. They have proved to be successful in school bond elections.

It is recommended that:

• The organization of a bond campaign be started not less than six months before election day.

• A complete survey of needs be made and publicized before announcing the possibility of a bond election.

- A citizens' committee be chosen with representatives from as many diverse groups in the community as may exist.
- This citizens' committee be permitted to study thoroughly the statement of needs and the tentative proposal to meet these needs.
- Everyone who volunteers to serve on the citizens' committee be given something specific to do.
- A voter registration campaign be conducted and efforts be made to register parents of all preschool- and school-age children.
- Schools be utilized as places for registration and that school secretaries be deputized for this purpose.
- Every known community organization be contacted and asked to schedule a program concerning the school bond proposal.
- An effort be made to obtain endorsements of the bond proposal from all community organizations.
- Individual citizens be asked to endorse the bond proposal.
- Endorsements from organizations be publicized in newspaper stories or in advertisements.
- Newspaper editors or publishers and radio and television station managers be contacted before the campaign begins for advice and support.
- An effort be made to locate potential opponents and to win their support for the proposal.
- A complete handbook of facts be developed for use by teachers and other school employees, speakers, and members of the citizens' advisory committee.
- Teachers and other school district employees not be directed to participate in the campaign but be encouraged to volunteer their services.
- Religious leaders in the community be contacted and their support solicited.
- The final publicity campaign be no longer than two or three weeks.
- House-to-house canvasses be conducted in those attendance areas where principals and parent–teacher association members believe they will be effective.
- At least one carefully prepared brochure or pamphlet be developed and mailed to every registered voter or distributed to voters by means of the house-to-house canvass.
- Election day machinery be planned that will get probable supporters to the polls.
- The cooperation of the parent–teacher association be solicited; that members be invited to conduct a survey of the district to discover preschool-age children; that they staff the election-day machinery; and that they conduct the house-to-house canvass.
- Administrators and members of the board of education play active roles in planning and conducting the school bond campaign.
- All potential yes voters be reminded of the election by a letter, postcard, or telephone call.
- Carefully selected media be employed to keep the election before the citizens of the community.
- A series of public meetings be avoided. Such meetings afford a platform for the opposition and often result in negative press.
- Polls be open when convenient for people to vote. A community with people on split shifts should consider the timing of the shifts and voting hours.
- The most trusted school official in a key position serve as official spokesperson.
- The date chosen for the election not follow the mailing of new tax bills, if possible.
- A year-round, two-way communications system be implemented to effect confidence in the schools. Confidence and pride in schools lead to positive votes.
- The bond campaign be financed by contributions and that no pressure be brought to bear on any individual or group for funds.
- Everything in the campaign be done in good taste and that nothing be done that might discredit the school district.
- Letters thanking everyone who participates in the campaign be prepared and mailed immediately after the election, regardless of its outcome.

AN EXAMPLE OF A LOCAL CAMPAIGN

One program recognized by the National School Public Relations Association with a Gold Medallion Award shows how schools can make communication on school finance issues an ongoing process. The Sarasota County, Florida, Public Schools have made a commitment to keep local citizens informed through a Citizens Academy. Sheila Weiss is supervisor of communications and community relations for the Sarasota County Public Schools. Here is a summary of their successful efforts.

Assessment

After three years of budget cuts, Sarasota County Public Schools held a referendum on March 19, 2002, in which voters were asked to raise their property taxes by one mill for a four-year period to enhance the district's operating budget. The vote passed by a 61 percent margin.

During the first year of the referendum, it became obvious that foundational planning had to commence for the next referendum attempt. It did not appear that state funding would increase adequately in the foreseeable future. In the evaluation of the previous 18-month campaign, it was determined that a tremendous burden was placed on the superintendent and members of a community campaign committee to educate vast numbers of citizens about the funding problems and to garner support. A Citizens Academy was then developed to help accomplish this task.

The Citizens Academy, loosely patterned after one sponsored by the county government, is an interactive, nine-week course designed to provide the participants with information about the school district (see Figure 16.2). Each week a different aspect of the district is covered from either the instructional or business services perspective. Through an experiential approach, participants get an insight into the school district's varied services, the complex funding mechanisms, the knowledge students are required to master, and the challenges schools must overcome to help students achieve. In addition, participants become better acquainted with the staff that keeps the business of education functioning.

The Citizens Academy meets weekly on eight evenings from 6:00 until 9:00 p.m. at various district sites. A complimentary meal, provided by the district's Food and Nutritional Services Department, is served as an enticement to attend at dinnertime. The final and ninth week includes a daytime tour of schools in lieu of an evening meeting. Class size is intentionally small to provide more opportunities for personalized interaction. At the conclusion of the academy, participants are honored at a graduation ceremony held at a televised school board meeting.

The published goals are to increase community understanding of the programs and operations of the Sarasota County Public Schools and to enlighten citizens about the opportunities for involvement in the public schools. The Citizens Academy works to meet these goals through the following activities.

Planning

Focus groups were held with a cross section of community members.

> A development committee was formed consisting of district administrators, the Education Foundation director, parents, senior citizens, business leaders, and attendees of the county's Citizens Academy.
>
> The development committee designed the academy's mission, vision, goals, and overall structure. The committees also met the superintendent and associate superintendents to explain the concept. District administrators were then appointed from each department to coordinate the various sessions.

Communication

> Personal letters from the superintendent, along with information about the inaugural Citizens Academy, were sent to 150 key communicators and resulted in 33 immediate enrollments—including a television anchor, a former state

SCHOOL DISTRICT FUNDAMENTALS 101

The Academy will meet on Thursday evenings from 6:00-9:00 PM, for nine weeks. Week nine will consist of a daytime tour of schools in lieu of an evening meeting. The following is the overview of each session (subject to change).

Week One: School's in Session: **September 15**
Snap shot of the school district, general facts, how we compare with other districts
1980 Landings Blvd. School Board Chambers. Brown awning building, Rooms A & B

Week Two: The Buck Stops Here **September 22**
Finances, budget, long-range planning, construction
1980 Landings Blvd. School Board Chambers. Brown awning building, Rooms A & B

Week Three: "Teacher, I know the answer!" **September 29**
Educational programs, curriculum, technology
1980 Landings Blvd. School Board Chambers. Brown awning building, Rooms A & B

Week Four: The Great Debate **October 6**
Student achievement, testing, FCAT, dropout prevention programs
1980 Landings Blvd. School Board Chambers. Brown awning building, Rooms A & B

Week Five: The Whole Child, Not Half **October 13**
Student support services (i.e., guidance, social workers, school psychologists, safe schools)
1980 Landings Blvd. School Board Chambers. Brown awning building, Rooms A & B

Week Six: Special Students, Special Programs **October 20**
Exceptional student programs, teen parent program, charter schools
Location: Cyesis, 4430 Beneva Road, Sarasota

Week Seven: The wheels on the bus go 'round and 'round **October 27**
Business support services (i.e., transportation, maintenance, food & nutrition services)
Transportation Complex Lounge, 301 Old Venice Road, Osprey. Look for yellow balloons.

Week Eight: World, Here We Come **November 3**
Career and technical education, adult programs, high school reform initiatives
Sarasota County Technical Institute, 4748 Beneva Road, Bldg. 5-Culinary Arts/Cafeteria

Week Nine: Tour of Schools **November 10**
Meet at the Landings Office Park in front of the Brown Awning Building; tour from 8:30 AM-2:30 PM

Graduation **Tuesday, November 15**
6:30 PM, School Board Meeting Room, 1980 Landings Blvd. (Brown Awning Building)

FIGURE 16.2 The Sarasota County, Florida, Public Schools' Citizens Academy focuses on different aspects of the district, from both the instructional and the business services perspectives, as this description of weekly sessions demonstrates. (Reprinted with permission of the School Board of Sarasota County, Florida; Shelia Weiss, Supervisor of Communications and Community Relations.)

senator, a bank president, and representatives from several civic organizations.

The next session also filled rapidly with enrollees resulting from word-of-mouth or through posted information on the district's intranet system. A logo and brochures were developed. Information also was posted on the district's Web site, and on a telephone "on-hold" message. Waiting lists were developed for those interested in future sessions.

Evaluation

After the initial Citizens Academy, all participants agreed or strongly agreed that the academy was worth their time and would recommend it to others. Ninety-seven percent said they wanted to remain supportive. Each session is evaluated by participants and the feedback is used to improve both the content and delivery of the information being offered (see Figures 16.3, 16.4, and 16.5).

PARTICIPANT SURVEY

As part of the development of the content areas of the Citizens Academy, we are surveying participants at the beginning and end of the scheduled sessions to determine program impact on your knowledge of the school district. Your responses will be kept confidential and will only be analyzed with other data to form an evaluation report.

1. How many years have you been a resident of Sarasota County? ___ years

2. Please circle employment status? Full time Part time Retired

3. Child(ren) in school(s)? ____yes ____no Grandchild(ren) in our school(s)? ____yes ____no

4. How did you find out about the Citizens Academy? (Check all that apply)
__ Letter __ Media __ Word of Mouth __ School district employee

True or False:

5. ____ Your property taxes make up 72% of the school district's budget.

6. ____ School board members are appointed by the county commission.

7. ____ The Superintendent of Schools is appointed by the School Board.

8. ____ The March 2002 referendum provided extra funds that paid for additional teachers and guidance counselors.

Fill in the blanks:

9. The School Board has a budget of approximately $ _____million this fiscal year.

10. _____ (number) students are served in _____ (number) schools in Sarasota County.

11. How many bus routes does the district schedule daily —_____ — and what is the approximate yearly cost to the school district? $_____ million

12. Approximately _____ % of students receive free or reduced lunch.

13. Who decides which textbooks are used in our public schools?_____

FIGURE 16.3 A survey is used to collect data from participants and evaluate the effectiveness of the Sarasota County, Florida, Public Schools' Citizens Academy at improving knowledge of critical district issues. (Reprinted with permission of the School Board of Sarasota County, Florida; Shelia Weiss, Supervisor of Communications and Community Relations.)

14. How many employees does the school district have? _____

15. What percentage of students are from homes where English is the second language? _____%

16. What was the school district's dropout rate last year? _____%

17. What is involved in the "No Child Left Behind" legislation?

_____

_____

_____

_____

Circle the correct answer:

18. Sarasota County Public School students rank below at above national averages on the college preparatory exam (SAT).

19. Sarasota County Public School students rank below at above state averages on the Florida Comprehensive Assessment Test (FCAT).

20. The school district is doing a good job in educating the students of Sarasota County.
___Strongly agree ___ Agree ___ Disagree ___ Strongly disagree ___ No opinion

21. The school district uses tax dollars wisely.
___Strongly agree ___ Agree ___ Disagree ___ Strongly disagree ___ No opinion

22. The extra funding received from the referendum has allowed our school district to maintain excellence.
___Strongly agree ___ Agree ___ Disagree ___ Strongly disagree ___ No opinion

23. The school district has a low number of administrators compared to other districts.
___Strongly agree ___ Agree ___ Disagree ___ Strongly disagree ___ No opinion

FIGURE 16.4 Page two of the Sarasota County, Florida, Public Schools' survey. (Reprinted with permission of the School Board of Sarasota County, Florida; Shelia Weiss, Supervisor of Communications and Community Relations.)

School Board of Sarasota County
CITIZENS ACADEMY
Session Feedback Form – Fall 2005

Session #: ____ Title: _____

Thank you for attending this session. Your feedback regarding this session is much appreciated and will help us improve future ones. Any and all comments are welcome. Thank you again for your participation.

HOW MUCH DID YOU LEARN?

On a scale of 1 (No knowledge/understanding) to 10 (Complete knowledge /understanding)

	Knowledge Before Session	Knowledge After Session
Please indicate the amount of knowledge you have gained as a result of this session.		

HOW SATISFIED ARE YOU?

On a scale of 1 (Very Dissatisfied) to 5 (Very Satisfied), how satisfied were you with:

1) **Materials** of the Session (handouts, videos, exercises, etc.)	1	2	3	4	5
2) **Usefulness** of the Session	1	2	3	4	5
3) **Presentation** of the Session	1	2	3	4	5
4) **Level of communication and participation** during the Session	1	2	3	4	5
5) **Facilitator(s) knowledge** regarding Session subject matter	1	2	3	4	5
6) **Pace** of the Session	1	2	3	4	5
7) Overall **performance** of the Session facilitator(s)	1	2	3	4	5
8) Overall **quality** of the Session	1	2	3	4	5

On a scale of 1 (Strongly Disagree) to 10 (Strongly Agree), respond to each statement:

9) I will **use** the knowledge I have gained within my workplace and/or community.	1	2	3	4	5
10) This Session was **worth the time** spent.	1	2	3	4	5
11) I would **recommend** this Session to others.	1	2	3	4	5

12) What did you like most about the Session?

_____

_____

13) If you were to conduct the Session, what would you do differently?

_____

_____

14) Is there anything else you'd like for us to know?

_____

_____

_____

FIGURE 16.5 A feedback form also is used to help evaluate and refine individual sessions of the Sarasota County, Florida, Public Schools' Citizens Academy. (Reprinted with permission of the School Board of Sarasota County, Florida; Shelia Weiss, Supervisor of Communications and Community Relations.)

Questions

1. Outline a plan to gain support for a new school bond issue.
2. Explain the benefits of ongoing communication on school finance issues as opposed to only communicating during times when a vote is near.
3. Why is it important to involve all taxpayers, not just parents, in the schools?
4. Why is it important to keep a focus on children and benefits when developing informational material for finance campaigns?
5. How can partnerships with businesses, civic groups, or other community organizations be helpful when trying to communicate various school budget and finance issues?

Readings

Campbell, Gay, "Bond Issue and Levy Elections," *School Public Relations,* 2nd ed. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Election Success: Proven Strategies for Public Finance Campaigns. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

"Financial Support Depends on Ongoing Communication," *Network.* Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, November 2005.

"Surviving Financial Tough Times: Good Communication Remains Key," *Network.* Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, February 2004.

Chapter

17

Assessment and Accountability

The demand for accountability in education underscores the essential role of research and assessment for school and community relations. School leaders need to maximize communication programming and assessment to document accountability on two levels:

1. ***Investments.*** School–community relations programs consume both financial and human resources. Assessment efforts must be used to document how well these investments have performed, and to suggest ways in which ongoing efforts might be made even more effective and efficient.

2. ***Involvement.*** There is a link between academic achievement and the kind of community relationships and involvement that result from effective community relations programming. Program assessment can help to document the role communications have played in supporting this kind of relationship-building and achievement.

The assessment of school–community relations efforts, therefore, can help school systems be accountable for their investments to support communication and for the resulting relationships and involvement that support schools and students.

DOCUMENTING RESULTS

The role of research in school–community relations programming is perhaps too often viewed as a key part of the planning process. But ongoing research is essential in all phases of school communication efforts.

Research does play a crucial role in initial planning activities. It is essential to document the current state of communication and understanding among key school constituencies. It also helps school leaders better understand how people receive and process information about schools. Initial planning research also provides clues to the types of communication strategies, tactics, and messages that will succeed in improving understanding of and support for schools and their programs.

Once a program is planned, however, the need for ongoing research remains essential to program assessment and performance. Tracking or monitoring research helps school communication administrators assess programs under way, document how well those efforts are working toward meeting the plan's objectives, and suggest possible adjustments to tactics and strategies to improve their performance. In short, a communication plan is always a work in progress—one that will need ongoing assessment and adjustment as it is implemented. Initial research in the planning phases may have missed

From Chapter 17 of *The School and Community Relations*, 10/e. Edward H. Moore. Donald R. Gallagher. Don Bagin. Copyright © 2012 by Pearson Education. All rights reserved.

STANDARDS FOR EVALUATION OF SCHOOL PR PROGRAMS

In its publication *Raising the Bar for School PR: New Standards for the School Public Relations Profession,* the National School Public Relations Association urges the following:

Every major communication effort is evaluated to determine whether planned goals were met and objectives achieved.

- The organization and each of its units engages in both formal and informal evaluations of its communication practices and the levels of satisfaction with its performance.
- Overall personnel evaluations of district administrators and staff include a component addressing the need for effective internal and external communication practices and the levels of satisfaction with their performance. Job descriptions and regularly developed goals and objectives also include a focus on communication responsibilities.
- Whenever possible, evaluation methods are built in to each element of the organization's annual communication plan. These evaluations are used to create, modify, or discontinue practices or projects.
- Each of the organization's regular communication channels and vehicles is evaluated at least every two years to determine its relevance, interest, and ability to communicate important information.

Source: Raising the Bar for School PR: New Standards for the School Public Relations Profession, National School Public Relations Association (www.nspra.org), 15948 Derwood Road, Rockville, MD 20855. Reprinted with permission.

essential insights that become evident as the program implementation is monitored. New, emerging issues or unexpected changes in the communication environment also may create the need for mid-course corrections once a plan is under way.

Finally, once a program has been fully implemented, evaluative research is important to accountability for results: *How well did the program work in meeting its stated objectives?* Evaluative assessments also make an important contribution to future planning and communication programming: *What insights from this effort can make future communication efforts more effective and efficient?*

The ongoing role of research—and its importance to assessment and accountability—is circular in nature: School–community relations programs should be built on a solid foundation of communication research used to formulate specific measurable objectives and the communication efforts that have the best chance to reach them. Once under way, monitoring research helps school communicators assess progress toward those objectives and make changes—based on sound insights and data—that might be needed. When finished, evaluative research provides the data needed to help administrators document the success of communication outputs and the impact on students and schools. These final insights, then, provide a platform for understanding what's needed now and what will work best going forward, and a new communication planning phase begins.

The crucial nature of research in this process is explained in the *School PR Research Primer:*

> Without research, school public relations planners are like a semi-truck driver, careening down a busy highway in a dense fog at 80 miles per hour. As long as the road is straight and everybody else gets out of the way, that truck may reach its destination just fine. But chances are that won't happen. And the resulting wreck, which could have been avoided, will cost money and time that could have been saved. Even worse, the truck, its contents, and its driver, may never get to where they wanted to go.
>
> Research is how school public relations planners can move their programs out of the fog. It is how they build efficiency and effectiveness that can be tracked and measured into their programs. It is how they build real accountability for communications into their programs.
>
> Without the solid data and insights that good research offers, school officials are

communicating with no sense of direction or mission. They have no guidance on what messages should be delivered and reinforced—or on what audiences are key targets for those messages.[1]

SUPPORTING COMMUNICATION ACCOUNTABILITY

Despite the commitment in education to research-driven programming in curricular areas, school communication administrators may find support for research efforts in community relations activities lacking. Communication research may be viewed as expensive and time-consuming—something that can't be afforded when there is urgency to act on issues related to school communications and when tight budgets might cause decision makers to think that limited resources might be better dedicated directly to communication rather than research.

In this kind of environment, it's important to stress the integral links between communication research and action. Investments in communication research are, in fact, investments in communication. Without commitments to research, accountability for communication activities cannot be achieved.

In addition, research supporting assessment and accountability need not be costly or time-intensive. Appropriate combinations of primary and secondary research—both formal and informal—often can be designed to quickly and efficiently create the benchmarks needed to effectively plan and implement school communication programming.

Just as school leaders review reliable data before making decisions on new educational programs or capital initiatives, they also need to review sound data before making communication investments.

TRACKING BOTTOM-LINE OUTPUTS

Accountability for results should go beyond dissemination issues *(Examples:* How many newsletters were mailed? How many viewed the Web page?). Accountability efforts should document actions taken by individuals in target audiences by assessing behavioral outcomes *(Examples*: How many parents attended the meeting? How many students enrolled in the new program?).

EXAMPLE

Suppose research turned up ongoing problems with new-student registration for a district's preschool programs. Parents are confused by deadlines, don't know how to get more information, and often miss opportunities to enroll their children in available programs. Additional research into the issue suggests that an effective way to address these problems would be to develop a Web-based information program for parents of prospective students—and to support it with an informational campaign delivered through traditional news media outlets. Once designed, monitoring assessments as the new effort unfolds might follow traffic at the new Web site, review questions coming in from the Web site and over the telephone, and compare RSVPs for registration meetings with figures from past years. Final accountability efforts once the program is completed, then, would not only document how many people visited the new Web site but also show how resulting enrollment figures compare to those in previous years. In other words, did the new communication effort result in increased awareness and understanding of the enrollment process *and* result in increased enrollment?

USING RESEARCH

The following techniques, reported in the *School PR Research Primer,* can be helpful in documenting and assessing the results of school communication activities:

Network and literature reviews: Surveys of members of the National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA) consistently cite networking with other professionals as a key reason people join the group.

The reason for this peer networking: To get a handle on how others have handled similar situations and what their experiences can teach us about what works and what doesn't.

Books, magazines, newsletters, newspapers, reports, and more also can offer insights and advice that may relate to communication

issues being researched in any school district. A literature search might focus on general media for insights into how communication issues have been investigated or covered. Or the search might focus more on trade and professional documents that have investigated and reported on relevant communication issues.

Many state and local agencies produce and analyze a variety of reports and studies that can be a help to the school communication researcher. Business groups, such as local and regional chambers of commerce, as well as businesses themselves (major local employers, for example) also might offer data, insights, and trends from economic, development, and other commerce-related issues. Many might have ongoing research projects that a school system could get involved with or cooperate in.

Content analyses: Perhaps the most familiar form of the content analysis in school communication is a study of media coverage. In its simplest form, the content analysis may tally the number of times certain school issues were covered in the local news media. A more complex content analysis might go on to assign values to the coverage—using some qualitative judgments as to how many stories were positive, negative, or neutral. But beyond media coverage, content analyses can also be used when studying the effectiveness of school newsletters, brochures and flyers, Web sites, and so on.

Focus groups: The focus group has become a staple of much school communication research. Generally, focus groups consist of 5 to 10 individuals who participate in a guided conversation on an issue or set of issues over about an hour. There is no universally accepted number of focus group participants—groups can be as small as 2 or 3, or they can be as large as 20 or more. But in general, many focus group facilitators consider a group of 5 to 10 as optimum, given the short period of time devoted to the discussion. There also is no hard-and-fast-law on the length of a focus group session. But an hour—give or take a few minutes—is preferred by many facilitators. An hour is seen by many as the maximum amount of time you can keep such a group clearly focused on a particular issue.

In-depth interviews: In-depth research interviews generally follow a set script and procedure and delve into significant detail. While some in-depth interviews may take only a few hours, others may take even more time, depending on the situation—and willingness of participants to sit for them. In-depth interviews are useful when you have individuals whose knowledge and experience can be of extreme value to your communication efforts. (See sample interview outline in box.)

Informal Feedback: Online polling has become common on many Web sites—including school Web sites. While the results of such polls represent only the thinking of those who have participated in them, they can be useful in tracking interest in certain topics as well as the strength of some developing issues. Technology has made the ability to field such polls relatively easy and inexpensive, so school communication researchers, while aware of the limitations of such polls, might consider using them when appropriate. Online tools also offer many other feedback options. Click-to links that can open comment boxes and e-mail blanks offer ways for online visitors to quickly share thoughts and comments with school officials. Web sites and e-publications should always take advantage of opportunities to solicit feedback and ideas from visitors on a regular basis.

Observation or Contact Reports: Formal reporting of observation or contacts tries to bring some order to the informal and formal information exchanges that take place throughout a school system every single day. They might document questions and comments made to those answering school phones—helping to assess the type of inquiries school staff members are faced with and suggesting new messages and tactics to handle them. The reports might also cover questions or other comments

IN-DEPTH INTERVIEW OUTLINE: MANAGING ENROLLMENT GROWTH

Example: A school district is suddenly facing an unprecedented surge in enrollment due to rapid new development. It will be building schools and hiring staff faster than at any time in the district's history. In researching these issues to revise their communication plan, school officials come across a school district in a nearby state that has, over the past five years, navigated a similar growth surge. Fortunately, nearly the entire leadership team still is in place. Their experience could be invaluable, so in-depth interviews might be arranged to tap the brains of those who've accomplished what this district now faces.

Here's an example of what an interview outline for an in-depth interview might look like:

1. Tell me about your background. Where did you attend college? What jobs did you hold before this one? How long have you held this position?
2. What is a typical day on the job like?
3. Talk about this school district. Over the last decade it successfully navigated a 50 percent jump in enrollment. What about this district made it capable of managing that kind of challenge?
4. Think back to when you first saw the projections for enrollment growth. Did you believe them? Did you panic? When you walked out of that meeting, what was your number one priority?
5. Communication would seem to be key in this kind of situation. You have new employees to orient; new and veteran residents to keep updated; rumors to manage; change to implement. Walk me through where communication was in your list of priorities and how you planned to manage communication.
6. As the growth came and change unfolded, what areas were you least prepared to handle—and how did you re-group to address them?
7. What areas did you get right? What one or two things do you still think about and feel proud of?
8. How would you describe a typical resident of this community? What are they like? If I ask them about your schools what would they tell me?
9. It is apparent that schools here enjoy a high level of community support. Why is that? What secrets can you share to help other schools build that kind of understanding and support?
10. How would you advise another district facing this kind of growth? What are the top three things you would want to make sure they understood about your own success with growth?

heard at various public meetings, such as back-to-school nights or other forums in which question-and-answer sessions can offer insights into areas of concern or information voids that exist among key audiences. These reports need not be complicated nor overly detailed. The objective is to get some basic information to school communication planners so it can serve as a type of early warning system on emerging issues, misinformation, rumors, and so on.

Key Communicators: A network of key communicators can be a positive influence throughout an entire school communication program (see Chapter 8 for more on key communicators). *Example:* Rumors can grow and get out of hand and are usually inaccurate. An established system of key communicators helps to keep rumors under control—not only by rapidly communicating the real story behind a growing rumor, but by serving school communicators as a vital feedback link to the community. Key communicators are true two-way communicators. While they often are thought of as a vehicle for getting information to the community, key communicators also function as research agents, reporting rumors, misinformation, and other important insights that they see and hear throughout the community.

Communication audits: Communication audits combine a number of research tactics to complete a thorough programmatic assessment of communication activities throughout a school system. Auditors, through literature reviews, interviews, and focus groups, analyze current communication efforts. They

assess district policies, demographic analyses, communication or marketing plans, internal and external publications, e-newsletters and Web sites, budget and expenditures, and other important aspects of the organization and its communication program. Audits often are conducted by independent, external researchers provided through groups such as the National School Public Relations Association. [2]

Polls and Surveys: Polls and surveys, using direct interviews with a sample of a population, are one of the best methods available to school systems for ascertaining whether or not the views and behaviors of citizens on selected problems and issues have changed as a result of communication efforts. The nature and amount of change can best be assessed, with reasonable accuracy, when polls are taken at regular intervals and the findings compared. Polls and surveys can be conducted online, in-person, through the mail or over the telephone. (Chapter 3 discusses surveys and their related issues in more detail.)

WHY EDUCATORS MUST BE ACCOUNTABLE FOR THE PERFORMANCE OF SCHOOL COMMUNICATION

By Rich Bagin

Rich Bagin is executive director of the National School Public Relations Association. He has worked with hundreds of school districts throughout North America on school communication issues. A former teacher and school administrator, Bagin is a veteran of more than 30 years in school public relations. He has written and presented extensively on school PR topics. Most recently he is the author of the NSPRA book *Making Parent Communication Effective and Easy: A Communication Guidebook for Teachers.*

When it comes to helping students do the best they can, the evidence is clear: Communication is more important than ever. And educational leaders have an obligation to continually assess the effectiveness of their school communication efforts and hold all school staff accountable for communication results.

The good news: People want to know how they can help children learn more. They want to know what the expectations are for children and how children are progressing. They eagerly seek guidance on helping their children achieve. Attending Parent Teacher Association meetings or volunteering in schools is still important for many people. But engaging with schools and school staff in meaningful ways that will help children become successful is the new top priority for many. On-going school communication is essential to building working relationships between communities and schools.

Research conducted as part of the National School Public Relations Association's (NSPRA) Communication Accountability Project underscores the important benefits of strong working relationships between schools and their communities. *Some observations from this work by NSPRA members:*

- "This work has found that school communication is a dynamic part of education success. Effective two-way communication is cited as a necessary trait for success at all levels of education, from school board to superintendent to principal, administrator and teacher."
- "No longer can an educator get by just slipping a monthly newsletter into the backpack and ensuring that the local paper gets the sports schedule. In an age of instantaneous access and 24/7 demand, schools must be able to manage the flow of information not only from teacher to students sitting in a classroom, but also to parents at the workplace and home. Administrators must be able to handle the news media's asking about incidents texted from student cell phones or to respond to queries about school performance reports posted on the web. School staff must be creative and innovative as the means of communication and the expectations expand rapidly. At a time when school choice, vouchers and charter schools provide more alternatives for parents, selling a school becomes more of a priority."
- "Communication is the foundation of effective partnerships. To build effective partnerships with

families and the community that will enhance student achievement, schools must first talk to—and listen to—parents, community groups, business leaders and others with a stake in student learning. Any strategy must accommodate the diverse language, cultural needs, lifestyles and schedules of all parties. This means the school often must take the initiative in reaching out to its community and parents. Successful partnerships require sustained mutual collaboration and support—from school staffs and from families at home, at school and in the community. It requires a school environment that welcomes its partners and encourages them to raise questions and voice their concerns, as well as to participate appropriately in decision-making."

NSPRA's Communication Accountability Project also cited research conducted by the founder of Family Friendly Schools Steve Constantino, a former principal who tracked the trends over four years at one high school as it dealt with increased communication with parents. Some results:

- Parent satisfaction rose from 34 percent to 59 percent.
- Teacher satisfaction rose from 39 percent to 76 percent.
- The average SAT score rose 61 points, with an 18 percent reduction in disparity between minority and non-minority scores.
- The dropout rate fell from 11 percent to 3 percent.

NSPRA member Nora Carr, chief of staff for the Guilford County (NC) Public Schools, suggests that schools carefully calculate the return on their communication investments:

> It's time we stopped looking at school communications as a luxury that risks the ire of taxpayers and start viewing it as an investment in our children's futures.
>
> In most districts, if you spend $105,000 on better communications, you only need to recruit 15 kindergartners at $7,000 each in per pupil funding to recoup your investment. If those 15 students stay in your district for 11 more years, that initial investment in school marketing will yield more than $1 million.
>
> Effective public relations are purposeful, systematic and measurable. Accountability for results doesn't stop at the school house door. Yet even in today's data-driven schools, many public relations professionals can't get a budget approved for communications research.
>
> This is foolhardy. Investing in public relations without investing in public opinion research to shape the plan, benchmark progress and measure results is like scattering seeds on a windy day during a drought and hoping flowers will grow. School public relations professionals can deliver results, and shouldn't shy away from demonstrating their effectiveness. Yet they must be given the tools they need to get the job done. Responsibility and resources should go hand-in-hand.

Some have even gone so far as to note that PR now stands for Public Responsibility—as schools do need to be responsible to their public through authentic communication programs.

Successful school superintendents see the link between communication accountability and achievement. When NSPRA conducted in-depth interviews with 17 superintendents (all recent national or state "superintendent-of-the-year" award winners) some common observations emerged:

- The need for good communications as an integral ingredient in superintendent success was cited by every superintendent interviewed. Although leadership, vision, and strategic thinking were listed as the most important skills for superintendent success, every superintendent ranked good communications skills as a "very important" component of each of those skills. Several exceeded the top choice for the importance of communications by using terms like "critical," "crucial," or "essential."
- Every superintendent interviewed said good communication is essential to high student achievement. They noted the importance of communicating student achievement goals, requirements and expectations with staff, parents and students; community engagement; the role of communications in effective organizational structure; identifying and addressing problems; celebrating successes; communicating goals and vision; student attendance and many other areas. "Communications is the basis of good organization," said one superintendent. "Effective teaching and learning requires effective communication among staff and between staff and students," said another. Yet another said, "You

cannot separate good communication from anything that your school system does."

- When superintendents were asked in an open-ended question to list three to five of the most important skills to succeed as a superintendent, 14 specifically named communications or community relations. The only item listed more than communications was a combination of communication-driven issues: leadership, vision and the ability to inspire staff. Those who listed leadership and vision went on to argue that good communication is a vital element for success in all of those areas.

With the increasing movement for accountability on all school fronts, it may be time to consider a new title for the public relations functions in schools: Director of Public Accountability.

Successful school communicators deal in public accountability issues for their schools and they engage others to help provide accountability solutions.

School communication leaders should be the "go-to" resource for taxpayers, staff and the media to learn more about their school district's performance in instruction and management. They engage staff and community leaders to understand the complexities of today's schools and involve them in making their schools better and more accountable on all fronts.

Functioning as a Director of Public Accountability builds a sense that, "We are all in this together," instead of, "We are all in this alone." School communication efforts should become the hub for community leaders, parents, and staff to receive factual answers, guidance, and interpretation on most accountability issues. NSPRA suggests six simple steps for making school communication accountable:

1. Hold yourself responsible for communicating with and engaging your community.
2. Recognize communication as an important management function and hold people accountable for results.
3. Develop a strategic communication plan tied to your district's mission, goals, and objectives.
4. Speak with one clear voice on behalf of your students and schools.
5. Establish a culture of effective, two-way communication and engagement with all stakeholders.
6. Demonstrate accountability through effective school governance standards supported by effective communication.

Questions

1. A TV reporter has asked you how school–community relations efforts benefit schools and the community. How would you answer that question—in 30 seconds?
2. A community group is criticizing a recommendation by the superintendent that the district conduct a communications audit as a first step in assessing the district's communication efforts and needs. Prepare a list of five reasons why the audit would be a good investment for the school system and its students. How might the audit help the district strengthen its communications, and what are the ultimate outcomes that better communications could deliver?
3. The superintendent wants to build a communications component into the evaluation of principals and has enlisted your help. What are three areas in which you might evaluate a principal's communications effectiveness?
4. Explain the importance of assessing communication efforts beyond just the dissemination of information.

Readings

Austin, Erica, and Bruce Pinkleton, *Strategic Communication Management: Planning and Managing Effective Communication Programs*. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum, 2006.

Bagin, Don, and Anthony Fulginiti, *Practical Public Relations*. Dubuque, IA: Kendal Hunt, 2006.

Best Practices in Communication Planning and Implementation. San Francisco: International Association of Business Communicators, 2009.

Cutlip, Scott M., Allen H. Center, and Glen M. Broom, *Effective Public Relations*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008.

Guidelines for Setting Measurable Public Relations Objectives: An Update. Gainesville, FL: Institute for Public Relations Commission on Public Relations Measurement and Evaluation, 2009.

Moore, Edward H., *The School PR Research Primer.* Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008.

School Public Relations: Building Confidence in Education. Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2007.

Wilcox, Dennis L., and Glen T. Cameron, *Public Relations Strategies and Tactics,* 9th ed. Boston: Pearson Education, 2008.

Endnote

1. Edward H. Moore, *School PR Research Primer* (Rockville, MD: National School Public Relations Association, 2008), p. 9.
2. Ibid., pp. 31–52.

Index

Page references followed by "f" indicate illustrated figures or photographs; followed by "t" indicates a table.

A
Abilities, 50, 57, 61, 107, 271
Absenteeism, 4
Abuse, 92, 148, 152
  alcohol, 148
  child, 152
  drug, 148
  reporting, 148
  types of, 92, 148, 152
Academic achievement, 158, 200, 301
Academic performance, 159
acceptance, 21, 36, 42-43, 57, 73, 75, 80, 82, 84, 90, 97, 127, 130, 159, 261, 267-268, 270
ACCESS, 10, 20, 29, 61, 70, 99, 149, 153, 157, 159, 186, 226, 249-250, 252-253, 257-259, 262-263, 266, 269, 286, 306
Accessibility, 21, 166, 281
Accountability, 39, 49-50, 55-56, 184, 187, 195, 197, 203, 237, 301-304, 306-308
  assessment for, 301
  collaboration and, 307
  for results, 302-303, 307-308
  history of, 55
Accreditation, 51, 62
Accuracy, 23, 28, 31, 186, 217, 220, 306
Achieve, 17, 20, 31, 45, 54, 62, 82, 90, 93, 116, 124, 161, 269, 294, 306
Achievement, 7, 13, 18-19, 45, 84, 90-93, 97, 101, 103, 114-115, 121, 158, 176, 179, 193, 200, 202, 241, 247, 255, 258, 301, 307
  academic, 103, 114, 158, 200, 255, 258, 301
  and accountability, 301
  in cooperative learning, 7
  tests, 114-115
Achievement standards, 92, 101
ACT, 10, 18, 23, 36, 41-42, 53, 57, 64, 96, 114, 117, 123, 125, 135, 144, 147, 149, 152-153, 159, 164, 170-171, 185, 257, 303
  provisions, 41, 64
actions, 25, 54, 60, 87, 89, 93, 99, 138, 143, 154-156, 162, 191, 199, 289, 303
Activities, 2, 7, 11-13, 19-21, 25, 27, 39, 44-49, 54, 56, 59-60, 62-65, 67, 69, 92, 95, 97, 99, 101, 105, 107, 111-116, 118-121, 123-127, 129-130, 132-133, 135, 138, 141, 145, 159, 170-173, 177, 179-180, 184, 199-200, 211, 225, 237, 241-242, 252, 257-258, 268, 271-273, 279, 281, 283, 285, 290, 294, 301, 303, 305
  follow-up, 123, 141, 225, 285
  initiating, 118
  instructional, 56, 63, 69, 92, 97, 112-113, 115, 118, 120-121, 124, 129, 170, 172, 180, 199, 294
  learning, 7, 44, 54, 92, 101, 107, 111, 113, 118-121, 132, 159, 179-180, 211, 225, 242, 268
  ongoing, 39, 111, 124, 133, 159, 179, 257-258, 279, 294, 301, 303
  planning, 12, 19, 44-46, 48-49, 59, 63, 67, 69, 95, 97, 101, 105, 113, 116, 120, 124-125, 135, 172, 177, 180, 241, 257, 271-272, 285, 294, 301
  purposes of, 7, 13, 19, 121, 141, 173
  space for, 241
  texture, 172
Addition, 3, 19, 31, 42, 58-60, 83, 94, 115, 120-121, 136, 154, 180, 185, 193, 200, 205, 209, 211, 218, 224, 230, 236, 252, 257, 271, 279, 282, 289, 294, 303
  advancement, 180
Additions, 258, 282, 287
Adjectives, 204, 213
Adjustment, 14, 69, 101, 122, 273, 301
Adjustments, 13, 18, 301
Administration, 10-11, 15, 35, 37, 39, 41, 43, 51, 55-56, 58, 62-63, 69, 71, 88-91, 93, 95, 97-100, 104, 108-109, 170, 174, 181, 196, 200, 220, 237, 241, 269, 280, 282, 284-285
  staff relations and, 93
Administrative tasks, 57
Administrators, 1-7, 17, 35-36, 42-43, 47, 50, 53, 56, 58-59, 63-64, 66-68, 78, 87, 90-98, 105-107, 117-118, 122, 124-126, 129-130, 133-137, 144-146, 147, 152, 162, 164-165, 170-171, 173, 175-179, 183-188, 190, 193, 195, 199, 211, 223-224, 229, 237, 240-241, 259-260, 271, 276, 279-280, 283-286, 288-294, 301-303, 306
  educational, 1-4, 7, 17, 35-36, 42-43, 56, 58, 63-64, 66, 87, 91-93, 95, 105-107, 124, 129-130, 134-135, 165, 171, 173, 178-179, 185, 193, 199, 223-224, 241, 279-280, 283, 286, 288, 303, 306
  of schools, 59, 130, 135, 144, 173, 177, 183-184, 186, 223, 284, 289, 294
Adobe Pagemaker, 226
Adolescents, 5, 123
Adults, 19, 108, 111-113, 123, 131-134, 173, 179, 200, 210, 247, 259
Advertisements, 76, 194, 236, 268, 276, 283, 290, 293
Advertising, 51, 61, 78, 180, 188, 232, 241, 247, 276, 284, 291-292
advice, 61, 63, 88, 95, 142-143, 154, 265, 270, 293, 303
Advisory committee, 27, 35-36, 44, 95, 105, 114, 120, 124-125, 136, 145, 173, 180, 280-281, 284-287, 290-291, 293
Advocacy, 13
  outreach, 13
Affect, 22, 50, 54, 85, 117, 135, 187, 206, 280, 283, 288
Affiliation, 129, 159, 163, 179
Age, 18-19, 34, 49, 87, 119, 132-133, 135, 150, 170, 173, 177, 179, 183, 205, 210, 281, 291, 293, 306
Agency, 104, 151, 155, 195
Agendas, 162
Agents, 44, 56, 152, 173, 236, 241, 269, 283, 305
aggressive behavior, 159
Agreement, 4, 40, 79, 81-82, 91, 130, 269
agreements, 117
Aides, 119, 123, 145
AIDS, 70, 120, 141, 216-217
Airtime, 213-214
Alcohol, 148, 159
Alert, 10, 121, 143, 188, 192, 194, 203, 221, 260, 265, 267
Alignments, 18
All-school exhibit, 217
Alternative strategies, 44
Alternatives, 1, 80, 83, 196, 269, 281, 283, 306
Ambiguity, 120, 174
American Association of School Administrators, 3, 211
American Association of School Administrators (AASA), 3
American Education Week, 60, 176-177, 218, 221
American Psychological Association, 94
Analysis, 11, 19, 21, 25-26, 38, 43-44, 64, 86, 97, 257, 271-273, 282, 304
  story, 11, 271
  textual, 25
Anecdotal records, 120
Anger, 117, 159, 162, 169, 189
Angles, 172
animals, 159
Anonymity, 94
Anticipation, 190, 241
anxiety, 82, 116
Apathy, 4, 10, 43, 66
Applicants, 163
Application, 64, 74, 76, 84, 141, 168, 228, 254, 276-277
Applications, 273
Appraisal, 11, 27, 42
Appreciation, 40, 90, 93, 112, 125, 177, 198, 213
Approaches, 6, 55, 79, 94, 148, 177, 179, 195, 211, 225
  brief, 79, 211
Area, 3, 18, 22, 24, 26, 29, 31, 44, 61, 63-64, 66-67, 79-80, 88, 96-98, 145, 150, 153, 155, 157, 174-176, 179-180, 184, 187, 194-195, 197, 209-210, 217, 219-221, 225, 236, 240, 243, 250, 255, 276, 281, 286-287, 289
Arguments, 79, 81, 120, 164, 195, 283
Arizona, 253
Art, 10, 12, 62, 67, 128, 137, 169, 179, 202, 212, 228, 230, 240, 247, 286
  defining, 12
  music, 67, 128, 179, 212
  questions about, 240
  talking about, 286
  Web sites, 247
Articles, 11, 60, 96, 99, 139, 186, 189, 193-194, 196, 200, 202, 227, 229, 257, 283, 289
Artist, 227-228, 230
Arts, 60-61, 115, 178, 217, 220
  standards, 61, 220
Assessing, 39, 63, 303, 308
Assessment, 8, 22, 25, 49, 114, 273, 294, 301-306, 308
  behavioral, 273, 303
  career, 49
  community, 8, 22, 25, 49, 114, 273, 294, 301-303, 305, 308
  decision making, 25
  demand for, 301
  direct, 25, 114, 306
  formal, 8, 302-304
  framework for, 273
  group, 25, 303-305, 308
  HELPING, 304, 306
  history, 305
  informal, 25, 302-304
  methods, 302, 306
  misunderstandings, 22
  monitoring, 301-303
  need for, 114, 301-302
  objective, 305
  objectives and, 302
  observation, 25, 304
  plan for, 8, 49
  planning and, 302, 308
  principles, 49
  problem, 22
  procedures, 25
  service, 49, 114
  stress, 303
  supportive, 25
  technology, 304
Assessments, 302-303
ASSET, 172
Assignments, 55, 62-63, 88, 91-92, 99-100, 102, 125, 168, 285
  extra, 102
Assistance, 36, 65, 151, 153-154, 164-165, 169, 171, 174, 177, 259, 269, 283, 286
  cards, 65
  teams, 151, 153-154, 171
Assistant superintendent, 58, 62, 89, 192, 200
  in charge of communications, 200
Association, 3, 5-6, 8, 12, 14-15, 25, 27, 36-38, 40, 44, 51, 54-56, 61, 70-71, 83, 85-86, 94, 108, 116, 122-124, 126, 128-130, 133-134, 145-146, 151, 154, 160, 163, 177, 181, 194, 200, 211-212, 215, 221-222, 233, 237, 239, 249, 252, 265-266, 273, 284, 286-287,

290-294, 299, 302-303, 306, 308-309
assumptions, 118, 155
Athletic programs, 255
atmosphere, 7, 98, 116, 164, 173
Attachment, 126
Attending, 2, 6, 75, 113, 133, 162, 174, 179-180, 186, 193, 197, 211, 273, 276, 306
Attention, 2, 7, 11, 17, 19, 22-23, 43, 53, 56, 62, 64, 69, 73-75, 78-79, 82-85, 90-92, 94, 103-104, 113, 116, 119, 122, 138, 140, 143, 148, 152-153, 158, 160, 161, 166-170, 176, 180, 189, 194-195, 202, 209-210, 216-217, 219, 225, 229, 231, 287
  and learning, 91
  negative, 11, 82, 85, 138, 167-168, 194
  positive, 7, 11, 82, 85, 90, 116, 143, 167-169, 287
  problems of, 91, 225
  selective, 82, 189, 210
  student, 7, 94, 103, 113, 152-153, 176, 217
  theories, 2
Attitudes, 4, 6, 10-11, 13-14, 18-19, 21, 25-27, 30-31, 33-35, 37, 39-40, 44, 54, 58, 68, 76, 79-83, 86, 88-89, 92-93, 102, 104, 112, 117, 120-121, 124-125, 128, 134-135, 159, 161, 169, 171-172, 235, 268-269, 281, 291
  teacher, 4, 10-11, 27, 44, 83, 92-93, 102, 117, 120, 124, 169, 235, 291
Attraction, 141, 218
Audience, 5, 11, 17, 26-27, 44, 50, 73-75, 78-84, 114, 117, 132, 134, 141, 174, 192-193, 203, 210-212, 214, 216, 218-221, 223-225, 229-230, 235, 237, 250-251, 253, 256, 271-272, 276, 288
  of publications, 223-224, 250
Audio, 60, 215, 252-253, 256, 258, 263-264
  broadcast, 215, 253
  online, 60, 252-253, 258, 263
  streaming, 252-253, 263
  television, 60, 215
Audio files, 263
Audiotape, 214
Ault, 86
Austin, 51, 146, 308
AUTHOR, 183, 306
Authority, 4, 24, 39-40, 44, 47, 58, 62, 66, 87-89, 96, 104, 123, 139, 236
  competent, 104
  legal, 104, 123
Authors, 13, 216, 227
Availability, 34, 44, 82, 98, 123, 175, 193, 209, 221, 236, 250, 267
Average, 115, 122, 166-167, 185, 194, 203, 224, 288-289, 307
Averages, 114, 276
Avoiding, 33, 137, 142, 287
Awards, 114-115, 199-200, 217, 223, 225, 237, 253-255
Awareness, 77-78, 83, 87, 171, 267, 281, 303

B

Back, 6, 38, 76, 93, 99-100, 135, 142, 144-145, 152-153, 157, 160, 165, 174, 184-186, 205, 210, 221, 262, 305
Backbone, 66, 124
Background, 11, 18, 24, 36, 59, 62, 66-67, 75, 79, 81, 92, 100, 114, 140-141, 174, 179, 185, 188-191, 206, 212, 231, 235, 241, 280, 289, 305
Bagin, Don, 1, 3, 8, 9, 14, 17, 39, 51, 53, 70, 73, 86, 87, 98, 108, 111, 113, 147, 161, 163, 181, 183, 209, 223, 225, 249, 267, 279, 281, 301, 308
Balance, 116, 227, 230, 259
Bandwagon effect, 290
Bargaining, 55, 91, 95, 99-100, 143
BASIC, 12, 14, 34, 46, 57, 59, 94, 97, 114, 116, 141, 148, 170, 179, 188, 193, 202, 210, 215, 218-219, 229-230, 232, 239, 251-252, 255, 259, 262, 272, 280, 288, 305
Behavior, 4, 11, 18, 21-22, 27, 45, 61, 81-82, 90, 101, 117, 120-121, 154, 159, 161, 269
  aggressive, 159
  desired, 45, 90
  disruptive, 4, 22
  simple, 21, 82, 120
  social, 11, 18, 21-22, 61, 90, 101, 121, 159
  target, 45
  violent, 159
Behavior changes, 81, 121
Behavioral objectives, 273
Behaviors, 76, 81, 121, 159, 255, 272, 306
  desirable, 81
  verbal, 76
Beliefs, 6, 8, 18, 21, 28, 43, 79-80, 82-83, 120, 144-145
  ability, 120
Belonging, 87, 96-97, 173
Benchmarks, 303
Benefits, 10, 84, 90, 97-98, 108, 124, 126, 178, 206, 228, 241, 247, 249, 265, 279, 299, 306
  of teaching, 247
Best practices, 181, 308
Bias, 28, 136
  experience, 136
Bilingual, 20, 145
Bills, 53, 135, 160, 171, 236, 293
Biography, 192
Birthday, 119
Blair, Julie, 183, 207
Blame, 159, 186, 188
Bleeding, 228
Blending, 94
Blocks, 18, 212, 230, 232
Blogs, 260
Blurbs, 229-230
Board of education, 9, 22, 25, 34-36, 40-42, 44, 53-55, 57, 59-60, 64, 70, 80, 87-90, 93, 99-100, 121, 125, 130, 135-136, 144, 161, 163, 168, 177-178, 200, 237, 280, 284-286, 289-291, 293
  contacts with, 54, 60, 64, 161
  meetings of, 40, 125, 286, 289
  members of, 22, 40-42, 44, 57, 60, 70, 80, 88, 90, 93, 100, 135, 284-285, 293
  policy of, 59, 125
  tasks of, 285
Boards of education, 23, 36, 92-93, 112-113, 124, 136-137, 170
  local, 23, 113, 124, 136, 170
Body language, 164
Body type, 231-232
Bond issue campaigns, 250, 280, 286
Books, 11, 14, 20, 23, 76, 82, 98, 119-120, 122-123, 198, 200, 252, 258-259, 303
  assignment, 98, 259
  picture, 23, 76, 120
Boundaries, 252
Boys, 113, 150
Brain, 74
Breakfast, 3, 118
Brilliant, 228
Brochures, 60, 63, 78, 82, 99, 111, 226, 239, 247, 283-284, 289, 291-292, 296, 304
  internal, 99, 226
  teacher-recruitment, 239
Buckley Amendment, 23
Budgeting, 65
  program, 65
Budgets, 28, 35, 64-65, 131-132, 134, 227, 279, 303
  hardware, 227
Buildings, 11, 22, 28, 65, 68, 88, 96, 129, 148-149, 170, 172-173, 177, 200, 218, 225, 281-283, 287, 289
  appearance of, 65, 68, 172, 218
  controversial placement of, 281
Bullying, 159
Bumper stickers, 7, 283, 291-292
Burden, 120, 288, 294
Bus drivers, 68, 92, 98, 104, 108, 163-164, 240
Businesses, 24, 60, 165, 236, 255, 292, 299, 304
Busing, 194
Bylaws, 124

C

Calendars, 242, 250, 252, 255
California, 40, 253, 287
Call-in shows, 289
Cameras, 65
Campaigns, 57, 60, 107, 200, 250-252, 257-258, 267-268, 270-272, 274, 276, 280, 282-284, 286-288, 291-292, 299
  special issue, 267-268, 270, 272, 274, 276
Capacity, 64, 66, 114, 129, 137, 139, 149, 155, 171, 260, 280
Capacity to Communicate, 260
Capitalization, 204
Cards, 20, 30-31, 65, 96, 121-122, 176, 194, 227
Career, 48-50, 103, 131, 135, 195, 197, 200, 205, 280
  education, 49-50, 103, 135, 195, 197, 200, 205, 280
  information, 48-49, 131, 195, 197, 200, 205, 280
Caring, 103, 163, 177, 181, 272
Carrier, 75
Case studies, 260, 277
CAST, 56, 206, 290
Categories, 18, 70, 78, 137, 229, 270
CD-ROMs, 226, 239
Ceilings, 172
Cell phones, 20, 148-149, 155, 306
Census, 19, 23, 131, 134, 282
Centers, 25, 27, 62, 103, 122, 139, 150, 153, 264, 280
  art, 62
  computer, 122
  for learning, 150
  interest centers, 25
Centers for Disease Control, 150
Certification, 3
Chamber of Commerce, 23, 48, 127-128, 131, 141, 221, 236, 284
Change, 9, 12-14, 18, 20, 26-27, 41, 43-44, 59, 76-77, 79-83, 95, 116, 118, 126, 133, 137, 141, 144, 147-148, 171, 175, 192, 203-205, 215, 226-227, 267-272, 281, 283-284, 291, 305-306
  acceptance of, 80, 267-268, 270
  attitude, 59, 77, 79-82, 95, 133, 267-268, 291
  continuing, 13-14, 27, 44, 126
  essential, 12-14, 27, 41, 43, 148, 215, 272, 306
  in schools, 14, 118, 306
  planned, 12-14, 192, 227, 281, 283, 305
  rate of, 270
  resistance to, 80
  science of, 12
  stages of, 79, 267, 281, 283
Change agent, 268-269
Change agents, 269, 283
Changes, 3, 10, 17-18, 25-27, 56, 62, 81-82, 94, 96, 103, 105, 121-122, 135, 145, 160, 173, 188, 199, 205, 220-221, 224, 226, 235, 237, 249-252, 262, 286, 302
  economic, 18, 56, 173
Channels, 17-21, 40, 43-45, 49, 56-57, 59, 64, 75, 83-84, 95, 106, 171, 180, 193, 286, 302
Chaos, 143, 151, 241
Character, 9-11, 13-15, 83, 113, 128-129, 136, 147, 158, 199
Character development, 83, 199
Characters, 260
Charter schools, 10, 271, 306
Charts, 69, 120, 215, 270, 288-290
Chats, 103, 168
Cheating, 205
Checklist, 48-49, 119, 198-199
Checklists, 70-71, 119, 148, 150
Chicago, 15, 202, 277
Child abuse, 152
Child care, 83, 129
Child development, 174
  curriculum, 174
Child growth and development, 101
Children, 2, 4-7, 9-10, 12-13, 19, 23, 33, 53-56, 62, 68, 75, 80, 84, 91-93, 99-100, 102, 104, 107, 111-113, 115, 117-124, 127, 131-133, 135, 138, 143-145, 153-154, 158, 162-165, 168, 170-176, 179-180, 183, 196, 199, 210, 216-217, 237, 241-242, 247, 259-260, 265, 268, 272, 279, 281-282, 284, 287-291, 293, 299, 303, 306-307
  bilingual, 145
  focus on, 6, 158, 176, 241, 279, 287, 299
  low-income, 119
Children with disabilities, 199
Choice, 1-2, 4, 35-36, 73, 77, 83, 186, 212, 267-268, 271, 273, 306-307
  restricted, 35
Circles, 97
Citizen advisory committees, 124
Citizenship, 54, 114, 158, 179, 199
Civic groups, 56, 60, 128, 130, 177, 198, 221, 299
Clarifying, 103
Clarity, 149, 232, 253
Class enrollments, 168
Class size, 27, 67, 294
Classification, 19, 123, 128
Classroom, 3-4, 20, 65-67, 92-93, 98, 100-101, 103-107, 116-119, 121, 123, 136, 138-139, 141, 144, 150, 174, 176-177, 180, 199,

210-211, 217, 220, 225, 266, 280, 282, 306
arrangements, 92
conference, 3, 118, 136, 139
displays, 176-177, 217
language in, 20
visitors, 4, 20, 67, 118, 174, 176, 217
Classroom behavior, 4
Classrooms, 119, 153, 172, 174, 176, 211, 266, 280, 289
arrangement of, 172
regular, 119, 153, 211
special, 119, 172, 174, 176, 211, 289
Clauses, 203
Cleaning, 104
Cleanup, 175
CLEAR, 4, 6, 19, 36, 40, 54-55, 75, 99, 120, 142, 151, 153, 155-156, 174, 203, 206, 218, 247, 257, 279, 306, 308
Clients, 49, 269
responsibilities, 269
Climate, 7, 13, 40, 85, 87, 93, 140, 158, 162-163, 268, 284-285
Clip art, 230
Clips, 264
Cliques, 22, 91-92, 106, 158, 160
Closure, 159
Clues, 301
Coaches, 113, 115, 225
Codes, 31, 122, 148, 154
Collaboration, 54, 307
students, 54, 307
understanding, 54
Collecting, 17, 29, 44, 60, 201
Collective bargaining, 55, 100
College students, 33
Colleges, 133, 179, 220
color, 75, 172, 213, 219, 226, 228, 231, 235
Colorado, 148, 151, 153
Colors, 83, 165, 172, 216, 227-228, 231, 257
Columbine High School, 148, 151-153
Com, 108-109, 149, 201, 226, 253, 260, 265, 277
Comforting, 158
Commitment, 3-4, 6, 39, 50, 60-61, 78, 135, 177, 212, 226, 272, 280, 287, 294, 303
Committees, 5, 24-27, 42, 44, 47, 56, 64, 69, 88, 93-96, 100, 105-107, 118, 122-125, 141, 177, 218, 282, 285, 292, 294
legislative, 5
rules, 88, 105-106
standing, 88
common goals, 124
Communicable diseases, 152
Communication, 1-3, 6-8, 11-14, 17-20, 25, 36, 38, 39-40, 43, 45-47, 49-51, 54-55, 57, 59-62, 69-71, 73-86, 87, 95-97, 100, 105-106, 111, 116-117, 121-122, 124, 127, 136, 140, 143-146, 147, 149, 151-155, 157-160, 161-163, 165-167, 169, 171, 173, 175, 177, 179-181, 185, 187, 189, 191, 193, 195, 197, 199, 201, 203, 205, 207, 209-210, 212, 214-216, 218-222, 223-228, 230, 232, 234, 236, 238, 240, 242, 244, 246, 249-256, 258-262, 264-266, 267-273, 275-277, 279-280, 282-284, 286, 288, 290-292, 294, 296, 298-299, 301-308
about homework, 100
behavior as, 61
between parents and teachers, 117
boards, 36, 40, 51, 55, 87, 124, 136, 144, 161-163, 185, 282
experiential approach, 294
face-to-face, 43, 76-78, 83-84, 163, 166, 250-251, 265, 267-268
facilitated, 273, 280
good, 2-3, 6, 40, 50, 54, 69-70, 75, 77, 80-82, 84, 87, 96, 100, 105-106, 111, 116-117, 122, 124, 140, 149, 158, 163, 165-167, 169, 175, 195, 197, 201, 205, 212, 214-216, 220, 224-228, 230, 260, 272, 282, 286, 288, 299, 302, 306-308
manual, 40, 51, 85-86, 151, 154, 160
parents, 1-2, 6-7, 11, 13, 18, 20, 25, 43, 45-47, 55, 60, 62, 69, 82-84, 100, 111, 116-117, 121-122, 124, 143, 145-146, 147, 149, 151, 153-155, 157, 159, 163, 165-166, 169, 173, 175, 177, 181, 193, 220-221, 224, 226, 236, 240, 242, 252-253, 255-256, 258-259, 261-262, 265, 271-273, 279-280, 282-283, 286, 288, 290-292, 294, 299, 303, 306-308
selection of, 19-20, 25, 97, 136, 269
skills for, 307
styles, 25, 38
total, 39-40, 46, 57, 62, 87, 121, 180, 203, 210, 223-224, 240, 251, 276
trust and, 6, 54, 85, 162, 267
with stakeholders, 260
Communication channels, 18-19, 49, 57, 83, 302
Communication process, 6, 8, 13, 61, 73-74, 76, 78, 80, 82, 84-86, 95, 124, 145, 277
model with examples of components, 74
presentation of issues in, 80
Communications, 1-3, 6-8, 11-13, 17, 20, 28, 39-40, 42, 46-47, 49, 58-59, 61-62, 69-71, 79-80, 82, 84-85, 87, 93-94, 96-100, 104-105, 107-108, 111, 116-117, 120-122, 127-128, 131, 143-144, 147, 149, 151-155, 158, 180, 191-193, 195, 200-201, 205, 209, 211-212, 217, 221, 223-224, 226, 234, 237, 240, 247, 249-253, 255, 257, 259, 261, 263, 265, 267-268, 270-271, 273-274, 276, 279, 281, 286, 288, 293-298, 301-303, 307-308
e-mail and, 99, 122
Communications director, 200
Community, 1-8, 9-15, 17-30, 32-38, 39-44, 46-51, 53-60, 62-70, 73, 75-76, 81-85, 87-89, 91-93, 95-96, 98-101, 104-108, 111-115, 117-118, 120-137, 139, 141-146, 147-151, 154-156, 158-160, 161-166, 169-173, 175-181, 183, 188-195, 197, 199-201, 205, 209-213, 217-218, 220-221, 223-226, 230, 236-237, 240-242, 247, 249-252, 260-263, 267-271, 273, 275-276, 279, 281-299, 301-303, 305, 307-308
agencies, 12, 17-18, 23, 49, 83, 104, 107, 129, 145, 148-151, 154-155, 158, 171, 236
and principals, 5, 57, 98, 169, 260
collecting information about, 17
decision making in, 23
groups, 2, 4-5, 11, 17-25, 27-29, 33, 37, 41, 48, 53-54, 56-57, 60, 62, 64, 66-69, 83-84, 92-93, 96, 106-107, 111-114, 118, 122-137, 141-145, 148, 150, 158, 160, 162-163, 169, 171-173, 176-180, 193, 197, 199, 210-211, 218, 220-221, 224, 236-237, 241, 252, 260-261, 268, 270, 282, 284-285, 287-289, 293-294, 299, 305, 307
informal power, 270
nonparents in, 6
resources of, 145
schools and, 1, 6-7, 13-14, 20, 23, 25-26, 28, 32, 40, 43, 49, 66, 69, 88, 96, 98, 111, 115, 117, 122-125, 127-128, 131-132, 135, 147-148, 150-151, 156, 163, 170, 180, 192, 205, 224-225, 249, 251, 261, 271, 273, 279, 281, 284, 294, 301, 305, 308
student involvement in, 106-107
surveys, 6, 8, 26-30, 34-37, 93, 105, 131, 180, 199, 247, 252, 276, 282, 284, 287, 292, 303
volunteer programs, 6, 47
Community groups, 18, 20-21, 33, 48, 54, 62, 64, 111, 128, 134-137, 145, 163, 172, 176, 178, 180, 199, 224, 241, 261, 289, 307
publications for, 241
Community involvement, 40, 107, 135, 180
Community relations, 1, 3, 6-8, 9-15, 17, 19, 22, 25-26, 39-43, 46-51, 53-54, 56-60, 62-70, 73, 76, 81-82, 87, 96, 101, 104-105, 111-114, 117-118, 120, 124, 126, 128, 134, 139, 141-143, 146, 147, 149, 151, 160, 161, 163-166, 169-173, 176-180, 183, 188, 200-201, 209, 211-212, 218, 220, 223, 225-226, 241, 249, 267, 279, 281, 294-298, 301-303, 308
director of, 3, 50, 58-60, 62-64, 66-67, 104, 151, 160, 180, 201, 211, 226, 249, 308
Community resources, 12, 172, 199
Community schools, 242
Community services, 58
Community use of school facilities, 56, 177-178, 181, 282
Comparison, 23, 197
Comparisons, 114, 116, 241
Compensation, 94
administrators, 94
Competence, 21, 44, 147, 163, 184
felt, 184
Competencies, 21, 57, 63, 114
Competency, 35, 67, 137, 179
Competing, 2, 76, 89, 189, 204, 229, 231
Competition, 2, 4, 10, 22, 45, 113, 156, 253, 276, 279
Complaints, 41, 55-56, 60, 62-63, 88, 104, 117, 138-142, 169, 280
Complexity, 151, 218
Compliance, 60, 269
Components, 17, 74, 94, 160, 223, 234, 257
Composition, 18, 57, 81, 125
Comprehension, 78
Compulsory attendance, 170
Computer programs, 30
Computers, 5, 20, 34, 65, 155, 227, 263
Concept, 7, 10-12, 21, 27, 46, 56, 58, 82, 91, 97, 106, 117, 126, 158, 186, 219, 228, 230, 233, 272, 277, 294
Concepts, 12-13, 51, 74, 219-220, 228, 241
Conceptualization, 44-45, 59, 74
Concessions, 91
Conclusions, 79, 139, 164, 269
Conferences, 26-27, 44, 60, 62, 65, 69, 94, 98, 119-120, 123, 145, 174, 178, 192, 199-200, 240
parent, 27, 44, 119-120, 123, 145, 174, 199-200, 240
parent-teacher conferences, 174, 240
with students, 27
Confidence, 2-8, 11, 25, 30-31, 35, 40, 43, 55, 66-67, 70, 79, 88, 93, 99, 101-102, 106-107, 126-127, 137, 143, 146, 156, 170, 179, 186-187, 198, 215, 222, 227, 268-270, 285, 287, 293, 309
Confidence level, 30
Confidence levels, 30
Confidentiality, 164
Conflict, 17, 19-20, 22, 53, 63, 104, 106-107, 112, 120, 158, 171, 175, 198
resolution, 22
conflicts, 22-23, 56, 93, 117, 128, 268, 280
Conformity, 24, 80
Confrontation, 96
Confusion, 36, 100, 139, 143, 152, 158, 215, 262, 268, 279, 288
Connections, 21, 24, 252
Connotation, 84-85
Connotations, 11
Consciousness, 11, 228
Consensus building, 22
Consent, 76, 157, 279
Consequence, 21
Consequences, 12, 154
Conservation, 129
Consideration, 9, 18, 24-25, 35, 56, 69, 81, 88, 90, 106, 117-118, 127, 153, 156-159, 163, 165, 176, 189, 192, 195, 199, 201, 218-219, 231-232, 258, 292
Consistency, 41, 102
Consortium for School Networking (CoSN), 265
Constitution, 124, 241
Constructive criticism, 105, 212
constructive relationships, 8, 9, 13, 57
Consultants, 46, 69, 282
consultation, 62, 118, 230
relationships, 62
with parents, 118
Contact, 5, 21, 48, 57, 60, 66-68, 77, 83, 89, 93, 95, 103, 113-114, 116, 119, 124, 126, 129, 131, 134, 140, 145, 154, 157, 161, 163-166, 173, 188, 191, 197, 204-205, 212, 214, 216-217, 223, 239, 255, 259, 290-291, 304
Content, 25, 42, 59-60, 74, 79-82, 121, 143, 162, 166, 197-198, 201, 206, 215, 219-220, 224-225, 237, 240, 250-253, 255-260, 265, 289, 296, 304
knowledge, 42, 60, 224, 296, 304
of school Web sites, 257
Context, 79, 84-85, 115, 183, 255
Contingency, 151
Continuing type of panel, 28
Continuity, 41
Contracts, 24-25, 84
financial, 24-25, 84
Control, 4, 10, 19, 23-24, 91, 95, 122, 130, 141, 149-150, 153, 157, 162-163, 166, 176, 206, 216, 237, 305
Conventions, 21, 51
Convergence, 250, 265
Conversations, 25, 102, 117, 124, 126, 161, 166

beginning, 102
Convictions, 18, 21, 79-80
Cooking, 178-179
cooperation, 12-13, 20, 26, 33, 43, 48, 56, 101, 103, 113-114, 118-119, 124, 128, 133-136, 155, 161, 171-172, 177, 189-190, 199, 210, 212, 216, 236, 239, 283, 293
Cooperative learning, 7
Cooperative relationships, 129
Coordination, 59, 155
Copyright, 1, 9, 17, 39, 53, 55, 73, 87, 111, 113, 147, 161, 163, 183, 209, 223, 225, 241, 249, 267, 277, 279, 281, 301
Corporations, 97
Costs, 20, 29, 35, 56, 58, 65, 75, 131, 141, 193, 203, 210, 219, 227-229, 249, 253, 282-283, 287-288
facilities, 56, 282, 287-288
of printing, 228-229
opportunity, 56, 141, 229, 282
personnel, 20, 29, 56, 58, 210
Counseling, 12, 103, 105, 126, 148, 154, 159
crises, 148
participation, 12
personal, 126, 154
Counselors, 44, 67, 95, 101, 103, 106, 149, 157
crisis, 106, 149, 157
responsibility of, 67
safety of, 157
Courses, 1, 61, 69, 88, 98, 105, 114, 120, 122, 145, 179-180, 193, 220, 223, 247
information about, 61, 145, 180
Courtesy, 68, 121, 163-166, 170, 190-191, 286
Courts, 178, 241
facts, 178
Crafts, 179
Creating, 1, 29, 37, 39, 45, 65, 83, 95, 116-117, 122, 128, 133, 161, 164, 190, 255, 257, 260, 269, 276
Creativity, 95, 148, 217
models, 95
potential for, 148
Credibility, 13, 34, 50, 79, 85, 105, 125, 127, 147, 162-164, 186, 196, 206, 214-215, 241, 261, 268-269, 280-281
Credit, 4, 126, 204
Crises, 1, 120, 125, 147-148, 150-152, 160, 190, 260-261
Crisis, 1, 85-86, 96, 105-106, 124-125, 143-144, 147-160, 206, 259, 262, 265
Crisis counseling, 148, 154, 159
Crisis intervention, 153
appropriate, 153
Crisis management, 149, 151-152, 154, 158, 160
Criterion, 26, 58, 270
Critical thinking, 277
Criticism, 31, 35, 53, 63, 91-92, 102-103, 105, 111, 121, 137-143, 169, 186-187, 192, 198, 212, 267
answers to, 105, 212
anticipating, 192
facing, 121, 139, 143
meeting, 103, 137, 139-142, 169, 187, 192
types of critics, 137
Crowds, 176
Cues, 74
Cultural, 19, 22, 107, 128, 140, 144-145, 171, 179, 277, 307
Cultural differences, 22
Culture, 54-55, 107, 145, 158, 160, 308
high, 55, 158
Curiosity, 75, 119
Curriculum, 2-3, 10, 18, 20, 55, 84, 96, 99, 107, 118, 120-122, 130, 135, 137, 172, 174, 192-193, 199, 257, 267, 280, 286-287
alignments, 18
challenges to, 3
implementing, 96
kinds of, 174, 192, 257, 287
large group, 130
preschool, 287
trends, 199
Curriculum development, 118
curriculum planning, 122
interests, 122
levels, 122

D
Daily schedule, 225
Daily work, 65
Data, 2, 19, 21-23, 28, 34-35, 37-38, 43-44, 100, 115-116, 184, 188, 195, 205, 225, 237, 252-253, 255, 263, 268, 282, 296, 302-304, 307
validity, 37
Data analysis, 38
Data collection, 37
Data points, 263
Databases, 28, 44, 171, 263
interactive, 263
Dating, 93, 228
Day care, 273
Death, 134, 151-152
Debates, 179, 211
deception, 82
Decision making, 6, 23-25, 54, 56-57, 77-78, 80, 218, 251, 268
Decision-making, 9, 12-13, 24, 106, 124, 141, 307
Declaration of Independence, 3
Decoding, 74, 76
defensiveness, 140, 142
Definition, 4, 7, 9, 11-13, 36, 57, 92-93, 116, 147
Definitions, 12-13
Democracy, 9-10, 101
Demographics, 23, 34, 131, 144, 271, 281
demonstrations, 69, 114, 152, 166, 199-200
Denial, 159
Depth, 191, 195, 210-211, 240, 283, 304-305, 307
Description, 34, 121, 134, 139, 255, 295
Descriptions, 26, 252, 302
Design, 28, 34, 37, 62, 66, 84, 99, 174, 226, 228-231, 237, 247, 253, 255, 257, 265-266, 289
of Web site, 255
Designs, 174, 226-227, 230, 257
Desktop publishing, 227, 232, 247
Development, 7, 9, 14, 19, 37, 41, 54, 57-58, 60-62, 67, 83, 89, 93, 95, 97-98, 101, 103, 116, 118-119, 121, 130, 139, 142, 145, 148-150, 174, 199, 249, 252-253, 255, 261, 265, 269, 271-272, 294, 304-305
checklists for, 148
of preschool children, 119
Development of children, 119
Devices, 29, 44, 68, 70, 82, 103, 152, 158, 199, 217-218, 230, 257, 262
Dialogue, 107
Diet, 171
Differences, 18, 22, 78, 91-92, 94, 101, 129, 159, 229
Diffusion, 76-79, 85-86, 267, 277
Diffusion process, 76-79, 85
Digital publishing, 226
Dignity, 101, 106
Dimensions, 153, 271
Direct instruction, 68
Direct supervision, 150
Directions, 22, 49, 164, 177, 265, 292
Director of community relations, 50, 58, 64, 66-67, 151, 160, 201, 226
title of position, 58
Directors, 57-60, 62, 64, 70, 89, 112, 114, 147, 212, 218, 247, 283
board of, 57, 59-60, 64, 70, 89
executive, 89
Disabilities, 199
Disaster, 149, 152, 287
natural, 149
Disasters, 147-149, 261
dealing with, 148
Discipline, 4, 33, 55, 101-102, 105, 118, 122, 130, 154, 159, 193
isolation, 159
Discipline problems, 4, 101-102, 105, 159
Disclosure, 195
discrimination, 22
Discussion, 27-28, 49, 57-58, 64, 69, 79-80, 88, 90, 97, 99, 102-103, 113, 118-119, 122, 127, 132-133, 137, 142, 162, 174, 177, 179, 185, 190, 192, 211, 214, 252, 268, 283, 285-286, 304
guided, 113, 304
Discussion boards, 185
Discussion groups, 103, 122, 133, 179, 252
Discussions, 69, 97, 120, 158, 166, 171, 237, 260, 279, 289, 292
conflict, 120, 158, 171
issue, 260, 289, 292
Dismissal, 2, 10
Dissatisfaction, 26-27, 90-91, 121, 130
Distracting, 75, 217
Distractions, 75, 140
Distribution, 18-19, 22, 29, 36, 42, 63, 83-84, 122, 154, 209, 221, 226, 229, 235-236, 247, 251-253, 283, 292
Distributions, 251
District schools, 59
distrust, 44, 183, 186, 271, 279
Diversity, 106-107, 135, 144
Division, 41, 64, 86, 91-93
Divorce, 134
Doctrine, 11, 129
Doubt, 11, 79, 112, 195, 224, 231
Drama, 128, 179, 198, 212, 225
Drawing, 73, 125, 218
Dressing, 172
Dropout rates, 20
Drugs, 33, 122, 126, 133-134, 240

E
Ear, 213
Early childhood, 82
Economic groups, 129
Economics, 18, 21, 166
Economy, 129
Editorials, 196-197, 289, 292
Education, 1-8, 9-10, 12-13, 15, 17-18, 21-23, 25-26, 34-36, 39-44, 49-51, 53-57, 59-68, 70-71, 73, 75, 78, 80, 82, 85-86, 87-93, 99-100, 103, 107-108, 111-114, 117-122, 124-126, 128-130, 132, 134-138, 140-141, 143-146, 147, 150-152, 156, 158-160, 161, 163, 165, 168, 170-171, 173-174, 176-181, 183-185, 189, 195-197, 199-200, 205, 207, 209-211, 215, 217-218, 220-222, 223-225, 237, 239-241, 249, 252, 265-266, 267-268, 271, 276, 279-286, 288-291, 293-294, 301, 303, 306, 309
achievement standards, 92
at home, 7, 117, 165, 170
civic, 25, 56, 60, 107, 112, 128-130, 171, 177, 179, 221
for teachers, 117, 174, 177, 291, 306
global, 265
records, 9, 23, 44, 117, 120, 159, 171
right to, 2, 9, 23, 61-62, 89, 99, 170, 178, 184, 189, 197, 241
supports, 54, 66, 158, 171
Education policy, 168
Education programs, 60, 132, 179
requirements, 60
Education Week, 60, 176-177, 207, 218, 221
Educational administration, 11
Educational attainment, 19
Educational Change, 12
Educational goals, 26, 93
Educational objectives, 9, 115
Educational opportunity, 56
Educational planning, 12, 135
Educators, 2-7, 18, 22, 27, 33, 37, 46, 50, 84, 86, 90, 97, 100, 105, 111, 116, 118, 124, 126-127, 133, 135, 137-139, 141-142, 150, 166, 183-188, 190, 195-198, 200, 203-205, 207, 210, 217, 219, 224, 228-232, 239, 260-261, 269-270, 280-282, 285-288, 306
mentoring, 133
Effective teaching, 307
Effectiveness, 18, 24, 36, 42, 50, 55, 63, 66, 68, 74, 81, 88, 95-96, 105, 141, 161, 169, 212, 219, 223, 249, 253, 257, 262, 296, 302, 304, 306-308
Efficiency, 69, 96, 98, 249, 302
Effort, 6-7, 39, 43-44, 48, 53, 56, 66, 74-76, 96, 101, 119, 136, 141, 176, 187, 193, 217-218, 220, 223, 236-237, 239, 252, 281, 284, 286, 288, 293, 302-303
Ego, 81, 227, 289
Electronic communication, 266
Electronic media, 213, 253
Electronic newsletters, 260
Electronic surveying, 36
Elementary grades, 112, 217
Elementary school, 121
Elementary schools, 98, 119, 249
Eligibility, 113
E-mail, 20, 29, 36-37, 47, 73, 75, 99, 122, 165-166, 181, 185, 201, 249, 257-259, 261-263, 265, 276, 304
Email, 20

Embarrassment, 184, 191, 283
Emergencies, 151, 175
Emotion, 100, 140
Emotions, 11, 106, 137, 143, 197
empathy, 90, 269
Employers, 114, 132, 273, 304
Employment, 19, 22, 58, 61, 66, 93, 104, 114, 172, 255
Encoding, 74, 76
Encouragement, 158, 177
Encyclopedias, 23, 170
End Note, 160, 181, 309
Energy, 98
e-newsletters, 122, 185, 249-250, 252-253, 260-262, 265-266, 306
  Web-based, 252, 261
Engagement, 22, 55, 151, 257, 307-308
English, 3, 60, 75, 85, 115, 136, 145, 193-194, 201, 213, 220, 244, 250, 257
  Middle, 85
  Modern, 220
Engstrom, Yvonne, 15
Enlightened critics, 138, 140
Enrichment, 118, 136
Enrollment, 58-59, 156, 185, 188, 196, 198, 249, 271, 273, 276, 281-282, 289, 291, 303, 305
Enthusiasm, 34-35, 216, 283
Environment, 7, 11, 94, 97, 105, 107, 151, 271, 302-303, 307
  home, 7, 307
Equipment, 25, 44, 55, 65, 97, 123, 174, 177-179, 199, 212, 218, 227
Error, 30-31, 189, 198, 202, 224, 230, 271
Errors, 23, 36, 140, 155, 187-190, 227
  correcting, 189
ESL (English as a second language), 250
Estimation, 104
Ethics, 61
  integrity, 61
  standards for educational public relations professionals, 61
Ethnic, 18-19, 106-107, 144-145, 171
Ethnic group, 19, 107
Ethnic groups, 107, 144-145
ethnocentrism, 144
Evaluation, 8, 12, 27, 46, 48, 59, 63, 77, 102, 118, 137, 144, 180, 195, 237, 247, 255, 267-268, 272-273, 294, 296, 302-303, 305, 307-309
  process for, 273
Evaluations, 141, 195, 253, 302
Events, 8, 47, 57, 59-60, 64-65, 78, 112-113, 119, 126, 133, 141, 147-149, 151, 153, 157-158, 160, 161, 163, 165, 167, 169, 171, 173, 175, 177-179, 181, 198, 200, 205, 210, 212, 214, 221, 226, 242-243, 252, 256, 262-265
Evidence, 84, 158, 171, 173, 247, 306
Exceptions, 130, 138, 141
Excursions, 199
Executive director, 3, 55, 146, 151, 160, 306
Exercise, 9, 21, 23, 87, 114, 136, 166
Exercises, 88, 102, 112, 114, 200, 221
Exhibits, 114, 177-178, 199-200, 209, 211, 213, 215, 217-219, 221
  in community, 199
  in-school, 217
  publicizing, 217
Expectancy, 129
Expectations, 4, 17, 43, 306-307
  classroom behavior, 4
Experience, 2, 20, 27, 36, 41, 44, 57-58, 61-62, 75-77, 80, 83, 101, 103, 106, 108, 113, 135-136, 151, 167, 169, 172, 197, 204-205, 220, 283, 304-305
experiences, 4, 10-11, 66, 68-69, 75, 79, 101, 113-114, 117, 124, 132, 135, 173, 179, 241, 247, 257, 260, 303
  in school, 4, 69, 114, 117, 124, 132, 260
Expert, 10, 36, 195, 231, 271
Experts, 6, 36, 44, 82, 100, 143, 149, 151, 212, 232, 237, 287
Explanation, 95, 102, 139-140, 195-196, 282
Extensions, 200
External communication, 46-47, 87, 136, 155, 302
Extracurricular activities, 27, 92, 105, 113, 119-120, 123, 130
Eye contact, 216
eyes, 100, 216, 230

F

FACES, 53, 197, 280, 305
Face-to-face communication, 84, 250, 267-268
Facets, 57, 63, 206
facial expression, 76
Facilitating, 56, 73, 106
Facilities, 41, 44, 49, 56, 60, 104, 106, 119, 122, 136, 150, 165, 172-174, 177-178, 181, 200, 214, 240, 255, 265, 281-282, 284, 287-288, 291
  community use of, 56, 177-178, 181, 200, 282, 288
Factors, 17, 19, 59, 74, 77, 90-91, 102, 125, 137, 166, 247, 280-281
Facts, 10, 35, 44, 57, 88, 93, 98, 100, 104, 114, 120, 125, 128, 138-140, 142-143, 148, 153, 156, 164, 166, 169-170, 174-175, 178, 184, 187, 190-191, 193, 196, 202-203, 205, 219-220, 225, 237, 239, 250, 259, 270-271, 282-283, 285, 288, 293
Failure, 9, 12, 24, 63, 81, 89, 101, 116, 130-131, 167
Fairness, 100, 102, 192
Falls, 35, 66-67
FAME, 138
Families, 20, 29, 116, 134, 158, 271, 273, 307
  needs, 134, 273, 307
  step, 271, 273
Family, 21, 23-24, 45, 54, 56, 80, 83, 94, 105, 117-118, 126, 129, 139, 145, 149, 159, 164, 170-171, 174, 179, 241, 307
Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), 171
Family members, 159
Family structure, 145
Farsi, 257-258
Fathers, 124, 242
Fax, 155
Fax machines, 155
fear, 81-82, 102, 106, 153, 169, 188, 271, 287
Fear-arousal messages, 81-82
Feature story, 83, 189, 196-197
Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), 151
Feedback, 6, 14, 28, 47-48, 74, 76, 84, 94, 97, 105-106, 173-174, 176, 180, 193-194, 237, 252-253, 257, 260, 265, 276, 286, 292, 296, 298, 304-305
  general, 14, 84, 97, 180, 194, 237, 252, 260, 292, 304
  immediate, 47, 286
  seeking, 106, 194
feelings, 10, 21-22, 27, 58, 73-74, 76, 84, 91, 102, 104-105, 126, 128, 131, 137-138, 140, 142, 144, 154, 158-159, 287, 292
Fees, 178, 216
Fidelity, 85
Field trips, 113, 119, 123, 172, 199
Fifth grade, 4, 235
Fighting, 5, 33, 159, 186
File, 9, 48, 51, 128, 141, 154-155, 189, 226, 260
Files, 15, 20, 23, 44, 48, 55, 155, 226, 252, 263
Film, 60, 164, 214, 216, 219-220, 235, 289
Financial report, 292
Findings, 18-19, 21, 28, 31, 36, 42-43, 57, 76, 79-84, 106, 171, 225, 267-268, 280, 292, 306
  presentation of, 80
fire, 20, 148-149, 152, 171, 184, 227
First aid, 153
First Amendment, 241
Flashbacks, 160
Flexibility, 251
Floor plans, 83, 289
Flooring, 191
Floors, 104, 172
Flow, 10, 40, 61, 64, 76, 89, 106, 169, 176, 190, 212, 257, 306
FOCUS, 6, 10, 18, 27, 43, 48, 50, 55, 90, 97, 116, 140-141, 147, 152, 156, 158, 160, 176, 195, 202, 214, 219-220, 225, 235, 237, 240-241, 250, 257, 279, 287, 294, 299, 302, 304-305
fog, 224, 302
Food, 56, 66, 68, 104, 145, 149, 154, 164-165, 173, 202, 294
Food preparation, 104
Food services, 56, 202
Forecasting, 26
Foreign languages, 179
Forgetting, 224
Forms, 20, 28, 77-78, 92, 155, 161, 165, 174, 180, 201, 204-205, 227, 240, 247, 252-253, 260, 262, 268
Formula, 224
Formulas, 22, 224
Forum, 35-36, 154, 162, 211, 241, 286
Forward, 81, 156, 159, 161, 205, 302
Foundations, 271
Franchises, 24
Fraternal groups, 129
Freedom, 91, 107, 120, 144, 170-171, 185, 206
Freedom of expression, 120
Freedom of Information Act, 170-171, 185
Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), 170, 185
Frequency, 10, 253
friction, 91-92, 178, 190
Friendliness, 93, 103, 123
Fringe benefits, 84
Frustration, 10, 106, 175
Fulginiti, Anthony, 8, 14, 44, 51, 70, 86, 108, 181, 308
Functioning, 10-11, 97-98, 101, 169, 175, 183, 255, 294, 308
Functions, 39, 56-57, 59, 61, 63, 88, 90, 123, 126, 131, 151, 158, 178, 198, 214, 241, 268, 271, 308
Funding, 33, 96, 134, 206, 251, 271, 276, 294, 307
Furniture, 94, 100, 144, 172, 178

G

Gallup poll, 4, 32-33, 37, 268
  of Public Attitudes Toward Education, 268
Games, 123, 133, 178, 211, 263
  organized, 123
Gangs, 159
Gender, 18
Generalizations, 77
Georgia, 228, 258
Girls, 113
goal setting, 131, 135
Goals, 5-6, 13, 21, 26, 39-40, 42-50, 54-55, 68, 84, 90-91, 93-94, 96-97, 124, 135-136, 139-140, 163, 223, 250, 269, 272-273, 294, 302, 307-308
  attaining, 49
  chart, 45
  modifying, 26, 43
  well-formed, 136
Goals and objectives, 47-48, 302
Goal-setting, 136
Golden Rule, 206
Google, 260
Governance, 15, 51, 55, 71, 109, 308
Government, 9, 22, 105, 107, 128-129, 171, 184-185, 191, 198, 202-203, 218, 224, 279-280, 294
  legislature, 9
  relations, 9, 22, 105, 107, 128-129, 171, 191, 198, 218, 279, 294
Grades, 2, 5, 33, 102, 105, 112, 115, 174-175, 217, 273, 276, 282, 291
Grades and grading, 102
Grading, 102, 172
  assigning, 102
Grading systems, 102
Grammar, 217
Grandparenting, 134
Grants, 105
Grapevine, 289
Graphics, 59, 228
Graphs, 69, 288-289
Grass, 172
Grief, 227
  delayed, 227
  time and, 227
Group discussion, 80, 142
Group membership, 172
Group theory, 277
Grouping, 124, 167
  heterogeneous grouping, 167
Groups, 2, 4-5, 11, 17-25, 27-29, 33, 37, 41, 48, 53-54, 56-57, 60, 62, 64, 66-69, 80, 83-84, 92-93, 96, 103, 106-107, 111-114, 118, 122-138, 141-145, 148, 150, 152, 158, 160, 162-163, 169, 171-173, 176-180, 193, 197-199, 203, 210-211, 218, 220-221, 224, 229, 236-237, 239, 241, 252, 256-257, 260-261, 268, 270, 280, 282, 284-285, 287-289, 293-294, 299, 304-307
Groups:, 304
Growth, 23, 48, 56, 61, 69, 89-90, 93, 101, 103, 117, 119, 121, 188, 261, 281, 305
Guidance, 4, 35, 43, 67, 75, 97, 102-103, 130, 149, 170, 185, 193, 195, 199-201, 204, 303, 306, 308

respect, 43, 97, 102, 170
Guidance counselors, 67, 103
Guidelines, 81, 97, 108, 136, 143, 146, 148-149, 155-157, 164, 178, 184, 213, 217, 227, 241, 259, 267, 309
Guides, 49, 174, 176
Guilford Press, 146
Guilt, 140

H
Handbooks, 70, 121, 226, 255, 262
Handling, 28, 34, 55-56, 60, 64, 84-85, 88, 101, 104, 117, 131, 143, 149, 151, 156, 159, 164-165, 169, 171, 181, 200
Handouts, 48
Handwriting, 232
Hard news, 197, 202-203
Hardware, 158, 219, 227
Harlow, 12
Harlow, Rex, 12
Hawaii, 96
Head lice, 148
Health, 1-2, 18, 54, 83, 103, 107, 116, 118-120, 122, 128-129, 147-149, 151, 155-157, 159, 200, 212, 217, 276, 279
Health care, 2, 279
Health issues, 120, 147-148
Health problems, 83
heart, 106, 109, 158, 164
Helping, 10, 57, 83, 97, 101, 117-118, 121-122, 131, 154, 158, 185, 200, 205-206, 217, 228, 239-240, 257, 265-266, 304, 306
Herzberg, 91, 109
Hierarchy, 90
High schools, 98, 106, 113, 123, 168, 247
High-stakes tests, 115
Hints, 99
History, 11, 14, 17, 44, 55, 107, 141, 151, 159, 171, 200, 280, 305
Home, 1, 3, 7, 20, 23, 28, 33, 37, 40, 67-69, 91, 100, 115, 117, 119, 121-124, 131, 140, 145-146, 148, 161, 165, 170, 188, 193, 204, 210, 224, 235-236, 239-240, 242, 247, 252, 255-256, 288, 306-307
Home visits, 69, 140
Homework, 82, 100, 102, 119, 122, 195, 199, 239, 258
  sharing, 195
Homework assignments, 100, 102
Honesty, 4, 232
Hope, 78, 137, 139, 168, 287
Hostile critics, 137, 139-140
House organs, 11
Human relations, 73, 90, 107
Human resources, 18, 49, 109, 149, 255, 301
Humor, 85
Hunt, Todd, 15
Hurricanes, 148
Hypertext, 247

I
IDEAL, 5, 162, 213, 287
Ideas, 2-3, 5, 7, 9-10, 12-13, 18-19, 21, 41-42, 44, 47, 54-55, 57-58, 64, 66, 69, 73-74, 76-77, 79, 83, 86, 87, 91, 95-97, 105-106, 108, 111, 126-127, 133, 136, 155, 157, 161, 166-168, 170, 175-177, 180, 183, 188, 197-198, 206, 212-213, 217-220, 223, 225, 229-230, 240, 255, 257, 267-268, 270, 280, 304
  acceptance of new, 267
  from research, 223
  sequence of, 42
identity, 271
ignorance, 43, 107, 170
Illiteracy, 179
Illness, 104
Illustration, 231
Illustrations, 84, 141, 219, 231, 257
Imagery, 213
Imagination, 92, 197, 218
Immediacy, 209, 251
Immigrant students, 145
impersonal relationships, 101
Implementation, 43, 77, 97, 235, 272-273, 302, 308
Importance, 1, 3-7, 11, 24, 40, 44, 50, 57, 61, 67, 70, 73, 87, 90-91, 95-97, 99, 102, 106, 111, 115-117, 124, 143-144, 160, 163-164, 169, 171-173, 177, 183, 189, 194-196, 203, 206, 214, 227, 230-231, 265, 268, 270, 276, 280, 302, 307-308
Impropriety, 147
Improvement circles, 97
Inclusion, 23, 137, 196, 237, 241
Income, 22, 119, 124, 132, 173
Inconsistencies, 174
Indiana, 205
Indications, 22, 131
Individual differences, 78, 101
Individual needs, 135, 213
Industry, 10, 32, 48, 55, 96, 114, 172, 177, 227
Inflation, 288
Influence, 2, 9-11, 17-21, 24-25, 50, 56-57, 62-63, 68, 77, 80-83, 86, 88, 92, 104, 106, 108, 112, 118, 132, 138-139, 161, 165, 179, 253, 258, 269, 272, 279, 285, 305
Influenza, 148
Information, 2-5, 10-14, 17-26, 28-29, 32, 34-35, 38, 39-40, 42-45, 47-49, 57-62, 64-66, 68-70, 73-74, 76-83, 86, 89, 98-100, 105-106, 108, 114, 117, 119, 121-124, 126-127, 129-131, 134, 136, 138-139, 141, 143-145, 147-149, 153-156, 158, 162-164, 166, 169-171, 174-176, 178, 180, 183-193, 195-198, 200-207, 209-212, 215, 217-218, 220, 223-230, 232, 235-237, 239-242, 249-253, 255-263, 265-266, 267-270, 273, 275-276, 280-292, 294, 296, 301-306, 308
  destruction of, 240
  policies, 4, 10-11, 13, 17-18, 20-21, 24-26, 39-40, 42-44, 48, 57-58, 62, 80, 89, 98, 105, 117, 119, 122, 139, 154, 163, 169, 174, 178, 210, 223-224, 242, 252-253, 255, 259-260, 262, 306
Information dissemination, 5
Initiative, 2, 57, 63, 92, 95, 119, 130, 272, 307
Innovation, 76-77, 83, 185, 192, 195, 268-271
  introduction of, 195, 269
Inquiry, 19, 166, 239
Inquisitiveness, 103
In-school exhibits, 217
In-service training, 65, 68-69
Instruction, 18, 57, 68, 80, 83-84, 88-89, 91-93, 112, 118, 166, 172, 195, 210, 279-280, 308
  accountable, 308
  adequate, 68
  and gender, 18
  balanced, 57
  indirect, 80
  individualized, 280
  plan of, 280
Instructional procedures, 118
Instructional programs, 120
Insurance, 25, 97, 178
  employee, 97
Integration, 216
Integrity, 54, 61, 81, 93, 143
intelligence, 24, 82, 104, 140
Intensity, 10-11, 27, 169
Interaction, 22, 41, 102, 124, 180, 206, 294
Interactive databases, 263
Intercultural Development Research Association, 145
Interest centers, 25
Interest groups, 2, 20, 22, 27, 84, 118, 125, 137, 284
Interest rates, 84
Interference, 118
Intergenerational public relations, 132
Internal publications, 44, 70, 99, 108, 223-224
  Web sites, and e-mail, 99
International Association of Business Communicators, 265, 308
International Society for Technology in Education, 265
Internet, 28-29, 36, 38, 83, 108-109, 122, 149, 170, 185, 226, 250, 252, 265-266
  conduct, 36, 83
Internet access, 29, 250, 252, 266
Internship programs, 114
Interpersonal relations, 91
Interpretation, 11, 15, 43-44, 74, 181, 308
Interpreters, 92, 224
Interpreting, 13, 39, 62, 75, 104, 120, 128, 134-135, 201, 217
Intervention, 9, 153
Interviewing, 33-34, 69, 211
Interviews, 23, 27-28, 32-33, 35-36, 140, 157, 172, 199-200, 210, 214, 237, 287, 304-307
  advantages and limitations of, 28
  initial, 27, 307
Intranets, 252
Introduction, 34, 38, 102, 122, 195, 266, 269
Invitations, 41, 112, 118, 123, 126, 132, 141, 175, 276
Issues, 1, 4, 8, 10, 12, 20, 22, 24, 28, 31, 44-45, 49-50, 56, 63, 80, 88, 95, 100, 107, 117, 120, 124, 129-132, 141-144, 147-148, 154, 158, 173, 179, 183, 185, 187, 192-193, 197, 205-206, 212, 221, 224, 226, 240-241, 250-253, 257, 260, 279-283, 285, 287, 289, 291, 293-297, 299, 302-306, 308
  controversial, 120, 187, 192, 241, 281
Items, 18, 22-24, 65, 93, 97, 100, 103, 118-119, 122, 148, 162, 179-180, 191, 198, 215, 219, 226, 228, 253, 255, 261, 263, 272, 280

J
Japan, 97
Jargon, 5, 99, 120, 141, 166, 174, 185-186, 203, 224
Job descriptions, 302
Job satisfaction, 90
Job security, 93
Joint, 119, 125
Journals, 11
Judges, 53, 123
Judging, 253
Judgment, 27, 50, 67, 78, 80, 105, 112, 126, 136, 140, 165, 188, 227, 231, 270
judgments, 11, 21, 100, 102, 204, 257, 304
Junior high schools, 168
Justice, 107, 169
juvenile delinquency, 130

K
Kansas, 211, 244
Kentucky, 153
Keyboard, 187
Keywords, 260
Kindergarten, 101, 197, 239, 276
Kindergartens, 82
Knights of Columbus, 129
Knowledge, 2, 7, 10, 13, 17, 24, 26, 42, 44, 57, 60-61, 63, 68, 75, 77, 84, 101, 112, 117-118, 120, 123, 125, 161, 163-164, 169, 171-172, 184, 187, 196, 218, 224, 230, 241, 268, 270-271, 294, 296, 304
  feelings and, 84
  of community, 17, 24, 57, 60, 63, 101, 161, 163, 294
  prior, 10
  professional growth, 61
  topic, 120, 187

L
Labels, 18
Language, 10, 20, 32, 41, 73-75, 99, 104, 115, 117, 120, 145, 164, 167, 174, 186, 189, 193-194, 203, 213, 215, 217-219, 225, 247, 250, 260, 271, 288, 307
  body, 74, 164, 203
  clear, 75, 99, 120, 174, 203, 218, 247
  difference, 32
  informative, 218
  production, 213, 215, 219
  written, 41, 73, 75, 99, 164, 189, 193-194, 203, 213, 219, 225, 288
Language arts, 115, 217
Languages, 67, 136, 145, 179, 193, 257
Large group, 130
Laser printers, 242
Law, 9-10, 42, 88, 114, 129, 144, 148-149, 153-157, 159, 161, 184-185, 240, 284, 304
  case, 114, 184
Leaders, 1-6, 12, 14, 17, 21-25, 37, 44, 48, 50-51, 56, 61, 64, 70, 97, 105, 108, 116, 121, 126-128, 132, 141-143, 147-148, 151, 153-154, 164, 171, 177, 179, 181, 197, 255, 260, 267, 271-273, 276, 283-284, 286, 290, 292-294, 301, 303, 306-308
  opinion, 2, 6, 14, 17, 21-22, 25, 37, 105, 126-127, 141-142, 164, 179, 197, 307
Leadership, 2-3, 14, 18, 21, 24-25, 38, 41, 43, 49-50, 56-57, 60, 62-63, 79, 88-89, 91, 93, 109, 122, 124-125, 143, 149, 158, 171-172, 177, 179, 187, 200, 241, 268, 270, 283, 305, 307-308
  and management, 49, 89, 308
  and power, 21, 25, 56, 89
  and vision, 89, 307-308
  credibility and, 79

management and, 89
relationship, 14, 25, 50, 56, 88, 283
Leading questions, 32
Leads, 19, 22, 48, 79, 91, 118, 130, 148, 190, 194, 198, 202-203, 223, 271
Learners, 101
Learning, 4-5, 7, 36, 44, 54, 77, 91-92, 101, 103, 107-108, 111, 113, 118-121, 132, 144, 150-151, 159, 174, 179-180, 196, 211, 224-225, 235, 242, 247, 268, 280, 287, 307
attitude toward, 77, 101, 103, 120, 268
events, 113, 119, 151, 179, 242
mastery, 91, 121
scenarios, 151
strengths and weaknesses, 103, 196, 211
to learn, 7, 107, 180, 268, 280
Learning activities, 92, 118, 242
Learning environment, 151
Learning opportunities, 132
Learning process, 101, 119, 268
Learning stations, 5, 224
Lecture, 83, 119
Legal counsel, 159
Legal issues, 241
Legibility, 230-232
Legislation, 9-10, 60, 206
Legislators, 2, 5
Leisure, 128-129, 131, 177, 179-180
Lesson plans, 98, 122, 252, 258
Letter grades, 102
Letter writing, 167, 203
Letters, 46, 55, 76, 78, 115, 119, 121-122, 126, 132, 144, 149, 152, 154-155, 166, 168-169, 185, 187, 190, 196-198, 232, 276, 285, 287, 289-294
cover, 187, 196
to parents, 55, 115, 119, 121-122, 154-155
to the editor, 115, 190, 196-198, 289
Level, 3, 5, 9, 30, 45, 56, 58, 65, 67, 81, 84, 93, 95, 100, 105-106, 115, 118, 127-128, 133, 149, 152-153, 167, 217-218, 221, 224, 251, 260, 279, 283, 305
Liability, 183, 212
Libel, 241
Libraries, 48, 150, 218, 236, 263
Library, 20, 54, 103, 119, 121, 132, 172, 178, 185, 199
Lifestyles, 18, 307
Lighting, 172, 175, 216
Limitations, 28-29, 84, 101, 157, 190, 213, 304
Limits, 10, 41, 66, 104, 120, 124-125, 153, 169
Lines, 21, 107, 126, 155, 172, 198, 203, 228, 232, 249
LinkedIn, 260, 266
Lions Club, 178
Listening, 6, 33, 37, 83, 87, 107, 140, 142, 169, 209-210
to understand, 87, 107
LISTSERVs, 252, 261-262
Literacy, 177
Literature, 56, 68, 128, 284, 286, 288, 303-305
Lobbying, 2
Local reporters, 147, 184, 189
Local school systems, 1, 147-148
Lockdown, 148
Loss, 6, 19, 24, 149, 152, 165, 268, 289
Lottery, The, 30
Love, 106, 191

M

machines, 29, 155
Magazines, 77-78, 83, 156, 231, 247, 303
Magnitude, 151, 154, 159, 271
maintenance, 57, 62, 64, 68, 92, 95, 98, 104, 162, 164, 172, 175, 200, 288
of learning, 92
Management, 9-10, 12-13, 15, 26, 46-47, 49, 51, 55, 57, 61, 64, 68, 86, 89, 94, 97, 137, 149-152, 154, 158, 160, 186, 253, 260, 308
Management by objectives (MBO), 46
Mandates, 228
Manuals, 32
Maps, 19, 148, 216, 265
Marketing, 7-8, 26, 49, 58, 61, 77-78, 85, 146, 221, 247, 271-273, 276-277, 306-307
market research, 49
plan, 8, 49, 247, 272-273, 307
Marking, 102-104
Mass media, 21, 62, 73-74, 77-78, 85, 119, 130-131, 135, 210, 241, 268, 283
Mastery, 61, 91, 121
Matching, 78
Materials, 19-20, 23, 25, 59-60, 62-64, 69, 98, 121, 123, 136-137, 143, 155, 163, 165, 172, 176-178, 180, 191-193, 195, 199, 206, 210, 215, 217-219, 223, 225-229, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239-241, 243, 245, 247, 249-251, 279, 283, 285-292
complexity of, 218
Materials and equipment, 123, 178
arts, 178
Mathematics, 83, 118, 165, 179, 204
matter, 18, 21-22, 35, 41, 69, 75, 81, 90-91, 96, 107, 115-116, 121, 135, 139-140, 152, 165-166, 169-170, 186, 200, 202, 218-219, 230, 235, 250, 271
Mean, 2, 10, 28, 32, 74, 134, 141, 153, 165, 168, 187, 193, 195, 206, 213, 271, 288
Meaning, 10-11, 13, 19, 29, 56-57, 73-76, 84-85, 114, 157, 163, 251, 288
of words, 75, 84-85
problem of, 11, 75-76
shades of, 13
Meanings, 11, 32, 75, 84-85
Measurement, 26-27, 36, 45, 48, 309
of public opinion, 26-27, 36
of time, 27, 36
terms, 48
Measurements, 43
Measures, 24, 27, 45, 53, 84, 92, 113, 137, 144, 195, 200
Media, 2, 5, 11-12, 17, 20-21, 34, 40, 59-60, 62-64, 69, 73-74, 76-78, 82-85, 99-100, 103, 108, 115-116, 119, 122, 130-131, 135, 143-145, 147-149, 151, 153, 155-158, 160, 163, 167, 171, 176, 183, 188, 200-201, 205-207, 209-210, 212-213, 215, 221-222, 236, 241, 249-250, 253, 259-260, 265-266, 267-268, 273, 281-284, 288, 293, 303-304, 306, 308
action and, 144
advertising, 78, 188, 241, 284
agenda, 60, 69
examination of, 21, 40
graphics, 59
magazines, 77-78, 83, 156, 303
producing, 60, 215, 222, 249
radio, 34, 69, 73, 77-78, 82-83, 99, 115, 149, 153, 156-157, 209-210, 212-213, 215, 221-222, 267, 281, 293
Meetings, 4, 9, 23, 25, 27, 40, 47-48, 55, 57, 60, 65, 68-69, 78, 88, 93, 95, 97, 99, 105-106, 115, 118-120, 122-123, 125, 128-132, 141-142, 150, 154-155, 161-163, 174-175, 180, 186, 190-192, 199, 205, 221, 237, 239, 251, 263, 281, 283, 285-293, 303, 305-306
class, 4, 27, 105, 115, 119, 122, 132, 174, 180, 186, 263
telephone, 4, 23, 47-48, 65, 119, 155, 161, 163, 237, 289, 292-293, 303, 306
Memorization, 204
Memory, 79, 84, 159
Mentoring, 133
Messages, 20, 44-45, 74-76, 80-85, 94, 99, 116, 149, 165-166, 204, 209-210, 217, 219, 221, 229, 241, 253, 255, 257, 261-262, 265, 268-269, 271, 273, 276, 301, 303-304
fear-arousal, 81-82
Michigan, 7, 150, 242
Microcomputers, 220
Microsoft Office, 221
Microsoft Word, 226
Middle school, 27, 288
Migration, 144
Minnesota, 1, 151, 238, 273
Minority groups, 22
Misconceptions, 224
Missouri, 4, 185
Mistrust, 162, 184
Mitigation, 152
Mode, 73
Modeling, 54
Models, 13-14, 54, 78, 95, 160, 218
Modification, 9, 42
Mold, 148
Momentum, 284
Money, 18, 22, 25, 30, 35, 44-45, 53, 59, 64, 68, 89, 94, 96, 100, 115, 131, 152, 157, 172, 178, 184, 191, 196, 198, 203, 209, 214, 223, 225, 227-231, 241, 247, 284, 286, 288, 302
Monitoring, 260, 265, 301-303
progress, 301-302
Monitoring assessments, 303
Monitors, 155, 253
Moral and spiritual values, 129
Moral leadership, 109
motion, 69, 75, 121, 123, 219-220, 292
Motivation, 91, 97-98, 108-109, 139
achievement, 91, 97
states, 108
Motivations, 11, 26
Mouse, 228, 250
Movement, 12, 74, 80, 133, 204, 215-216, 282, 308
Movies, 178, 220
showing, 178, 220
muscles, 216
Music, 67, 112, 128, 132-133, 145, 178-179, 211-212, 214
Music programs, 211, 214
Mutual respect, 90, 174
Myths, 132-133

N

National Association of Broadcasters, 212, 222
If You Want Air Time, 212, 222
National Association of School Psychologists, 154
National Center for Education Statistics, 2, 252
National Education Association, 177
National School Public Relations Association (NSPRA), 12, 55, 151, 154, 252, 303
Nationality, 18-19
Native language, 145
Nature, 9-10, 13-14, 17, 21, 24, 26, 28, 35-36, 39, 41-42, 44, 48-49, 53, 58-59, 62-63, 68-70, 73, 82, 84, 101-103, 112, 116, 120, 125-127, 137-138, 148, 150, 154, 161, 165, 172-173, 177, 198, 202-203, 236, 250, 268-269, 279, 281, 302, 306
NCES, 266
needs, 3, 7, 10-11, 13-14, 17, 25, 27, 39-40, 42-43, 46, 50, 54-55, 58, 62-63, 66-68, 70, 73-74, 80, 82, 84-85, 87-88, 90-91, 94, 103, 107, 109, 117, 124, 128, 131-132, 134-135, 139-141, 156, 163, 171, 177, 179-180, 184, 193, 198-199, 206, 212-214, 224-225, 227, 229, 239, 241, 250-251, 255, 257-260, 265, 269, 272-273, 276, 280-286, 289-293, 307-308
and desires, 11
negative judgment, 112
Negotiations, 99-100, 111, 143-144
communication during, 143
Net, 206, 265
Networking, 151, 260, 265, 303
Networks, 147, 155, 157, 252
Neutrality, 33
New Jersey, 4, 40, 51, 134, 150, 234
New Orleans, 86
New York, 14-15, 38, 51, 86, 146, 148, 151, 201, 207, 222, 247, 253, 277
New York City, 148, 151
News, 2, 4-5, 20, 34, 37, 56-57, 59-64, 69, 78, 82-84, 99, 111, 114-117, 127, 130-131, 143, 147-150, 154-157, 160, 175-176, 180, 183, 185-190, 192-206, 209-215, 221-222, 226, 229-230, 235-236, 241, 252-253, 255, 259-263, 265, 276, 288, 303-304, 306
names in, 150, 259
News releases, 20, 57, 60, 78, 111, 130, 154, 175-176, 185-189, 193, 201-206, 213-215, 288
mechanics of, 204
News stories, 56, 62-64, 69, 82, 150, 180, 183, 190, 198, 201-202
NewsBank, 265
Newsletters, 57, 60, 62, 78, 83, 96, 99, 111, 121-122, 126-127, 131, 176, 185, 193, 227, 232-233, 235-236, 243, 247, 249-250, 252-253, 260-262, 265-266, 267-268, 275-276, 288, 303-304, 306
school district, 60, 96, 99, 131, 236, 243, 249-250, 252-253, 260-262, 266, 267-268, 276, 304
Newspaper articles, 202, 283
Newspapers, 11, 19-20, 25, 34, 55, 76-78, 82-83, 91-92, 115-116, 127, 138, 147, 149, 163, 180, 183-190, 192-198, 201-205, 209, 213, 215, 241-242, 247, 267-268, 276, 288-289, 291-292, 303
Newswire services, 201
Noise, 74
Noninstructional personnel, 66, 92-93, 103

relations with, 66, 92-93, 103
Norm, 281
Norms, 21, 80, 82, 114, 130
North Carolina, 25, 38, 239
Notes, 13, 36, 93, 121-122, 185, 214, 271, 287
Notification, 258, 265
Nouns, 232
Novice, 202, 204
Numbers, 7, 20, 30-31, 36, 38, 46, 48, 83, 116, 127, 138, 144, 148, 150, 155, 166, 168, 179, 188, 193, 204, 210, 217, 223, 226, 230, 241, 255, 259, 262-263, 270, 280-281, 290-291, 294
Nurse, 67, 150, 175
Nutrition, 104, 255

O

Object, 93, 103, 122, 203
Objective, 11, 45, 48, 81, 100, 136, 143, 190, 196, 220, 223, 272, 305
Objectives, 9, 11, 13, 17, 22, 39, 43-49, 54-55, 59, 62-63, 69, 91, 97, 115, 117, 122, 193, 199, 223-225, 272-273, 276, 301-302, 308-309
management by, 46
measurable, 45, 49, 302, 309
Objectivity, 190
Observation, 25, 83, 177, 304
focused, 304
Observations, 64-65, 118, 120, 155, 161, 306-307
occupations, 270
Ohio, 132, 253
Oklahoma, 49, 51, 146
Older adults, 111, 132-134, 173
respect for, 133
school budgets and, 132, 134
special programs for, 173
Omissions, 49
Ongoing assessment, 301
Ongoing process, 255, 294
Online communication, 70, 122, 249-250, 252, 259-260, 265
sources and sites for, 265
Online databases, 263
Online services, 65, 265
Onset, 10
Open-ended questions, 27, 32-34
openness, 116, 159
Opinion research, 26, 28, 32, 307
conferences, 26
forums, 26
key communicator program, 28
panels, 26
public opinion surveys, 28
Opinion surveys, 27-28, 105
Opinions, 5, 10-11, 14, 19, 21, 25-28, 35, 41-43, 54, 68, 76, 79-80, 86, 100, 103, 105, 107, 112, 120, 128, 132, 141-142, 149, 161, 164, 166, 176, 197, 199, 204, 241, 270, 284-285, 287
Opposites, 91
Org, 8, 15, 33, 38, 54-55, 61, 71, 116, 134, 145-146, 154, 185, 221, 253, 265-266, 302
Organization, 3-4, 11-14, 20, 24, 36, 42, 45, 47, 50, 53-54, 61-62, 64, 66, 88-89, 94, 100, 115, 123, 126, 128-130, 138, 145, 147-151, 159, 169-171, 177-178, 185, 199-200, 206, 216, 241, 260, 284-285, 289-293, 302, 306-307
of ideas, 64
Organizational behavior, 21
Organizational communication, 221
Organizations, 3, 12, 14, 17-18, 20-21, 24-25, 28, 35, 37, 46, 49, 61-62, 65, 76, 80, 93, 105, 112-113, 115, 123-124, 128-129, 131-132, 138, 143, 145, 148, 151, 154-155, 158-160, 166, 170-172, 175, 177, 179, 185, 200, 214, 218, 221, 223, 236, 256, 259-261, 265, 270, 273, 281, 283-285, 288, 290-293, 296, 299
change in, 12
Organizing, 130, 171, 284, 291
Orientation, 41, 69, 98, 103, 191, 210, 221
of new employees, 98
videos, 69, 221
Orientation programs, 69, 103
Oskamp, Stuart, 14, 86
Outcomes, 13, 24, 56, 83, 103, 117-118, 179, 276, 303, 308
Outlines, 7, 39, 66, 70, 98, 254
Overlap, 137

P

Page layout, 84
Paragraphs, 202-203
Parent conferences, 120, 145
Parent participation, 117, 122, 199, 224
Parent support groups, 5
Parental consent, 157
Parents, 1-2, 4-7, 9, 11, 13, 18, 20-21, 25-27, 31, 33-35, 41-43, 45-47, 55, 60, 62-69, 82-84, 88, 91-92, 99-102, 104, 108, 111-124, 131, 134-135, 143, 145-146, 147, 149-151, 153-155, 157, 159, 163-166, 168-169, 173-178, 181, 193, 198, 200, 206, 217, 220-221, 224, 226, 235-237, 239-242, 247, 252-253, 255-256, 258-259, 261-263, 265, 271-273, 279-283, 286, 288, 290-294, 299, 303, 306-308
as teacher aides, 123
communication with, 7, 84, 100, 111, 116, 121, 149, 153, 271, 307
consultation with, 118
expectations of, 43
initiating closer contacts with, 118
involvement, 1, 7, 13, 25, 41, 117-118, 122, 135, 220, 237, 281, 294
involvement of, 7, 13, 117-118, 220, 281
irate, 166
written communications with, 11
Parent-teacher conferences, 174, 240
Parking lot, 176
Parking pass, 242
Participants, 25, 27, 113, 133, 193, 211, 215-217, 221, 257, 285, 294, 296, 304
Participation, 12, 19-20, 26, 40, 56, 59-62, 80, 89, 113, 116-117, 120, 122, 125, 136, 171-172, 198-200, 224, 272, 281
Partnerships, 7, 47, 299, 306-307
Passive voice, 204
Patience, 140, 164
Patriotic groups, 129
Patronage, 163
Patterns, 17-19, 57, 159, 216
number, 19, 57, 216
Paying attention, 53
Pencils, 7, 193
Pennsylvania, 2, 55, 240, 243
Perceiving, 79
Perception, 3-4, 10, 59, 74, 79
Perceptions, 2, 11, 57, 70, 74, 94, 147, 271-272, 276
Performance, 57, 61, 66, 91, 112, 114-115, 159, 170, 253, 301-302, 306, 308
Period, 2, 11, 18, 27-29, 42-43, 67, 77, 82-83, 95, 99, 112, 122-123, 125, 159, 174, 217, 228, 230, 267-268, 283, 292, 294, 304
Periodicals, 20
Persistence, 190
Personal experience, 77, 83
Personal relationships, 93, 206, 227
Personality, 22, 82, 89, 101, 103, 114, 197
Personnel, 11, 19-20, 27-29, 36, 43-44, 55-60, 63-64, 66, 68-70, 76, 79, 83, 88-93, 95, 98-99, 103-104, 116, 121-122, 124, 128, 130, 135-137, 142, 144-145, 148-149, 154, 159, 161, 164-165, 169-171, 173, 175-176, 186, 188-189, 191, 197, 200, 210-216, 223, 236, 241, 302
Personnel services, 57, 121-122
Persuasion, 12, 14, 73, 76-78, 80-82, 268
Persuasiveness, 79
Phi Delta Kappa, 4, 8, 33, 37
Phi Delta Kappan, 33, 37, 268
Philadelphia, 109, 146, 215
Philosophy, 40, 42, 49, 63, 89-91, 121, 178, 283
Photographs, 65, 75-76, 216, 218-220, 228, 257, 260, 280, 290
Photography, 219-220, 260
Physical education, 43, 217
Physical health, 118-119
Physical needs, 11
Physicians, 84, 104
Picture, 21, 23, 25, 35, 50, 76, 90, 99, 120-121, 157, 169, 201, 213, 219-220, 235, 287
Pictures, 44, 69, 75, 119, 123, 156-157, 165, 172, 206, 213, 219, 289-290, 292
PILOT, 35, 268
Place names, 156
Placement, 25, 126, 186, 257, 281, 292
Planned relationships, 14
Planning, 12, 19, 22-23, 26, 35, 42-46, 48-51, 57, 59, 63, 67, 69, 73, 85, 87, 95-97, 101, 105-106, 108, 113, 116, 120, 122, 124-125, 131, 135-136, 143-144, 147-149, 151-152, 160, 168, 172, 174-177, 180, 187, 192, 210, 212, 215-216, 218-220, 223-224, 228, 235-236, 241, 250, 255, 257, 270-272, 280, 282, 284-286, 288-289, 293-294, 301-302, 308
inadequate, 147
long-range, 44, 49, 96
of community relations, 50, 57, 63, 67, 101, 143, 151, 160
of questions, 174, 176, 192
weekly, 122, 187, 212, 236, 286, 288-289, 294
written plan, 272
Planning boards, 23
Planning for opinion studies, 35
problem to be studied, 35
plants, 90, 172, 186
Platform, 293, 302
Play, 21, 35, 44, 74, 77, 84, 89, 112-114, 116, 118, 124, 132, 145, 158, 165, 178, 192, 194, 209, 217, 267, 285-287, 289, 291, 293, 301
Plays, 22, 25, 101, 103, 112, 123, 166, 173, 183, 198, 220, 231, 260, 263
Pledge of Allegiance, 171
Plot, 252
Podcasts, 252, 263
Poems, 159
Point of view, 12, 14, 18, 24, 59, 73, 79-80, 130, 138-140, 158
Pointing, 56, 106
Policies, 4, 9-11, 13, 17-18, 20-21, 24-26, 39-40, 42-44, 46, 48, 50, 54, 56-58, 62, 80, 85, 88-89, 91, 98, 103-105, 117-119, 122, 139, 142, 154, 159, 163, 169, 174, 178, 199, 210, 223-224, 242, 252-253, 255, 259-260, 262, 279, 306
Policies and procedures, 13, 39, 105
Policy, 10-12, 23, 33, 37, 39-42, 47, 49-51, 54-57, 59, 63, 89, 91, 93-96, 100, 102, 119-120, 123, 125, 134-135, 139, 142, 145, 149, 158-159, 163, 168, 170-171, 174, 181, 185, 225, 241, 259
distribution of, 63
government, 171, 185
Policy making, 12
Political structure, 18, 22
Population, 3, 10, 18-19, 23, 26, 28-32, 37, 43, 53, 75, 114, 125, 129, 131, 135, 179-180, 270-271, 281, 306
Populations, 29, 37, 146, 255
Portals, 256
Posters, 177, 275-276, 286, 291-292
Potential, 44, 88, 140, 147-148, 151-152, 173, 209, 221, 225, 229, 232, 236, 251, 255, 258, 260, 271, 292-293
Poverty, 107, 115
power, 9, 17-18, 21, 23-26, 37-38, 43, 56, 63, 89, 125, 127, 162-163, 183, 270, 285
in school districts, 163
to influence, 24-25
PowerPoint, 69, 162, 219, 221, 251
PowerPoint presentations, 69, 251
pr reporter, 94, 109
Practice, 1, 12, 14, 34, 36, 38, 39, 45, 56, 59, 62, 77, 86, 109, 120-121, 151, 155, 165, 174, 176, 181, 202, 213, 215, 224
acts, 121
Praise, 93, 104, 190
Predicting, 12, 18, 26
Prefixes, 31
Preparedness, 149, 152, 160
emergency, 149, 152, 160
Preschool, 69, 115, 119, 276, 282, 287, 289, 291, 293, 303
Preschool children, 119, 282, 287, 289
Preschool programs, 303
Preschoolers, 120, 131, 221
Presence, 104, 108, 161, 191, 225, 250, 252
Presentation, 3, 69-70, 75-76, 80-81, 97, 120, 134, 162, 174, 180, 191-192, 201, 209, 211-212, 215-220, 251, 283, 285
Pressure groups, 28, 130, 178
Prestige, 88-89, 141, 170
Pretest, 32
prevention, 152, 158, 160
Pride, 68, 112, 164, 172-173, 176, 220, 293
Principals, 4-5, 10, 57, 59, 62-64, 67, 88-89, 98, 104, 108, 118, 154, 169, 200, 236, 255, 260, 286, 293, 308

morale of, 88
Print, 20, 74-75, 99, 132, 145, 183, 190, 193, 196, 212, 226-228, 231, 237, 241, 247, 250-253, 255, 257, 265-266
Print materials, 250
displaying, 250
Print media, 212
Print Shop, 226
Printed material, 78, 85, 121
Printers, 65, 226-227, 231, 242
laser, 226-227, 242
Printing, 59, 65, 184, 226-229, 231, 235, 240, 247, 251, 289
color in, 231, 235
short-run, 226, 251
Prints, 216, 252
Privacy, 23, 171, 241, 259
Private schools, 19
Probability, 26, 30-32, 75
Problem solving, 12
Problem-solving, 48, 118
Procedures, 13, 25, 36, 39-42, 57-58, 60, 68-69, 76, 85, 89, 98-99, 102-106, 118, 121-122, 143, 148, 151, 153, 159, 162, 164, 169-170, 189, 241, 259, 283
Processing, 28, 34, 226, 235
Producers, 156
Product, 4, 10, 20, 22, 76-77, 169, 284
Productivity, 7, 91, 141
Products, 7, 26, 76, 103, 107, 113-114, 124, 226-227, 251, 277
Professional critics, 138-139
Professional development, 98, 116, 149-150, 252
Professional growth, 61
Professional journals, 11
Professional organizations, 170, 200
Professional skills, 98
Professionals, 18-19, 61, 67-68, 132, 134, 147, 149, 151, 220-221, 260, 303, 307
Profiles, 260
Profits, 13, 24, 96, 104
Program implementation, 302
Program planning, 42, 49, 63
Programming, 59, 133, 147, 210-213, 215, 247, 249-250, 279, 301-303
Programs, 2-4, 6-7, 9, 11-14, 17, 20, 23, 25-26, 28, 30, 37, 39-40, 47, 51, 53, 57, 59-64, 68-69, 76, 82, 84, 87, 89, 97-98, 101, 103, 105-107, 111-116, 119-120, 123-124, 128-129, 131-136, 138-139, 141, 143, 157-158, 170, 172-175, 178-180, 195-196, 199-200, 205, 211-212, 214-215, 220-221, 225, 227, 232, 242, 247, 250, 252, 255-257, 259, 261-263, 269, 271, 273, 279, 282, 286, 289, 291-292, 294, 301-303, 307-308
adjunct, 205
adult education, 59, 64, 179
community and, 20, 25, 40, 62-64, 76, 111-112, 124, 128-129, 131, 135, 172, 178, 195, 211, 307
Project, 32, 35, 44, 64, 80, 103, 136, 177, 185, 212, 214, 217-218, 251, 265, 306-307
Projection, 213, 276, 281-282
Projects, 23-24, 46-47, 56, 60, 64, 92, 107, 112, 122, 125, 171, 180, 187, 197, 199-200, 217, 251, 258, 282, 285, 302, 304
Promotions, 200
Prompts, 184, 192, 267
topics, 184
Proofreading, 188, 217
Propaganda, 14, 20, 24, 81, 136, 143, 220, 224
Property, 9, 20-22, 24, 68, 150, 152, 159-160, 184, 240, 286, 294
Propositions, 136
Props, 215
Protecting, 113, 259
Psychologists, 67, 137, 149, 154
Psychology, 141, 231
Psychology of colors, 231
Public information, 3, 12-14, 58, 163, 189, 192, 200, 205, 207, 249, 266, 273
Public opinion, 9-11, 14, 17, 19-21, 25-28, 36-37, 53, 62-63, 91, 107, 118, 161, 163, 179, 240, 269, 277, 307
school board and, 9
Public opinion measurement, 36
Publications, 19-20, 23, 34, 38, 44, 47, 59, 62, 64-65, 70, 84, 99, 106-108, 120-121, 126, 132, 135, 145, 157, 176, 180, 198, 200, 203, 207, 223-232, 235-237, 239-242, 244, 247, 249-253, 255, 257, 261-262, 289-290, 304, 306
distributing, 99, 235, 240
special event, 65
special-topic, 237, 240
standard design for, 230
Publishing, 86, 96, 109, 126, 151, 163, 223, 226-227, 232, 240, 242, 247, 251, 261
desktop, 227, 232, 247
Punctuation, 204, 213
Punishment, 24, 101-102, 138
Purchasing, 98

Q

Qualifications, 20, 28, 58, 60-61, 67, 92-93, 123, 125, 129, 163
Quality, 1-2, 4, 10-11, 19, 26, 33, 40-42, 56, 73, 83, 97, 108, 112, 116, 135, 144-145, 148-149, 154, 166, 172, 177, 190, 201, 203, 220-221, 229, 231, 235, 251, 257
Quality circles, 97
Quantities, 226
Quantity, 4, 192
Queries, 306
Question lead, 203
Questioning, 139
Questionnaires, 23, 29, 32, 34-36, 141, 221, 237
design of, 34
Questions, 4, 8, 12, 14, 19, 21, 23, 27-28, 32-35, 37, 47, 50, 66, 70, 85, 98-99, 105, 108, 113-114, 117-119, 121-122, 127, 138-139, 142, 145, 152, 154-157, 160, 163-165, 168, 170, 174-176, 181, 184-185, 192-193, 195-197, 199, 202, 205-206, 211-212, 216, 218-219, 221, 231, 240, 247, 257, 265, 268, 272, 276, 283, 287-291, 299, 303-304, 307-308
closed, 32, 221
easy, 8, 21, 165, 176, 181, 206, 231, 240, 257, 272, 288-289, 304
formulating, 35
investigating, 205-206
leading, 32, 50, 114, 291
leads, 19, 118, 202
poor, 99, 142, 165, 212, 288
probing, 193
purposeful, 139, 307
Quote lead, 203
Quotes, 194, 203, 213

R

Race, 10, 18-19, 128
Radio, 19, 26-27, 34, 57, 61, 69, 73, 75, 77-78, 82-83, 99, 111-112, 115, 127, 149, 153, 156-157, 180, 192, 209-217, 219, 221-222, 267, 281, 285, 289-293
working with radio personnel, 214
Random numbers, 30-31, 38
Random selection, 32
Range, 44, 49, 59-60, 96, 99, 148, 152, 154, 170, 199, 210, 225
Rates, 10, 20, 22, 29, 84, 236, 251, 270, 279
Rating scales, 70-71
ratios, 48
Reaching, 11, 19, 29, 44, 75, 96, 133, 156, 221, 284, 307
Readability, 84-85, 224
Readiness, 160
Reading, 32, 43, 62, 70, 75-76, 83-85, 115, 130, 165, 169, 178-179, 186-187, 189, 194, 196-197, 202-204, 212, 224-225, 229, 231-232, 237, 240-241, 247, 257
acceptable, 85, 202
between the lines, 232
choral, 178
difficulties, 187
dominant, 43
extensive, 212
pointed, 169, 189
to students, 202, 224
wide, 179, 232
workshop, 70, 202
Reading instruction, 83
Reading specialists, 85
Readings, 8, 14, 37, 51, 70, 86, 108, 146, 160, 181, 207, 221, 247, 266, 277, 299, 308
Reasonableness, 143
Reasoning, 11
Receiving, 73, 91, 93, 111, 140, 163, 189, 194, 212, 235, 237, 288
Recitation, 91
Recognition, 55, 59, 70, 87, 89-93, 96, 98, 101, 113-115, 121, 138, 177, 187, 189, 225, 236
Recommendations, 27, 42, 88-89, 97, 99, 108, 130, 179, 212, 214, 237, 269, 292
Recording, 44, 133
Records, 9, 23, 44, 117, 120, 123, 131, 149, 159, 169, 171
Recreational activities, 129
Recruitment, 225, 228, 235, 239, 276
Red flags, 152
Reference, 25, 28, 32, 40, 51, 70, 73, 75, 82, 120-121, 185, 189, 204, 277
Referral, 142
Referrals, 164
Reflecting, 226
Reflective practice, 109
Register, 36, 258, 286, 291, 293
Registration, 180, 224, 236, 255, 283, 287, 293, 303
Regulations, 10, 41, 60, 98, 101-105, 121-122, 135, 162, 178, 185
Reinforcement, 77, 83, 268
Rejection, 42, 76, 80, 159, 267, 287, 290
RELATE, 7, 65, 91, 107, 128, 145, 194, 230, 303
Relationship, 5, 14, 25, 40, 50, 55-56, 67, 73, 88, 90, 101, 117, 133, 135, 141, 174, 184, 186, 188-192, 195, 197, 206, 213-214, 230, 239, 269, 276, 280-281, 283, 289, 301
benefit, 189-190
Relationships, 6-8, 9, 12-14, 24-26, 43, 54-55, 57, 62-63, 87-89, 93, 101, 116, 121, 126, 129, 134, 136-137, 152, 158, 179, 183, 186, 188, 190, 205-206, 214, 227, 301, 306
healthy, 101
ongoing assessment, 301
supervisory, 63, 89, 93
relaxation, 102, 169
Reliability, 23, 26, 37, 179, 232
Religion, 18-19, 21, 120, 210
Religious groups, 171
Reminders, 116, 214
Reporters, 128, 147, 156-158, 162, 183-193, 195-198, 200-201, 204-206, 221, 242, 281
students as, 157
Reporting, 69, 98, 104, 115, 120-122, 148, 153, 155, 162, 186-189, 201, 205, 304-305
Reports, 11, 19, 21, 42, 44, 58, 60, 117, 121, 133, 142, 147, 155, 157, 160, 163, 184, 201, 205, 212, 221-222, 237-238, 240-241, 289, 303-306
library, 121
Representation, 38, 42, 56, 125, 130, 284, 289
Research, 20, 25-26, 28, 32, 36-38, 44, 46, 49-50, 57, 59, 61, 64, 76, 79-85, 145-146, 169, 185, 199-200, 214, 223, 225, 228, 231-232, 235, 255, 267-268, 280-282, 301-307, 309
findings, 28, 36, 57, 76, 79-84, 225, 267-268, 280, 306
market, 49
sampling, 28, 32, 37, 57
theory and, 61
uniqueness, 235
Research methods, 26
Research results, 81
conclusion, 81
Resistance, 80, 280
Resolution, 22, 25, 41, 136, 194
Resources, 3, 6-7, 12, 18, 44-45, 49-50, 70, 91, 103, 109, 111, 116, 120, 145, 147, 149, 151, 154, 172, 178, 185, 199, 255, 265, 271, 279, 282, 287, 301, 303, 307
Respect, 22, 41, 43, 54, 61, 68, 78, 84, 88-91, 97, 100-102, 104, 106, 126, 133, 139-140, 145, 157-158, 170-171, 174, 186-187, 189-192, 231, 241, 283, 285-286, 290
Responding, 117, 122, 147-148, 211, 252, 271
Response, 2, 27, 29, 32, 69, 76, 80, 148-149, 151-152, 155, 158, 181, 186, 196, 287
Responses, 29, 33, 76, 127, 139, 160, 167-168, 185, 213, 221, 261
Restructuring, 79, 105
Retention, 276
Retrieval, 252
Revision, 55, 122
Rewards, 24, 200
Rhetoric, 99
risks, 3, 270, 307
Role playing, 174

Role-playing, 3
Roles, 47, 51, 90, 108, 116, 145, 158, 176, 188, 209, 236, 269, 271, 273, 285, 287, 291, 293
Room parents, 123
Rules, 33, 41, 60, 88, 101-102, 105-106, 114, 117, 156, 178, 185, 217, 230, 237, 241, 257, 262
Rush, 210, 253

S
Safe haven, 150
Safety, 1, 4, 29, 54, 113, 129, 147-148, 153-159, 164, 200, 206, 259
  plans, 148, 154, 157, 159
Safety issues, 158
Salaries, 65, 90, 108, 170, 228, 279, 286
Samples, 19, 121, 233, 242
Sampling survey, 30-31
  systematic probability, 31
SAT, 5, 307
satellites, 156
Satisfaction, 26-27, 35, 82, 88, 90-91, 98, 103, 107, 140, 178, 302, 307
saying no, 95
Scale, 31, 77
Scales, 70-71
Scanning, 229, 257
Schedules, 122, 150, 176, 183, 188, 253, 292, 307
Scheduling, 82, 165, 203
Scholarships, 112, 115, 199-200
School, 1-8, 9-15, 17-28, 31-38, 39-51, 53-71, 73-76, 78-86, 87-109, 111-146, 147-160, 161-181, 183-207, 209-222, 223-233, 235-244, 247, 249-266, 267-273, 275-277, 279-299, 301-309
  board policies, 103
School activities, 21, 99, 113, 129, 132, 173, 184, 241, 252, 281
School board, 2, 9-10, 25, 37-38, 40, 44, 50, 53-56, 59, 64, 70, 79, 83, 85, 87-88, 103, 108, 125, 130-131, 134-136, 150, 161-162, 171, 179, 187, 190, 203, 212, 224, 237, 241, 255, 260, 263, 269, 276, 284, 294-298, 306
  authority of, 88
  public opinion and, 53
School choice, 1, 4, 267, 273, 306
School crisis manual, 85
School culture, 160
School district, 2, 6-8, 20, 22, 32, 34, 37, 39-40, 42, 44-46, 48-50, 58-61, 65-66, 68, 79, 84, 94-100, 108, 114, 116, 125, 128, 130-131, 134, 136, 142-145, 149, 154, 156, 160, 161-164, 171, 173, 175, 178, 180-181, 184, 187, 189, 192, 194, 205-207, 210-213, 215, 226, 228-229, 231, 236, 238-239, 241, 243, 249-250, 252-253, 255-256, 258-262, 264, 266, 267-268, 276, 279-280, 282, 287, 289-290, 292-294, 304-305, 308
School district budget, 22
School districts, 6, 14, 17, 32, 36, 45, 58, 66, 78, 85, 87, 89, 96, 100, 104, 121-122, 130, 132, 143, 151-152, 163, 170-171, 173, 179-180, 184, 193, 201, 205, 209, 212, 220, 223, 226, 229, 237-242, 244, 252, 257, 259-263, 271, 279, 284, 290, 306
  operation of, 170
School leaders, 1, 4-6, 22, 37, 50-51, 70, 108, 132, 147, 151, 154, 181, 260, 273, 276, 301, 303
School liaison groups, 111, 123
School lunch, 83, 202
School Lunch Program, 202
School policies, 20, 56, 91, 105, 139, 174, 252, 279
School psychologists, 67, 149, 154
School safety, 147
School success, 14, 22
School visits, 6, 119
School-age children, 183, 281, 291, 293
School-based management, 47
Schooling, 1, 19, 81, 282
Schools:, 160, 308
  crisis in, 125, 160
  descriptions of, 26
  empowered, 227
  in the United States, 162, 198
  urban, 130, 146, 193
  year-round, 27, 32, 267, 281, 293
Science, 10, 12, 38, 86, 170, 178, 195, 197, 204, 212, 217, 239
  in the curriculum, 10
  new, 10, 38, 86, 195, 204, 217, 239
Sciences, 61, 265
Scientists, 11
Scope, 45, 47, 59, 120, 125, 216, 219
Scores, 2, 5, 20, 115-116, 120, 194, 197, 206, 307
Scoring, 103
Script, 219, 232, 304
Search, 8, 15, 109, 147, 304
Seating, 98, 162
  assigned, 98
Seattle, 115
Second Step, 272
Secondary school, 105, 107
Section, 24, 26-27, 34, 41-42, 45, 62, 65, 122, 144, 179, 190, 198, 218, 230, 256, 282, 294
Security, 1, 4, 21, 89, 91, 93, 101, 153, 155-156, 158-159, 176
  facility, 153, 155, 176
Self, 23, 80, 82, 84, 90, 101, 103, 106-107, 111, 128, 138, 159, 167, 179, 269, 286
  constructing, 90
self-esteem, 82, 106
Self-image, 101
self-improvement, 23, 103, 179
Self-injurious behaviors, 159
Selling, 220, 306
Senior citizen groups, 129
senses, 80
Sensitivity, 120
Sentences, 155, 203, 213, 288
Separation, 56
September 11, 148
Sequence, 34, 42, 77, 153, 219
Sergiovanni, Thomas J., 15, 51, 71
Servants, 56
Server, 263
Setting, 7, 11, 23, 53-54, 56, 60, 73, 108, 112, 123, 131, 135-136, 145, 148, 163, 180, 214, 268, 276, 309
Sex, 19, 34, 79, 120, 122, 135
Sex education, 120, 122
Sexual abuse, 148
Sexual assault, 152
Sharing, 43, 73, 108, 118, 124, 135, 156, 185, 195, 268
Signals, 216, 271
Significance, 173, 235
Signs, 74, 76, 152, 154, 158-159, 176
Silence, 28
Simple probability sampling survey, 30
Simulations, 150, 152
Situation analysis, 44
Size, 22, 27, 30-31, 34, 57-59, 67, 75, 89, 93, 95, 125, 127, 135-136, 152, 198, 204, 215, 228, 230, 232, 235, 251, 276, 294
Skills, 1, 6, 48, 57, 60-61, 68, 90, 98, 117-118, 121, 142, 156, 160, 179, 307-308
  attending, 6, 179
  practicing, 90
  sending, 121
  speaking, 179
Sleep, 154, 211
Sleeper effect, 79
Slides, 120, 132-133, 216, 219-220, 290-291
Small group, 32, 78, 83, 237
Small groups, 4, 69, 106, 142
SMART, 247
Social action, 18, 171
Social history, 14
Social issues, 20
Social needs, 11, 107, 179
Social networking, 260
Social order, 12
Social problems, 107
Social responsibility, 25, 61
Social scientists, 11
Social service agencies, 129, 256
Social studies, 85
Social values, 56
Social workers, 67, 163
Socioeconomic status, 119
Sociology, 20, 277
Software, 36, 220, 226-227, 261
Software programs, 220
Sokolowski, Colin, 273
Solutions, 18, 82, 97, 107, 137, 158, 187, 191, 195-196, 224-225, 265, 283, 308
Songs, 217
Sound, 6, 8, 9, 13-14, 25, 40, 42, 63, 73, 82-83, 88, 105, 112, 124, 131, 158, 163, 175, 180, 186, 191, 202, 215-216, 218, 224, 227-228, 236, 253, 280-281, 289, 302-303
Sounds, 2, 76
Space, 10, 94, 144, 157, 190, 193, 196, 198, 201, 204, 210, 215, 217, 229-230, 232, 241, 247, 257, 280, 286, 290-292
Speaking, 3, 62, 75, 108, 119, 136, 139, 179, 184, 186, 193, 199, 203, 213
Special column, 197
Special interest groups, 20
Special programs, 173, 175
Specialized areas, 118
Speech, 61, 196, 213, 225, 241, 268
speed, 20, 216, 226
Spelling, 83, 130, 133, 150, 186, 204, 214, 217
  phonetic, 214
Sports, 83, 113, 133, 175, 211-212, 214, 225, 306
Stability, 19, 22, 139
Staff, 1-7, 13, 23, 26-27, 34, 36-37, 40-41, 44, 46-47, 49-50, 53-65, 67-71, 78, 87-93, 95-99, 101, 103-106, 108, 114, 125, 128, 132-134, 142-143, 148-159, 163-166, 169-171, 173, 175, 181, 188-189, 193, 196, 199, 201, 204-205, 210, 215, 217-218, 220, 223-227, 236, 239, 241, 247, 252, 257, 259, 271-273, 282-285, 289, 293-294, 302, 304-308
  board relations with, 88-89
Staff development, 97-98, 271
Staff training, 163
Stages, 76-79, 101, 107, 126, 152, 176, 267-268, 277, 281, 283, 292
Stakeholders, 44, 54-55, 260, 308
  vision and, 308
Standardized test scores, 20
Standardized tests, 130, 195
Standards, 15, 18, 33, 54-55, 61, 71, 80, 92, 101, 103, 137, 144, 172-173, 187, 194, 201, 204, 220, 253, 257, 302, 308
  content in, 220
  for educational public relations professionals, 61
Stanines, 224
State and local, 22, 304
State governments, 185
States, 1, 3, 11, 23, 30, 55, 78, 84, 88, 108, 115, 132, 134, 144, 162, 198, 284
Statistics, 2, 23, 195, 252, 266, 280, 288
Statutes, 161
Stereotypes, 133
Stigma, 3
Stimulus, 82
Stop, 5, 76, 141, 158, 307
Stories, 2, 25, 56, 60, 62-64, 69, 78, 82-83, 114-115, 147, 150, 160, 177, 180, 183, 186-191, 194, 196-199, 201-203, 205-206, 211-212, 229-230, 235, 247, 268, 282, 289, 293, 304
  interest in, 2, 25, 62, 206, 211, 304
Strategic planning, 46, 49, 271
Strategies, 5, 8, 10, 15, 24, 39-40, 42-46, 48-51, 56, 71, 86, 94, 108, 116, 144, 149, 181, 215, 250, 299, 301, 309
  intended, 42
Stratified sample, 27
Stratified sampling, 31
Stress, 50, 102, 129, 152, 159, 163, 203, 281, 303
Strikes, 99-100, 150, 152
Strokes, 232
Structure, 9, 17-18, 22-26, 32, 34, 37, 43, 48, 57, 59, 63, 97, 105, 127, 131, 144-146, 163, 270, 294, 307
Student achievement, 7, 13, 255, 258, 307
Student advisory committees, 105
Student enrollment, 58-59, 249, 271
Student handbooks, 255, 262
Student input, 106
Student involvement, 106-107
Student opinion surveys, 105
Students, 1-2, 4, 7, 14, 27, 31, 33-34, 46, 54-56, 58, 60, 64-68, 83, 87, 90, 97-98, 100-101, 103-108, 111, 114-115, 117, 119-121, 123, 126, 131-134, 144-145, 148-151, 153-160, 162-164, 171, 174-177, 180-181, 183, 188, 194-198, 202-203, 209-210, 212, 217, 220-221, 224-225, 235-236, 241-242, 247, 249, 252, 256, 259-260, 262, 271, 273, 276, 280-281, 283-287, 292, 294, 301-303, 306-308
  as people, 126
  calling on, 220
  conferences with, 119

distinctions, 101
reluctant, 2, 106, 119, 121, 163, 175
Studies, 5, 11, 17-18, 21, 26, 35-36, 55, 61, 64, 76-78, 80-81, 84-85, 90, 93, 96, 112, 116, 161-162, 183, 193, 199, 209, 231, 235, 252, 260, 267, 277, 280-281, 285, 291, 304
Style, 19, 42-43, 196, 201-202, 204, 224, 232
Subordinates, 89, 91
Substitute teachers, 98, 240
in employee relations programs, 98
Suggestions, 2-3, 32-33, 54, 70, 74, 76, 89, 96-97, 99, 101-102, 104-106, 108, 122, 127, 140, 142-143, 146, 154-155, 157, 161-163, 174-175, 180, 183-184, 198-199, 212, 215-216, 221, 225, 228-229, 231, 255, 284
delivering, 155
Superintendent of schools, 23, 59-60, 79, 88-89, 130, 177, 184, 186, 202, 212, 284, 289
school board relations with, 88
Superintendents, 1, 41, 56-58, 62, 64, 70-71, 88-89, 95, 124, 134, 169-170, 260, 289, 294, 307-308
Supervision, 59, 91, 93, 150
Support, 3-7, 9-10, 13, 19, 21-22, 24-26, 35, 39-42, 44-45, 53, 56, 62, 66-68, 78-79, 81-82, 86, 87, 89, 91, 98-99, 101-102, 107-108, 111-113, 116-117, 122-124, 129, 131-132, 134-136, 138-143, 145, 149-151, 153, 155, 158, 161, 163-164, 173, 175-177, 180-181, 187, 193, 205, 210, 214, 219, 224-225, 227, 241, 251, 255, 258, 260, 265, 267, 269-270, 279-284, 286, 289-294, 299, 301, 303, 305, 307
Supporting, 14, 79, 116, 130, 143, 290, 301, 303
Surveys, 6, 8, 26-30, 34-37, 93, 105, 131, 180, 184, 199, 247, 252-253, 255, 265, 276-277, 282, 284, 287, 292, 303, 306
advantages and limitations of six methods of, 29
Syllables, 85, 203, 224
Symbolism, 73
Symbols, 74, 83
Synonyms, 213
Synthesis, 284
System, 7, 9-11, 13-14, 19, 21-22, 24-27, 30, 36, 39-43, 49-50, 53-59, 61-70, 75, 80, 87-91, 93, 95, 97-102, 105-108, 114, 118, 120-121, 123-125, 128, 130, 135, 137, 147-152, 154-159, 161, 163-166, 169-170, 172-173, 179, 184, 190, 194, 196, 198, 200-201, 205-206, 210, 214, 217, 220, 224-225, 242, 249, 269, 280-282, 289, 293, 296, 304-305, 308
Systematic probability sampling survey, 31
Systems, 1-2, 6, 25-26, 35, 42, 44, 56-60, 62-67, 69, 87-89, 91-92, 98-99, 102-103, 108, 112, 120-122, 124, 135, 147-152, 158, 164-165, 170, 177, 180, 196, 199-201, 205, 221, 225, 227, 239, 247, 249, 265, 271, 279, 281-282, 301, 306
belief, 56
dynamic, 56, 89, 124, 306
human, 87, 89, 91, 103, 149, 152, 301
unstable, 147
Systemwide exhibit, 217

T

Tables, 38, 76, 217
Tactics, 8, 15, 44-46, 51, 71, 86, 108, 181, 249-250, 273, 301, 304-305, 309
Talking, 107, 139, 156, 185, 187, 220, 286, 292
Talking points, 156
Tasks, 2, 44-46, 57, 101, 206, 271, 285, 287
Tax rate, 43, 251
Taxation, 123, 173
Taxes, 10, 32, 75, 113, 121, 130-131, 138, 162, 196, 279, 286, 294
Teacher, 1, 4-5, 10-11, 22, 27, 44, 47, 55-56, 66-67, 83, 91-93, 98-99, 101-103, 105, 115-118, 120, 122-124, 130, 142, 152, 157, 165, 169-170, 174, 189, 194, 197, 200-201, 210, 217, 221, 225, 228, 235, 239-241, 259, 277, 279, 282, 284-287, 290-293, 306-307
Teacher aides, 123
Teachers, 4-5, 7, 25, 27, 33, 40, 42, 53-55, 62-63, 65-69, 75, 88-93, 95, 98-104, 106-108, 111, 113, 115-126, 129-130, 133-134, 136-137, 144-145, 149, 162-163, 169-177, 184, 186, 194, 197, 199, 201, 207, 211, 217, 220-221, 223-225, 235, 239-240, 242, 255, 257-260, 271, 283, 285-286, 291-293, 306
caring, 103, 163, 177
educators, 4-5, 7, 27, 33, 90, 100, 111, 116, 118, 124, 126, 133, 137, 184, 186, 197, 207, 217, 224, 239, 260, 285-286, 306
head, 98, 221, 235
influence on, 25, 62, 68, 88, 118
substitute, 98-99, 123, 240
Teaching, 10, 55, 65-66, 83, 91, 98-99, 101, 118-120, 122-123, 129, 136, 138, 151, 170, 189, 194-195, 199-200, 203-204, 217, 225, 241, 247, 307
time spent, 241
Teaching practices, 199
teaching science, 195
Teaching writing, 194
Team leaders, 153
Teams, 97, 112-113, 148-149, 151-154, 157, 171
crisis management, 149, 151-152, 154
Teamwork, 142-143, 150, 212
Techniques, 3, 7-8, 15, 28, 32, 40, 44, 46, 65, 69, 73, 84, 108, 140, 143, 165-166, 170, 180, 188, 199, 207, 212, 215, 218, 220, 223, 252, 266, 303
Technology, 20, 36, 122, 133, 149, 151, 156, 185, 226-227, 249, 251-253, 255, 265-266, 304
computers, 20, 227
Telephone conversations, 166
Television, 19, 27, 59-61, 64, 69, 73, 75-76, 78, 82-83, 111-112, 115, 127, 149-150, 155-157, 175, 189, 209-211, 213-217, 219, 221-222, 267, 281, 285, 289-294
getting television time, 214
planning for effective, 215
Television talk show, 221
Tennessee, 168, 242
Terminology, 12, 51, 141, 185, 195, 203, 224, 226
Test, 2, 20, 23, 86, 103, 115-117, 120, 127, 194, 197, 205-206, 230, 240, 259
Test anxiety, 116
Test items, 103
Test scores, 2, 20, 115, 120, 194, 197, 206
Testimonials, 221
testing, 91, 115-116, 130, 183, 195, 199
field, 195, 199
Tests, 102, 114-115, 130, 178, 195
essay, 115
norms, 114, 130
Texas, 39, 145, 205, 239, 249, 253, 256, 259, 261-262, 264
Text, 13, 20, 161, 215-216, 230-232, 265
Textbooks, 6, 20, 32, 38, 130, 137, 198, 206
Thanksgiving, 173, 194
The Parent, 44, 55-56, 82-83, 123, 164, 169, 287, 290-291, 293
Theme, 177, 217, 219, 273-274, 287, 291
theories, 2, 8, 14, 51, 70, 86, 108, 181, 230, 268
Theory, 8, 61, 73, 75-76, 86, 91, 109, 186, 266, 277, 280
Therapist, 225
Think, 2, 5, 10-11, 13, 17-18, 21, 26-27, 30, 32-33, 44, 50, 66, 79, 81, 87-91, 94, 103-104, 117-118, 127-128, 130, 141, 144, 161, 170, 186, 191, 197, 218, 226, 269, 272, 286, 303, 305
Thinking, 2, 6, 10, 19, 26, 28, 30-32, 34, 37, 44, 69, 79, 86, 104, 108, 118, 126, 131, 133, 152, 156, 166, 176, 197, 219, 237, 272-273, 277, 279, 287, 304, 307
possibility, 34
Thomas, 15, 51, 71, 109, 146, 160
Threats, 159
Time, 1, 6-7, 9-10, 18-20, 27-30, 32, 34-36, 39, 41-50, 56-62, 64, 67, 69, 75, 79, 82-83, 85, 88, 90, 92, 94-95, 97-100, 102, 104-105, 107, 112-115, 118-120, 122-129, 133-137, 140-141, 143-144, 147, 151-154, 156, 159, 162, 165, 167-168, 172-177, 179-181, 183-190, 192-194, 196, 201-202, 205-206, 209-217, 220, 222, 223, 225-230, 235-236, 241, 251-252, 265, 267-269, 271, 273, 281-285, 289-292, 296, 302-308
engaged, 118, 129, 225
to think, 18, 141, 186, 303
units, 122-124, 128, 153, 302
Title, 3, 48, 58, 69, 75, 130, 186, 195, 204, 212, 220, 308
Token, 35
Tone, 10, 54-56, 68, 103, 122, 127, 166, 172
Tools, 8, 38, 73, 84, 103, 165, 185, 187, 189, 191, 193, 195, 197, 199, 201, 203, 205, 207, 210, 212, 214, 216, 218, 220, 222, 223-224, 226, 228, 230, 232, 234, 236, 238, 240-242, 244, 246, 249-250, 252, 254, 256, 258-260, 262, 264-266, 269, 271, 273, 275-277, 280, 282, 284, 286, 288, 290, 292, 294, 296, 298, 304, 307
Topics, 17-18, 27-28, 60, 69, 105, 113, 117-118, 120, 123, 136, 164, 173-174, 184, 191, 193-194, 197, 206, 211-212, 214, 218-219, 235, 239-241, 251, 260, 279, 282, 304, 306
Tornadoes, 148
touch, 149, 175, 188, 197, 230-231, 261, 292
Touching, 230
Traditional printing, 226-227
Traffic flow, 176
Training, 2, 4, 29, 33-34, 36, 47, 54, 58, 63, 65, 68-70, 114-116, 124, 140, 149-152, 157, 163, 177, 179, 205, 215
Traits, 21, 232
Transfer, 24
Transitions, 203, 215
Translation, 193, 244
Transparency, 251
Travel, 65, 132
Treatment, 41, 43, 64, 81, 89, 93, 104, 138, 169, 172, 178, 189, 201, 203, 240
Trend, 195, 205, 252, 265
Truth, 22, 111, 156, 167, 220, 292
Twitter, 260, 266
Tyler, Ralph, 3
Typefaces, 231-232
Typical day, 305

U

Understanding, 7, 10, 12-14, 17-26, 28, 30, 32, 34-36, 38, 39-43, 54, 58, 60-61, 63, 65-67, 73, 78, 82, 84, 88, 90, 92-94, 102-103, 107-108, 111-112, 115-117, 126, 131-132, 135, 137, 139-142, 144, 147-148, 160, 161, 169, 171-172, 177, 180, 187-188, 219, 224, 267-268, 286, 294, 301-303, 305
Uninformed critics, 138
Unions, 1, 129, 136, 284
Uniqueness, 151, 235
United States, 23, 30, 84, 115, 132, 134, 144, 162, 198
Units, 31, 65, 122-124, 128, 153, 286, 302
Universities, 124, 151
University of Michigan, 150
University of Missouri, 185
U.S. Department of Education, 2, 147, 150-152, 158, 252
Utilization, 5, 25

V

Vacation, 170-171
Vacations, 169, 177, 236
Validity, 37, 102, 277
Values, 18, 22-23, 26, 28, 43, 56, 80, 85, 89, 94, 111, 129, 133, 136, 144-145, 173, 304
philosophy, 89
self-interest, 80
Variables, 59, 82, 280
Variance, 21
Vendors, 265
Verbs, 204, 213-214
Victim, 24, 159
Video, 60, 133, 162, 164, 175, 180, 209, 219-222, 249, 251-253, 256, 258, 263-264
Videos, 69, 75, 120, 171, 209, 220-221, 263, 290, 292
Videotape, 214-215, 253
Videotapes, 123, 133, 216
Vietnamese, 244, 257-258
violence, 1, 85, 106, 126, 147-150, 152-153, 156, 158-160
Virtue, 10, 66
Vision, 89, 294, 307-308
Visual aids, 120, 141, 216
Vocabulary, 19, 75, 122, 166, 212
ideas and, 19
Vocational education, 141
Vocational training, 4
Voice, 55-56, 83, 97, 165-166, 204, 212-215, 307-308
Voice mail, 166
Volume, 48
volunteering, 306
Volunteers, 29, 34, 78, 133, 149, 154-155, 158, 220, 227, 240, 290, 293

Vouchers, 4, 306

W

Walls, 94, 104, 107, 165, 172, 217
wants, 12, 14, 26, 42, 53, 81, 93-94, 98-99, 113-114, 119, 128, 136, 144, 204, 217, 251-252, 308
Warning signs, 152, 154, 158-159
Washington, 78, 86, 148, 222, 266
Web design, 255, 257, 266
  copy and, 257
Web resources, 185
Web sites, 20, 36-37, 99, 122, 154, 156, 221, 247, 249, 252-260, 263-264, 304, 306
Weight, 130, 214, 230-231
Welfare, 2, 12, 20, 24-25, 44, 54, 56, 62, 87-89, 91-92, 99, 102, 107, 113, 123, 126, 128, 135, 162, 171, 288
Welfare agencies, 107
Well-being, 24, 176
Whole, 86, 95, 97, 102, 136, 142, 152, 177
Wilcox, Dennis L., 8, 15, 51, 71, 86, 106, 181, 309
Windows, 172, 186, 218, 292
Wire services, 149, 156
Wisdom, 225
Withdrawal, 159
Women, 21, 33, 104, 128-129, 132, 135, 171-172, 176, 179, 216, 284
Word associations, 133
Word-processing software, 226
Words, 5, 11, 13, 21, 32, 55, 58, 73-75, 78-79, 81, 84-85, 97, 108, 133, 143, 148, 155, 166-168, 183, 185-187, 192, 202-204, 213, 216, 219, 224, 230, 232, 241, 281, 303
  base, 5, 21
  classes of, 84
Work, 5-8, 9, 11, 13, 22, 26, 28, 30-36, 41-44, 50, 54-56, 59-70, 82, 85, 88-94, 96-97, 101-102, 105, 107-109, 112-114, 116-126, 128-130, 133-135, 137-138, 141, 145, 149, 153, 157, 163, 165-167, 170, 172-177, 179-180, 183-184, 190-192, 199, 201, 203, 205-206, 210-211, 213, 215, 217-219, 223, 225, 227, 232, 236, 242, 251, 253, 257, 265, 269, 271-272, 280, 285, 290-291, 301-302, 306
Work habits, 120, 145
Working through, 44, 67
Workplace, 93-94, 158, 306
World Trade Center, 148
Wounds, 159
Wrap-up, 212, 237
Writers, 197, 214, 257
Writing, 9, 23, 35, 41-42, 54, 60-63, 122, 159, 165-168, 175, 178-179, 186, 194, 197, 201-204, 206-207, 213, 222, 224-225, 247, 253, 272, 289
  form of, 41, 166
  right, 9, 23, 61-62, 167, 178, 197
  to solve, 35
Writing ability, 202
Written expression, 69

Y

Year-round schools, 32
Young children, 172, 242

አዲግ ሳይንስና ቴክኖሎጂ
ዩኒቨርሲቲ አብያተ መጽሐፍት
Adama Science & Technology
University Library